Chapter VIII:

Alternative Enterprises

Chapter VIII: Alternative Enterprises

A. General
B. Wildlife
C. Trees/Forestry
D. Livestock
E. Poultry
F. Aquaculture
G. Crops/Horticulture
H. Food Safety
I. Apiary
J. Non-Farm/Farm Residents
K. Education

Check with your local county cooperative extension agent or Resource Conservation and Development Council to find what is available in your state and to identify local or state leads.

A. General

Farming for Profit, Stewardship and Community Tip Sheets
SARE
All tip sheets are available online at: http://www.sare.org/tipsheet/index.htm
Hardcopies are available from:
Ph: (301) 405-3186 or 202-720-5203.
Email: vberton@wam.umd.edu
Also, Available in the Resource Manual at
www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or CD

The two-page tip sheets are devoted to identifying sources of information for following subjects:

-TIP# 1: Improve Soil Quality
-TIP# 3: Prevent Pest Problems
-TIP# 4: Explore Organic Production
-TIP# 5: Cut Livestock Costs
-TIP# 6: Manage Weeds Wisely
-TIP# 7: Plan for Profit
-TIP# 8: Network
-TIP# 9: Diversify Crops
-TIP# 10: Use Trees

Alternative Agricultural Enterprise (Links)
This website contains links to various documents prepared by personnel from land grant universities, federal agencies, and private foundations. The documents each have information needed to help you make an informed decision about alternative agricultural enterprises.
http://aggie-horticulture.tamu.edu/alternatives/alternativelinks.html

Resources from Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN)
Sustainable Agriculture, Research and Education (SARE)
List of publications and books available through SARE by calling 301-504-5236 or email san_assoc@sare.org. Also, most of the publication are on the web are www.sare.org/htdocs/pubs

The New Frontier of Ranching: Business Diversification and Land Stewardship
Sonoran Institute; June 2000
By Ben Alexander
This is an informational publication that discusses the benefits and methods of applying business diversification and land stewardship to ranching. Case studies are used to present the diversification possibilities.
This publication is available from:
Sonoran Institute
7650 E. Broadway Blvd., Suite 203
Tucson, AZ 85710
Ph: (520) 290-0828
www.sonoran.org

State of the States: Organic Farming Systems Research at Land Grant Institutions 2000-2001
This is a list of organic research and Extension resources in each of the 39 US states that have them. The document may be downloaded using Adobe
Acrobat at: http://www.ofrf.org/publications/SoS/SoS.overview.page.html

Greenbook 2003: Caring for the Land
Minnesota Department of Agriculture
This publication, updated annually, provides information on how farmers are adopting energy and sustainable agriculture alternative enterprises. The publication includes stories about how people are applying alternative sustainable enterprises. See Chapter 3 for table of contents.
Available online at: http://www.mda.state.mn.us/ESAP/Greenbook2003/default.htm
Hardcopies available from:
Ph: (651) 215-0367
Email: Alison.Fish@state.mn.us

USDA Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (AFSIC)
The AFSIC is one of several topic-oriented Information Centers at the National Agricultural Library. This information center specializes provides and accesses

information related to alternative cropping systems, organic, low-input, biodynamic, and regenerative agriculture. Their website offers online versions of their publications, links to other information websites, and a search feature.
Website: www.nal.usda.gov/afsic
10301 Baltimore Ave.
Beltsville MD 20705-2351
Ph: (301) 504-6422 or (301) 504-5724
Email: afsic@nal.usda.gov

Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems
Compiled by Mary Gold, AFSIC
This is a 22-page listing of videos that was published in 1995 and updated in 2000. There are no duplications in the two listings.
Go to: http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/afspub.htm for the online publications, email: afsic@nal.usda.gov to request the publication or call (301) 504-6559.

Missouri Alternatives Center (MAC)
University of Missouri Outreach.
The MAC is an alternative enterprise and agritourism information center hosted by he University of Missouri. Their website provides publications, links, and mailing addresses. The MAC also publishes a newsletter, *Ag Opportunities,* which is also available on their website.
Website: http://agebb.missouri.edu/mac/
University of Missouri
531 Clark Hall
Columbia, MO 65211
Ph: 1-800-433-3704 (Missouri Only) or (573) 882-1905
Email: kellyd@missouri.edu

Ideas for Alternative Agricultural Enterprises.
Missouri Alternatives Center (1996)
This publication is a seven-page fact sheet that lists several alternative enterprise ideas and how they can be developed. The publication also provides information on how to develop a business plan.
Available by calling (573) 882-1905

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
ATTRA is the national sustainable farming information center operated by the private nonprofit National Center for Appropriate Technology. Their website provides information, news, publications and additional links.
Ph: 1-800-346-9140
Website: www.attra.ncat.org

Sustainable Agriculture...Continuing to Grow: Proceedings of the "Farming and Ranching for Profit, Stewardship and Community Conference, March 709, 2000"
Western SARE

This publication contains the proceedings of a conference that addressed sustainable farms, disease, pests and weeds, sustainable ranches, marketing in a sustainable economy and sustaining agriculture. Farmers and ranchers made several presentations on how they are sustaining themselves through alternative enterprises. The proceedings are available online at: http://wsare.usu.edu/ by clicking on the "publications" link.
Hardcopies available at: (435) 797-2257 or wsare@mendel.usu.edu

Adding Value for Profit
Northwest Farm Credit Services
This article in the annual report issue features four producers that diversified to add value to their operations. These entrepreneurs are: customer focused, profit motivated, innovative and responsive, comfortable with change, strategic planners and effective communicators.
Available at www.farm-credit.com and going to the customer button where there are hyperlinks to their web sites. For copies contact
Ben Alexander
Sonoran Institute
201 S. Wallace Street
Bozeman, MT 59715
Ph: 406-587-7331

Example of University Extension Work throughout the U.S.
Most universities have staff devoted to the assistance and development of alternative enterprises and agritourism. Several states also have centers or institutes also devoted to this kind of work. The University of Missouri Outreach and Extension web page is shown as an example of the kind of assistance and information available from land grant universities.
http://muextension.missouri.edu./xplor

Small Farm Center.
University of California, Davis.
The Center provides information that deals with small farm activities and agritourism. Their publications include quarterly newsletter available online.
Website: www.sfc.ucdavis.edu
Ph: (530) 752-8136
Email sfcenter@ucdavis.edu

Small Farms@USDA
This website contains links to other organizations, funding opportunities and information on USDA small farm activities including a newsletter. Go to:
www.usda.gov/oce/smallfarm/hotlinks.htm

USDA Economic Research Service, Organic Farming and Marketing
http://www.ers.usda.gov/briefing/organic

Organic Trade Association (OTA)
OTA is a membership based business association that represents the organic industries in Canada, the United States, and Mexico. Members include growers, shippers, processors, certifiers, farmer associations, brokers, manufacturers, consultants, distributors and retailers. Their website provides news and information, online directories and a website search engine.
Website: http://www.ota.com/
PO Box 547
Greenfield, MA 01302
Shipping: 60 Wells Street
Greenfield, MA 01301
Ph: (413)-774-7511

Organic Production: Recent Publications and Current Information Sources, SRB 96-07
NAL, USDA
Publication contains 30 pages of references on organic agricultural production.
Available by email afsic@nal.usda.gov or
Ph: 301-504-6559

Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems
NAL, USDA
Publication contains 30 pages of references on organic agricultural production.
Available by email afsic@nal.usda.gov or
Ph: 301-504-6559

Ohio Ecological Food and Farm Association
This association holds conferences, and publishes a newsletter .
PO Box 82234
Columbus, OH 43202
Ph: 614-421-2022

Sustainable Agriculture: An Introduction
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
A 4-page paper on a comparison of sustainable and conventional agriculture.
Available at:
Ph: 1-800-346-9140
Website: www.attra.ncat.org

Choosing Your Enterprises: A Checklist (Reprinted with permission from "Sell What You Sow" by Eric Gibson)
Missouri Alternatives Center, University Extension, Lincoln University
Available in this resource manual at:
www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or the CD or
Website: http://agebb.missouri.edu/mac/

University of Missouri
531 Clark Hall
Columbia, MO 65211
Ph: 1-800-433-3704 (Missouri Only) or (573) 882-1905
Email: kellyd@missouri.edu

The New Entrepreneurial Agriculture, Special Report, April 2002
Michigan Land Use Institute
This publication carries stories about farmers in Michigan that have transitioned into alternative enterprises and capitalized on the fresh marketing opportunities.
Available online at www.mlui.org or
Michigan Land Use Institute
205 South Benzie Blvd
Beulah, MI 49617
Ph: 231-882-4723

American Pasturage Inc
Rick Hopkins
President
American Pasturage, Inc.
P.O. Box 190
Marionville, MO 65705
(417) 258-2394

Moderate-sized farms: Is the future bleak or rosy?
Gene Johnston, Managing Editor, Successful Farming
Available in Resource Manual

Sustainable Agriculture...Continuing to Grow: A Proceedings of the "Farming and Ranching for Profit, Stewardship &Community" conference.
Conference addressed sustainability, soils, pests/diseases, and marketing.
Available by contacting
Western SARE Programs
Ph: 435-797-2257

Sustaining Western Rural Landscapes, Lifestyles, and Livelihoods: West-Wide Conference, Sheridan, WY, September 24-26, 2002, Proceedings
This explored agricultural diversification options for ranchers and farmers in the west.
Available from
Boyd Byelich
NRCS/USDA
8416 Hildreth Road
Cheyenne, Wy 82009
Ph: 307-772-2015 X119

USDA Soils Website
http://soils.usda.gov

Sustainable agriculture website with books difficult to find.
www.soiland health.org/index.html and go to agriculture library.

Growing New Farmers: A Northeast Service Providers Consortium
For information go to
www.northeastnewfarmer.org

Alternative Agriculture News
A monthly newsletter addressing national and international policy and legislation as it affects agriculture and trade.
Henry A. Wallace Center for Agriculture and Environment Policy,
Winrock International
1621 North Kent Street, Suite 1200
Arlington, VA 22209
Ph: 703-525-9430
Email: wallacecenter@winrock.org
www.winrock.org/wallace

Community, Food and Agriculture Program Listserv
A very popular eastern and northeast listserv carrying information on research results, conferences, meetings and actions taken for the direct marketing of food and fiber.
Contact Heidi Mouillesseaus-Kunzman at hmm1@cornell.edu or
www.cfap.org

www.Cropchoice.com
Website devoted to providing farmers information on genetically modified crops. It is cosponsored by almost 20 non-profit organizations.

Iowa Organic Farming Mentor Program—A video
Video outlines the structure of the program and highlights some of the successful practices of the mentor farmers.
Iowa Organic Farming Mentor Program
610 South 4th Street
Fairfield, IA 52556

ACRES, USA—A Voice for Eco-Agriculture
Monthly publication addressing, soils, row crops, livestock, poultry, speciality crop, marketing futures, etc.
Call 800-355-5313 for more information.

Small Farmer's Journal
For more information
www.smallfarmersjournal.com

B. Wildlife

Natural Resource Protection
SARE
This is a report on an interdisciplinary study showing that what's good for the wetland and the birds also can be good for a farmer's financial bottom line. The report is written around farmers using the wetlands program to enhance the environment, their farm and their financial bottom line. Available online at: www.sare.org
Hardcopies available by calling (301) 504-6425

Landowners Seek Diversity Income through Wildlife Management
By Tim W. McAlavy
Ag News: News and Public Affairs
Texas A&M University Agriculture Program; April 26, 2001
See Chapter VI for a copy of the news report.
Available at: http://agnews.tamu.edu/dailynews/stories/WFSC/Apr2601b.htm

Incentives for Wildlife Enhancement on Midwestern Farms
Prepared by: Marcos Robles for
Environment and Agriculture Program
Institute for Agriculture and Trade Policy; May 2000
This publication provides ideas, strategies, and examples of incentives that support the enhancement of wildlife.
Available online through the Resources link at: http://www.iatp.org/labels
Cost for hardcopy: $8 (shipping and handling included)
To order, contact: Candace Falk
Ph: (612) 870-3453
Email: cfalk@iapt.org

Wildlife Management for Missouri Landowners, Third Edition.
Missouri Department of Conservation.
This is a 90-page publication about making a wildlife management plan, cropland, grassland, woodland, idle area, wetland, and species management. It lists wildlife management services and presents wildlife management practices.
Available online at: http://www.conservation.state.mo.us/library/wildlife/landown99.pdf
Available from:
Missouri Department of Conservation
P.O. Box 180
Jefferson City, MO 65102

Establishing a Birding-Related Business: A Resource Guide
By David Scott and Ashley Callahan
Texas Agricultural Extension Service – Texas A&M University
B-6093

The first eight pages provide an overview of birding trends, and the last eight pages provide a guide for establishing a birding business or activity in a community. See Chapter VI for the publication.
Available online at: http://agpublications.tamu.edu/pubs/rpt/b6093.pdf
Hardcopies available in Chapter VI or from (979) 845-5419

Fish and Wildlife Habitat Management Leaflets
USDA-NRCS Wildlife Habitat Management Institute in cooperation with the Wildlife Habitat Council
Available electronically at: http://www.ms.nrcs.usda.gov/whmi/technotes.htm

Wildlife and the American Mind: Public Opinion on and Attitudes toward Fish and Wildlife Management
By Mark Duda
Responsive, Management
This is an 800-page book containing results of more than 300 surveys. It presents recommendations, strategies on how to utilize this information to enhance fish and wildlife management programs and policies, as well as how to more effectively manage hunting, fishing, and wildlife watching programs.
130 Franklin Street
P.O. Box 389
Harrisonburg, VA 22801
Ph: (540) 432-1888.

Guidelines for Increasing Wildlife on Farms and Ranches: With Ideas for Supplemental Income Sources for Rural Families.
Great Plains Agricultural Council, Wildlife Resource Resources Committee, Cooperative Extension Service, Kansas State University (1988).
This 500-plus page book was prepared with the input of more than 100 professionals involved in wildlife production, management, economics, and identifying landowner opportunities.
Available from:
Wildlife Habitat Handbook
118 Umberger Hall
Kansas State University
Manhattan, Kansas 66506
Ph: (913) 532-5830
Email: orderpub@oz.oznet.ksu.edu

Farming for Wildlife: Voluntary Practices for Attracting Wildlife to Your Farm
A joint publication of state, Federal and public organizations
This publication presents many wildlife management practices that can be adopted by ranchers and farmers for use on agricultural lands. Available from Wendell Gilgert or Ronald Schultze, NRCS state office at (530) 792-5600

Wildlife Habitat Council (WHC)
The WHC is a nonprofit group of corporations, conservation organizations, and individuals that helps large landowners manage their unused land in an ecologically sensitive manner for the benefit of wildlife. Their website provides information on their programs and their backyard conservation page provides educators with online lesson plans related to wildlife conservation.
Website: http://www.wildlifehc.org
1010 Wayne Ave, Suite 920
Silver Spring, MD 20910
Ph: 301.588.8994
Email: Whc@wildlifehc.org

A Wildlife Manager's Field Guide to the Farm Bill.
Wildlife Management Institute
This guide discusses what programs are available to help manage wildlife on private lands, organizational structure and technical information.
Wildlife Management Institute
1101 14th Street NW, Suite 801
Washington, DC 20005
Ph: 202-371-1808

Backyard Conservation-Wildlife Conservation Tip Sheet
USDA/NRCS
A 6-page paper on how to make a home for birds, butterflies, and nature's other creatures. Nine other tip sheets are available on backyard conservation.
Available on line at www.nrcs.usda.gov or
Ph 1-888-LANDCARE

Land, Leases, and Wildlife
The southern counties in Texas have been holding workshops to introduce new rural landowners to alternative income-producing resources as well as address liability, ethical and tax value concerns. The workshops were sponsored by Texas Agricultural Extension Service, Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, and the Natural Resources Conservation Service. For more information, call Wayne Scholtz, Extension Educator in Hondo, TX at (830) 741-6180 or 1506 Ave. M, Hondo, TX 78861.

A Symposium on the Economics of Wildlife Resources on Private Land
Edited by Rhett Johnson, Auburn University
Papers were presented on general economic impacts, landowner economic impacts, economics of wildlife damage, economic impact of the Endangered Species Act, and economics of wildlife resources. Available by calling (334) 844-4000.

Making Collaboration Work: Lessons from Innovation in Natural Resource Management
By Julia Wondolleck and Steven Yaffee
This book provides information on the role of collaboration in natural resource management, and how to make such collaboration efforts work.

For more information on the book and how to order it, go to:
http://www.islandpress.org

Responsive Management
Responsive Management is a Virginia-based public opinion polling and survey research firm specializing in fisheries, wildlife, natural resource, outdoor recreation and environmental issues.
Website: http://responsivemanagement.com/

Birds on the Web:
Over forty useful and interesting web sites on birds and bird conservation
Texas Partners in Flight
Texas Parks and Wildlife
www.tpwd.state.tx.us/nature
Available in this resource manual at:
www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or the CD described above by calling Jim Maetzold at 202-720-0132 or email at jim.maetzold@usda.gov

Southwick Associates Newsletter
Newsletter published by a firm that specializes in data collection and analysis of fish, wildlife and conservation.
Four research reports noted in December 2003 are:

- Methods for Recovering Mussel Kill Damages
- The Sport of Spring Turkey Hunting
- Angler's" Who are they and what they spend
- Economic Impacts of Hunting and Fishing in the U.S.
- Hunting, Fishing and Wildlife Viewing in Missouri

Available at www.southwickassociates.com

A Comprehensive Review of Farm Bill Contributions to Wildlife Conservation
USDA/NRCS Wildlife Habitat Management Institute
A comprehensive review of the scientific literature was undertaken to deter wildlife responses to programs established under the conservation title of the farm bills 1985, 1990 and 1996. See Chapter III for content and executive summary.
www.whmi.nrcs.usda.gov

Quail Unlimited
www.qu.org

C. Trees/Forestry

USDA National Agroforestry Center
The Center's work focuses on agroforestry practices, including riparian buffers. Trees can readily become an alternative enterprise or used to improve the environment and esthetics of the landscape and farm or ranch. Free copies of the publications shown

below can be obtained by calling Ph: (402) 437–5178. For a more complete listing go online at : www.unl.edu/nac

Agroforestry Center Publications

-*Agroforestry: Working Trees for Agriculture*.
-*Working Trees for Livestock.*
-*Working Trees for Wildlife.*
-*Working Trees for Communities*.
-*Working Trees for Treating Waste.*
-*Working Trees for Carbon Cycle Balance*.
-*Living Snow fences.*
-*Growing Carbon: A New Crop That Helps Agricultural Producers and the Climate Too*
-*Diseases of Trees in the Great Plains*
-*Inside Agroforestry—a quarterly newsletter*
-*Several technical notes are also available on the web*

Agroforestry in the United States: Research and Technology Transfer Needs For the Next Millennium
Association for Temperate Agroforestry
Fall 2000
Cost: $1.00
Available from:
P.O. Box 266
Lake Oswego, NY or 970-340-0031

Income Opportunities in Special Forest Products: Self Help Suggestions for Rural Entrepreneurs
By Margaret G. Thomas and David R. Schumann
USDA Forest Service Publication
Agriculture Information Bulletin- 666 (May 1993)
This publication describes special forest products that can be produced by rural entrepreneurs to supplement their income. The publication includes market and competition considerations and profiles of rural businesses marketing each of the products.
Available at: http://www.fs.fed.us/spf/coop/pubs.htm

Productive Conservation: Growing Specialty Forest Products in Agroforestry Settings (#50031702)
Hybrid Hazelnuts: An Agroforestry Opportunity (#510031704)
Marketing Specialty Forest Products (#510031704)
Edible Woody Landscapes for People and Wildlife (#50031701)
The above are titles of free publications produced by the National Arbor Day Foundation and the University of Nebraska's Cooperative Extension and School of Natural Resource Sciences. Copies are available from the National Arbor Day Foundation.
Website: http://www.arborday.org

Ph: (402) 474-5655

Pine Straw: Money Growing on Trees pg. 11 – 13
AgVentures Magazine Feb/March 2001
By Regina G. Burgess
Available from
AgVentures
Phone: 888-474-6397

Log Bucking Video
Produced by: Time & Tide RC&D and Down East RC&D
This video is designed to educate landowners and loggers about woodlot harvesting practices.
Cost: $5 (plus shipping and handling)
Time & Tide RC&D
9 Green Street
Augusta, ME 04330

Small-Scale Alternative Agriculture
Wood lots two-page information sheet.
Available from (301) 504-6245 or san@nal.usda.gov

Cooperative Forestry: State and Private Forestry Economic Action Plan
Forest Service
Cooperative Forestry helps rural communities and businesses dependent on natural resources become sustainable and self-sufficient.
Website: http://www.fs.fed.us/spf/coop/eap.htm
PO Box 96090
Washington, DC 20090-6090
Ph: (202) 205-1389
Fax: (202) 205-1271
Email: sodell01@fs.fed.us

Community Forests: A Collection of Case Studies of Community Forestry
Compiled by Forest Community Research for the Seventh American Forest Congress Communities Committee
Available at: http://fcresearch.org/cfbooktoc.html

The Community Forestry Resource Pages Website
This website provides links to activities, projects, and organizations involved with community forestry.
http://fcresearch.org/communityforestryresourcepages.html

American Tree Farm System
Part of the American Forest Foundation

The American Tree Farm System provides support and education for private forest landowners.
Website: http://www.treefarmsystem.org/
1111 19th St, NW (Suite 780)
Washington DC 20036
Ph: (888) 889-4466

The National Tree Trust
The National Tree Trust is a non-profit group that helps local volunteer groups grow, plant, and maintain trees in rural communities, urban areas and along highways.
Website: http://www.nationaltreetrust.org/
1120 G Street NW, Suite 770
Washington DC 20005
Ph: (202) 628-8733

The National Arbor Day Foundation
The National Arbor Day Foundation provides information on trees in the riparian zone.
Website: www.arborday.org
100 Arbor Avenue
Nebraska City, NE 68410
Ph: (402) 474-5655.

The National Fire Protection Association
The National Fire Protection Association provides information on community wildfire control measures.
Website: www.firewise.org/communities

Proceedings of the North American Conference on Enterprise Development Through Agroforestry: Farming the Forest for Specialty Products
Edited by Scott Josiah
This conference was one of the first efforts to explore the potential for producing and marketing specialty forest products in agroforestry systems.
For copies contact
Erik Streed 1530
Cleveland Ave N.
115 Green Hall
St. Paul, MN 55108
612-624-4299

D. Livestock

Small Scale Agriculture Alternative
These are two page information sheets that can be obtained by emailing san@nal.usda.gov or calling (301) 504-6245.
-Sheep

-Draft Animals
-Exotic Livestock
-Dairy and Meat Goats
-Cashmere Goats
-Angora Goats

Available in this resource manual at:
www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or the CD described above by calling Jim Maetzold at 202-720-2307 or email at jim.maetzold@usda.gov

Robinson Defines the New Paradigm
The Stockman Grassfarmer
Available in Resource Manual or call
Ph: 800-748-9808

From the Feed Trough
Woody Lane
The articles are—Opening a Door; Animals and Acres; Not Horsing Around; and Optimistically Speaking.
Available in Resource Manual or
Ph: 541-440-1926

Alternative Field Crops Manual
This field manual provides information on those crops and animals that are considered alternatives to traditional farm commodities.
Available at: http://www.hort.purdue.edu/newcrop/default.html

Managing Grasslands for Profit: A guide to grazing management in the Southeast
Published by the USDA NRCS
This publication provides information about managing grasslands and technical assistance that is available for the management of grasslands.
Available from Pat Paul, NRCS Public Affairs Specialist, at (804) 287-1681

Top 10 Mistakes of New Graziers pg. 36-37
The StockmanGrass Farmer May 2001 vol 58 # 5
By Paul Daigle
Website: http://www.stockmangrassfarmer.com/
Call: 1-800-748-9808
The Stockman Grass Farmer
P.O. Box 2300
Ridgeland, MS 39158-2300
Email: sgfsample@aol.com

Profitable Pork: Strategies for Hog Producers
This publication contains information about low cost and pasture based hog production and marketing niches and options.
Available at www.sare.org/bulletin/hogs or

Hardcopies available by calling 202-720-5203

Grazing Lands Roundup
Informational journal published by the Grazing Lands Technology Institute.
Available at: http://www.ftw.nrcs.usda.gov/glti/glnews.html

The Stockman Grass Farmer: The Grazier's Edge
The Stockman Grass Farmer is a newsletter that provides the latest information on grass farming and features grass farmers across the U.S.
Website: http://www.stockmangrassfarmer.com/
Call: 1-800-748-9808
The Stockman Grass Farmer
P.O. Box 2300
Ridgeland, MS 39158-2300
Email: sgfsample@aol.com

Amazing Grazing Directory
Future Harvest-CASA organization
This is an example of a successful project to help farmers raising grass fed animals gain access to customers, and to educate consumers about locally produced, healthier food choices. This will be achieved through a directory of MD, VA, and WV graziers and their products. The directory is to consumers and restaurants. If you are a grazier in these states and a member you may ask to be included in the directory.
Website: http://www.futureharvestcasa.org/amazing.html
Future Harvest-CASA
106 Market Court
Stevensville, MD 21666
Ph: 410-604-2681
Fax: 410-604-2689
Email: fhcasa@verzion.net

Eat Wild
This website provides information, links, books, and news related to pasture-based farming
http://eatwild.com/

Profitable Pork: Strategies for Hog Producers
Published by the Sustainable Agriculture Network – SARE
This publication discusses various aspects of alternative hog production. It presents the different systems, marketing options, and the environmental and community, family, and lifestyle benefits of alternative hog production.
Available online at: http://www.sare.org/bulletin/hogs/

Alternative Marketing of Pork
This publication addresses alternative production methods, breeds, health, general management concerns, and other management considerations. References and a resource section are provided.
Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/altpork.html

Designing Feeding Programs for Natural and Organic Pork Production
By Jerry Shurson, Mark Whitney, Lee Johnston, Bob Koehler, Robert Hadad, and Dean Koehler.
This bulletin developed by Swine Center Faculty, discusses topics including, standards for organic pork production, management of organically raised pigs, energy and protein sources, and alternative feeds and use of forage and pasture. The bulletin may be viewed online at: http://www.extension.umn.edu/distribution/livestocksystems/DI7736.html
For a hardcopy, call: (800) 876-8636 or (612) 624-4900 and ask for item 07736-BU.

Bringing Home the Bacon? The Myth of the Role of Corporate Hog Farming in Rural Revitalization
This is a report based on a study conducted by the North Central Regional Center for Rural Development for the Kerr Center for Sustainable Agriculture, based on corporate hog farming.
Available at:
http://www.kerrcenter.com/kerrweb/New%20Folder/BHTB/hog%20report1.pdf

Patchwork Family Farms
Patchwork Family Farms is an economic development project of the Missouri Rural Crisis Center. The program allows hog farmers to market their own products and receive no less than 43 cents per pound or 15 percent above market price. The farmers adhere to strict growing standards and use sustainable farming techniques.
Website: http://www.patchworkfamilyfarms.org/
Lindsay Howerton
Ph: (573) 449-1336
Email: morural@coin.org

Sustainable Goat Production: Meat Goats
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
This publication offers information specific to meat goat production.
Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/meatgoat.html

Goat World List Serve
This is a list serve for owners of all types, sizes and breeds of goats. For more information go to: http://www.liszt.com/lists/goatworld/?cid=4388
It's the—goat—cheese
Sacramento Bee, June 5, 2002
Available in Resource Manual

Redwood Hill Farm
This is a farm that produces goat cheese.
Website: www.redwoodhill.com
5480 Thomas Rd.
Sebastopol, CA 95472
Ph: (707) 823-8250
Email: contact@redwoodhill.com

Haystack Mountain
This is a farm that produces goat cheese and distributes a newsletter.
Website: www.haystackgoatcheese.com
5239 Niwot Road
Niwot. Colorado 80503
Ph: (303) 581-9948
Email: info@haystackgoatcheese.com

Farmstead Dairy Processing
Small Acreage Options; March 2001
By Paul Dietman
Available at: http://www.uvm.edu/~wagn/archive/dcmarch01.html

The Small Dairy Resource Book: Information Sources for Farmstead Producers and Processors
This publication is a collection of library materials including trade magazines, books, publications and web sites. It contains abstracts on cheese, butter, ice cream, dairy processing, food safety, marketing, animals, feeds and grazing, and appendices of suppliers, consultants, processing courses, and organizations. Available from (802) 656-0484

Cream Line: A new voice for little dairies
Published by Vicki Dunaway
This short newsletter contains dairy-related news, success stories and interest stories.
Cost of subscription: $22 for one year
PO BOX 186
Willis, VA 24380
Ph: (540) 789-7877 (call before 9 p.m. Eastern Time)
Email: ladybug@swva.net

Trends for 21st Century Dairies
AgVentures Magazine, December 2000/January 2001
Available in Resource Manual
Ph: 888-474-6397

Small Acreage Options—Farmstead Dairy Processing
Paul Dietman, University of Wisconsin Extension
Available in Resource Manual

Cowgirl creamery
This is a farm that produces organic cheese.
Website: www.cowgirlcreamery.com/goat.html
P.O. Box 594
80 Fourth Street
Point Reyes Station
California 94956
Phone: (415) 663-9335
Fax: (415) 663-5418
Email: cheese@cowgirlcreamery.com

Oregon Country Beef: Growing a Solution to Economic, Environmental, and Social Needs: an interview with Doc and Connie Hatfield
By Peter Donovan
This is an interview with the owners of Oregon Country Beef, a successful coop that sells $10 million worth of beef each year.
Available at: http://www.managingwholes.com/hatfield1.htm

Horse keeping on a Small Acreage: Facilities Design and Management
By Cherry Hill
This publication is an overview of the responsibilities of horse owners. For more information on the book and how to order, go to:
http://www.horsekeeping.com/horse_books/Horsekeeping_on_a_Small_Acreage.htm

More Horse Than You Can Handle?
Farmstead Stewardship: Guidelines for Horse Owners
Brochure

Good Horse Keeping: Managing Manure to Protect the Environment
Horse Environmental Awareness Program
This video features local citizens sharing their success stories about manure management in Connecticut.
Videos are available from:
NRCS National Employee Development Center
PO Box 6567
Fort Worth, Texas 76115
Ph: (817) 509-3247

Horses for Clean Water
Horses for Clean Water is a program that provides information on conservation and waste management for horse owners. The program offers farm tours, classroom series, workshops and demonstration farms.
Website: http://www.horsesforcleanwater.com/
Ph: (425) 432-6116
Email: alayne.blickle@horsesforcleanwater.com.

New Hampshire Horse Council Inc. (NHHC)
The NHHC is an organization that promotes the interests of the New Hampshire Equine Industry. Their website provides access to the publications, and information on their awards and special events.
Website: http://nhhorsecouncil.com/index2.html
Email: brookee171@hotmail.com

Connecticut Horse Environmental Awareness Program (HEAP)
HEAP is a coalition of federal, state, and local agencies, organizations, and individuals interested in educating horse people on Best Management Practices to protect the environment.
King's Mark RC&D
900 Northrop Road, Suite A
Wallingford, CT 06492-1900
Ph: (203) 284-3663

Dairy Processing Plant: Questions that need to be answered!
These questions are located online at
http://cpdmp.cornell.edu

Farmer's Guide to Processing and Selling Meat or Poultry: What are the rules? Where are the contacts? and Who are the Regulators?
This publication is intended to assist farmers and their advisors in understanding regulations affecting the processing and sale of meat and poultry.
Available online at: http://lehigh.extension.psu.edu/Agriculture/Farmers_Guide.pdf
Hardcopies available from: John Berry, Agricultural Marketing Educator, Penn State University
Ph: (610) 391-9840
Email: jwb15@psu.edu

E. Poultry

Sustainable Chicken Production
This publication addresses the alternative production methods, breeds, health, general management concerns, and other management considerations. References and a resource section are provided.
Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/PDF/chicken.pdf

Profitable Poultry: Raising Birds on Pasture
Published by the Sustainable Agriculture Network – SARE
This publication discusses various alternative poultry production systems and discusses their potential for profit. It also discusses the marketing options, and environmental benefits of alternative poultry production.
Available online at: http://www.sare.org/bulletin/poultry/

Hardcopies available by calling 202-720-5203.

Pastured Poultry
ATTRA
This publication describes the experiences of 35 southern farmers who from 1996-99 participated in a project to produce and market pastured poultry. Information includes pen-building, brooding, feeding, processing, marketing, legal matters, economics, and several other topics.
Available online at: http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/pasturedpoultry.html
Hardcopies available by calling 1-800-346-9140

Pastured Poultry Provides Healthy Meat, Healthy Profits
By Lori Compas
Available at: http://www.nxlevel.org/Pages/res/res_p/res_ag_ar.html

American Pastured Poultry Producers Association (APPPA)
APPPA is a nonprofit educational and networking organization dedicated to encouraging the production, processing, and marketing of poultry raised on pasture. Their newsletter, Grit!, is available through their website, which also provides information on the Association as well as a listing of other resources relating to pastured poultry.
Website: http://www.apppa.org/
PO Box 1024
Chippewa Falls, WI 54729
Ph: (715) 577-5966
Fax :(715) 667-3044
Email: grit@appa.org (newsletter)

Small-Scale Alternative Agriculture. Poultry
This publication is a two-page information sheet. It can be obtained by emailing san@nal.usda.gov or by calling (301) 504-6245.

Chicken Tractor: The Permaculture Guide to Happy Hens and Healthy Soil
By Andy Lee and Pat Foreman
Good Earth Publications (January 1998)
ISBN: 0962464864
This book is about raising chickens in your backyard or on small acreage. It is an innovative way of raising chickens which could compliment your garden enterprise. It also has a small farm resource list included in an appendix. The book is available from the publisher as well as from other common booksellers.

Raising Emus and Ostriches
NAL, USDA (SRB 97-06)
This publication contains 70 pages of references on emus and ostrich production and marketing. Available at: www.nal.usda.gov/afsic
Available from (301) 504-6559 or afsic@nal.usda.gov

Ranch Diversification Workshop
Sponsored by Sonoran Institute & Sierra Business Council
These proceedings contain information on production, niche marketing, recreation and solar enterprises.
Sonoran Institute
7650 E. Broadway Blvd., Suite 203
Tucson, AZ 85710
Ph: (520) 290-0828
www.sonoran.org

Pastured Poultry Enterprise Budget Link
www.wisc.edu/cias/pubs/poultbud.html

F. Aquaculture

Aquaculture Network Information Center
This website provides access to all electronic aquaculture information, including newsletters and other publications.
http://aquanic.org

Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative
This is a two-page information sheet on aquaculture. The information sheet can be obtained by emailing san@nal.usda.gov or by calling (301) 504-6245.
Available in the Resource Manual at www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or CD by contacting Jim Maetzold, 202-720-2307 or jim.maetzold@usda.gov

Aquaculture in Illinois
By Daniel Selock, Southern Illinois University
Small Farm Today (July/August 2000)
For more information, contact Daniel Selock at (618) 536-4451 or dselock@siu.edu

Evaluating an Aquaculture Enterprise
This publication addresses the alternative production methods, specie, health, general management concerns, and other management considerations. References and a resource section are provided.
Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/aquaculture.html

Neptune's Bounty: Growing Seaweed Pg. 18 -20
AgVentures Magazine Feb/March 2001
By Regina G. Burgess
Ph: 888-474-6397

Purrfecting the Catfish Pg. 21 – 23
AgVentures Magazine Feb/March 2001

By Tara Weaver-Missick
Ph: 888-474-6397

Fish Friendly Farming Farm Conservation Plan Workbook Introduction
Sotoyome Resource Conservation District has organized the Fish Friendly Farming Certificaton Program to improve water quality and habitat in the Russian River area of California.
Available in Resource Manual

Trout Unlimited (TU)
TU is an organization uses an extensive volunteer network to conserve, protect and restore North America's trout and salmon fisheries and their watersheds.
Website: http://www.tu.org/
1500 Wilson Blvd., #310
Arlington, VA 22209-2404
Ph: (800) 834-2419
Email: trout@tu.org

Ponds in United States
There is a list of the ponds in the United States at the following web site:
www.corps_geo.USACE.Army.mil/HO.html

Ponds—Planning, Design, Construction
NRCS (Publication #590)
This handbook serves as a general information resource to the landowner and a reference for the engineer, technician and contractor by describing the requirements for building a pond. Available online at:
http://www.wcc.nrcs.usda.gov/water/quality/common/ponds.pdf
Hardcopies available by calling, 1-888-LANDCARE.

Missouri Pond Handbook
Missouri Department of Conservation.
This publication discusses the design and management of a new or old fish pond. It also provides recommendations for dealing with common pond problems. Available online at:
http://www.conservation.state.mo.us/documents/fish/pondhb.pdf
Hardcopies available by calling, (573) 751-4115

POND
POND is a computer program designed to guide decision making processes relevant to warm water pond aquaculture. The program comes with an economic package for doing enterprise budgets.
Available at http://biosys.bre.orst.edu/pond/pond.htm

For-Fee Pond Fishing: Decision-Making Factors
Sea Grant Aquaculture Fact Sheet September 1991
Cornell Cooperative Extension and State University of New York

By Douglas H. Ervers
This is a checklist designed to help you determine whether or not a fish for fee enterprise is feasible for your particular situation.
Cost: $0.50
Available from New York Sea Grant
Sharon Mullen
Swetman Hall
SUNY College at Oswego
Oswego, NY 13126-3599

Understanding an Urban Fishery: Braunig Lake and Calveras Lake, San Antonio, Texas
By Stephen G. Sutton and Robert B. Ditton
Department of Wildlife and Fisheries Sciences.
This publication is a report based on a mail survey used to determine, among other things, angler demographic, fishing participation, attitudes, experience preferences, and willingness to pay increased costs to fish at the Braunig and Calveras Lakes.
Available at: http://lutra.tamu.edu/hdlab/Docs/braunigpdf.PDF

Economic Impact of Recreational Fishing on Minnesota Waters of Lake Superior
By Jeff Gunderson and Glenn Kreag
University of Minnesota (1991)
ID: Publication F6
Available online at: http://www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33510310.html

Lake Ontario Angler Satisfaction
Coastal Recreation Fact Sheet
By Nancy A. Connelly, Diane Kuehn, Tommy L. Brown, Barbara A. Knuth
New York Sea Grant (May 1997)
This publication reports on results of a survey.
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840030.html

1996 Angler Effort/Expenditures on New York's Great Lakes Waters
Coastal Recreation Fact Sheet
By Nancy A. Connelly, Diane Kuehn, Tommy L. Brown, and Barbara A. Knuth
New York Sea Grant
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840031.html

Providing Public Access in Coastal Areas: Options for Landowners
This publication is a fact sheet produced by the Great Lakes Sea Grant Network, Coastal Land Use Committee.
By Mary Bielen, Cynthia Hagley, Leroy Hushak, Michael Klepinger, Glenn Kreag, Diane Kuehn, Frank Lichtkoppler, John McKinney, Jennifer Pultz, and Nancy Riggs
Available from New York Sea Grant
Sharon Mullen
Swetman Hall
SUNY College at Oswego

Oswego, NY 13126-3599

Activities at Free Public Water Sites
By David G. Pitt, Curtis Schatz, David W. Lime, and Leo H. McAvoy
University of Minnesota (1990)
ID: CD-FO-3942
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840108.html

Preferred Facilities/Services: Free Public Water Access Sites and Services
By David W. Lime, Curtis Schatz, Leo H. Mc Avoy, and David G. Pitt
University of Minnesota (1990)
ID: CD-FO-3925
Research Summaries No. 9
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840419.html

Recreational Boating: Lake Superior
By David W. Lime, Curtis Schatz, Leo H. Mc Avoy, and David G. Pitt
University of Minnesota (1989)
ID: CD-FO-3880
Research Summaries No. 5
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840107.html

Boating Patterns and Behavior
By Curtis Schatz, David Lime, Leo McAvoy, and David Pitt
University of Minnesota (1989)
ID: CD-FO-3809
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840421.html

Minnesota Boat Owners: A Summary of What They Are and What They Want
By David Lime, Leo McAvoy, David Pitt, and Curtis Schatz
University of Minnesota (1990)
ID: CD-FO-3940
This publication summarizes and highlights some of the most salient findings of the research conducted on Minnesota boat owners and what they want.
Available online at: www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33842999.html

Boating Safety in Minnesota
By Leo H. McAvoy, David W. Lime, Curtis Schatz, and David G. Pitt
University of Minnesota (1990)
ID: CD-FO-3895
Research Summaries No. 8
Available online at:www.msue.msu.edu/msue/imp/modtd/33840420.html

Water Works Wonders Website
This website provides information on fishing, boating and caring for the water. The website also offers the opportunity to reach a national audience through their free listing.

http://www.waterworkswonders.org/

American SportFishing Association
The ASA is the official trade association for the sportfishing industry. The association is committed to ensuring healthy, sustainable fisheries, increasing participation through education and promotion and helping ASA member companies improve business. Their website contains current fishing statistics, news, and information on government affairs and their conservation programs.
Website: http://www.asafishing.org/
225 Reinekers Lane, Suite 420
Alexandria, VA 22314
Ph: (703) 519-9691
Email: info@asafishing.org

BoatingandFishing.com
This website provides news, magazines, links, and general information related to boating and fishing.
http://www.boatingandfishing.com/

Recreational Fisheries Program
National Marine Fisheries Service
The Recreational Fisheries program works to strengthen the management and conservation of marine resources. Their work involves efforts to improve fisheries conservation, provide more recreational fishing opportunities and to develop policies that work with recreational fisheries to protect endangered species.
Website: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/irf/irf.html
1315 East West Highway, 14th Floor
Silver Spring, MD 20910
Email: Miner@noaa.gov

Marine Recreational Statistics Survey Website
http://www.st.nmfs.gov/st1/recreational/pubs.html

Responsive Management
Responsive Management is a Virginia-based public opinion polling and survey research firm specializing in fisheries, wildlife, natural resource, outdoor recreation and environmental issues. Website:
http://responsivemanagement.com/

Dickinson Country Water Improvement Program Website
This website includes information on water improvement and a page of links.
http://www.ikansas.com/~water/index.html

G. Crops/Horiculture

Small-Scale Agriculture Alternatives
These are two-page information sheets that can be obtained by emailing: san@nal.usda.gov or by calling (301) 504-6245.
Available in the Resource Manual at www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or CD by contacting Jim Maetzold, 202-720-2307 or jim.maetzold@usda.gov

-Blueberries
-Brambles
-American Ginseng
-Dessert Vines
-Exotic Fruits
-Foliage Plants
-Herbs
-Northern Nut Growing
-Peppers
-Pumpkins
-Specialty Corns
-Specialty Flowers
-Specialty Mushrooms
-Specialty Potatoes
-Specialty Vegetables
-Strawberries
-Wildflowers
-Shiitake Mushrooms
-Mushrooms
-Asparagus

Kenaf. Go to: Yahoo.com and enter "kenaf in Mississippi" in the search feature. There is information on production and processing that is practical and economical.

Diversify Crops to Boost Profits and Stewardship
Sustainable Agriculture Network (SARE)
Available online at: http://www.sare.org/diversify/
Hardcopies available by calling, (301) 504-6559

Alternative Crops.
Compiled by: Karl R. Schneider
NAL, USDA (QB 96-11)
ISSN: 1052-5378
This publication contains 40 pages of references on the production and marketing of alternative crops. Available online at: http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjndstr.htm.
Hardcopies available from the AFSIC
Ph: (301) 504-6559
Email: afsic@nal.usda.gov . .

Alternative Field Crops Manual
This field manual provides information on those crops and animals that are considered alternatives to traditional farm commodities.
Available at: http://www.hort.purdue.edu/newcrop/default.html

Alternative Agronomic Crops.
This publication addresses the alternative production methods, varieties, health, general management concerns, and other management considerations. References and a resource section are provided.
Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/altcrop.html

We're Gonna Be Rich! Growing Specialty Cut Flowers for Market
Frank and Pamel Arnosky
Fairplain Publications
P.O.Box 3747
Lawrence, KS 66046
Ph: (785) 748-0609
Email: growing4market@earthlink.net

Sustainable Cut Flowers: A Horticulture Production Guide
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
By Lane Greer
February 2000
This publication is meant to be used as a complementary piece of information that concentrates on sustainable production techniques.
Available at: http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/altcrop.html

Lavender as an Alternative Farming Enterprise
Publication of the Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
By Katherine L. Adam
February 2001
Available at: http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/lavender.html#lavender

Medicinal Herbs in the Garden, Field & Marketplace
By Lee Sturdivant and Tim Blakely
This is a guide written by two of America's foremost medicinal herb growers and entrepreneurs.
Cost: $24.95 (plus shipping and handling)
Order from:
San Juan Naturals
PO Box 642P
Friday Harbor, WA 98250
Ph: 1-800-770-9070
Or visit: http://www.bootstraps.com

American Herb Products Association (AHPA)
The AHPA is the national trade association for the herbal supplement industry. Their mission is to promote the responsible commerce of herbal products.
Website: http://www.ahpa.org/
8484 Georgia Ave., Suite 370
Silver Spring, MD 20910
Ph: (301) 588-1171

Herb Growing and Marketing Network
Website: http://www.herbworld.com
PO Box 245
Silver Spring, PA 17575-0245
Ph: (717) 393-3295

Pennsylvania Hardy Kiwi Development & Marketing
By David J. Jackson Hardy Kiwi Developer/Grower
Kiwi Korners, 1707 Toby Run Road, Danville, PA 17821
This publication provides information on the hardy kiwi including site selection, frost protection, trellising, irrigation, pruning, diseases and pests, etc.

Transgenic Crops: An Environmental Assessment
Henry A. Wallace Center for Agricultural and Environmental Policy at Winrock International
This publication is a report based on a study conducted on the environmental effects of the genetically altered crops.
Available at: http://www.winrock.org/Transgenic.pdf

Greenhouse and Hydroponic Vegetable Production: Horticulture Resources
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
By Steve Diver and Sherry Sue Sparks (student intern)
February 2000
Available at: http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/ghwebRL.html

Commercial Vegetable Production Guides
Oregon State University
Available online at: http://www.orst.edu/dept/NWREC/vegindex.html

Chefs Head to Local Farmer's Market
Available at http://www.restaurant.org/rusa/magArticle.cfm?ArticleID=233

The New Farmers' Market: Farm-Fresh Ideas for Producers, Mangers and Communities
By Vance Corum, Marcie Rosenzweig, and Eric Gibson
Published by New World Publishing
For more information, go to:
http://www.nwpub.net/nfm.html
Cost: $24.95 (plus shipping and handling)

Email: sanpubs@uvm.edu
Ph: (802) 656-0484

Around the World at Farmers' Market
By Steve Salt
This is a handbook for raising and marketing ethnic and old-fashioned vegetables, fruits, herbs, and mushrooms.
Cost: $34.95 (plus shipping and handling)
Order from: Hagoth Press
RR 1, Box 263
Kirksville, MO 63501
Ph: (660) 332-7217
Fax: (660) 332-4434
Email: saltsgvf@istlaplata.net

Growing for Market: news and ideas for market gardeners
A monthly magazine for direct-market farmers.
Website: http://www.growingformarket.com/
Po Box 3747 Lawrence, KS 66046
Ph: (785) 748-0605 or 1-800-307-8949
Email: growin4market@earthlink.net

Backyard Market Gardening, The Entrepreneur's Guide to Selling What You Grow
by Andy Lee
Good Earth Publications (April 1995)
1702 Mountain View Road
Buena Vista, VA 24416
ISBN: 0962464805;
This book discusses how to sell quality garden produce to the public for fun and profit. The production side is discussed in less detail. The book is available from the publisher as well as from other common booksellers.

Northland Berry News
This is a quarterly publication aimed at "berrypreneurs."
Website: http://www.berrynews.com/
Cost: $20 annually
595 Grand Avenue
St. Paul, MN 55102-2611
Ph: (651) 265-3413
Email: pmo@BerryNews.com

Leopold Center Offers New Look at Grapes, an Old Iowa Crop
A copy of the report the article is based on is available from:
Leopold Center
Ph: (515) 294 – 3711
Website http://www.leopold.iastate.edu

Biodynamic Farming and Gardening Association
The Biodynamic Farming and Gardening Association promotes and provides information about biodynamic farming and gardening. Their website provides publications, information about conferences, books, links and a website search engine.
Website: http://www.biodynamics.com/
Building 1002B, Thoreau Center, The Presidio
P.O. Box 29135
San Francisco, CA 94129-0135
Ph: (888) 516-7797
E-mail biodynamic@aol.com

Ohio Fruit and Vegetable Growers Congress and North American Farmers' Direct Marketing Conference Proceedings (Feb. 10 – 12, 2000)
Copies may be obtained by making a check for $10.00 payable to the Ohio Fruit and Vegetable Growers Congress and mailing it to:
PO Box 479
Columbus, OH 43216

Midwest Small Fruit & Grape Net
This website provides information on management, commercial production, harvesting, and marketing of strawberries, raspberries, blackberries, high bush berries, and grapes. The website also contains links to newsletters, current research reports, market prices, and business reports. Additionally specialists in insect, disease, and weed control are available to answer questions through their Ask the Expert link.
http://www.ag.ohio-state.edu/~sfgnet/

Fruit and Nut Orchard Network
Oregon State University
This website is an information resource for fruit and nut growers. It provides information on various aspects of fruit and nut production, including consumer trends. It also provides journal abstracts, newsletters, research information, presentations, extension publications, miscellaneous resources, and a website search engine.
http://www.orst.edu/dept/hort/orchardnet/

UC Davis Fruit and Nut Research and Information Center
Website: http://fruitsandnuts.ucdavis.edu/
Dept. of Pomology
University of California
One Shields Ave.
Davis, CA 95616-8683
Ph: (530) 754-9708
Email: fruitsandnuts@ucdavis.edu

NC Fresh Connection
NC Fresh Connection is a campaign by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture & Consumer Services that works by linking buyers with NC produce growers, cooperatives and processors across the state who can supply seasonal fruits and vegetables.
http://www.ncagr.com/freshconnect/index.htm

Local Harvest
This website allows consumers all over the country to search for community supported agriculture (CSA), farmers' markets, farm stands, and U-pick farms in their area.
www.localharvest.org

South Dakota Master Gardener (Example)
This program offers instruction, in almost every state, that covers topics in: lawn care, selection and care of ornamental trees and shrubs, insect, disease, and weed control, safe use of pesticides, soils and plant nutrition, vegetable, fruit and flower gardening, plant propagation and herbaceous plants. In exchange for the training, participants are required to return 50 hours of volunteer time to their county extension program over the next two years.
Website: http://hflp.sdstate.edu/mg/mg%20training%20info.htm
David Graper
Box 2140A SDSU
Brookings, SD 57007
Ph: (605) 688-6253

Junior Master Gardener Program (JMG) (Example)
JMG is a program that conducts a variety of activities to teach children, in several states, about horticulture and environmental science. Their website is a great resource for kids. It provides information about their programs and how to participate, has an online store, and contains various links.
Website: http://jmgkids.com/
225 Horticulture/Forestry Bldg.
College Station, TX 77843-2134
Ph: (979) 845-8565
Email: jmg@tamu.edu

American Community Garden Association
The ACGA is a national nonprofit membership organization that supports community greening in urban and rural communities. Their website provides information on their programs and conferences, in addition to links to their publications.
Website: http://www.communitygarden.org/
100 N. 20th Street, 5th Floor
Philadelphia, PA 19103-1495
Ph: (215) 988-8785
Email: smccabe@pennhort.org

Hortline
Part of the MBG Kemper Center for Home Gardening Website, Hortline provides a web based 24 hour Help Desk for the home gardener.
http://www.mobot.org/gardeninghelp/hortline/index.shtml

American Mushroom Institute (AMI)
AMI is a national voluntary trade association that represents the growers, processors, and marketers of cultivated mushrooms in the United States.
Website: http://www.americanmushroom.org/
1284 Gap Newport Pike
Suite 2
Avandale, PA 19311
Ph: (202) 842-4344

Rodale Institute
The Rodale Institute's goal is to achieve a regenerative food system that renews and improves environmental and human health. Their website provides general information on regenerative farming and gardening, and regenerative science. The website also has an online bookstore.
Website: http://www.rodaleinstitute.org
Rodale Institute
611 Siegfriedale Road
Kutztown, PA 19530-9320
Ph: (610) 683-14000
Fax: (610) 683-8548
Email: info@rodaleinst.org

Eastern Native Seed Conservancy
The Conservancy is a non-profit organization that heads the Conservation and Regional Exchange by Seed Savers Heirloom Seed Conservation Project and the Native Seeds Project.
Website: http://www.berkshire.net/ensc/seedmain.html
PO Box 451
Great Barrington, Massachusetts 01230
Ph: (413) 229-8316
Email: natseeds@aol.com

Rohrer Seeds
This company sells seeds and horticultural products. You can find out more about the company and their products through their annual seed catalog or their website.
Website: http://www.rohrerseeds.com/
P. L. Rohrer & Bro., Inc.
P.O. Box 250
2472 Old Philadelphia Pike
Smoketown, PA 17576
Ph: (717) 299-2571 or (717) 299-5347

Email: info@rohrerseeds.com

Fedco
Fedco is a seed, organic supplies, trees and bulbs company that is organized as a cooperative. Their website allows you to order their products, or subscribe to receive their catalogues. They annually distribute three different catalogues: the Seeds, Tubers and Organic Growers Supply catalog, which is available in December, the Trees catalog, which is available in October, and the Bulbs catalog, which is available in June.
P.O. BOX 520-A
Waterville, ME 04901
Website: http://www.fedcoseeds.com/

Wildseed Farms
Wildseed Farms is the nation's largest working wildflower seed farm, where you can purchase wildflower seeds direct from the grower. Their catalog is available free, and can also be viewed on their website.
Website: http://www.wildseedfarms.com
Wildseed Farms, Inc.
P. O. Box 308
Eagle Lake, TX 77434
Ph: 1-800-848-0078

Community Harvest
Community Harvest is a nonprofit organization working to create a more local, sustainable food system in the Washington DC region.
Website: http://www.goodfooddc.net/community.htm
2437 15th St., NW
Washington, DC 20009
Ph: (202) 667-8875
Email: communityharvest@mindspring.com

Sunnyside Farms
Sunnyside Farms, located in an historic area of Virginia, produces and markets value-added products and offer educational tours of their farm. They also publish a newsletter, *Market News*.
Website: www.sunnysidefarms.com
P.O. Box 478
Washington, VA 22747
Ph: (540) 675-2627 or (540) 675-2095
Email: bill@sunnysidefarms.com

Greentree Naturals Website
This website offers information on the Greentree Naturals farm and what has helped them become more successful as a small acreage organic farm.
http://www.greentreenaturals.com/

Cornell Horticultural Business and Marketing Program
This program works to enhance the competitive position of the New York fruit, vegetable, and ornamental horticultural industry through targeted, curriculum-driven educational programs. Their website provides additional information on risk management.
Website: http://aem.cornell.edu/special_programs/hortmgt/index.htm
Ph: (607) 255-3688,
Email: wl32@cornell.edu

Organic Production: Recent Publications and Current Information Sources
NAL, USDA (SRB 96-07) 1996
The publication contains 30 pages of references on organic agricultural production.
Available online at: http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/ofp/
Hardcopies available from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (AFSIC)
Room 304, 10301 Baltimore Ave
Beltsville, MD 20705-2351
Ph: (301) 504-6559
Email: afsic@nal.usda.gov

The National Organic Program
Website: http://www.ams.usda.gov/nop/
Richard Mathews
Program Manager
Room 4008-South Building
1400 and Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, DC 20250-0020
Ph: (202) 720-3252
Fax: (202) 205-7808
Email: NOPWebmaster@usda.gov

Organic Farming Research Foundation (OFRF)
The OFRF is a nonprofit organization dedicated to funding research related to organic farming and educating the public about organic farming and organic farming issues.
Website: http://www.ofrf.org/
P.O. Box 440
Santa Cruz, CA 95061
Ph: (831) 426-6606
Email: research@ofrf.org

Organic Trade Association (OTA)
OTA is a membership based business association that represents the organic industries in Canada, the United States, and Mexico. Members include growers, shippers, processors, certifiers, farmer associations, brokers, manufacturers, consultants, distributors and retailers. Their website provides news and information, online directories and a website search engine.
Website: http://www.ota.com/

PO Box 547
Greenfield, MA 01302
Shipping: 60 Wells Street
Greenfield, MA 01301
Ph: (413)-774-7511

North Florida Research and Education Center (NFREC) – Suwannee Valley
The NFREC provides crop-related information. Their website provides information on their workshops, programs, and on a variety of topics including vegetable, fruit and nut crops, organic production and irrigation, fertilizer and manure management.
Website: http://nfrec-sv.ifas.ufl.edu/
7580 County Road 136,
Live Oak, FL 32060
Ph: (386) 362-1725
Email: nfrec-sv@mail.ifas.ufl.edu

National Integrated Pest Management Network (NIPM)
The NIPM is dedicated to providing the latest and most accurate pest management information available on the World Wide Web.
http://www.reeusda.gov/nipmn/

How to Grow More Vegetables: than you ever thought possible on less than you can imagine.
This book is based on 30 years of experience and research on how to grow biointensive.
John Jeavons
Ten Speed Press
PO Box 7123
Berkeley, CA 94707
Ph: 800-841-2665
www.tenspeed.com

New Look at Grapes
Grapes has the potential for a value-added crop in Iowa.
Leopold Center, Ames, IA
Available in Resource Manual and at www.extension
agron.iastate.edu/sustag/information/newrelgrapes.htm.

Lavender As An Alternative Farming Enterprise
Lavender has a market as an agritourism product, an oil and other uses.
Available in Resource Manual and www.ATTRA.org
Ph: 800-346-9140

Pine Straw: Money Growing on Trees
AgVentures Magazine, February/March 2001
Ph: 888-474-6397

Chestnut Market Opportunities Link
www.foodmap.unl.edu/index.asp

H. Food Safety

Urban Agriculture and Community Food Security in the United States:
Farming from the City Center to the Urban Fringe
Available online at: http://www.foodsecurity.org/urbanag.html

Food Safety Begins on the Farm: A Grower's Guide
Copies of this book are available from the Cornell Good Agricultural Practices Program
Ph: (607) 254- 5383
Email: eab38@cornell.edu
Available online at:
http://www.hort.cornell.edu/commercialvegetables/issues/foodsafe.html

The Penn State Food Safety Website
Introducing Food Safety Throughout the Food System
This is a website created by the Department of Food Science that contains two databases with over 1300 links to online food safety resources.
http://foodsafety.cas.psu.edu

I. Apiary

Small Scale AG. Bees
A two-page information sheet can be obtained by mailing: san@nal.usda.gov or by calling (301) 504-6245.
Available in the Resource Manual at www.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/RESS/altenterprise or CD by contacting Jim Maetzold, 202-720-2307 or jim.maetzold@usda.gov

Bee Culture Magazine
http://bee.airoot.com/beeculture/index.htm

University of Montana Bee Alert Website
http://biology.dbs.umt.edu/bees/default.htm

Beehoo—the world's beekeeping directory
www.beehoo.com

Beekeepers References
www.hive-mind.com/bee/informational.asp

Beekeepers weblinks
http://ourworld.compuserve.com/homepages/Beekeeping/weblinks.htm

University of Nebraska Entomology and beekeeping website
http://entomology.unl.edu/beekpg

BeeSource.com
www.beesource.com
(good resource)

Clemson University Apiculture and Pollination website
http://entweb.clemson.edu/cuentres/eiis/apic/apic.htm

University of Georgia Honey Bees and BeeKeeping website
www.ces.uga.edu/pubcd/b1045-w.html

Beekeeping in Rural Areas
www.idrc.ca/nayudamma/beekeeping_4e.html

www.ingenbees.com

International Bee Research Association
www.cardiff.ac.uk/ibra

Mid-Atlantic Apiculture Research and Extension Consortium
http://maarec.cas.psu.edu

National Honey Board
www.nhb.org

The Internet Apiculture and Beekeeping Archive
www.ibiblio.org/bees

Apiculture News (newsletter)
http://entomology.ucdavis.edu/faculty/mussen/news.cfm

Amercian Beekeeping Federation
www.abfnet.org

Some Books

Keeping Bees

BeeKeeping for Dummies

Hive Management: A seasonal guide for beekeepers

A New Starting Right with Bees: A Beginners Handbook on Beekeeping

Beekeeping: A Practical Guide for the Novice Beekeeper Buying Bees, Management, Rearing, Honey Production

J. Non-farm/ Farm Residents

HandMade in America
HandMade in America is a nonprofit organization that promotes the craft of handmade objects and a means to sustainable community and economic development. See Chapter VII for table of contents
Website: http://www.handmadeinamerica.org/
PO Box 2089
Asheville, NC 28802
Ph: (828) 252-3121
Email: wnccrafts@ail.com

Farms, Gardens & Countryside Trails of Western North Carolina
Backroads and scenic byways to some of the most beautiful farms and gardens in the Blue Ridge Mountains. See Chapter VII for table of contents.
Website: http://www.handmadeinamerica.org/
PO Box 2089
Asheville, NC 28802
Ph: (828) 252-3121
Email: wnccrafts@ail.com

Worms for Composting.
This publication addresses the alternative production methods, varieties, health, general management concerns, and other management considerations. References and a resource section are provided. Available online at: http://attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/vermicom.html

Pellet Fuels Institute
The Pellet Fuels Institute is a trade association which represents the fuel preparation and clean burning technology of renewable bio-mass energy resources. Their webpage provides information on how pellet fuel is made, its features and benefits. It also provides information on pellet fuels manufacturers and suppliers, including a directory of important industry names and addresses.
Website: http://www.pelletheat.org
1601 North Kent Street, Suite 1001
Arlington, VA 22209
Ph: (703) 522-6778
Fax: (703) 522-0548
Email: pfimail@pelletheat.org

K. Education

A Farmer's Guide to Hosting Farm Visits for Children
By Market Cooking for Kids, A project of the Center for Urban Education about Sustainable Agriculture
Available at http://www.sarep.ucdavis.edu/Grants/Reports/Kraus/97-36FarmersGuide.htm

Old McDonald Farms
This is a farm that hosts a variety of educational and entertaining activities.
Website: http://1000islands.com/mcfarm/oldmac.htm

Willing Workers on Organic Farms (New Zealand)
This is a program in New Zealand that allows tourists or interested farmers to stay on their farm and learn organic farming methods by helping their hosts with the various projects they may be working on.
Website: http://www.wwoof.co.nz/
PO Box 1172
Nelson
New Zealand
Ph: 0064 3 544 9890
Email: support@wwoof.co.nz

The Pizza Farm
The goal of this operation is to take less than one acre of land and turn it into an education tool. It tells where food comes from and what it takes to produce it.
Website: www.pizzafarm.org
Ph: (800) 557-1222
Email: pizzafarmer@psnw.com

USDA Ag in the Classroom (AITC)
AITIC is a program coordinated by the USDA that helps students gain awareness of the role of agriculture in both the economy and society. Ag in the Classroom programs are carried out in each state according to state needs and interest. Their website provides information on the various state programs, teacher resources, and an informational website specifically designed for kids.
Website: http://www.agclassroom.org/
United States Department of Agriculture
1400 Independence Avenue S.W.
Agriculture in the Classroom
Stop 2251
Washington, D.C. 20250-2251.
Ph: (202) 720-7925
E-mail: kcullinan@intranet.reeusda.gov

Food Guide Pyramid for Young Children: A Daily Guide for 2-to-6 Year Olds
USDA, Food and Nutrition Service

www.fns.usda.gov

The Food System: Building Youth Awareness through Involvement and Edible Connections: A Planning Guide for Conducting a Food Communications Forum.
This publication is a 142-page guidebook that introduces educators and youth to the concept of the food system. Edible Connections is a publication and a video.
To order, go to: http://pubs.cas.psu.edu/Pubs/agrs79.html

The Most Populous Realm
Life about soil organisms
Available in Resource Manual

You Learn What You Eat: Cognition Meets Nutrition in Berkeley Schools
By David Sobel
Orion Magazine
Available at: http://www.orononline.org/pages/oa/01-3oa/01-3oa_learn.html

Edible Schoolyard
Edible Schoolyard is a nonprofit organization that works with Martin Luther King Jr. middle school in Berkley, CA. Children who attend the middle school, plans and plants the edible gardens. Use this as another business idea.
Website: http://www.edibleschoolyard.org/

USDA Farmers Market Coloring Book
You can order a free copy at:
http://www.ams.usda.gov/directmarketing/coloringbook.htm
Orders for hardcopies of this publication are no longer available. Anyone may download and personalize the coloring book for their farmers' market, educator activity, direct market businesss, or agricultural association.
www.ams.usda.gov/directmarketing

New York Ag in the Classroom Program
Cornell University
Website: http://www.cals.cornell.edu/dept/education/programs/AITC/index.htm
Ph: (607) 255-9253
Email def4@cornell.edu

Massachusetts Ag in the Classroom Program Website
http://www.aginclassroom.org/

Kentucky Agriculture and Environment in the Classroom, Inc.
http://www.kyagr.com/enviro_out/education/programs/KAEC/index.htm

Wyoming Agriculture in the Classroom
Website: www.wyoagcenter.com/waic/classroom.html
2219 Carey Ave.

Cheyenne, WY 82002
Ph: 307-7776618
Fax: 307-7776593
Email: wyaic@state.wy.us

Maryland Agriculture Education Foundation (MAEF)
MAEF, Inc. is a nonprofit organization that, through various education programs, promotes and enhances understanding and appreciation of the importance of agricultural in our daily lives.
Website: http://www.mdagintheclassroom.com/
12985 Frederick Road, P.O. Box 409
West Friendship, MD 21794
Ph: (800) 205-9737 or (410) 489-9030
Email: admin@mdagintheclassroom.com

The Most Populous Soil
By Ellen Alperstein
This article is a brief, light-hearted look at the science of soil. It mentions the Field Museum's $10 million exhibit called Underground Adventure. The exhibit is available online at: http://www.fieldmuseum.org/ua/default.htm

Dole's 5 a Day Adventure
This is Dole's effort to encourage good nutrition. Their website contains free educational support materials. They will provide a free CD Rom to educators.
Website: http://www.dole5aday.com/

Electronic Farm Website
This website contains an agricultural directory of small farms across the United States.
http://www.co.ha.md.us/economic_development/agriculture/maef.htm

Coalition for Education in the Outdoors
The coalition is a nonprofit network of outdoor and environmental education or related centers, educational institutions, fish and wildlife agencies and businesses who work together to support outdoor education. Their publication, the Taproot Journal features environment and outdoor news and reviews and a list of resources.
Website: http://www.outdooredcoalition.org/
State University of New York at Cortland
P.O. Box 2000, Park Center, Cortland NY 13045
Ph: (607) 753-4971
Email: info@outdooredcoalition.org

GreenWorks
GreenWorks, part of the Environmental Fund for Pennsylvania, is an organization that provides information on and grants for environmental conservation and awareness. Their website contains a search feature, an electronic newsletter, information on their grants

and programs, the largest collection of environmental videos available online, and an educational page for kids.
Website: http://www.greenworks.tv
Ph: 1-800-334-3190 or (215) 545-5880
Email: talktous@greenworks.tv

New York Harvest for New York Kids Week
This week, designated each year by the NY state assembly, is designed to encourage children, their schools and their families to purchase, consume and learn about local foods and agriculture.
NYS Assembly Task Force on Food
Farm and Nutrition Policy
Room 547 Capitol
Albany, NY 12248
Ph: (518) 455 5203
Email: sternr@assembly.state.ny.us

Books helpful for teaching children
Roots, Shoots, Buckets and Boots: Gardening Together with Children
By Sharon Lovejoy

Trowel and Error: Over 700 Tips, Remedies and Shortcuts for the Gardner
By Sharon Lovejoy

Hollyhock Days: Garden Adventures for the Young at Heart
By Sharon Lovejoy

A. GENERAL

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #1: IMPROVE SOIL QUALITY

Build soil fertility, tilth and biological activity — using cover crops, minimum tillage, compost and other organic amendments — to yield profits and long-term value in the land.

MANAGING COVER CROPS PROFITABLY

This 212-page book from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN) explores how and why cover crops work and provides all the information needed to build cover crops into any farming operation. This is the most comprehensive book ever published on the use of cover crops to sustain cropping systems and build soil.

How to order: $19 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

BUILDING SOILS FOR BETTER CROPS, 2ND EDITION

This practical guide to building and maintaining soil organic matter from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN) was written for farmers, extension specialists and others interested in integrated, alternative approaches to controlling pests and enhancing soil quality.

How to order: $19.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

THE REAL DIRT: FARMERS TELL ABOUT ORGANIC AND LOW-INPUT PRACTICES IN THE NORTHEAST

This 264-page book from the Sustainable Agriculture Network and the Northeast Organic and Sustainable Farmers Network offers a snapshot of organic and sustainable farming techniques in the Northeast in the 1990s, based on interviews with more than 60 farmers in eight states. Summarizes practical methods for ecological soil, pest, disease, crop, greenhouse and livestock management.

How to order: $13.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082

THE SOUL OF SOIL: A GUIDE TO ECOLOGICAL SOIL MANAGEMENT

This handbook by Grace Gershuny and Joseph Smillie offers the serious home or market gardener practical concepts that facilitate sound soil management decisions based on ecological principles.

How to order: $16.95 to Chelsea Green Publishing Co., 205 Gates-Briggs Bldg., PO Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001; 800-639 4099; http://www.chelseagreen.com

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

☞

SUSTAINABLE SOIL MANAGEMENT

This ATTRA publication contains information on soil composition; soil health assessment; organic matter and humus management; soil testing for chemical properties and plant nutrients; use of fertilizer; and tillage.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

USDA NATURAL RESOURCES CONSERVATION SERVICE/SOIL QUALITY INSTITUTE AGRONOMY TECHNICAL NOTES SERIES

Includes information on cover crops, crop rotation effects on soil quality and effects of residue managment & no-till on soil quality, and legumes and soil quality.

How to order: Free from NRCS Soil Quality Institute, 2150 Pammel Drive, Ames, IA 50011; (515) 294-4592. http://www.statlab.iastate.edu/survey/SQI/agronomy.shtml

CREATIVE COVER CROPPING IN PERENNIAL/ANNUAL FARMING SYSTEMS

For information on cover cropping to protect and improve soil fertility, enhance pest control and provide other benefits in orchards and vineyards, request the colorful and informative "perennial farming systems" video from California's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program (SAREP). To learn about the special challenges of cover cropping in row and field crop systems, check out SAREP's "annual farming systems" video.

How to order: $15 each to Univ. of California, DANR Communication Services, 6701 San Pablo Ave., Oakland, CA 94608-1239; 1-800-994-8849; 510-643-547 (fax)

FARM-SCALE COMPOSTING

This booklet from ATTRA offers information on the basics of composting—process, materials, methods and equipment—to help recycle nutrients back to the soil.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

NO-TILL VEGETABLES: A SUSTAINABLE WAY TO INCREASE PROFITS, SAVE SOIL AND REDUCE PESTICIDES

This video by 15-year no-till veteran Steve Groff covers the basics of sustainable no-till vegetable production, detailing methods to control weeds and improve soil using cover crops or plant residue on his 175-acre Cedar Meadow Farm.

How to order: $21.95 + $3 s/h to Cedar Meadow Farm, 679 Hilldale Rd., Holtwood, PA 17532; (717) 284-5152

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program/ Sustainable Agriculture Network.
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE.
http://www.sare.org

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
Bulletins, production guides and technical notes are among the information products offered by this national sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

UC Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program (SAREP).
Educational resources on various soil quality topics.
http://www.sarep.ucdavis.edu/soil

Alternative Farming Systems Information Ctr's Alternative Soil, Crop, and Pasture Management
Bibliographies on composting, manure management, earthworms, green manures/ cover crops and soil testing.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjscpm.htm

Sustainable Farming Connection
Offers a forum for farmers to find and share information, including a diverse collection of resources and links on improving soil health.
http://metalab.unc.edu/farming-connection/soilhlth/home.htm

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #3: PREVENT PEST PROBLEMS

Farms & ranches designed to minimize pest pressures — through variety selection, rotations, cover crops and farmscaping — are less dependent on costly inputs.

BUILDING SOILS FOR BETTER CROPS, 2ND EDITION

This practical guide to building and maintaining soil organic matter from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN) was written for farmers, extension specialists and others interested in integrated, alternative approaches to controlling pests and enhancing soil quality.

How to order: $19.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

FARMSCAPING

This technical guide offers information on designing a cropping system that increases plant diversity, disrupts pest life cycles and confuses insect pests,. Describes use of hedgerows, insectary plants, cover crops and water reservoirs to attract and support populations of beneficial organisms such as insects, bats and birds of prey.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

INTEGRATED PEST MANAGEMENT

Meant to provide a basic understanding of Integrated Pest Management (IPM) for individuals interested in agriculture at all levels, this publication includes the steps that need to be taken prior to IPM implementation, the tools used and some ideas about future trends for IPM.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

SUSTAINABLE PRACTICES FOR VEGETABLE PRODUCTION IN THE SOUTH

This 174-page book has been called the bible for southern vegetable producers looking for alternative growing methods. Features information on integrated pest management, cover crops, soil management, conservation tillage and specific tips to raise common southern crops.

How to order: $28.95 + $4.50 s/h to Focus, c/o PBS, Box 390, Jaffrey, NH, 03452, 800-848-7236. http://www.cals.ncsu.edu/sustainable/peet/

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

THE REAL DIRT

Provides information on organic and sustainable farming in the Northeast, based on interviews with more than 60 farmers in eight states. Summarizes practical methods for ecological soil, pest, disease, crop, greenhouse and livestock management.

How to order: $13.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082

MANAGING COVER CROPS PROFITABLY

This 212-page book from the Sustainable Agriculture Network explores how and why cover crops work and provides all the information needed to build cover crops into any farming operation. This is the most comprehensive book ever published on the use of cover crops to sustain cropping systems, break up pest cycles and build soil.

How to order: $19 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082; http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

BENEFICIAL INSECTS IN FIELD CROPS: INTEGRATED PEST MANAGEMENT

This eye-catching fact sheet features photos and descriptions of beneficial insects in crop fields.

How to order: $1.50 + $3.50 s/h from Midwest Plan Service, 122 Davidson Hall, ISU, Ames IA 50011-3080. (515) 294-4337. Specify ISU Extension pub IPM-34. http://www.exnet.iastate.edu/Pages/pubs/

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE..
http://www.sare.org

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)'s pest management series
http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/pest.html

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center's Alternative Disease, Pest, and Weed Control
Includes bibliographies on crops with pest resistance, biological pest controls and legumes in crop rotations.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjdpwc.htm

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #4: EXPLORE ORGANIC PRODUCTION

Protect natural resources and take advantage of a growing organic market that offers price premiums for those willing to try a new system.

ORGANIC CERTIFICATION

This ATTRA publication includes information on organic farming and certification, who should apply, legal requirements, choosing a program and references.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

RESOURCES FOR ORGANIC MARKETING: A MARKETING & BUSINESS GUIDE

Organic growers often find that the hardest part of successful farming is securing buyers for their products. This ATTRA technical note provides some starting points.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

SUCCESSFUL SMALL-SCALE FARMING: AN ORGANIC APPROACH

This 144-page book by Karl Schwenke offers information on soil, crop rotations, small-scale equipment and improving yields. With the information here and a little current market research, you can write a complete farm business plan.

How to order: $14.95 + $3 s/h to Storey Communications; 800-441-5700

THE NATIONAL ORGANIC DIRECTORY

This "yellow pages" of the organic industry by the Community Alliance with Family Farmers lists more than 1,000 farmers, wholesalers, farm suppliers, support businesses, and certification/resource groups, and provides details about state and federal laws.

How to order: $47.95 + $3 s/h to CAFF, 1-800-852-3832, http://www.caff.org/caff/publications/nod_1997

ORGANIC FARMING RESEARCH FOUNDATION INFORMATION BULLETIN

This quarterly bulletin by the Organic Farming Research Foundation fosters improvement and widespread adoption of organic farming practices. Features results of OFRF-funded research and education projects.

How to order: Free from OFRF, PO Box 440, Santa Cruz, CA, 95061; (408) 426-6606; http://www.ofrf.org

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

THE ORGANIC PAGES: 1998 N. AMERICAN RESOURCE DIRECTORY

This annual directory covers the entire organic industry, listing growers, manufacturers, brokers, importers/exporters and their contact information. Includes sections on suppliers, consultants, certifiers and web sites.

How to order: $44.95 + $6 s/h to Organic Trade Association, P.O. Box 1078, Greenfield, MA 01302; (413) 774-751; (413) 774-6432; http://www.ota.com

THE REAL DIRT

Provides information on organic and sustainable farming in the Northeast, based on interviews with more than 60 farmers in eight states. Summarizes practical methods for ecological soil, pest, disease, crop, greenhouse and livestock management.

How to order: $13.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082

FARM SUPPLY CATALOGS

The following examples of commonly used suppliers should not imply that USDA endorses specific commercial products. Catalogs, however, can be a great source of information about organic production practices. We suggest you check with local companies first when buying supplies.

Peaceful Valley Farm Supply. 200 seed varieties, 60 fertilizers, soil test options, kelps and foliar feeds, soil, compost and seed inoculants, pest controls, row covers and season extenders, propagating supplies and more. P.O. Box 2209, 125 Springhill Blvd., Grass Valley, CA 95945; (530) 272-4769

Harmony Farm Supply. This organic farm supplier specializes in drip- and sprinkler-irrigation design and sales, organic fertilizers, ecological pest controls, books, horticultural supplies and wildflower and cover crop seeds. 3244 Highway 116 North, PO Box 460, Groton, CA 95444; (707) 823-9125.

Fedco. This catalog divides information into: seeds, moose tubers and organic growers supply, trees and bulbs, and sends out three catalogs annually. Each is packed with information about varieties and planting methods, with indexes to lead you to the information you seek. Fedco Seeds, P.O. Box 520, Waterville, ME 04903-0520; (207) 873-7333.

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

Organic Farming Research Foundation
Showcases research related to organic farming practices, disseminates research results to organic growers and farmers interested in adopting organic production systems.
http://www.ofrf.org

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE.
http://www.sare.org

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
Includes directories, guides and electronic sources on certification, soil and crop management, pest management, economics and marketing, and associations and organizations.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjorgfd.htm

Organic Farmers Marketing Association
Includes informational bulletins, a calendar of events, information on certification and public policy updates.
http://web.iquest.net/ofma/

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
Bulletins, production guides and technical notes are among the information products offered by this national sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

TIP #5: CUT LIVESTOCK COSTS

Switch to management-intensive grazing and other cost-reduction strategies — along with innovative marketing — to restore profits in beef, dairy, poultry and hogs.

THE SMALL DAIRY RESOURCE BOOK: INFORMATION SOURCES FOR FARMSTEAD PRODUCERS AND PROCESSORS

This annotated bibliography of books, periodicals, videos and other resources on farmstead dairy processing offers a wealth of information for family farmers interested in adding value to dairy products.

How to order: $8 + $3.95 s/h from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN), Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ of VT, Burlington, VT 05405-0082; http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

PROFITABLE DAIRY OPTIONS

This free, eight-page publication presents practical information about grazing, marketing strategies and nutrient management, highlighting techniques successful graziers use in intensively managed rotational grazing systems.

How to order: Free from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN), Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ of VT, Burlington, VT 05405-0082; http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

GREENER PASTURES ON YOUR SIDE OF THE FENCE: BETTER FARMING WITH VOISIN GRAZING MANAGEMENT

This 385-page book explains how to use management-intensive grazing for most kinds of livestock. Author Bill Murphy covers producing milk, beef, and lamb on pasture alone, nutrient cycling, grounding energizers, recovery periods and economics.

How to order: $30 + $2.50 s/h to Arriba Publishing, 212 Middle Road, Colchester, VT 05446

SALAD BAR BEEF

This 368-page how-to guide by Joel Salatin leaves nothing to your imagination, from choosing breeds, building fences and setting up a rotation to marketing. Explains how a cattle-poultry rotation breaks up parasite cycles and helps produce superior beef.

How to order: $30 from ACRES U.S.A. 1-800-355-5313

STRATEGIES OF RESOURCEFUL DAIRY FARMERS

This collection of farmer interviews and research results explores grass-based dairying, manure management, low-cost facilities, fly control alternatives and renewable energy.

How to order: $10 to Ctr for Rural Affairs, PO Box 406, Walthill, NE 68067; (402) 846-5428

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to learn how to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

PASTURE PROFITS WITH STOCKER CATTLE

This 224-page book by Allan Nation features information about animal health; cash flow versus inventory valuation; running cows and stockers together; how to determine the correct stocking rate; and finishing cattle on pasture.

How to order: $24.95 + $4.70 s/h to Green Park Press, 800-748-9808

PASTURED POULTRY PROFITS

This how-to, hands-on 330-page manual by pasturing expert Joel Salatin tells you how to raise poultry on pasture, from constructing a pen to relationship marketing.

How to order: $30 from ACRES U.S.A.; 1-800-355-5313

FREE-RANGE POULTRY PRODUCTION & MARKETING

This folksy, 120-page three-ring binder offers a guide to raising, processing and marketing chicken, turkey and eggs by producer Herman Beck-Chenoweth. Includes field production, range considerations, processing facilities and slaughter procedures.

How to order: $39.50 + $4.50 s/h from Back Forty Books, 26328 Locust Grove Road, Creola, OH 45622; (740) 596-4379

HOOPED STRUCTURES FOR GROW-FINISH SWINE & SWINE SYSTEM OPTIONS FOR IOWA

Learn more about outdoor alternatives for raising swine, including details on hog feeding, animal health, housing, bedding and marketing.

How to order: $4 + $3.50 s/h from Midwest Plan Service, 122 Davidson Hall, ISU, Ames IA 50011-3080.;(515) 294-4337. Specify ISU Extension pub AED-41

ATTRA LIVESTOCK SERIES

These ATTRA publications offer information about a variety of low-cost alternative livestock systems: Sustainable Chicken Production, Sustainable Beef Production, Grass-Based & Seasonal Dairying, Sustainable Pasture Management, Hooped Shelters for Finishing Hogs, Sustainable Sheep Production, and Meeting the Nutritional Needs of Ruminants on Pasture.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

American Farmland Trust Grass Farming web site
A comprehensive information site on grass-based farming systems, including grazing tools & grazing economics.
http://www.grassfarmer.com/

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE.
http://www.sare.org

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA).
Bulletins, production guides and technical notes are among the information products offered by this national sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

Animal Welfare Information Center
Includes bibliographies of housing, husbandry and welfare for all farm animals.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/awic/farmanimals/farm.htm

Sustainable Farming Connection
Offers a forum for farmers to find and share information, including a diverse collection of resources and links pertaining to livestock, grazing and pastured poultry.
http://metalab.unc.edu/farming-connection/livestoc/home.htm

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #6: MANAGE WEEDS WISELY

Reduce reliance on herbicides by perfecting use of implements, crop rotations and cover crops

STEEL IN THE FIELD: A FARMER'S GUIDE TO WEED MANAGEMENT TOOLS

Weed control demands time, labor and expense for every farmer. This 128-page book shows how today's implements and techniques can control weeds while reducing or eliminating herbicides.

How to order: $18 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082

PRINCIPLES OF SUSTAINABLE WEED MANAGEMENT

This free publication includes information on how to control weeds without excessive use of agri-chemicals.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

VEGETABLE FARMERS AND THEIR WEED CONTROL MACHINES

A 75-minute video demonstrating the diversity of tools — from sweeps and rotary hoes to flame weeders and homemade tools — available to vegetable farmers. Features nine farmers from three New England states.

How to order: $12 to the University of Vermont Center for Sustainable Agriculture, 590 Main St., Burlington, VT 05405-0059.

SUSTAINABLE PRACTICES FOR VEGETABLE PRODUCTION IN THE SOUTH

This 174-page book has been called the bible for southern vegetable producers looking for alternative growing methods. Features information on weed control, cover crops, soil management, conservation tillage and tips to raise common southern crops.

How to order: $28.95 + $4.50 s/h to Focus, c/o PBS, Box 390, Jaffrey, NH, 03452, 800-848-7236; http://www.cals.ncsu.edu/sustainable/peet/

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

MANAGING COVER CROPS PROFITABLY

This 212-page book from the Sustainable Agriculture Network explores how and why cover crops work and provides all the information needed to build cover crops into any farming operation. This is the most comprehensive book ever published on the use of cover crops to sustain cropping systems, manage weeds and build soil.

How to order: $19 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082

BUILDING SOILS FOR BETTER CROPS, 2ND EDITION

This practical guide to building and maintaining soil organic matter from the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN) was written for farmers, extension specialists and others interested in integrated, alternative approaches to controlling pests and enhancing soil quality.

How to order: $19.95 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

CROP-WEED INTERACTIONS: INTEGRATED PEST MANAGEMENT

This eight-page Extension bulletin from Iowa State University explores ways to manage weeds from a whole-farm perspective.

How to order: Fifty cents + $3.50 s/h from Midwest Plan Service, 122 Davidson Hall, ISU, Ames IA 50011-3080. (515) 294-4337. Specify ISU Extension pub IPM-35

NO-TILL VEGETABLES: A SUSTAINABLE WAY TO INCREASE PROFITS, SAVE SOIL AND REDUCE PESTICIDES

This video by 15-year no-till veteran Steve Groff covers the basics of sustainable no-till vegetable production, detailing methods — such as selecting the proper cover crop mix or plant residue — to control weeds and maintain production on his 175-acre Cedar Meadow Farm.

How to order: $21.95 + $3 s/h to Cedar Meadow Farm, 679 Hilldale Rd., Holtwood, PA 17532; (717) 284-5152

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE.
http://www.sare.org

Sustainable Practices for Vegetable Production in the South.
View this informative book on the web.
http://www.cals.ncsu.edu/sustainable/peet/index.html

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)'s pest mgmt series
http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/pest.html

Iowa State University Extension Publications
http:/www.exnet.iastate.edu/Pages/pubs/

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
Includes bibliographies on crops with pest resistance, biolgocial pest controls and legumes in crop rotations.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjdpwc.htm

Cedar Meadow Farm's New Generation Cropping System
Details ways to incorporate cover crops to control weeds.
http://www.cedarmeadowfarm.com

Sustainable Farming Connection
Includes a diverse collection of weed control links and resources.
http://metalab.unc.edu/farming-connection

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #7: PLAN FOR PROFIT

Set goals and monitor changes — on the land, in the balance sheet and in your family & community — to achieve success on *your* terms.

MONITORING SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE WITH CONVENTIONAL FINANCIAL DATA

This report from the Land Stewardship Project can help farmers and ranchers evaluate their sustainability using farm records and tax reports. Transfer your data to worksheets and draw your own conclusions.

How to order: $7 to Land Stewardship Project, 2200 4th St., White Bear Lake, MN 55110, (612) 653-0618

THE MONITORING TOOLBOX

This 115-page practical guide for farmers interested in monitoring the impact of management decisions on their land, finances and family describes how to monitor quality of life and farm sustainability with financial data, wildlife, soils and streams.

How to order: $35 + $7 s/h to Land Stewardship Project, P.O. Box 130, Lewiston, MN 55952, (507) 523-3366. (includes Close to the Ground video and newsletter)

HOW TO ESTABLISH GOALS: A GROUP PROJECT FOR FARMERS AND THEIR FAMILIES

Setting goals is the place to start planning for the future of your farm. This 14-page instructional booklet makes establishing goals easy. Includes a tear-out self-assessment worksheet and a reference list.

How to order: $3 to The Minnesota Project, 1885 University Avenue West, Suite 315, St. Paul, MN 55104; (651) 645-6159; http://www.misa.umn.edu/~mnproj/wfp

SUCCESSFUL WHOLE FARM PLANNING

Whole farm planning as a tool to make decisions about environmental, economic and production concerns continues to gain momentum. This guide from The Minnesota Project includes information about what should be part of the planning process, contents of a whole farm plan and how to measure whole-farm planning successes.

How to order: Available on The Minnesota Project web site, http://www.misa.umn.edu/~mnproj/wfp or call (651) 645-6159 for a free copy.

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

[OLISTIC MANAGEMENT: A NEW FRAMEWORK FOR DECISION-IAKING

his 567-page book by Allan Savory introduces people to the concept of holistic ıanagement, from a summation of the decision-making process, to setting holistic ɔals, to testing decisions toward those goals, to monitoring.

low to Order: $30 +$3 s/h to Center for Holistic Management, 1010 Tijeras NW, lbuquerque, NM 87102; (505) 842-5252; http://www.holisticmanagement.org/ (Excerpts available a 24-page special "Intro" issue for $7.)

'ARMING ALTERNATIVES: A GUIDE TO EVALUATING THE 'EASIBILITY OF NEW FARM-BASED ENTERPRISES

'his award-winning workbook from Cornell University's Farming Alternatives 'rogram will help you plan and evaluate a new enterprise. Includes chapters on setting oals, assessing markets and determining production and financial feasibility.

low to Order: $8 +$3 s/h to "Cornell University," Farming Alternatives Program, 17 Warren lall, Cornell U., Ithaca, NY 14853; (607) 255-9832; http://www.cals.cornell.edu/dept/ruralsoc/fap/ ıp.html

ʌAKING THE TRANSITION TO SUSTAINABLE FARMING

ʌ key element of success in more sustainable farming is your ability to monitor both ›rogress toward the goal and the overall health of the system. This farmer-oriented eport from ATTRA's Fundamentals of Sustainable Agriculture Series will help.

low to order: Free from ATTRA, 800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org/attra-pub/trans.html

WHOLE-FARM PLANNING FACT SHEET SERIES

:volving from a SARE-funded project helping farm families develop whole-farm plans o balance production and quality of life goals with sustained resource use, this series ›f fact sheets outlines various whole-farm planning tools and concepts and gives ideas 'or applying the concepts to farm businesses.

low to order: Free from the Sustainable Agriculture Team, OSU Extension, Courthouse-119 'ublic Square, Carrollton, OH 44615-1498; (330) 627-4310

FARMING SYSTEMS CRITERIA: TEN PRINCIPLES OF SUSTAINABILITY

This two-page brochure offers a way to conduct a holistic evaluation of your farming ;ystem.

How to order: Free from The Kerr Center for Sustainable Agriculture, P.O. Box 588, Poteau, OK 74953; (918) 647-9123

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

The Minnesota Project
Working with rural people learning new ways to experience and celebrate community with each other and with the earth.
http://www.misa.umn.edu/mnproj.html

The Vermont Dairy Profitability Project: An Analysis of Viable Grass-Based Options for Vermont Farmers
Examines several grass-based management scenarios that could be used by a dairy farm to improve profitability with little or no additional investment.
http://farm.fic.niu.edu/cae/caepubs/dairy/vt.dairy.html

The Center for Holistic Management
The Center serves as the "hub" of information, gleaning and synthesizing real-life lessons learned world wide in the practice of Holistic Management. Publishes newsletter, books and financial planning software.
http://www.holisticmanagement.org/

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA).
Bulletins, production guides and technical notes are among the information products offered by this national sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

JSDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #8: NETWORK

Learning from other producers or tapping the experts pays off with new strategies to improve farming practices, enhance quality of life and strengthen the bottom line.

SOURCE BOOK OF SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE

This comprehensive resource lists free and low-cost books, newsletters, conference proceedings, bulletins, videos, reports and web sites about sustainable agriculture—and how to order them. Includes lists of university centers studying sustainable agriculture and relevant web sites.

How to order: $12 +$3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE DIRECTORY OF EXPERTISE

The third edition of this popular list of experts is somewhat dated, but still contains valuable information connecting readers with groups and individuals who are changing the way America farms. Soon to be updated on the web at http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

How to order: $12 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Building, Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082.

EDUCATIONAL AND TRAINING OPPORTUNITIES IN SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE, 11TH EDITION

The institutions, organizations and farms listed in this directory were selected based on their involvement in organic, alternative or sustainable agriculture and a willingness to provide education and training or share information. Includes university courses, intern opportunities, sustainable agriculture centers and farmer organizations.

How to order: Free from Alternative Farming Systems Information Center, (AFSIC), National Agricultural Library, Rm 304, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Beltsville, MD 20705-2351; (301) 504-6559; www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/AFSIC_pubs/edtr11.htm

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATIONS AND PUBLICATIONS

ncludes comprehensive list of farmer groups and organizations working in sustain-ıble agriculture. Features key resources and publications available from each group.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, P.O. Box 3657, Fayetteville, AR 72702; 800-346-9140; vww.attra.org/attra-rl/susagorg.html

SANET-MG INTERNET MAILING LIST

This on-line discussion group moderated by the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN) includes farmers, researchers, activists, policymakers and others who share ıews, events listings, production tips and electronic publications.

Address to subscribe/unsubscribe: majordomo@ces.ncsu.edu
Message body to subscribe: subscribe SANET-MG Your Name
Message body to unsubscribe: unsubscribe SANET-MG
E-mail to group: SANET-MG@ces.ncsu.edu

NEW CROPS INTERNET MAILING LIST

This on-line discussion group centers on alternative crop production.

Address to subscribe/unsubscribe: listserv@vm.cc.purdue.edu
Message body to subscribe: subscribe NEWCROPS your name
Message body to unsubscribe: unsubscribe NEWCROPS
E-mail to group: newcrops@vm.cc.purdue.edu

GRAZING INTERNET MAILING LIST

This on-line discussion group is for people interested in management-intensive rotational grazing, seasonal dairying and closely related topics. http://grazel.taranaki.ac.nz/grazel/join.html

Address to subscribe/unsubscribe: majordomo@taranaki.ac.nz
Message body to subscribe: subscribe GRAZE-L
Message body to unsubscribe: unsubscribe GRAZE-L
E-mail to group: graze-l@taranaki.ac.nz

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program/ Sustainable Agriculture Network
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE
http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
Includes bibliography on sustainable agriculture institutions, organizations and farm training opportunities.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/AFSIC_pubs/edtr11.htm

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
Resource list of sustainable agriculture organizations and publications
http://www.attra.org/attra-rl/susagorg.html

Sustainable Farming Connection
Includes a list of contacts to help you find information "just down the road." Listings by state.
http://metalab.unc.edu/farming-connection/localcon/home.htm

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #9: DIVERSIFY CROPS

Improve profit & protect natural resources by adding new crops and retaining natural features on the landscape

DIVERSIFY CROPS TO BOOST PROFITS AND STEWARDSHIP

As farmers and ranchers contend with low commodity prices, it's an apt time to consider diversifying. This 12-page, color publication encompasses alternative cash crops, cover crops and agroforestry — and how producers have used these strategies to increase profits. Featured producers also explain how they've improved their stewardship of natural resources by introducing rotations to help fix nitrogen, reduce pest pressures and slow erosion. A detailed list of expert sources round out the publication.

How to order: Free from the Sustainable Agriculture Network, c/o AFSIC, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Beltsville, MD 20705-2351; (301) 504-6422. http://www.sare.org/san/diversify/

MANAGING COVER CROPS PROFITABLY

This 212-page book explores how and why cover crops work and provides all the information needed to build cover crops into any farming operation. This is the most comprehensive book ever published on the use of cover crops to sustain cropping systems and build soil.

How to order: $19 + $3.95 s/h to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Box 10, Hills Bldg., Room 12, Univ. of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082. http://www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

ALTERNATIVE FIELD CROPS

Considerations before diversifying, marketing alternative crops and source of additional information from ATTRA.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 1-800-346-9140. http://www.attra.org

NEW CROP COMPENDIUM CD ROM

This CD contains full text proceedings of three national new crops conferences.

How to order: $75 to the Center for New Crops and Plant Products, Purdue University, 1165 Horticulture Building, West Lafayette, IN 47907-1165; (765) 494-1325

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to learn how to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

☞

ALTERNATIVE FIELD CROPS MANUAL

This detailed guide provides information on production methods and management strategies for more than 50 alternative crops in an easy-to-reference three-ring binder.

How to order: $45 to the Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products, University of Minnesota, 352 Alderman Hall, St. Paul, MN 55108; (612) 624-4217

THE FLOWER FARMER: AN ORGANIC GROWER'S GUIDE TO RAISING AND SELLING CUT FLOWERS

This 207-page book by Lynn Byczynski presents information on growing, harvesting and marketing both fresh and dried flowers. Includes detailed description of 95 recommended varieties and an appendix with sources for seeds and supplies.

How to order: $25.95 to Chelsea Green, Publishing, 205 Gates-Briggs Bldg., PO Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001; 800 639-4099; http://www.chelseagreen.com

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

Center for New Crops and Plant Products, Purdue University
http://www.hort.purdue.edu/newcrop/
To subscribe to the Purdue New Crops Listserve, visit
http://www.hort.purdue.edu/newcrop/ListServ/listserv.html

Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products
http://capap.coafes.umn.edu

Missouri Alternatives Center
http://agebb.missouri.edu/mac/

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE..
http://www.sare.org

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
Comprehensive bibliographies on alternative farming systems.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA).
Bulletins, production guides and technical notes are among the information products offered by this national sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

USDA

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Part of USDA's efforts to help small-scale farmers and ranchers.

Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community

TIP #10: USE TREES

Integrate agroforestry practices to increase profits and protect your land.

AGROFORESTRY FOR FARMS AND RANCHES: AN INTRODUCTION TO USING TREE AND SHRUB PRACTICES IN SUSTAINED AGRICULTURAL SYSTEMS

Agroforestry is the intentional growing of trees and shrubs in combination with crops or forage. Properly designed agroforestry systems protect crops and forage, increase their production, protect soil and water resources, conserve energy, improve ecosystem "richness," create additional wildlife habitat and increase landscape diversity. They also provide additional farm or ranch products, such as: timber, pulpwood, firewood, posts, fruit, nuts and fodder. This technical note from the National Agroforestry Center provides an introduction to using tree and shrub practices in sustained agricultural systems.

How to order: Free from the National Agroforestry Center, East Campus-UNL, Lincoln, NE 68583-0822; http://www.unl.edu/nac/pubs.htm

AGROFORESTRY TECHNICAL NOTE SERIES

Five main practices make up agroforestry. Several technical notes describing their application are available from the National Agroforestry Center, including:

- Alley Cropping: Growing annual crops between rows of trees;
- Riparian Forest Buffers: Protecting waters for nutrients, pesticides and sediments;
- Forest Farming: Producing specialty products like ginseng or shiitake mushrooms;
- Windbreaks: Providing conservation plus protecting crops, livestock and communities;
- Silvopasture Systems: Integrating timber production with livestock grazing; and
- Special Applications: Growing hybrid poplars; better managing wastewater and wildlife

How to order: Free from the National Agroforestry Center, East Campus-UNL, Lincoln, NE 68583-0822; http://www.unl.edu/nac/pubs.htm

The tools listed here can help you apply this tip to improve your farm or ranch. See the "How to order" section under each reference to obtain your free or low-cost copy. This partial list was compiled by USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program in March 1999. Other resources not listed may also be suitable. See the "Education" link at http://www.sare.org for a complete set of tip sheets.

AGROFORESTRY WORKING TREES SERIES

Trees can perform many jobs for communities, farms and ranches. They can increase farm or ranch income as well as promote conservation of land, water and wildlife. Brochures illustrating a variety of uses for trees in those settings include: Working Trees for Agriculture, Working Trees for Communities, Working Trees for Wildlife, and Working Trees for Livestock.

How to order: Free from the National Agroforestry Center, East Campus-UNL, Lincoln, NE 68583-0822; http://www.unl.edu/nac/pubs.htm

ATTRA'S NUT CROP SERIES

Learn how to raise black walnuts and pecans using these free resources from ATTRA.

How to order: Free from ATTRA, 1-800-346-9140; http://www.attra.org

SHELTER AND SHADE: CREATING A HEALTHY AND PROFITABLE ENVIRONMENT FOR YOUR LIVESTOCK AND TREES

This 160-page book by John and Bunny Mortimer details how to use trees and landscape features as shelter belts, fodder and beneficial habitats for livestock.

How to order: $20 + $4.70 s/h to Stockman Grass Farmer, PO Box 2300, Ridgeland, MS 39158, (800) 748-9808

DIVERSIFY CROPS TO BOOST PROFITS AND STEWARDSHIP

As farmers and ranchers contend with low commodity prices, it's an apt time to consider diversifying. This 12-page, color publication encompasses alternative cash crops, cover crops and agroforestry — and how producers have used these strategies to increase profits. Featured producers also explain how they've improved their stewardship of natural resources by introducing rotations to help fix nitrogen, reduce pest pressures and slow erosion. A detailed list of expert sources round out the publication.

How to order: Free from the Sustainable Agriculture Network, c/o AFSIC, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Beltsville, MD 20705-2351; (301) 504-6422. http://www.sare.org/san/diversify/

Administered by USDA-CSREES, SARE has funded more than 1,400 projects looking at ways to farm more sustainably. To learn more about project findings by category, search SARE's national database on the web at www.sare.org/san/htdocs/research/ or contact Kim Kroll at (301) 405-5717. To obtain print versions of SARE research by region, contact a SARE regional office and request a copy of their most recent annual report or project list.
North Central SARE, (402) 472-0266; ncrsare@unl.edu
Northeast SARE, (802) 656-0471; nesare@zoo.uvm.edu
Southern SARE, (770) 412-4787; kberry@gaes.griffin.peachnet.edu
Western SARE, (435) 797-2257; wsare@mendel.usu.edu

RELEVANT WEB SITES

National Agroforestry Center
Develops and applies agroforestry technologies, publishes "Inside Agroforestry" newsletter and informational fact sheets.
http://www.unl.edu/nac/

Natural Resources Conservation Service
Technical notes and briefs on a variety of agroforestry topics.
http:/www.nhq.nrcs.usda.gov/BCS/forest/tnote1.html

USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program/ Sustainable Agriculture Network
Features on-line books and a database of more than 1,400 research projects funded by USDA-SARE.
htttp://www.sare.org

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA).
National sustainable agriculture information service.
http://www.attra.org

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center's Agroforestry Bibliographies
Includes information on alternative tree crops.
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/sbjagrof.htm

Sustainable Farming Connection
Offers a diverse collection of resources and links on agroforestry.
http://metalab.unc.edu/farming-connection/agrofore/home.htm

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

AFSIC Publications

AFSIC staff create and publish information resource guides that focus on topics of current interest. Some are issued as parts of National Agricultural Library Series, including **Quick Bibliographies** (QBs) and **Special Reference Briefs** (SRBs). Others are published as **AFSIC Notes** and miscellaneous documents. To help clarify the kind of publications we offer:

- Bibliographies are *lists of references* to books, articles, papers, and audio-visual materials. Most of the listed materials may be found in the NAL collection or through your local or university library system.
- Reference Guides provide a broader picture of a topic, including descriptive text, contacts for Internet and organizational resources, as well as suggested reading lists.

Search our online AGRICOLA database to locate additional resources in the National Agricultural Library collection.

Subject Categories

- **Featured Web Pages:**
  - Community Supported Agriculture
  - Organic Food Production
  - Sustainable Agriculture
- Alternative/Sustainable Agricultural Systems
- Alternative Soil, Crop, and Pasture Management
- Alternative Disease, Pest, and Weed Control
- Alternative Marketing and Economic Issues
- Alternative and Industrial Crops
- Alternative Energy for Agriculture
- Agroforestry
- Aquaculture
- Environmental Topics
- Exotic and Unusual Livestock
- Small Farm Topics
- Urban Agriculture and Gardening
- Miscellaneous

Publications Alphabetized by Title or by Publication Date

Hardcopy Order Form

Great Places to Find Information About Farming Alternatives

Top of Document

[Available in print only. Order a free copy from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center.]

Publications (alphabetized by title)

- Acid Rain, QB 95-03 (January 1995) [547kb]
- Adopting Sustainable Alternatives, AFSIC Notes no. 1 (January 1992) [9.4kb]
- Agriculture and the Environment, AFSIC Notes no. 2 (March 1992) [13.7kb]
- Agroforestry Systems, QB 92-28 (February 1992)[257kb]
- Air Pollution Effects on Crops and Forests, QB92-24(February 1992) [318kb]
- Allelopathy: The Effects of Chemicals Produced by Plants, QB 94-56 (September 1994) [331kb]
- AFSIC no longer has copies available of "Alternative Agriculture" by the Committee on the Role of Alternative Farming Methods in Modern Production Agriculture, National Research Council, published in 1996. The 1989 edition of this title may be read free online at National Academies Press, http://books.nap.edu/books/0309039851/html/.
- List of Alternative Crops and Enterprises for Small Farm Diversification (May 2001) [23kb]
- *Agri-environmental Indicators: Literature Review and Annotated Bibliography*. (April 1998) A joint Economic Research Service - AFSIC publication. [Available in print only. Order a free copy from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center.
- Alternative Crops, QB 96-11 (September 1996, covers June 1993-June 1996) [165kb]
- Alternative Crops, QB 93-53 (August 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [117kb]
- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 98-01 (September 1998, covers July 1996-June 1998) [613kb]
- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 96-08 (September 1996, covers March 1993-June 1996) [2 linked files: 504kb and 287kb]
- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 93-17 (February 1993, covers January 1991-January 1993) [255kb]
- Amaranths for Food or Feed, QB 92-40 (March 1992) [153kb]
- Aquaculture Resources Menu. Includes links to aquaculture contacts, Internet sites, and publications.
- Beekeeping in the United States, QB 93-30 (May 1993) [117kb]
- Biotechnology and Sustainable Agriculture: A Bibliography, SRB 94-13 (September 1994) [86.5kb]
- Breeding and Selecting Crops for Insect Pest Resistance, QB 92-25 (February 1992) [390kb]
- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA) Page (1999-2001)
- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA): Resources for Farmers or Producers (Revised and updated September 2003).
- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA): An Annotated Bibliography and Resource Guide, AT 93-02 (September 1993) [34kb]
- Compost: Application and Use, QB 97-01 (June 1997) [390kb]
- Compost: On-farm Systems, QB 97-12 (September 1997) [275kb]
- Compost: Small-scale and Backyard Systems, QB 97-11 (September 1997) [105kb]
- Computers and Information Technologies in Agricultural Production and Management, Part I.,

QB 97-09 (September 1997) [644kb]

- Computers and Information Technologies in Agricultural Production and Management, Part II., QB 97-10 (September 1997) [709kb]
- Conservation Tillage, QB 94-13 (March 1994) [368kb]
- Cultural and Mechanical Weed Control, QB 94-52 (August 1993) [234kb]
- Dairy Farm Manure Management, QB 95-02 (January 1995) [124kb]
  See also Dairy Farm Manure Management (II) (covers 1995-1997)
- Direct Marketing and Related Topics, QB 97-02 (June 1997) [185kb]
- Directory of State Aquaculture Coordinators and Contacts. (October 2003)
- Double Cropping and Interplanting, QB 94-51 (August 1994) [435kb]
- Drip, Trickle and Surge Irrigation, QB 92-26 (February 1992) [232kb]
- Earthworms, QB 97-06 (July 1997) [230kb]
- Earthworms in Agriculture (Covers 1994-1996, September 1996) [191kb]
- Educational and Training Opportunities in Sustainable Agriculture Directory (15th ed., December 2002; revised September 2003) [266kb]
- Electronic Databases and other Information Search Tools Available at the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (December 2001) [27kb]
- Ethnobotany and Medicinal Plants, Part I, QB 92-66 (September 1992) [347kb]
- Ethnobotany and Medicinal Plants, Part II, QB 93-02 (October 1992) [468kb]
- Evaluation of Best Management Practices, QB 93-66 (September 1993) [161kb]
  See also Evaluation of Best Agricultural Management Practices (II) (covers 1990 to 1995)
- Farming Systems Research, QB 92-27 (February 1992) [151kb]
- *Farming Alternatives and Diversification: Who is Looking at Small Farm Profitability?* (October 2001) [Available in print only. Order a free copy from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center.]
- Farming in Arid and Semiarid Lands, QB 94-54 (September 1994) [205kb]
- Farmland Preservation, QB 93-57 (August 1993) [129kb]
- Forage Legumes, QB 93-04 (November 1992) [245kb]
- Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and Agriculture: Environmental Applications. Selected Books, Papers, and Journal Articles 1999 (April 2000) [87kb]
- Ginseng, QB 96-07 (August 1996) [210kb]
- Great Places to Find Information About Farming Alternatives (Revised September 2003) [21kb]
- Green Manures and Cover Crops, QB 93-68 (September 1993) [266kb]
- Growing for the Medicinal Herb Market Selected Sources and Resources (August 20, 1998) [38.0kb]
- Herbicide Tolerance/Resistance in Plants, QB 96-14 (September 1996) [305kb]
- Herbicide Tolerance/Resistance in Plants, QB 94-60 (September 1994) [453kb]
- Herbs and Herb Gardening: An Annotated Bibliography and Resource Guide, SRB 96-06 (August 1996) [306kb]

- Horticultural Journals Currently Received at the National Agricultural Library (April 1993) [71kb]
- Hydroponics-Nutrient Film Technique, QB 94-55 (September 1994) [216kb]
- Integrated Pest Management-Biological Control: Natural Enemies, AFSIC Notes no. 3 (March 1992) [89kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Field Crops, QB 93-69 (September 1993) [333kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Horticultural Crops (October 1996 update) [228kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Horticultural Crops, QB 94-12 (March 1994) [295kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Weeds, QB 93-05 (November 1992) [340kb]
- Information on Oral History Interviews with Leaders in Sustainable Agriculture [111kb]
- Irrigating Efficiently, QB 94-35 (June 1994) [229kb]
- The Language of Electronic Searching: A Search Terms Glossary (December 2001) [49kb]
- Legumes in Crop Rotations, QB 94-38 (June 1994) [540kb]
- Mycorrhizae: Impacts on Production, QB 95-11 (March 1995) [337kb]
- Non-point Source Pollution Issues, QB 95-01 (January 1995) [205kb]
- Organic Agricultural Products: Marketing and Trade Resources. (March 2003) [541kb]
- Organic Farming and Marketing: Publications from USDA (October 2002; updated May 2003) [34kb]
- Organic Food Production Page (Revised December 2001). Includes Organic Agriculture Search Tips.
- Organic Foods: Markets and Marketing (July 2001) [60kb]
- Organic Gardening: A Guide to Resources 1989-September 2003 (September 2003) [158kb]
- Organic Gardening (Agri-Topics, October 1989) [19kb]
- Organic Information Resources. What are They? Where are They? How Can I Find Them? (December 2001) [39kb]
- Organic Production: Economic Aspects. Books, Articles, and Videocassettes, 1991-March 1997. (July 1997) [150kb]
- Organic Production: Recent Publications and Current Information Sources, SRB 96-07 (September 1996) [77kb]
- Organic Production: Terminology / Descriptive Phrases (December 2001) [10.5kb]
- Organically Produced Foods: Nutritive Content, SRB 2000-03 (June 2000) [103kb]
- Oyster Mushroom, QB 97-07 (July 1997) [162kb]
- Part-time Farming, Small Farms and Small-scale Farming in the United States, QB 97-03 (NAL Quick Bibliography supplement, January 1999. Covers 1996-September 1998)
- Part-time Farming, Small Farms, and Small-scale Farming in the United States, QB 97-03 (June 1997, covers June 1993-March 1997)[179kb]
- Part-time Farming, Small Farms, and Farming in the United States, QB 93-64 (September 1993, covers January 1989-June 1993) [210kb]
- Paulownia: Potential Tree Crop, QB 93-25 (April 1993) [57kb]

- Potential New Crop: Kenaf, Commercial Fiber and Pulp Source, QB 92-54 (July 1992) [121kb]
- Precision Farming, AT 95-01 (December 1994) [27.8kb]
- Proceedings of National Small Farm Conferences sponsored by USDA.
  - First National Small Farm Conference, Nashville, TN on September 10-13, 1996
  - Second National Small Farm Conference, St. Louis, MO on October 12-15, 1999
  - Third National Small Farm Conference, Albuquerque, NM on September 17-20, 2002
- Resource Guide to Growing and Using Herbs, SRB 93-01 (November 1992) [42kb]
- Raising Emus and Ostriches, SRB 97-06 (August 1997 and supplement February 2001) [337kb]
- Raising Snails, SRB 96-05 (August 1996; Revised online April 2001) [151kb]
- Riparian Zones and Filter Strips in Agricultural Operations, QB 95-09 (February 1995) [165kb]
- Riparian Zones and Filter Strips in Agricultural Operations, QB 93-32 (May 1993) [141kb]
- Rotational Grazing and Intensive Pasture Management, QB 93-50 (August 1993) [138kb]
- Shiitake, Cultivated Mushrooms, QB 96-13 (September 1996) [143kb]
- Small-scale Ethanol Production, QB 92-46 (April 1992) [74kb]
- Societal Impacts of Adoption of Alternative Agricultural Practices, QB 93-01 (October 1992) [182kb]
- Soil Testing and Plant Analysis for Fertilizer Recommendations, QB 96-12 (September 1996, covers March 1993-June 1996) [361kb]
- Soil Testing and Plant Analysis for Fertilizer Recommendations, QB 93-54 (July 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [241kb]
- Solar Energy Alternatives for Agriculture, QB 96-06 (August 1996, covers May 1993-June 1996) [225kb]
- Solar Energy Alternatives for Agriculture, QB 93-33 (May 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [117kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture Page (Revised December 2001)
- Sustainable Agriculture in Print Series Menu
- 1997 Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books, SRB 97-05 (August 1997) [370kb]
- April 24, 2003 Update to Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books (April 2003 supplement) [223 kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals (June 1996 supplement) [75.8kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals, SRB 95-08 (September 1995) [359kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture: Definitions and Terms, SRB 99-02 (September 1999) [173kb]
- Sustainable or Alternative Agriculture, QB 93-03 (November 1992) [288kb]
- Sustainable Agricultural Resources for Teachers, K-12 (Updated and revised July 2002) [86kb].
- Tracing the Evolution of Organic/Sustainable Agriculture (November 1988) [35.6kb]
- Urban Agriculture: An Abbreviated List of References and Resource Guide 2000 (September 2000) [72kb]
- *Vegetables and Fruits: A Guide to Heirloom Varieties and Community-Based Stewardship.* (September 1998. 3 Volumes.)

Introduction, Notes, and Contents for Volumes I, II, and III. [83kb]
Volume 1. Annotated Bibliography [636kb]
Volume 2. Resource Organizations [267kb]
Volume 3. Historical Supplement [330kb]

- Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems, SRB 2000-04 (Amends SRB 95-03. July 2000) [140kb]
- Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems, SRB 95-03 (July 1995) [97kb]
- Wastewater Irrigation, QB 93-55 (July 1993) [212kb]
- Wastewater Irrigation (1997-2001)
- Where to Find Sustainable Agriculture Research Online (November 2001) [13kb]
- Wind Energy for Agriculture, QB 93-28 (April 1993) [107kb]
- Who Will Pay for On-Farm Environmental Improvements in the 21st Century? A Resource Guide, SRB 2000-01 (April 2000) [190kb]
- Women in Agriculture, QB 92-56 (August 1992) [253kb]

Women in Agriculture: A Bibliography, January 1992-December 1997 (March 1998)
Women in Agriculture and Rural Life: An International Bibliography (July 1998)

Publications (sorted by publication date)

Go to: 2003 | 2002 | 2001 | 2000 | 1999 | 1998 | 1997 | 1996 | 1995 | 1994 | 1993 | 1992 | 1991 | 1990 | 1989 | 1988

2003

- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA): Resources for Farmers or Producers (Revised and updated September 2003).
- Directory of State Aquaculture Coordinators and Contacts. (October 2003)
- Educational and Training Opportunities in Sustainable Agriculture Directory (15th ed., December 2002; revised September 2003) [266kb]
- Great Places to Find Information About Farming Alternatives (Revised September 2003) [21kb]
- Information on Oral History Interviews with Leaders in Sustainable Agriculture [2003] [111kb]
- Organic Agricultural Products: Marketing and Trade Resources. (March 2003) [541kb]
- Organic Farming and Marketing: Publications from USDA (October 2002; upated May 2003) [34kb]
- Organic Gardening: A Guide to Resources 1989-September 2003 (September 2003) [158kb]
- April 24, 2003 Update to Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books (April 2003 supplement) [223kb]

2002

- Organic Food Production Page (Updated June 2002)
- Proceedings of Third National Small Farm Conference held in Albuquerque, NM on September 17-20, 2002

- Sustainable Agricultural Resources for Teachers, K-12 (Updated and revised July 2002) [86kb].

2001

- Aquaculture Resources Menu. Includes links to aquaculture contacts, Internet sites, and publications.
- List of Alternative Crops and Enterprises for Small Farm Diversification (May 2001) [23kb]
- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA) Page (1999-2001)
- Electronic Databases and other Information Search Tools Available at the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (December 2001) [27kb]
- *Farming Alternatives and Diversification: Who is Looking at Small Farm Profitability?* (October 2001) [Available in print only. Order a free copy from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center.]
- The Language of Electronic Searching: A Search Terms Glossary (December 2001) [49kb]
- Organic Foods: Markets and Marketing (July 2001)
- Organic Information Resources. What are They? Where are They? How Can I Find Them? (December 2001) [39kb]
- Organic Production: Terminology / Descriptive Phrases (December 2001) [10.5kb]
- Raising Emus and Ostriches, SRB 97-06 (August 1997, with supplement covering 1997-2001) [337kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture Page (Revised December 2001)
- Raising Snails, SRB 96-05 (August 1996; Revised online April 2001) [129kb]
- Where to Find Sustainable Agriculture Research Online (November 2001) [13kb]

2000

- Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and Agriculture: Environmental Applications. Selected Books, Papers, and Journal Articles 1999 (April 2000) [87kb]
- Organically Produced Foods: Nutritive Content, SRB 2000-03 (June 2000) [103kb]
- Urban Agriculture: An Abbreviated List of References and Resource Guide 2000 (September 2000) [72kb]
- Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems, SRB 2000-04 (Amends SRB 95-03. July 2000) [140kb]
- Who Will Pay for On-Farm Environmental Improvements in the 21st Century? A Resource Guide, SRB 2000-01 (April 2000) [190kb]

1999

- Part-time Farming, Small Farms and Small-scale Farming in the United States, QB 97-03 (NAL Quick Bibliography supplement, January 1999. Covers 1996-September 1998)
- Proceedings of Second National Small Farm Conference held in St. Louis, MO on October 12-15, 1999
- Sustainable Agriculture: Definitions and Terms, SRB 99-02 (September 1999) [173kb]

1998

- *Agri-environmental Indicators: Literature Review and Annotated Bibliography*. (April 1998) A joint Economic Research Service - AFSIC publication. [Available in print only. Order a free copy from the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center.

- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 98-01 (September 1998, covers July 1996-June 1998) [613kb]
- Growing for the Medicinal Herb Market Selected Sources and Resources (August 20, 1998) [38.0kb]
- *Vegetables and Fruits: A Guide to Heirloom Varieties and Community-Based Stewardship.* (September 1998. 3 Volumes.)
  Introduction, Notes, and Contents for Volumes I, II, and III. [83kb]
  Volume 1. Annotated Bibliography [636kb]
  Volume 2. Resource Organizations [267kb]
  Volume 3. Historical Supplement [330kb]
- Women in Agriculture, QB 92-56 (August 1992) [253kb]
  Women in Agriculture: A Bibliography, January 1992-December 1997 (March 1998)
  Women in Agriculture and Rural Life: An International Bibliography (July 1998)

1997

- Compost: Application and Use, QB 97-01 (June 1997) [390kb]
- Compost: On-farm Systems, QB 97-12 (September 1997) [275kb]
- Compost: Small-scale and Backyard Systems, QB 97-11 (September 1997) [105kb]
- Computers and Information Technologies in Agricultural Production and Management, Part I., QB 97-09 (September 1997) [644kb]
- Computers and Information Technologies in Agricultural Production and Management, Part II., QB 97-10 (September 1997) [709kb]
- Direct Marketing and Related Topics, QB 97-02 (June 1997) [185kb]
- Earthworms, QB 97-06 (July 1997) [230kb]
- Organic Production: Economic Aspects. Books, Articles, and Videocassettes, 1991-March 1997. (July 1997) [150kb]
- Oyster Mushroom, QB 97-07 (July 1997) [162kb]
- Part-time Farming, Small Farms, and Small-scale Farming in the United States, QB 97-03 (June 1997, covers June 1993-March 1997) [179kb]
- 1997 Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books, SRB 97-05 (August 1997) [370kb] [See 1993 update above.]

1996

- Alternative Crops, QB 96-11 (September 1996, covers June 1993-June 1996) [165kb]
- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 96-08 (September 1996, covers March 1993-June 1996) [2 linked files: 504kb and 287kb]
- Earthworms in Agriculture (Covers 1994-1996, September 1996) [191kb]
- Ginseng, QB 96-07 (August 1996) [210kb]
- Herbicide Tolerance/Resistance in Plants, QB 96-14 (September 1996) [305kb]
- Herbs and Herb Gardening: An Annotated Bibliography and Resource Guide, SRB 96-06 (August 1996) [306kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Horticultural Crops (October 1996 update) [228kb]
- Organic Production: Recent Publications and Current Information Sources, SRB 96-07 (September 1996) [77kb]

- Proceedings of the First National Small Farm Conference held in Nashville, Tennessee on September 10-13, 1996
- Shiitake, Cultivated Mushrooms, QB 96-13 (September 1996) [143kb]
- Soil Testing and Plant Analysis for Ferilizer Recommendations, QB 96-12 (September 1996, covers March 1993-June 1996) [361kb]
- Solar Energy Alternatives for Agriculture, QB 96-06 (August 1996, covers May 1993-June 1996) [225kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals (June 1996 supplement) [75.8kb]

1995

- Acid Rain, QB 95-03 (January 1995) [547kb]
- Dairy Farm Manure Management, QB 95-02 (January 1995) [124kb]
  See also Dairy Farm Manure Management (II) (covers 1995-1997)
- Evaluation of Best Management Practices, QB 93-66 (September 1993) [161kb]
  See also Evaluation of Best Agricultural Management Practices (II) (covers 1990 to 1995)
- Mycorrhizae: Impacts on Production, QB 95-11 (March 1995) [337kb]
- Non-point Source Pollution Issues, QB 95-01 (January 1995) [205kb]
- Precision Farming, AT 95-01 (December 1994) [27.8kb]
- Riparian Zones and Filter Strips in Agricultural Operations, QB 95-09 (February 1995) [165kb]
- Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals, SRB 95-08 (September 1995) [359kb]
- Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems, SRB 95-03 (July 1995) [97kb]

1994

- Allelopathy: The Effects of Chemicals Produced by Plants, QB 94-56 (September 1994) [331kb]
- Biotechnology and Sustainable Agriculture: A Bibliography, SRB 94-13 (September 1994) [86.5kb]
- Conservation Tillage, QB 94-13 (March 1994) [368kb]
- Cultural and Mechanical Weed Control, QB 94-52 (August 1994) [234kb]
- Double Cropping and Interplanting, QB 94-51 (August 1994) [435kb]
- Farming in Arid and Semiarid Lands, QB 94-54 (September 1994) [205kb]
- Herbicide Tolerance/Resistance in Plants, QB 94-60 (September 1994) [453kb]
- Hydroponics-Nutrient Film Technique, QB 94-55 (September 1994) [216kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Horticultural Crops, QB 94-12 (March 1994) [295kb]
- Irrigating Efficiently, QB 94-35 (June 1994) [229kb]
- Legumes in Crop Rotations, QB 94-38 (June 1994) [540kb]

1993

- Alternative Crops, QB 93-53 (August 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [117kb]
- Alternative Farming Systems: Economic Aspects, QB 93-17 (February 1993, covers January 1991-January 1993) [255kb]
- Beekeeping in the United States, QB 93-30 (May 1993) [117kb]

- Community Supported Agriculture (CSA): An Annotated Bibliography and Resource Guide, AT 93-02 (September 1993) [34kb]
- Farmland Preservation, QB 93-57 (August 1993) [129kb]
- Forage Legumes, QB 93-04 (November 1992) [245kb]
- Green Manures and Cover Crops, QB 93-68 (September 1993) [266kb]
- Horticultural Journals Currently Received at the National Agricultural Library (April 1993) [71kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Plant Pests: Field Crops, QB 93-69 (September 1993) [333kb]
- Part-time Farming, Small Farms, and Farming in the United States, QB 93-64 (September 1993, covers January 1989-June 1993) [210kb]
- Paulownia: Potential Tree Crop, QB 93-25 (April 1993) [57kb]
- Riparian Zones and Filter Strips in Agricultural Operations, QB 93-32 (May 1993) [141kb]
- Rotational Grazing and Intensive Pasture Management, QB 93-50 (August 1993) [138kb]
- Soil Testing and Plant Analysis for Ferilizer Recommendations, QB 93-54 (July 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [241kb]
- Solar Energy Alternatives for Agriculture, QB 93-33 (May 1993, covers January 1991-June 1993) [117kb]
- Wastewater Irrigation, QB 93-55 (July 1993) [212kb]
- Wind Energy for Agriculture, QB 93-28 (April 1993) [107kb]

1992

- Agriculture and the Environment, AFSIC Notes no. 2 (March 1992) [13.7kb]
- Adopting Sustainable Alternatives, AFSIC Notes no. 1 (January 1992) [9.4kb]
- Agroforestry Systems, QB 92-28 (February 1992) [257kb]
- Air Pollution Effects on Crops and Forests, QB92-24 (February 1992) [318kb]
- Amaranths for Food or Feed, QB 92-40 (March 1992) [153kb]
- Breeding and Selecting Crops for Insect Pest Resistance, QB 92-25 (February 1992) [390kb]
- Drip, Trickle and Surge Irrigation, QB 92-26 (February 1992) [232kb]
- Ethnobotany and Medicinal Plants, Part I, QB 92-66 (September 1992) [347kb]
- Ethnobotany and Medicinal Plants, Part II, QB 93-02 (October 1992) [468kb]
- Farming Systems Research, QB 92-27 (February 1992) [151kb]
- Integrated Pest Management-Biological Control: Natural Enemies, AFSIC Notes no. 3 (March 1992) [89kb]
- IPM and Biological Control of Weeds, QB 93-05 (November 1992) [340kb]
- Potential New Crop: Kenaf, Commercial Fiber and Pulp Source, QB 92-54 (July 1992) [121kb]
- Resource Guide to Growing and Using Herbs, SRB 93-01 (November 1992) [42kb]
- Small-scale Ethanol Production, QB 92-46 (April 1992) [74kb]
- Societal Impacts of Adoption of Alternative Agricultural Practices, QB 93-01 (October 1992) [182kb]

Sustainable or Alternative Agriculture, QB 93-03 (November 1992) [288kb]

1989

AFSIC no longer has copies available of "Alternative Agriculture" by the Committee on the Role of Alternative Farming Methods in Modern Production Agriculture, National Research Council, published in 1996. The 1989 edition of this title may be read free online at National Academies Press, http://books.nap.edu/books/0309039851/html/.

1988

Tracing the Evolution of Organic/Sustainable Agriculture (November 1988) [35.6kb]

Top of Document

Return to:
Top of Document
Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
National Agricultural Library

The Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
afsic@nal.usda.gov, http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/
Page URL - http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/afspub.htm, October, 2003

MISSOURI ALTERNATIVES CENTER

About MAC **MAC Partners**

- **What's Up at MAC**
- **Links of Interest**
- **Extension Information on Alternatives**
  (alphabetical listing of resources)
- **MAC Resource Collection**
- ***"Ag Opportunities"* Newsletter**
  (Subscribe Here)

Also check out . . . .

- **Sustainable Small Farm Information Network**
- **Missouri Sustainable Ag Program**
- **Small Family Farm Program**

IFAFS Grant Partners

North Central Initiative for Small Farm Profitability

Food Map

E-mail questions for the Missouri Alternatives Center to: **Debi Kelly**
University of Missouri: 3 Whitten Hall, Columbia, MO 65211
Call: 1-800-433-3704 (Missouri Only) 1-573-882-1905 (In Columbia)

[AgEBB Home Page] - [Comments]

A

- Agri-tourism
- Agribusiness
- Agroforestry
- Agroforestry, Non-timber Products
- Alfalfa, organic
- Alpacas
- Alternative field crops
- Alternative field crops, organic
- Amaranth
- Apples
- Apples, organic
- Aquaculture
- Aquaculture, business plan
- Aquaculture, cage culture
- Aquaculture, fish breeds
- Aquaculture, getting started
- Aquaculture, marketing
- Aquaculture, ornamental fish
- Aquaculture, recirculation systems
- Aquaponics
- Asparagus
- Asparagus, organic

B

- Bait fish
- Bamboo
- Bass
- Beans, dry
- Beans, snap
- Bed and breakfast
- Bedding plants
- Beef - See also L for livestock
- Beef, organic
- Beekeeping
- Beekeeping, mites
- Beginning farming
- Biodynamic farming

J

K

- Kenaf
- Kiwi, hardy

L

- Lavender
- Livestock - See also B for beef; H for hogs; I for intensive grazing; G for goats; S for sheep
- Livestock, exotic
- Livestock, organic
- Llamas
- Local food systems
- Luffa gourds

M

- Maple syrup
- Marketing
- Marketing direct to consumers
- Marketing meat
- Marketing on the web
- Marketing research
- Marketing to institutions
- Marketing, retail and restaurants
- Millets
- Mink
- Mulches
- Mules
- Mushrooms
- Mushrooms, oyster
- Mushrooms, shiitake

N

- Native wild plants

- Biological pest control
- Bison
- Blackberries
- Blackberries, organic
- Blueberries
- Blueberries, organic
- Boar
- Broccoli
- Buckwheat
- Business
- Butterfly gardening

C

- Cantaloupes
- Carrots
- Catfish
- Cattle
- Cattle, breeds
- Cheese making
- Chestnuts
- Chickens, bantams
- Chickens, breeds
- Chickens, brooding
- Chickens, diseases
- Chickens, egg production
- Chickens, feeding and nutrition
- Chickens, free-range, pastured, organic
- Chickens, frequently Asked Questions
- Chickens, general
- Chickens, home processing
- Chickens, housing
- Chickens, incubating
- Chickens, meat
- Chinese water chestnuts
- Christmas trees
- Cole crops (broccoli, cauliflower,
- Nursery
- Nut trees

O

- Okra
- On-farm research
- Onions
- Onions, organic
- Organic certification
- Organic farming
- Ostrich

P

- Part-time farming
- Partridges
- Pasture management
- Paulownia
- Paw paws
- Peaches
- Peaches, organic
- Peafowl
- Pears
- Pears, asian
- Pears, organic
- Pecans
- Peppers
- Perennials
- Permaculture
- Pheasants
- Pigeons and squabs
- Plums, organic
- Ponds
- Popcorn
- Postharvest handling of fruits and vegetables
- Potatoes
- Potatoes, organic

cabbage)
- Community gardening
- Community supported agriculture (CSA)
- Companion planting
- Compost
- Consumer cooperatives
- Container gardening
- Cooperatives and cooperation
- Corn, field
- Corn, organic
- corn, specialty (ornamental, high-oil, baby)
- Corn, sweet
- Corn, sweet, organic
- Cover crops and green manure crops
- Crayfish
- Crickets
- Cucumbers

D

- Dairy production - See also L for livestock
- Dairying, Seasonal
- Deer
- Dogs
- Dogs, guardian
- Donkeys
- Donkeys, guardian
- Doves
- Ducks

E

- Echinacea
- Eggplant
- Elderberries
- Elk
- Potatoes, sweet
- Potatoes, sweet, organic
- Poultry, pastured
- Pumpkins
- Pumpkins, organic

Q

- Quail

R

- Rabbits
- Raised beds
- Raspberries
- Raspberries, organic
- Reindeer
- Rheas
- Rhubarb
- Roadside stands
- Rock gardens
- Root cellars

S

- Sawmill
- Season extenders
- Seed saving
- Sheep - See also L for livestock
- Sheep, budgets
- Sheep, dairy
- Sheep, hair
- Shrimp, freshwater
- Smoke houses, smokers
- Snails
- Soap making
- Sod production
- Soils
- Soybeans

- Emu

F

- Farm management and decision making
- Farmers' markets
- Fee and lease hunting
- Fee fishing
- Finance
- Floriculture
- Flowers, cut
- Flowers, dried
- Flowers, edible
- Flowers, wild
- Forage alternatives
- Frogs and toads
- Fruits, exotic
- Fruits, small
- Fruits, small, organic
- Fruits, tree
- Fruits, tree, organic
- Fur farming

G

- Game birds
- Garlic
- Garlic, organic
- Geese
- Geese, weeder
- Ginseng
- Goats - See also L for livestock
- Goats, angora
- Goats, cashmere
- Goats, cheese
- Goats, dairy
- Goats, meat
- Goats, pygmy
- Soybeans, edible
- Soybeans, organic
- Sprouts
- Squash (summer and winter), organic
- St. John's wort
- Strawberries
- Strawberries, organic
- Sunflowers
- Sustainable agriculture
- Sweet sorghum
- Switchgrass

T

- Tanning hides
- Tilapia
- Tobacco
- Tobacco, organic
- Tomatoes
- Tomatoes, greenhouse
- Tomatoes, organic
- Tomatoes, organic greenhouse
- Tree farming
- Trout
- Truffles
- Turfgrass management
- Turkeys

U

- U-pick

V

- Value Added - Business
- Value Added - Dairy
- Value Added - Farmer owned brands
- Value Added - Food safety

- Goldenseal
- Gooseberry
- Gourds
- Grants and proposal writing
- Grapes
- Grapes, organic
- Grass seed production
- Grasses, warm season
- Grazing - See also I for intensive grazing
- Greenhouses, alternative energy
- Greenhouses, business
- Greenhouses, construction
- Greenhouses, diseases and insects
- Greenhouses, home/hobby
- Greenhouses, production
- Greenhouses, production, organic
- Greens
- Greens, organic
- Guinea fowl

H

- Hemp, industrial
- Herbs
- Herbs, culinary
- Herbs, essential oils
- Herbs, medicinal
- Herbs, wild crafted
- High tunnels
- Hogs - See also L for livestock
- Hogs, organic
- Home based businesses
- Horses
- Hummingbirds
- Hydroponics and soiless growing

I

- Value Added - Fruits, grains and vegetables
- Value Added - Getting started
- Value Added - Labeling
- Value Added - Meat
- Value Added - Regulations
- Veal production
- Vegetables
- Vegetables, budgets
- Vegetables, greenhouse
- Vegetables, mulches
- Vegetables, organic
- Vegetables, specialty
- Vegetables, transplanst, organic
- Vegetables, transplants
- Vermicomposting

W

- Walleye
- Walnut trees
- Watermelons
- Wildlife, attracting and care
- Wind breaks
- Wind energy
- Winemaking
- Wool
- Worms

X

Y

Z

- Integrated pest management
- Intensive grazing
- Irrigation

Organic Production: Recent Publications and Current Information Sources

Special Reference Briefs Series no. SRB 96-07

Compiled By:
Mary V. Gold
Alternative Farming Systems Information Center

National Agricultural Library
Agricultural Research Service
U.S. Department of Agriculture

Alternative Farming Systems

USDA, ARS, National Agricultural Library
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2351

September 1996

National Agricultural Library Cataloging Record:

Gold, Mary V.
Organic production : recent publications and current information sources.
(Special reference briefs ; 96-07)
1. Organic farming—Bibliography. 2. Sustainable agriculture—Bibliography. 3. Organic farming—Directories. 4. Sustainable agriculture—Directories. 5. Organic farming—Computer network resources. 6. Sustainable agriculture—Computer network resources.
I. Title.
aS21.D27S64 no.96-07

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs).

Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at (202) 720-2791.

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

ORGANIC PRODUCTION: RECENT PUBLICATIONS AND CURRENT INFORMATION SOURCES

Compiled by Mary V. Gold, Assistant Coordinator
Alternative Farming Systems Information Center

Contents

Introduction 1
Current Status of Organic Production in the United States 2
USDA National Organic Program (NOP) 3
National Organic Standards 3
Definition of "Organic" 4
The Organic Market 5
Educational Opportunities in Organic Farming 5
Books
- National Directories and Guides 6
- Overviews 7
- Government Policy and Certification 9
- Soil and Crop Management 10
- Pest Management 14
- Livestock Management 16
- Economics and Marketing 17
- Publisher Contact Information 19

Other Resources including AFSIC Publications 20
Journals and Newsletters 22
Electronic Resources
- What are They? Where are They? 25
- Gopher Servers 25
- World Wide Web/ Homepages 26
- Discussion Groups/ Mailing Lists 29
- Electronic Journals and Newsletters 30
- Computer Software Farm Management 30

Introduction

The activities of the U.S. Department of Agriculture's National Organic Standards Board, coupled with growing consumer support for organic foods, have made farming organically an increasingly viable alternative for many U.S. farmers. In addition, there has been renewed awareness of organic agriculture on the part of public interest groups, marketing organizations, and agricultural researchers. This interest is reflected in the many requests for information received each month at the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (AFSIC).

The attached list of resources is provided as a starting point for information seekers. The inclusion or omission of a publication or resource is not meant as endorsement or disapproval. Most listed publications are still in print and available for purchase. Individual contacts for publication information are given for difficult-to-find resources. A publisher contact list is provided for books from more conventional sources. **Starred items (*) are available electronically either through the publisher or through sources listed under "Electronic Resources".**

Many of the cited publications are available through local public or university libraries. For information about Interlibrary Loan, consult your local library system or contact the Document Delivery Branch, National Agricultural Library, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Beltsville MD 20705-2351, phone 301-504-5755, fax 301-504-5675, e-mail lending@nal.usda.gov.

AFSIC is one of ten Information Centers at the National Agricultural Library (NAL) that provide in-depth coverage of specific subject areas relating to the food and agricultural sciences. AFSIC focuses on alternative farming systems and crops that aim to maintain agricultural productivity and profitability, while protecting natural resources. Support for the Center comes to the Library from the USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program which is under the jurisdiction of the Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service (CSREES).

This publication is available in hardcopy, or electronically on computer diskette or via AFSIC's Internet Web Site: http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic. Please send comments and corrections regarding this publication, or requests for additional copies to:

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
National Agricultural Library, ARS, USDA
Room 304
10301 Baltimore Ave.
Beltsville MD 20705-2351
phone: 301-504-6559
fax: 301-504-6409
e-mail: afsic@nal.usda.gov

Current Status of Organic Production in the United States

During 1994, the U.S. Department of Agriculture embarked on its first survey and analysis of organic food growing and marketing practices. Their Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS) documented approximately 1,127,000 acres, or just over one tenth of one percent of total US agricultural land, as being used for certified organic production in 1994. (By limiting the survey to certified farmers these numbers "may significantly underestimate total organic acreage," notes the project's leader, Julie Anton Dunn, because many farmers who grow and sell organic produce are not officially certified.) The survey confirmed the existence of 44 different U.S. organic certification organizations, 11 of which were state agencies and the remainder, private groups.

The report resulting from the 1994 AMS project (Organic Food and Fiber: An Analysis of 1994 Certified Production in the United States, by Julie Anton Dunn, USDA/AMS, 1995) also verified that organic farms are, on average, much smaller than their conventional counterparts, using about half the acreage of non-organic operations. 57% of organic cropland was used for food crops and 26% percent for livestock feed. The remainder was in fallow, cotton, CRP land, nursery and floral crops, tobacco, and/or miscellaneous crops.

Although the USDA Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS) does not, to date, allow the term "organic" to be used on animal product labels (a situation that should change with the implementation of National Organic Standards), a few certifying agencies do certify livestock. This 1994 survey found 110,000 organically grown chickens and turkeys, 47, 700 layer hens, 6,100 dairy cattle, and 3,330 beef cattle.

> *For more information about the AMS report, contact* ***Marketing and Transportation Analysis, Transportation and Marketing Division,*** *AMS, USDA, Rm. 1207, Box 96456, Washington DC 20090-6456, phone 202-690-0310.*

In 1996, USDA's Economic Research Service (ERS) revealed further details about U.S. organic production (AREI Updates: Updates of Agricultural Resources and Environmental Indicators, Number 4, May 1996). The information was derived from the National Agriculture Statistics Service (NASS) 1994 Vegetable Chemical Use Survey. From the Update:

- Most certified organic producers in the 13 major vegetable-growing states had become certified within the past 8 years (81%) and farmed on less than 4.9 acres (62%). Most were between the ages of 36 and 55, college educated, and listed farming as their primary occupation.

- About half of those surveyed marketed their produce directly to the consumer, 14% sold to a wholesaler, and 10% to a retailer. Crops most widely grown by organic farmers were tomatoes (21%), sweet corn (18%), lettuce (11%), and strawberries (8%).

- The most commonly used methods of disease and insect control were crop rotation and resistant varieties. Manure and compost were the principal sources of nutrients.

*For more information about the data from this Update, contact Jorge Fernandez-Cornejo, **Natural Resources and Environment Division, ERS/** USDA, 1301 New York Ave. NW, Rm. 524, Washington DC 20005-4788, phone 202-219-0463, e-mail jorgef@econ.ag.gov.*

USDA National Organic Program (NOP)

The National Organic Program (NOP) is part of USDA's Agricultural Marketing Service. It is the agency developing and implementing uniform Federal standards related to the production, processing, and marketing of organically-produced foods. NOP coordinates the appointment of National Organic Standards Board (NOSB) members and reviews NOSB recommendations regarding all aspects of national standards for organic certification. NOP is responsible for interim rules, preparing final regulations, and submitting the environmental impact assessment related to these regulations.

In addition, NOP staff will accredit state and private certifying agencies under the new National Organic Standards, as well as conduct on-site evaluations of certifiers and of selected farms and food handlers that use accredited services. Staff members track information related to the impact of food production and processing on the environment and human health by working with the Environmental Protection Agency and the Food and Drug Administration, and they participate in the development and modification of international guidelines for trade in organic products.

National Organic Standards

In August 1994, the United States Department of Agriculture published an historic document: a set of "Final Recommendations" released by the USDA's National Organic Standards Board (NOSB). Established by the 1990 Farm Bill, the board was mandated to present recommended standards to the Secretary of Agriculture regarding implementation of the Organic Foods Production Act of 1990. With 14 appointees selected from the organic farming and foods industry, environmental and consumer groups, and the scientific research community, the NOSB has labored together for almost five years.

The newly-released recommendations "..constitute an historic collaboration between the public, private sector and government to openly hammer out national standards. We have held well-attended public-input sessions at each of our deliberative board and committee meetings. During the last two and a half years, we have met in Washington DC, Virginia, Minnesota, Colorado, Maryland, California, Maine, Arkansas, Pennsylvania, Oregon and New Mexico. We have encouraged and received comments at every stage, from committee drafts to draft board recommendations. This process has not been perfect; it can use much improvement. But we believe that this process does set a new standard for USDA advisory board performance and public participation.

"These recommendations signal a new era. Never before has the government been given this responsibility: to describe and preserve integrity of organic food and fiber products from seed to consumer." (unsigned letter accompanying Final Recommendations as cited above, August 1, 1994)

Crop and livestock production, processing and labeling, accreditation, and importation standards are all addressed by the recommendations. Pesticide residue testing requirements, split operations (farms with both organic and conventional production areas) certification, planting stock policy, emergency spray alternatives, and a recommended materials list have also been developed. Other facets of production and distribution are still being assessed. The current recommendations will be the foundation for a uniform program regulating organic food and fiber production and processing. Through the Organic Foods Productions Act, the standards will be administered and enforced by the USDA. Final implementation of the Act will probably take place in 1997.

For publications, to be put on a mailing list to receive proposed regulations coming from the NOSB, or to send questions or comments, contact the ***National Organic Program Staff****, USDA/ AMS/ TMD, Room 2510-South, P.O. Box 96456, Washington DC 20090-6456, phone 202-720-3252, fax 202-205-7808. URL: http://www.usda.gov/ams/tmdnop.htm*

Definition of "Organic"

The NOSB has also agreed upon a definition of the term organic. That definition, which follows, was drawn up in April 1995.

"Organic agriculture is an ecological production management system that promotes and enhances biodiversity, biological cycles and soil biological activity. It is based on minimal use of off-farm inputs and on management practices that restore, maintain and enhance ecological harmony. 'Organic' is a labeling term that denotes products produced under the authority of the Organic Foods Production Act.

"The principal guidelines for organic production are to use materials and practices that enhance the ecological balance of natural systems and that integrate the parts of the farming system into an ecological whole. Organic agriculture practices cannot ensure that products are completely free of residues; however, methods are used to minimize pollution from air, soil and water. Organic food handlers, processors and retailers adhere to standards that maintain the integrity of organic agricultural products. The primary goal of organic agriculture is to optimize the health and productivity of interdependent communities of soil life, plants, animals and people."

The Organic Market

There are several commercial organizations that track sales of natural and/or organic products. According to a recent survey published in Natural Foods Merchandiser ("Widening Market Carries Organic Sales to $2.8 Billion in 1995", by Ken Mergentime and Monica Emerich, Natural Foods Merchandiser, June 1996), organic industry sales have grown by more than 20% each year for the past six years. Overall sales were $2.8 billion in 1995; organic produce accounted for 21% of this total. Popular processed organic foods included frozen items, soy and rice drinks, apple juice, yogurt, and milk. Total organic dairy sales for 1995 were $30 million.

Although most organic sales take place in natural food stores, supermarkets are adopting organic lines at an increasing rate. The Packer, in its "Fresh Trends" report ("Fresh Trends 1996: A Profile of the Fresh Produce Consumer", The Packer, Vol. CII, #54, 1996) found that 54% of consumers surveyed said that their supermarket sold organic produce. Twenty-three percent reported that they had purchased organic produce sometime during the past six months. Organic sales are growing most quickly in the West and Northeast regions of the U.S.

> *For more information on sales and marketing statistics for organic products, consult the above publication and/or their publishers. Contact information for each is listed under* "Journals and Newsletters", *below. There is an expanded edition of The Packer publication called "Fresh Trends '96 Demographic Data Report" available from the publisher. Other contacts: the* ***Organic Trade Association****, P.O. Box 1078, Greenfield MA 01301, phone 413-774-7511, fax 413-774-6432, e-mail ota@igc.apc.org* or ***New Hope Communications****, Research Department, 1301 Spruce St., Boulder CO 80302, phone 303-939-8440, fax 303-939-9559.*

Educational Opportunities in Organic Production

There are many institutions and organizations offering opportunities to learn about different phases of organic production. While the term "organic farming" may not appear in their catalogs, several colleges and universities now offer organic-related programs in sustainable agriculture, integrated pest management, alternative agriculture, and agroecology. Organic farming associations, environmental groups, and related organizations often offer courses, seminars, or workshops.

Hands-on experience, in the form of volunteer positions, internships, and apprenticeships, is available from many non-profit organizations and working farms. These work experiences range from a couple of weeks as a farm hand to on-going field or food processing research projects.

> *The best sources of information about educational programs include organic* ***certifying agencies*** *who may offer courses themselves, or who maintain lists of member farmers offering apprenticeships and internships. The* ***Alternative Farming Systems Information Center*** *publishes an annual directory entitled Educational and*

Training Opportunities in Sustainable Agriculture which contains institutional, organizational, and commercial offerings.

*The **Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)** Information Center keeps a list of Internship and Apprenticeship openings. For contact information for the above resources, see listings under "Other Resources including AFSIC Publications" in this publication.*

Books

National Directories and Guides

A Guide to Spanish Language Sustainable Publications: Summaries, compiled by Beatriz Cabezon. Davis CA: UC Sustainable Agriculture Research & Education Program, Univ. of California, 1995. 89 p. (NAL Z5074 S92C33 1995) [Contact: UC Sustainable Agriculture Research & Education Program (SAREP), Univ. of California, Davis CA 95616, phone 916-752-7556]

Healthy Harvest: A Global Directory of Sustainable Agriculture and Horticulture Organizations 1994. Published in cooperation with the Healthy Harvest Society/ National Institute for Science, Law & Public Policy. Davis CA: agAccess, 1992. 192 p. (an updated version is due out during 1996) (NAL S605.5 H43) [Contact: agAccess, 603 Fourth St., Davis CA 95616, phone 916-756-7177, fax 916-756-7188, e-mail agaccess@davis.com]

The Herbal Green Pages: A Publication of the Herb Growing & Marketing Network. Lancaster PA: The Network (published annually). (NAL SB351 H5H3714) [The Herbal Connection, P.O. Box 245, Silver Spring PA 17575, phone 717-393-3295, fax 717-393-9261

The Humane Consumer and Producer Guide: Buying and Producing Farm Animal Products for a Humane Sustainable Agriculture, edited by Terry Gips et al. Minneapolis MN: Humane Sustainable Agriculture Project of the International Alliance for Sustainable Agriculture; Washington DC: The Humane Society of the U.S., 1993. 368 p. (NAL S494.5 S86H86) [Contact: Humane Society of the U.S., 2100 L St. NW, Washington DC 20037, phone 202-452-1100]

International Federation of Organic Agriculture Movements, Organic Agriculture Worldwide: Directory of the Member Organizations and Corporate Associates of IFOAM. Tholey-Theley, Germany: IFOAM, 1994/95 (published annually). (NAL S605.5 I572) [Contact: IFOAM, Oekozentrum Imsbach, D-66636 Tholey-Theley, Germany, phone 49-6853-5190, fax 49-6853-30110, e-mail IFOAM-SECRETARY@OLN.COMLINK.APC.ORG]

The 1995 Organic Resource Guide, Ottawa: Canadian Organic Growers, 1995. [Contact: COG, Box 6408, Station "J", Ottawa, Ontario, K2A 3Y6 Canada, fax 705-444-0380, Attn. Cathy Lamarche, membership and publications]

1996 National Organic Directory: A Guide to Organic Information and Resources. Davis CA: Community Alliance with Family Farmers, 1996 (published annually). 370 p. (NAL HD9003 O74) [Contact: CAFF, P.O. Box 464, Davis CA 95617, phone 916-756-851! or 1-800-852-3832, fax 916-756-7857]

Organic Suppliers Directory: A Directory of Suppliers Serving Organic Farms, Gardens, Orchards and Homesteads, With Organic Industry Thesaurus, edited by Scott R. Williams. Plymouth OH: Ohio Ecological Food and Farm Assn., 1994. 123 p. (NAL S605.5 O76 1993) [Contact: OEFFA, Organic Suppliers Directory, P.O. Box 82234, Columbus OH 43202, phone 614-294-3663]

*The Resources of International Permaculture: TRIP. Vol. VI. (Volumes are chronological; updated between editions) Jacksonville FL: Yankee Permaculture, 1995. (also available electronically on diskette) (NAL S494.5 P47R47) [Contact: Yankee Permaculture, P.O. Box 672, Dahlonega GA 30533-0672]

*Showcase of Sustainable Agriculture Information and Educational Materials. Burlington VT: Sustainable Agriculture Network Publications, 1994. 201 p. (also available electronically on IBM compatible diskette) (S494.5 S86S56 1993) [Contact: Sustainable Agriculture Publications]

*Sustainable Agriculture Directory of Expertise, 3rd Edition: Profiles of More Than 700 Organizations and Individuals Who Can Help You Meet Your Farming Stewardship and Profitability Goals, compiled by the Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA) Directory Project Team. Burlington VT: Sustainable Agriculture Network Publications, 1996. unpaged (also available electronically on IBM compatible diskette) (NAL S494.5 S86S874 1996) [Contact: Sustainable Agriculture Publications]

Whole Foods, Informing and Educating Whole Foods Retailers. Monthly magazine, issues available separately. May issue: Source Book, August: Consumer Survey, November: Retail Survey. (NAL HD9003 W46) [Contact: Whole Foods, 3000 Hadley Road, South Plainfield NJ 07090, phone 908-769-1160, fax 908-769-1171]

Overviews

Agronomic, Economic, and Ecological Relationships in Alternative (Organic), Conventional, and Reduced-till Farming Systems, edited by James D. Smolik, et al. (Bulletin 718). Brookings SD: Agricultural Experiment Station, South Dakota State University, 1993. (NAL 100 So82 (1)

B718) [Contact: South Dakota State University, Lincoln Music Hall, Box 22128, Brookings SD 57007, phone 605-688-5628]

Bender, Jim, Future Harvest: Pesticide-Free Farming. (Our Sustainable Future series, vol. 5) Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1994. 159 p. (NAL S494.5 S86O97 vol.5)

Bird, Elizabeth Ann R., Gordon L. Bultena, and John C. Gardner, Planting the Future: Developing an Agriculture that Sustains Land and Community. Ames IA: Iowa State University Press, 1995. 276 p. (NAL S441 P58 1995)

Dunn, Julie Anton, Organic Food and Fiber: An Analysis of 1994 Certified Production in the United States. Washington DC: US Dept. of Agriculture, Agricultural Marketing Service, Transportation and Marketing Div., 1995. 5p. (NAL aS441 D86 1995) [Contact: National Organic Program Staff, USDA/ AMS/ TMD, Room 2507-South, P.O. Box 96456, Washington DC 20090-6456, phone 202-720-3252, fax 202-205-7808]

Edwards, Clive, Rattan Lal, Patrick Madden, Robert H. Miller and Gar House, Sustainable Agricultural Systems. Ankeny IA: Soil and Water Conservation Society, 1990. 696 p. (NAL S495.7 S86S86)

The Economics of Organic Farming: An International Perspective, edited by N.H. Lampkin and S. Padel. Wallingford UK: CAB International, 1994. 463 p. (NAL S605.5 E26 1994)

Environmentally Sound Agriculture: Proceedings of the Second Conference, edited by Kenneth L.Campbell, Wendy D. Graham and A.B. "Del" Bottcher. St. Joseph MI: American Society of Agricultural Engineers, 1994. 578 p. (NAL S589.7 E57 1994) [Contact: ASAE, 2950 Niles Road, St. Joseph MI 49085-9659, phone 616-428-6324]

Food for the Future: Conditions and Contradictions of Sustainability, edited by Patricia Allen. New York: Wiley, 1993. 328 p. (NAL HD1415 F633 1993)

Gates, Jane Potter, *Tracing the Evolution of Organic/ Sustainable Agriculture: A Selected and Annotated Bibliography. Beltsville MD: USDA, National Agricultural Library, 1988. 20 p. (Also available in electronic format on computer diskette or via the AFSIC Web Site) (NAL aZ5076 A1U54 no. 72) [Contact: AFSIC]

*Getting Started in Organic Farming, published jointly by Environment Canada and Manitoba Environment, 1992. (Free handbook available electronically from Manitoba Environment's Web Site; also available in French) [Contact: Electronic versions, in WordPerfect 5.1 or Microsoft Word 6.0, available for downloading at URL http://www.mb.doe.ca/ENGLISH/ POLLUTION/PESTICIDES/farm.html]

Long Ashton International Symposium (Long Ashton Research Station, Univ. of Bristol, UK), Ecology and Integrated Farming Systems: Proceedings of the 13th Long Ashton International Symposium, edited by D.M. Glen, M.P. Greaves, and H.M. Anderson. Chichester, UK; New York: Wiley, 1995. 329 p. (NAL S589.7 L64 1993)

Newton, Jon, Profitable Organic Farming. Oxford UK; Cambridge MA: Blackwell Science, 1995. 142 p. (NAL S605.5 N48 1995)

Organic Agriculture: Building the Community. 1994 Conference Proceedings...sponsored by Canadian Organic Growers. Guelph Ont.: University of Guelph, 1994. 24 p. (NAL S605.5 O662 1994)

The Organic Tradition: An Anthology of Writings on Organic Farming 1890 - 1950, edited by Philip Conford. Hartland, Devon UK: Green; Shaftesbury, Dorset UK: Distributed by Element Books, 1988. 224 p. (NAL S605.5 O75)

Pimentel, David and Hugh Lehman. The Pesticide Question: Environment, Economics, and Ethics. New York: Chapman and Hall, 1993. 444 p. (NAL QH545 P4P4793 1993)

Soule, Judith D. and Jon K. Piper. Farming in Nature's Image: An Ecological Approach to Agriculture. Island Press, 1992. 286 p. (NAL S441 S757)

Sustainable America: A New Consensus for Prosperity, Opportunity, and a Healthy Environment for the Future. Washington DC: President's Council on Sustainable Development, 1996. 186 p. (NAL HC110 E5S87 1996) [Contact: Available for purchase from the U.S. G.P.O., Supt. of Docs.]

Transition to Organic Agriculture Conference, Transition to Organic Agriculture Conference: October 31 and November 1, 1990, coordinated by University of Saskatchewan's Extension Div., Crop Development Centre and Saskatchewan Agriculture and Food, Soil and Crops Branch, Organic Crop Improvement Assn., Saskatchewan: s.n., 1990. 217 p. (NAL S605.5 T73 1990) [Contact: U-Learn Centre, Extension Division, 143 Kirk Hall, 117 Science Pl., University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon SK S7N 5C8 CANADA, fax orders 306-966-5567]

Government Policies and Certification

California Certified Organic Farmers...Certification Handbook. Santa Cruz, CA: California Certified Organic Farmers (published annually). (NAL S605.5 C3) [Contact: CCOF, 1115 Mission St., Santa Cruz CA 95060, phone 408-423-2263, fax 408-423-4528]

*Database of State Alternative Laws, prepared by Whitney Chamberlin, John Sullivan and Nan Kim. Washington DC: Center for Policy Alternatives, 1994. (photocopies and/or diskettes

available) [Contact: Center for Policy Alternatives, 1875 Connecticut Ave., NW, Suite 710, Washington DC 20009-5728, phone 202-387-6030, fax 202-986-2539]

Farming and Clean Water: A Community Action Guide. St. Paul MN: The Minnesota Project/ The Midwest Consortium on Groundwater and Farm Chemicals, 1993. (NAL TD427 A35F37 1993) [Contact: The Minnesota Project, 1885 University Ave. W., Ste 315, St. Paul MN 55104, phone 612-645-6159]

Hansen, Maren, Increasing Organic Agriculture at the Local Level: A Manual for Consumers, Grocers, Farmers and Policy Makers, with Phil Boise and Jim Hagen and the Santa Barbara County Safe Food Project: prepared by the Community Environmental Council. Santa Barbara CA: Community Environmental Council, Inc., 1992. 110 p. (NAL S605.5 H37 1992) [Contact: Community Environmental Council, 930 Miramonte Drive, Santa Barbara CA 93109, phone 805-963-0583]

National Organic Standards Board, Final Recommendations, Adopted June 1 - 4, 1994, in Santa Fe, New Mexico: Organic Crop Production Standards. Washington DC: USDA, 1994. (NAL in process) [Contact: National Organic Program Staff, USDA/ AMS/ TMD, Room 2510-South, P.O. Box 96456, Washington DC 20090-6456, phone 202-720-3252, fax 202-205-7808]

Riddle, Jim and Joyce Ford, Organic Inspection Manual and Organic Inspection Manual Appendix. Winona MN: Independent Organic Inspectors Association., 1995. 121 p. (NAL S605.5 R532 1995) [Contact: IOIA, Rt. 3, Box 162-C, Winona MN 55987-9514, phone 507-454-8310]

Soil and Crop Management

Alternative Field Crops Manual. Madison WI: University of Wisconsin Cooperative and Extension Services; University of Minnesota Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products, 1990. Looseleaf, unpaged. (NAL SB187 U6A47 1990) [Contact: Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products, 340 Alderman Hall, Univ. of Minnesota, St. Paul MN 55108]

Chaney, David E., Laurie E. Drinkwater and G. Stuart Pettygrove, Organic Soil Amendments and Fertilizers. Oakland CA: UC Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program, University of California, Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, 1992. 36 p. (NAL S654 C42 1992) [Contact: UC ANR Publications, 6701 San Pablo Ave., Oakland CA 94608-1239, phone 510-642-2431, fax 510-643-5470]

Coleman, Eliot, The New Organic Grower: A Master's Manual of Tools and Techniques for the Home and Market Gardener. Rev. and expanded edition. White River Junction VT: Chelsea Green Pub., 1995. 340 p. (NAL SB324.3 C65 1995)

Conservation Tillage: Planning (AE-3054). One in a series of pamphlets dealing with conservation tillage practices, including Effects on Soil Erosion (AE-3050), Effects on Water Quality (AE-3051), No-till Systems (AE-3052), Ridge-till Systems (AE-3053), Fertility Practices and Equipment for No-till and Ridge-till (AE 3054), Cultivators for No-Till and Ridge-till (AE-3055), Planters for No-till (AE-3056), and Planters for Ridge-till (AE-3057). Ames IA: Iowa State Univ. Extension, 1990. (NAL S671 A22) (some titles no longer available) [Contact: Iowa State University, Extension Distribution Center, 119 Printing & Publishing Bldg., Ames IA 50011-3171, phone 515-294-5247, e-mail pubdist@exnet.iastate.edu]

Denckla, Tanya, The Organic Gardener's Home Reference: A Plant-By-Plant Guide to Growing Fresh, Healthy Food. Pownal VT: Storey Communications, 1994. 273 p. (NAL SB324.3 D46 1994)

Facciola, Stephen, *Cornucopia: A Source Book of Edible Plants. Vista CA: Kampong Publications, 1990. 677 p. (also available electronically on diskette) (NAL SB175 F33) [Contact: Kampong Publications, 1870 Sunrise Drive, Vista CA 92084]

Farm Scale Composting. ("A Biocycle Publication") Emmaus PA: JG Press, 1995. 80 p. (NAL S661 F37 1995)

Gershuny, Grace and Joseph Smillie, The Soul of Soil: A Guide to Ecological Soil Management. 3rd ed. Davis CA: agAccess, 1995. 174 p. (NAL S623 G47 1995)

Growing Fruits & Vegetables Organically: The Complete Guide to a Great-tasting, More Bountiful, Problem-free Harvest, edited by Jean M.A. Nick and Fern Marshall Bradley. Emmaus PA: Rodale Press; New York: Distributed in the book trade by St. Martin's Press, 1994. 532 p. (NAL SB324.3 G75 1994)

Harrison, John B., Growing Food Organically. West Vancouver BC: Waterwheel Press, 1993. 138 p. (NAL SB453.5 H378 1993)

Introduction to Water Harvesting. Auburn AL: International Center for Aquaculture, Auburn University, 1991. 10 p. (NAL S494.5 W3I57) [Contact: International Center for Aquaculture, Swingle Hall, Auburn University AL 36849-5419]

Jeavons, John, How to Grow More Vegetables Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine: A Primer on the Life-giving Biointensive Method of Organic Horticulture. Rev. ed. Berkeley CA: Ten Speed Press, 1995. 201 p. (NAL SB324.3 J43 1995)

Jenson, Tom, Legume Green Manuring. Edmonton, Alta.: Agriculture Canada, Alberta Agriculture, 1993. 7 p. (NAL S661 J46 1993)

Khourik, Robert, Drip Irrigation for Every Landscape and All Climates: Helping Your Garden Flourish While Conserving Water. Santa Rosa CA: Metamorphic Press, 1992. 118 p. (NAL S619 T74K69 1992)

Kirschenmann, Frederick, Switching to a Sustainable System: Strategies for Converting from Conventional/Chemical to Sustainable/ Organic Farming Systems. Windsor ND: Northern Plains Sustainable Agriculture Society, 1988. 18 p. (NAL S494.5 S86K5) [Contact: NPSAS, HC 5 Box 104, Langdon ND 58249, phone 701-256-2424]

Magdoff, Fred, Building Soils for Better Crops: Organic Matter Management. Lincoln NE: University of Nebraska Press, 1992. 176 p. (NAL S592.8 M34 1992)

Managing Agricultural Residues, edited by Paul W. Unger. Boca Raton FL: Lewis Publishers, 1994. (NAL S604 M28 1994)

*Managing Cover Crops Profitably. (Sustainable Agriculture Network Handbook #1) Washington DC: USDA; Burlington VT: University of Vermont, 1992. 114 p. (NAL sSB284.3 U6M36 1992) (also available electronically on IBM compatible diskette) [Contact: Sustainable Agriculture Publications]

Mars, Ross and Jenny Mars, Getting Started in Permaculture. Hovea, W. Australia: Candlelight Trust, 1994. 60 p. (NAL S494.5 P47M37 1995) [Contact: Candlelight Farm, 100 Falls Road, Hovea, Western Australia, Australia, phone 09-295-4627]

McRobie, George, Tools for Organic Farming: A Manual of Appropriate Equipment and Treatments. London: Intermediate Technology Publication; New York: The Bootstrap Press, 1990. 77 p. (NAL S656 T66)

Michalak, Patricia S., Vegetables, text by Patricia S. Michalak; plant by plant guide by Cass Peterson. Emmaus PA: Rodale Press; New York: Dist. by St. Martin's Press, 1993. 159 p. (NAL SB324.3 M53 1992)

Mollison, Bill, Permaculture: A Designer's Manual. Tyalgum, Australia: Tagari, 1988. 576 p. (NAL S605.5 M6)

Nilsson, Jon, in collaboration with Miranda Smith, Warren Hubley, and Judith Gillan, The Passively Aerated Windrow System of Composting: A Guide to PAWS Composting for Farmers. Belchertown MA: New England Small Farm Institute, 1994. 22 p. (NAL S661 N56 1994) (updated version available) [Contact: The New England Small Farm Institute, Box 608, Belchertown MA 01007, phone 413-323-4531]

Ogden, Shepherd, Step by Step Organic Vegetable Gardening. 1st ed. New York: HarperCollins Pub., 1992. 299 p. (NAL SB324.3 O43 1992)

On-farm Composting Handbook, edited by Robert Rynk. Ithaca NY: Northeast Regional Agricultural Engineering Service, 1992. 186 p. (NAL S661 O53 1992) [Contact: NRAES, Cooperative Extension, 152 Riley-Robb Hall, Ithaca NY 14853-5701, phone 607-255-7654, fax 607-255-4080, e-mail nraes@cornell.edu, URL: http://rcwpsun.cas.psu.edu/NRAES/pubs.html]

Organic Fertilizers: Facts, Figures and Resources, American Horticultural Society. Alexandria VA: Gardeners' Information Service, American Horticultural Society, 1992. 4 p. [NAL S654 O72 1992) (Contact: AHS, 7931 E. Boulevard Dr., Alexandria VA 22308, 1-800-777-7931]

Organic Field Crop Handbook, a Project of Canadian Organic Growers, Inc., editor, Anne Macey; prepared by Dee Kramer et al. Ottawa, Ont.: Canadian Organic Growers Inc., 1992. 192 p. (NAL S605.5 K722 1992) [Contact: COG, Box 6408, Sta. J, Ottawa, Ont., K2A 3Y6 Canada, fax 613-256-4453; Attn. Cathy Lamarche, membership and publications]

Page, Stephen and Joe Smillie, The Orchard Almanac: A Seasonal Guide to Healthy Fruit Trees. 3rd ed. Davis CA: agAccess, 1995. 154 p. (NAL SB608 F8P33 1995)

Parnes, Robert, Fertile Soil: A Grower's Guide to Organic & Inorganic Fertilizers. 2nd ed. Davis CA: agAccess, 1990. 190 p. (NAL S633 P33 1990)

Penhallegon, Ross H., Values of Organic Fertilizers. Rev. ed. Eugene OR: Lane County Extension Office, 1993. 10 p. (NAL S654 P46 1993)

Poisson, Leandre and Gretchen Vogel Poisson, Solar Gardening: Growing Vegetables Year-round the American Intensive Way. White River Junction VT: Chelsea Green Pub., 1994. 267 p. (NAL SB324.3 P65 1994) [Contact: Real Goods Trading Co., 966 Mazzoni St., Ukiah CA 95482-3471, phone 1-800-762-7325]

Proceedings of the Northeast Farmer to Farmer Information Exchange....Apple... Sweetcorn... Greenhouse Bedding Plants... Livestock... Strawberries....meeting 1992-1993, edited by Enid Wonnacott. (Each crop meeting was compiled and published separately) Massachusetts: Northeast Organic Farming Assn.: University of Massachusetts Cooperative Extension System, 1994. (various NAL call numbers) [Contact: any NOFA chapter]

Rateaver, Bargyla and Gylver Rateaver, Organic Method Primer Update: A Practical Explanation: The How and Why for the Beginner and the Experienced. Special ed. San Diego CA: The Rateavers, 1993. 596 p. (NAL 605.5 R37 1993) [Contact: The Rateavers, 9049 Covina Street, San Diego, CA 92126]

The Real Dirt: Farmers Tell About Organic and Low In-put Practices in the Northeast, edited by Miranda Smith and Members of the Northeast Organic Farming Assn. Burlington VT: Northeast Region Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE), 1994. 164 p. (NAL S605.5 R43 1994) [Contact: Sustainable Agriculture Publications]

Rodale's Encyclopedia of Organic Gardening: The Indispensable Resource for Every Gardener, edited by Fern Marshall Bradley and Barbara W. Ellis. Emmaus PA: Rodale Press; New York: Dist. by St. Martin's Press, 1992. 902 p. (NAL SB453.5 R633 1992)

Sattler, Friedrich, Bio-dynamic Farming Practice. Translated from the German by A.R. Meuss. 1st ed. Clent, Stourbridge UK: Bio-Dynamic Agriculture Assn., 1992. 333 p. (NAL S605.5 S2713 1992)

Schwenke, Karl, Successful Small-Scale Farming: An Organic Approach, 2nd edition. Pownal VT: Storey Communications, 1991. 134 p. (NAL S501.2 S33 1991)

Soil Amendments: Impacts on Biotic Systems, edited by Jack E. Rechcigl. Boca Raton FL: Lewis Publishers (CRC Press Imprint), 1995. 321 p. (NAL S589.7 S621 1995)

Splittstoesser, Walter E. Vegetable Growing Handbook: Organic and Traditional Methods. 3rd ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990. 362 p. (NAL SB321 S645 1990)

Sustainable Farming Guide Book. St. Paul MN: Minnesota Dept. of Agriculture, Energy and Sustainable Agriculture Program, 1990- (new chapters/ updates sent periodically). (NAL S494.5 S86S89 1990) [MN Dept of Agriculture, 90 W. Plato Blvd., St. Paul MN 55107, 612-296-7673]

Water for Every Farm: Yeomans Keyline Plan, compiled, updated and edited by Ken B. Yeomans. Southport Queensland: Keyline Designs, 1993. 261 p. (NAL 494.5 W3W374 1993) [Contact: agAccess]

Waste Management and Utilization in Food Production and Processing. Ames IA: Council for Agricultural Science and Technology (CAST), Task Force Report no. 124, October 1995. 125 p. (NAL TD930 W36 1995) [Contact: CAST, 4420 West Lincoln Way, Ames IA 50014-3447]

What Really Happens When You Cut Chemicals?, edited by Christopher Shirley and the staff of The New Farm. Greg Bowman et al. Emmaus PA: Rodale Institute, 1993. 156 p. (NAL S494.5 S86W48 1993) [Contact: Rodale Institute, 611 Siegfriedale Road, Kutztown PA 19530-9749, phone 610-683-1421, fax 610-683-8548]

Pest Management

Altieri, Miguel A., Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems. New York: Food Products Press, 1994. 185 p. (NAL SB933.3 A38 1994) [Contact: The Haworth Press, Inc.]

Biological Control of Weeds: A World Catalogue of Agents and their Target Weeds, edited by M.H. Julien. 3rd ed. Wallingford, Oxon UK: CAB International, 1992. 186 p. (NAL SB611.5 B54 1992)

Biological Controls: Facts, Figures, & Resources, American Horticultural Society, 1992. Alexandria VA: Gardener's Information Service, American Horticultural Society, 1992. 4 p. (NAL SB975 B5635 1992) [Contact: AHS, 7931 E. Boulevard Dr., Alexandria VA 22308, phone 1-800-777-7931]

Ecologically Based Pest Managment: New Solutions for a New Century. Washington DC: National Research Council, 1996. [Contact: National Academy Press, 2101 Constitution Ave. NW, Washington DC 20418, phone 1-800-624-6242]

Flint, Mary Louise, Pests of the Garden and Small Farm: A Grower's Guide to Using Less Pesticide. Oakland CA: Statewide Integrated Pest Management Project, University of California, Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, 1990. 276 p. (NAL SB950 F57) [Contact: IPM Education and Publications, University of California, Davis, CA 95616-8620, phone 916 752-7691, fax 916 752-9336]

Hoffman, Michael P. and Anne C. Frodsham, Natural Enemies of Vegetable Insect Pests. Ithaca NY: Cornell University, 1993. 63 p. (NAL SB608 V4H64 1993)

Hart, Rhonda Massingham, Bugs, Slugs and Other Thugs: Controlling Garden Pests Organically. Pownal VT: Storey Communications, 1991. 214 p. (NAL SB974 H37)

Hunter, Charles D., Suppliers of Beneficial Organisms in North America. Sacramento CA: California Environmental Protection Agency, Dept. of Pesticide Regulation, Environmental Monitoring and Pest Management, 1994. 30 p. (SB933.3 H85 1994) (new edition is planned for October 1996) [Contact: Dept. of Pesticide Regulation, Environmental Monitoring and Pest Management Branch, 1020 N Street, Room 161, Sacramento CA 95814-5604, phone 916-324-4100, fax 916-324-4088]

Mahr, Daniel L. and Nino M. Ridgeway, Biological Control of Insects and Mites: An Introduction to Beneficial Natural Enemies and Their Use in Pest Management. Madison WI: Cooperative Extension Publications, 1993. 91 p. (NAL SB933.3 M35 1993) [Contact: Michigan State University, Bulletin Office, 10-B Ag Hall, East Lansing MI 48824-1039, phone 517-355-0240, fax 517-355-1804]

Robinson, Raoul A., Return to Resistance: Breeding Crops to Reduce Pesticide Dependence. Davis CA: agAccess, 1996. 480 p. (NAL SB123 R653 1996)

Thomson, W.T., A Worldwide Guide to Beneficial Animals (Insects, Mites, Nematodes) Used for Pest Control Purposes. Fresno CA: Thomson Publications, 1992. 92 p. (NAL SB975 T49 1992)

Walters, Charles, Jr., Weeds: Control Without Poisons. Metairie LA: Acres U.S.A., 1996. (1991 edition, 321 p., NAL SB611.5 W35)

Wintersteen, Wendy and Marlin E. Rice, Beneficial Insects in Field Crops: Integrated Pest Management. Ames IA: Iowa State University, University Extension, 1993. unpaged. (NAL SF517 W56 1993) [Iowa State University, Extension Distribution Center, 119 Printing & Publishing Bldg., Ames IA 50011-3171, phone 515-294-5247, e-mail pubdist@exnet.iastate.edu]

Livestock Management

Benson, Laura Lee and Robert Zirkel, Organic Dairy Farming. Gays Mills WI: Orang-utan Press, 1995. 87 p. (NAL SF239 B46 1995) [Contact: Kickapoo Organic Resource Network/ Community Conservation Consultants, RD 1, Box 96, Gays Mills WI 54631, phone 608-735-4717]

Controlled Grazing: Energy-Saving Ideas and Technology for Improving Pasture Productivity and Cutting Forage Costs. Lewiston MN: Land Stewardship Project, 1991. 8 p. (NAL SB199 C66) [Contact: LSP, 14758 Ostlund Trail North, Marine MN 55047, phone 612-433-2770, fax 612-433-2704]

Corbett, Pat and Connie Corbett, North American Exotic Directory of Animal & Bird Owners. ("the "Yellow Pages of the Exotic Industry") 4th ed. Sydney MT: Pat & Connie Corbett, 1992. 148 p. (NAL SF27 N7C67) (8th edition due out in 1996) [Contact: North American Exotic Directory of Animal & Bird Owners, Dept. NA, HC 57, Box 4028, Sydney MT 59270, phone 406-482-7196 or 1-800-736-5342]

Evaluation of Low-input Crop/Livestock Production Systems: Final Report. North Dakota State University; in Cooperation with University of Illinois et al. Carrington ND: North Dakota State Univ., 1991. various pagings (NAL S451 N9E93 1991)

Extensive and Organic Livestock Systems: Animal Welfare Implications: Proceedings of a Symposium Organized by Universities Federation for Animal Welfare and Humane Slaughter Assn., held at the Royal Agricultural College, Cirencester, 10th - 11th Sept. 1990. Hertfordshire, England: Universities Federation for Animal Welfare, 1993. (NAL HV4757 E98 1993)

Fritz, Sandy and Thomas Andresen, Organic Animal Husbandry. Sydney Australia: Fritz & Associates, 1994. 62 p. (NAL S605.5 F75 1994)

Gralla, Shawn, Fit for a Pig: Low-cost/Sustainable Strategies of Resourceful Hog Farmers. Hartington NE: Beginning Farmer Support Network, Center for Rural Affairs, 1991. 46 p. (NAL SB395 G73 1991) [Contact: Center for Rural Affairs, P.O. Box 406, Wathill NE 68067-0406, phone 402-846-5428, fax 402-846-5420]

Lee, Andrew W., Chicken Tractor: The Gardener's Guide to Happy Hens and Healthy Soil. Shelburne VT: Good Earth Publications, 1994. 230 p. (NAL SF487 L44 1994)

Nation, Allan, Quality Pasture: How to Create It, Manage It, and Profit from It. Jackson MS: Green Park Press, 1995.285 p. (NAL SB199 N37 1995)

Salatin, Joel, Pastured Poultry Profits. 1st ed. Swope VA: Polyface, 1993. 330 p. (NAL SF487 S16 1993) [Contact: Polyface, Inc., Rt.1, Box 281, Swope VA 24479, phone 703-885-3590]

Salatin, Joel, Salad Bar Beef. Swope VA: Polyface, 1995. 368 p. (NAL SF203 S37 1995) [Contact: Polyface, Inc., Rt.1, Box 281, Swope VA 24479, phone 703-885-3590]

Taking Stock: The North American Livestock Census. Donald E. Bixby et al.; The American Livestock Breeds Conservancy. Blacksburg VA: McDonald & Woodward Pub. Co., 1994. 182 p. (NAL SF105.3 T34 1994) [Contact: ALBC, P.O. Box 477, Pittsboro NC 27313, phone 919-542-5704, fax 919-542-2460]

Thear, Katie, Free Range Poultry. Ipswich, England: Farming Press, 1990. 179 p. (NAL SF487 T48)

Tranel, Larry F., Dollars and Sense: A Handbook for Seasonal Grass Dairying. Jackson MS: Green Park Press, 1994. 102 p. (NAL SF239 T79 1994)

Economics and Marketing

Gibson, Eric L., Sell What You Sow! The Grower's Guide to Successful Produce Marketing. Carmichael CA: New World Pub., 1994. 302 p. (NAL HD9005 G53 1994) [New World Publishing, 3085 Sheridan St., Placerville CA 95667, phone 916-622-2248, e-mail newworld@innercite.com, URL: http://www.innercite,com/~newworld]

Guide to Planning the Farm Retail Market: 1994, by Carl L. German et al. Newark DE: University of Delaware, College of Agricultural Sciences, Agricultural Experiment Station, Cooperative Extension, 1994. 85 p. (NAL 275.29 D37Co no. 52) [Contact: Delaware Cooperative Extension Service, University of Delaware, Newark DE 19717-1303]

Hall, Charles, Richard A. Edwards and Jeff L. Johnson, A Guide to Marketing Organic Produce. College Station TX: Texas Agricultural Extension Service, 1991. unpaged. (NAL HD9007 T4H35 1991)

Handbook of Organic Food Processing and Production, edited by Simon Wright. 1st ed. London: Blackie Academic & Professional, 1994. 204 p. (NAL TX369 H36 1994)

Klonsky, Karen et al., Production Practices and Sample Costs for Organic .... (Series detailing production inputs and costs of specific crops/ locations including Almonds..., *Wine Grapes--With Resident Vegetation...and With an Annual Sown Cover Crop, *Rice--No-till Drill

Seeded...and Water Seeded..., Apples for the Fresh Market..., Processing Tomatoes, Sacramento Valley, Walnuts... and Cotton, Northern San Joaquin Valley) Davis CA: Univ. of California Cooperative Extension, 1993- . (NAL various numbers) [Contact: Department of Agricultural Economics, Cooperative Extension, University of California, Davis CA 95616, phone 916-752-9376]

Lee, Andrew, Backyard Market Gardening: The Entrepreneur's Guide to Selling What You Grow. Burlington VT: Good Earth Publications, 1993. 351 p. (NAL SB324.3 L44 1993)

Making the Connection: The CSA Handbook for Producers. Auburn CA: University of California Extension Service, 1995. [Contact: Univ. of California Cooperative Extension Service, CSA Handbook, 11477 E. Ave., Auburn CA 95603, phone 916-889-7385]

The Organic Trade Association Member Handbook and Directory. Greenfield MA:. OTA, 1995. [Contact: OTA, P.O. Box 1078, Greenfield MA 01301, phone 413-774-7511, fax 413-774-6432, e-mail ota@igc.apc.org]

The Packer Produce Availability and Merchandising Guide. (annual issue #53 of The Packer periodical) Shawnee Mission KS : Vance Pub. Corp., 1971- . (NAL 286.8 N483) [Contact: Vance, 7950 College Blvd., Overland Park KS 66210, phone 913-451-2200]

Schroeder, Lee Anne Dust and Stephen B. Lovejoy, Agricultural Economics: Opportunities for Organic Crop Production. Lafayette IN: Purdue, 1995. [Contact: Purdue University, Ag Comm Service, Media Distribution Center, 301 S. Second St., Lafayette IN 47901-1232, phone 317-494-6794, e-mail juanita@ecn.purdue.edu]

Sellen, Daniel, et al., A Comparison of Financial Returns During Early Transition from Conventional to Organic Vegetable Production. Guelph Ontario: Dept. Of Agricultural Economics and Business, Univ. Of Guelph, 1994. Unpaged. (NAL HD1781 W67 no. 94/12)

Sturdivant, Lee, Flowers for Sale: Growing and Marketing Cut Flowers: Backyard to Small Acreage. Friday Harbor WA: San Juan Naturals, 1992. 197 p. (NAL SB443 S87 1992) [Contact: San Juan Naturals, Box 642S, Friday Harbor WA 98250]

Sturdivant, Lee, Herbs for Sale: Growing and Marketing Herbs, Herbal Products, and Herbal Know-how. Friday Harbor WA: San Juan Naturals, 1994. 246 p. (NAL SB351 H5S77 1994) [Contact: San Juan Naturals, Box 642S, Friday Harbor WA 98250]

Taylor, T.M., Secrets to a Successful Greenhouse Business: A Complete Guide to Starting and Operating a High-profit Business that's Beneficial to the Environment. Melbourne FL: Green Earth Publishing, 1991. 135 p. (NAL SB415 T39 1991) [Contact: Green Earth Publishing Co., P.O. Box 500544-E, Malabar FL 32050]

Van En, Robyn, Basic Formula to Create Community Supported Agriculture. Great Barrington MA: Robyn Van En, 1992. unpaged. (NAL HD9225 A2V35 1992) [Contact: Robyn Van En, CSA Indian Line Farm, RR 3 Box 85, Great Barrington MA 02130]

Publisher Contact Information

Acres, U.S.A.
P.O. Box 8800
Metairie LA 70011
1-800-355-5313, fax 504-889-2777

Blackwell Scientific Publications
238 Main St.
Cambridge MA 02142
617-876-700; orders 1-800-759-6102

CAB International North America
Distributor: University of Arizona Press
1230 No. Park Ave., no. 102
Tucson AZ 85719
602-621-1441; orders 1-800-426-3797

Chelsea Green Publishing Co.
P.O. Box 428
205 Gates-Briggs Bldg.
White River Junction VT 05011
802-296-6300; orders 1-800-639-4099
(Orders to: 52 Labombard Rd.,
No. Lebanon NH 03766)

Cornell University
Media Services Resource Center
7 Cornell Business and Technology Park
Ithaca NY 14850
phone 607-255-2080, fax 607-255-9946
e-mail Dist_Center@cce.cornell.edu

CRC Press, Inc.
Times Mirror Co.
2000 Corporate Blvd. NW
Boca Raton FL 33431
407-994-0555; orders 1-800-272-7737

Good Earth Publications
P.O Box 160
Columbus NC 28722
704-863-2288, orders 1-800-499-3201

Green Park Press
Mississippi Valley Pub. Corp.
P.O. Box 9607
Jackson MS 39286-9607
601-981-4805; orders 1-800-748-9808

Haworth Press
10 Alice St.
Binghamton NY 13904-1580
607-722-5857; orders 1-800-342-9678

Iowa State University Press
2121 State Ave.
Ames IA 50014-8300
515-292-0140; orders 1-800-862-6657

Island Press
Box 7, Dept. 2NET
Covelo CA 95428
1-800-828-1302; fax 707-983-6414
http://www.islandpress.com

Pennsylvania State University
College of Agricultural Sciences
Publications Distribution Center
112 Agricultural Admin. Bldg.
University Park PA 16802
814-865-6713

Rodale Press
33 E. Main St.
Emmaus PA 18098
610-967-5171, 1-800-527-8200
(Distributor: St. Martins Press)

Soil and Water Conservation Society
7515 N.E. Ankeny Road
Ankeny, IA 50021-9764
1-800-THE-SOIL, or 515-289-2331
fax 515-289-1227
e-mail SWCS@netins.net
http://www.netins.net/showcase/swcs/

St. Martins Press
Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc.
175 Fifth Ave. Rm. 1715
New York NY 10010
212-674-5151; orders 1-800-221-7945

Storey's Books for Country Living
Dept. 84
P.O. Box 38
Pownal VT 05261-9989
1-800-441-5700, fax 413-664-4066

Sustainable Agriculture Publications
Hills Bldg., Rm. 12
University of Vermont
Burlington VT 05405-0082
802-656-0471 (bulk orders only)
http://www.ces.ncsu.edu/san/

Ten Speed Press
P.O. Box 7123
Berkeley CA 94707
510-559-1600; orders 1-800-841-2665

Thomson Publications
P.O. Box 9335
Fresno CA 93791
209-435-2163; fax 209-435-8319

U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington DC 20402-9325
202-512-1800 book order info..

University of California
Sustainable Agriculture Research & Education Program (SAREP)
Davis CA 95616-8716
916-752-7556

University of California
Agriculture and Natural Resources (ANR) Publications
6701 San Pablo Ave.
Oakland CA 94608-1239
510-642-2431

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
605 Third Ave.
New York NY 10158-0012
212-850-6000; orders 1-800-225-5945
(Orders to: Eastern Distribution Center, 1 Wiley Dr., Somerset NJ 08875-1272)

Other Resources including AFSIC Publications

Alternative Agricultural Opportunities: A Bibliography. St. Paul MN: **Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products**, University of Minnesota, 1991. 106 p. (NAL Z5074 A815A57 1991) [Contact: Center for Alternative Plant and Animal Products, University of Minnesota, 340 Alderman Hall, St. Paul MN 55108, phone 612-624-4217, fax 612-625-5747]

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA) Resource Center, Information Packages. Fayetteville AR: ATTRA, 1992- (NAL various numbers) (multi-paged free information packets on various organic techniques and crops, e.g., "Organic Vegetable Production", "Organic/ Low-Spray Apple Production", "Organic Strawberry Production", "Sustainable Hydroponics", "Sustainable Dairy Production", etc. ATTRA staff also respond to specific informational requests) [Contact: ATTRA, P.O. Box 3657, Fayetteville AR 72702, phone 1-800-346-9140, e-mail askattra@ncatfyv.uark.edu]

European Community Regulation EC 2092/91. All aspects of ecological farming regulation and certification within and between EC member countries are addressed by this regulation and its

amendments. [Contact: EC headquarters in Brussels, Belgium, or for an English version, **United Kingdom Register of Organic Food Standards**, Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Nobel House, 17 Smith Square, London SW1P 3JR, United Kingdom]

Gardner, Melanie, *A Guide to Funding Resources. Rev. ed. ("..information from both government and private sources on funding opportunities available to local governments, small businesses, organizations, associations, groups and individuals.") **Rural Information Center** Publication Series; no.49., Beltsville MD: USDA, National Agricultural Library, 1995 (NAL aHN49 C6R873 no. 38) (also available electronically via RIC's Web Site URL: http://www.nal.usda.gov/ric) [Contact: Rural Information Center, National Agricultural Library, USDA, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Room 304, Beltsville MD 20705-2351, phone 1-800-633-7701 or 301-504-5547, e-mail ric@nal.usda.gov]

Klonsky, Karen and Laura Tourte, Statistical Review of California's Organic Agriculture, 1992-1993: Report Prepared for California Department of Food and Agriculture, Organic Program. Davis CA: Cooperative Extension, **Department of Agricultural Economics, University of California, Davis**, 1995. (NAL S605.5 K67 1995) [Contact: Laura Tourte, Department of Agricultural Economics, University of California, Davis CA 95616, phone 916-752-9376, fax 916-752-5614, e-mail tourte@primal.ucdavis.edu]

1995 National Organic Farmers' Survey. Santa Cruz CA: **Organic Farming Research Foundation**, 1996. (1993 edition, NAL S605.5 O745 1993) [Contact: OFRF, P.O. Box 440, Santa Cruz CA 95061, phone 408-426-6606, fax 408-426-6670, e-mail research@ofrf.org]

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, USDA, *Small-Scale Agriculture Alternatives Series. Washington DC: OSSA/USDA, 1992- (NAL various numbers) (pamphlet series on various alternative crops, e.g. "Wildflowers", "Mushrooms", "Exotic Livestock", etc.) [Contact: USDA/ CSREES, Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Ag Box 2244, Washington DC 20250-2244, phone 202-401-1805]

U.S. Organic Certification Organization Directories. There are several sources for up-to-date directories of certifying agencies. **USDA Agricultural Marketing Service**, described under "Current Status of Organic Production in the United States" in this publication, maintains and distributes a current list. On the Internet, both **agAccess** and the **Organic Trading and Information Center**, listed in the "World Wide Web/ Homepages" section below, maintain excellent directories.

Weintraub, Irwin, "Alternative Agriculture: Selected Information Sources - Part I: Databases, Abstracts and Indexes, Periodicals, and Newsletters and Newspapers" in Journal of Agricultural and Food Information, Vol. 1 (3), pp. 41-100, 1993. (NAL S494.5 I47J68) [Contact: Haworth Press, Inc., 1-800-3-HAWORTH]

Weintraub, Irwin, "Alternative Agriculture: Selected Information Sources - Part II: Bibliographies, Reports, and Directories" in Journal of Agricultural and Food Information, Vol. 1 (4), pp. 33-96.(NAL S494.5 I47J68) [Contact: same as above]

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (AFSIC), National Agricultural Library, USDA, *List of Information Products. Beltsville MD: National Agricultural Library, updated monthly. (list of "Quick Bibliographies" on various alternative ag topics, e.g. "Legumes in Crop Rotations", "Cultural and Mechanical Weed Control", "Rotational Grazing and Intensive Pasture Management", etc. AFSIC staff will perform individual database searches and information retrieval on request.) [Contact: AFSIC, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Rm. 304, Beltsville MD 20705-2351, 301-504-6559, e-mail afsic@nal.usda.gov]

Also from AFSIC:

AFSIC Staff, *Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books. (Special Reference Brief 96-04) 1995. (published annually) (NAL aS21 D27S64 no. 96-04)

DeMuth, Suzanne, *Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals. (Special Reference Brief 95-08) 1995. (NAL aS21 D27S64 no. 95-08)

Gates, Jane Potter, *Educational and Training Opportunities in Sustainable Agriculture. 8th ed., 1995. (NAL aS605.5 E38 1993)

Stevens, Raymond and AFSIC staff, *Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems. (Special Reference Brief 95-03) 1995. (NAL aS21 D27S64 no. 95-03)

Journals and Newsletters

*For a detailed directory of journals and newsletters related to organic/ alternative/ sustainable agriculture, with subscription information for each title, please consult the free AFSIC publication, *Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals, listed above.*

Some titles of particular interest to organic producers:

Acres U.S.A. (monthly/ $20 yr.), from Acres U.S.A., P.O. Box 8800, Metairie LA 70011-8800, phone 504-889-2100, fax 504-889-2777 e-mail acresusa@aol.com. (NAL S601 A1A25)

American Journal of Alternative Agriculture (quarterly/ $24 yr.), from Henry A. Wallace Institute for Alternative Agriculture, 9200 Edmonston Road, Suite 117, Greenbelt MD 20770-1551, phone 301-441-8777, fax 301-220-1551. (NAL S605.5 A43)

American Small Farm (10 issues/ $18 yr), from Magnet Communications, Inc.9420, Topanga Canyon Blvd., Suite 202, Chatsworth CA 91311-5759, phone 818-727-2236, fax 818-727-1358.

Biodynamics (bimonthly/ $14-$75 yr.), from Bio-Dynamic Farming and Gardening Association, Inc., P.O. Box 550, Kimberton PA 19442, phone 610-935-7797 (800-516-7797 for CSA/BDA farms information), fax 610-983-3196, URL: http://www/his.com/~claymont/bda.html (NAL 56.8 B52)

Common Sense Pest Control Quarterly (quarterly/ $30 yr.), from Bio-Integral Resource Center (BIRC), P.O. Box 7414, Berkeley CA 94707, phone 510-524-2567. (NAL SB950.A1C62)

Countryside & Small Stock Journal (bimonthly/ $18 yr.), from Countryside & Small Stock Journal; N2601 Winter Sports Rd., Withee WI 54498 (to subscribe: W11564 Hwy. 64, Withee WI 54498), phone 1-800-551-5691 (715-785-7979 for editorial, advertising). (NAL S521.C62)

Ecology and Farming (quarterly/ $29 yr.), from International Federation of Organic Agriculture Movements (IFOAM), Oekozentrum Imsbach, D-66636 Tholey-Theley, Germany, phone +49 6853 5190, fax +49 6853 30110 (U.S.: telephone 215-863-6700, fax 215-863-4622).

Farmer to Farmer (bimonthly/ $15 yr.), from Community Alliance with Family Farmers (CAFF) Foundation, P.O. Box 73674, Davis CA 95617, phone 916-756-7428, fax 916-756-7857, e-mail f2f@igc.apc.org.

Farmer's Information Network Organic Market News (formerly Organic Wholesale Market Report: Organic Market News and Information Service (OMNIS)) (bimonthly/ mail $65/ fax or e-mail $75 yr.), from FIN, P.O. Box 2067, Santa Clara CA: 95055-2067, phone 408-247-2067, fax 408-247-5823, e-mail FarmerNet@aol.com.

The Furrow (8 to 10/ complimentary to qualified farmers), from Deere & Company, John Deere Rd., Moline IL 61265-8098, phone 309-765-5403, fax 309-765-4498 (NAL S441.F97).

Growing for Market (monthly/ $26 yr.), from Fairplain Publications, P.O. Box 3747 Lawrence KS 66046, phone/fax 913-841-2559 (also telephone 1-800-307-8949).

Journal of Pesticide Reform (quarterly/ membership $15 or $25 yr.), from Northwest Coalition for Alternatives to Pesticides (NCAP), P.O. Box 1393, Eugene OR 97440, (office: 1249 Willamette St., Eugene OR 97401) phone 541-344-5044, fax 541-344-6923, e-mail ncap@igc.apc.org (NAL SB950.2 A1J58), url: http://www.efn.org/~ncap/.

The Natural Farmer (quarterly, $10 yr.), from Northeast Organic Farming Association (NOFA), 411 Sheldon Rd., Barre MA 01005-9252, phone 508-355-2853. (NAL S605.5 N3)

Natural Foods Merchandiser (monthly, includes Organic Times annual supplement/ $48 yr.), from New Hope Communications, 1301 Spruce St., Boulder CO 80302-4832, phone 303-939-8440, fax 303-939-9559, URL: http://devel.newhope.com/public/nfm/NFM_home.html.

Organic Commodity Price Bulletin (weekly fax service), from Organic Food Business News, Hotline Printing & Publishing, P.O. Box 161132, Altamonte Springs FL 32716-1132, fax 407-628-9935

Organic Food Business News (monthly/ $48 yr.), from Hotline Printing and Publishing, P.O. Box 161132, Altamonte Springs FL 32716-1132, phone 407-628-1377, fax 407-628-9935.

Organic Food Matters (quarterly/ membership, sliding scale from $20), from Committee for Sustainable Agriculture (CSA), P.O. Box 838, San Martin CA 95046, phone 408-778-7366, fax 408-778-7186. (NAL S494.5 S86O7)

Organic Gardening (9 issues/ $25 yr.), from Rodale Press, Inc., 33 E. Minor St., Emmaus PA 18098, phone 610-967-5171 (610-967-8715 for advertising). (NAL S605.5.O74)

The Organic Report (monthly/ free with membership; non-members $50 yr), from Organic Trade Association (OTA), P.O. Box 1078, Greenfield MA 01302, (office: OTA, 20 Federal St., Suite 3, Greenfield MA 01301), phone 413-774-7511, fax 413-774-6432, e-mail ota@igc.apc.org.

The Packer (weekly; semi-weekly at end of each quarter/ $55 yr.) (special issues: "Packer's Produce Availability and Merchandising Guide" and "Fresh Trends: A Profile of the Fresh Produce Consumer" available separately), from Vance Publishing Corp., 10901 W. 84th Terr., Lenexa KS 66214-1631, phone 913-438-8700. (NAL S86.8 N483)

The Permaculture Activist (quarterly/ $16 yr.), from Permaculture Activist, P.O. Box 1209, Black Mountain NC 28711.

Rural Heritage (bimonthly/ $19 yr.), from Allan Damerow, Publisher, 281 Dean Ridge Lane, Gainesboro TN 38562-5039, phone 612-268-0655. (subscription includes annual supplement "The Evener Work Horse, Mule, and Oxen Directory and Guide") (NAL SF311 E9)

Small Farm Today (bimonthly/ $21), from Missouri Farm Publishing Inc., 3903 W. Ridge Trail Rd, Clark MO 65243, phone 800-633-2535 or 314-687-3525, fax 314-687-3148. (NAL S1.M57)

Small-Scale Agriculture Today (quarterly/ complimentary) from Office for Small Scale Agriculture (OSSA), c/o Bud Kerr, Editor, USDA/CSREES, Ag Box 2244, Rm. 3349, South Bldg., Washington DC 20250-2244, phone 202-720-5245, fax 202-205-2448, e-mail bkerr@reeusda.gov. (NAL aHD1751 S532)

The Stockman Grass Farmer (monthly/ $24.50 yr.) from Mississippi Valley Publishing Corporation, 5135 Galaxie Drive, Suite 300C, Jackson MS 39206, phone 601-981-4805, fax 601-981-8558, (to subscribe: SGF, P.O. Box 9607, Jackson MS 39286-9909, phone 800-748-9808, fax 601-981-8558). (NAL SF1.M5)

Sustainable Farming: The Magazine of Resource Efficient Agricultural Production (quarterly/ membership C$20 or C$17.12 yr., US rates on request), from Resource Efficient Agricultural Production (REAP)-Canada, Box 125, Glenaladale House, Ste-Anne-de-Bellevue, Quebec H9X 3V9, Canada, phone 514-398-7743, fax 514-398-7972 (advertising: phone 705-444-0923). (NAL S494.5.S86S96)

In addition to the above publications, many local/ regional organic grower and certification groups, university research projects, and regional environmental and SARE organizations provide excellent newsletters and other publications. Check directories for more contacts and information.

Electronic Resources

What are they? Where are they?

Increasingly, excellent agricultural information is available electronically: research papers, how-to publications, catalogs, market reports, surveys, directories, journals, pictures, even computer software. This flood of material is coming to us via computer diskettes and CD's, commercial on-line services, electronic bulletin board systems (BBS), as well as the Internet's electronic mail (e-mail), "gophers", telnet, and World Wide Web systems. The information superhighway has opened for business; it is ever-widening, and reaching new destinations every day.

Using the technology and information available electronically presents many challenges. For example, electronic media relay all kinds of information: valuable as well as inane, reliable as well as unsubstantiated. Sources change daily, reflecting "hot" topics, terminated programs, new technology, etc. Gathering information electronically is not like reading a book: advanced knowledge may precede the basics, the end of the story may come before the beginning. Copyright restrictions apply to electronic publications as well as to printed ones. Increased use of the Internet has slowed down response time considerably. Try non-business hours for fastest results.

For help, there are many excellent books on how to effectively use this constantly changing technology. They are available at libraries and bookstores. The Internet itself is a bottomless source of self-explanation, from "help" screens and searching tips to discussion groups and newsletters dedicated to using the Internet.

Gopher Servers

Non-graphical resources with many layers of information, often with links to other gophers. Many gopher sites are currently being displaced by the World Wide Web. To search for gopher information by subject/ keyword, try search engines called Veronica or Archie available on most gophers.

EcoGopher (University of Virginia): ecosys.drdr.Virginia.edu
Of interest: environmental interest group discussion groups and publications, also Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Toxics Factsheets.

Minnesota Gopher Central (University of Minnesota): gopher.tc.umn.edu
Of interest: large collection of gopher information including searching tools and links around the world.

North Carolina State University Cooperative Extension Service Gopher (NCSU/CES): gopher.ces.ncsu.edu
Of interest: main repository of materials originating from the Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program. From the main NCSU/CES menu, choose National CES Programs / Sustainable Agriculture. In addition to SARE materials (the Directory of Expertise, currently funded SARE projects, etc), one can search the Agricultural Marketing News publications, State Alternative Laws, Pesticide Information Publications (PIP's) from Oregon CES, and the past postings (archives) of several national discussion groups.

PENpages (Pennsylvania State University): psupen.psu.edu
Of interest: large number of agriculturally related resources and documents. You may search PENpages by keyword or alphabetically, as well as by other menu choices. "Small and Part-time Farming" holds full text documents from the USDA Office of Small Scale Agriculture and from the USDA Extension/ PSU Small and Part-time Farming Project Publications list.

USDA Extension Service Gopher: gopher.esusda.gov
Of interest: a searchable "Directory of Professional Workers in State Agriculture Experiment Stations and Other Cooperating State Institutions", USDA press releases, 1995 Farm Bill information, Extension's Water Quality database, and many state Extension Services.

World Wide Web/ Homepages
Graphics oriented, point-and-click information retrieval; homepages usually include links to related informational sites. Subject/keyword searching capability is essential. Among several effective searching tools available on the Web are Digital Corporation's Alta Vista site: http://www.altavista.digital.com or *Metacrawler: http://metacrawler.cs.Washington.edu: 8080/index.html*

agAccess: http://www.mother.com/agaccess
Includes comprehensive directory of US Organic Certification organizations, "Internships, Apprenticeships, and Working Farms Programs in the US" from ATTRA, in addition to their publications catalog/ information.

Aggie Horticulture (Texas A&M): http://aggie-horticulture.tamu.edu
Cooperative Extension information on crop production, etc., plus "Sustainable Practices for the South", IPM Network, and related topics.

Agricultural Network Information Center (AgNIC): http://www.agnic.org
The National Agricultural Library's cooperative effort to compile and link agricultural databases (AgDB), Directories of Expertise, and more.

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center (NAL/ ARS/ USDA):
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic
Full text AFSIC bibliographic and reference publications, links.

Aquatic Ecology at the Earth Centre: http://www.shef.ac.uk/~ec/aetec/index.html
One of the few places to find information on "Sustainable Freshwater Aquaculture" and "Sustainable Wetland Production".

Cascadian Farm: http://www.cfarm.com
Commercial site with a Healthfood Store database and a National Organic Standards Board (NOSB) update section.

Center for Sustainable Agricultural Systems (University of Nebraska, Lincoln):
http://ianrwww.unl.edu/ianr/csas
Newsletters, research reports, curriculum materials, etc.

Conservation Technology Information Center: http://www.ctic.purdue.edu/ctic.html
National Crop Residue Survey database and map, National Watershed Network, newsletters.

Cooperative Extension System Information Servers: http://www.esusda.gov/partners/ces-locs.htm
Linked directory of US and Canadian Extension On-line resources, including publications, by state/province.

EcoNet's Agriculture & Trade Directory: http://www.igc.apc.org/igc/www.agritrade.html

IFOAM '96 Book of Abstracts: http://ecoweb.dk/english/ifoam/conf96/index.html
Hundreds of abstracts of papers, posters, etc. presented at the International Federation of Organic Agricultural Movements Conference in Denmark, August 1996. Author and subject indexes included.

Global Entomology Agriculture Research Server (ARS/ USDA): http://gears.tucson.ars.ag.gov/
Text, pictures, and sounds of insects, especially bees.

Midwest Organic Alliance: http://www.midwestorganic.org
Background information for consumers, producers and marketers.

National Integrated Pest Management Network: http://www.reeusda.gov/ipm/ipm-home.htm

New Crops Information System: http://newcrop.hort.purdue.edu
Searchable databases CropSEARCH, CropExpert, CropREFERENCE, plus a U.S. FarmMARKET directory, newsletters, and calendar.

New Hope Group On-line: http://devel.newhope.com/public/Home_Page.html
Commercial site, full-text articles from their publications, commercial links, etc.

Noah's Ark: An Organic Farmer's Homepage: http://www.rain.org/~sals/my.html

Not Just Cows: A Guide to Internet/Bitnet Resources in Agriculture and Related Sciences, by Wilfred Drew: http://www.snymor.edu/~drewwe/njc/njcbeta/njcmain.htm
Just what it says; especially good for listing of agriculture-related Libraries.

Organic Agriculture and Permaculture at Sunsite (University of North Carolina): http://sunsite.unc.edu/london/index.html
Very useful page of links: composting, biodynamics, permaculture, vermiculture, community supported agriculture, livestock, and more.

Organic Farmers Marketing Association (OFMA): http://www.iquest.net/ofma/
Organic laws including NOSB documents, and text of National Organic Marketing Cooperative Feasibility Study.

Organic Trading and Information Center: http://www.organicfood.com/welcome.html
Legislative issues, resource groups, certifying organization as well as consumer and commercial information and links.

Permaculture International: http://nornet.nor.com.au/environment/perma/
Global directory, mail order resources, more.

RotWeb: http://net.indra.com/~topsoil/Compost_Menu.html
Composting how-to and links.

Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN): http://www.ces.ncsu.edu/san/index.html
SARE research and grant information, SAN Directory of Expertise, sanet-mg archives, more.

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program (SAREP) (University of California, Davis): http://www.sarep.ucdavis.edu/
Two downloadable databases: Cover Crop (PC & Mac) and Dairy Debate (Mac only).

Urban Agriculture Notes (City Farmer, Canada Office of Urban Agriculture): http://www.city farmer.org/

Water Quality Information Center (ARS/ USDA/ NAL): http://www.nal.usda.gov/wqic
Full text bibliographic publications, searchable WQ databases including Agricultural Waste Database from Auburn University.

Discussion Groups/ Mailing Lists:
Receive newsletters and calendars; converse interactively with others. To subscribe generally requires a request to a computer listserv or listproc or majordomo address. For example, to subscribe to Graze-l, below, you would send in the message portion of an e-mail message the phrase "subscribe graze-l your first name your last name" to the subscription address. Use only these words (substituting your own first name and last name), without the quotation marks. Subsequent messages to the group are addressed to the list name and address.

There are several directories of discussion lists on the Internet. Try Clark Consulting International, Inc. for a good one on agriculture: http://www.interaccess.com/consulting/ maillist.html. Here is a sampling.

CSA-l (Community Supported Agriculture networking): Subscriptions to: listproc@prairienet.org
Discussion mailings to: csa-l@prairienet.org

Forage-mg (Forage production/ management): Subscriptions to: almanac@oes.orst.edu
Discussion mailings to: forage-mg@oes.orst.edu

Graze-l (Rotational grazing and seasonal dairying): Subscriptions to: listserv@taranaki.ac.nz
Discussion messages to: graze-l@taranaki.ac.nz

Permaculture-mg (US permaculture discussion): Subscriptions to: almanac@ces.ncsu.edu
Discussion messages to: permaculture-mg@ces.ncsu.edu

Smallfruit-mg (berries, grapes, etc. for growers and researchers): Subscriptions to: almanac@esusda.gov Discussion messages to: smallfruit-mg@esusda.gov

Sanet-mg (Sustainable Agriculture Network-SAN): Subscriptions to: almanac@ces.ncsu.edu
Discussion messages to: sanet-mg@ces.ncsu.edu (An informational pamphlet, *Getting Started Electronically with the Sustainable Agriculture Network is available through SAN's NAL office. [Contact: SAN Coordinator, National Agricultural Library, 10301 Baltimore Ave., Room 304, Beltsville MD 20705-2351, phone 301-504-6425, e-mail san@nal.usda.gov]

Electronic Journals and Newsletters:
Full-text publications, selected articles, and abstracts of many periodicals are available. You may also subscribe to hard copy publications via the Internet. Two good directories: Online Agricultural Journals and Magazines: http://www.interaccess.com/consulting/agpubs.html and Oxbridge Communication's Media Finder Directory of Newsletters, Directory of Catalogs, and Directory of Magazines: http://www.oxbridge.com/index.html

A selection of current and back issues of environment-related journals, including several on alternative/sustainable agriculture is available via the ***Sustainable Earth Electronic Library (SEEL)****, URL http://www. envirolink.org/pubs/index.html*

Computer Software for Research and for Farm Management:
Computer programs that help with farm planning and management have been around for some time. Here is one that deals with environmentally friendly practices, and was developed under a Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) grant.

PLANETOR Microcomputer Software Module. (for "ecologically sound and economically viable" crop production; demonstration disk available) [Contact: Center for Farm Financial Management, 249 Classroom Office Bldg., Univ. of MN, St. Paul MN 55108, 612-625-1964 or 1-800-234-1111]

Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems

Videocassettes added to the National Agricultural Library collection
since January 1995
Updates Special Reference Brief 95-03

Compiled by Mary V. Gold
May 2000
Alternative Farming Systems Information Center

Videocassettes in the NAL Collection Pertaining to Alternative Farming Systems

1. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2687**
1 Plan.
Pennsylvania Association of Conservation Districts (Pennsylvania, 1991?).
1 videocassette (11 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses how to provide farmers and land owners with a single coordinated program to guide their day to day management, plan for long term improvements, protect natural resources, and stay in compliance with government rules and regulations.

2. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1941**
Acres of Oysters.
Studio One (1992?). Distributed by Atlantic Coast Shellfish Producers Association: Soundkeeper Fund.
1 videocassette (ca. 33 min.): sd., col.
"0164.".
Abstract: Presents an overview of the oyster industry in Connecticut through interviews with oyster farmers and Connecticut Dept. of Agriculture, Aquaculture Division inspectors.

3. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2504**
Agricultural Treasures of Japan.
Norin Suisansho (Japan, 1991?). Distributed by The Corporation.
1 videocassette (ca. 21 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows some of the agricultural products that Japan exports. These include shitake mushrooms, fuji apples, and 20th century pears.

4. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2527**
Agricultural Wetlands: Values for Landowners.
Quality Productions. Producer/director, Dan Denney (Ithaca, NY, 1995?). Distributed by Cornell Cooperative Extension.
1 videocassette (ca. 38 min.): sd., col. 1 brochure.
Consists of a 10 minute promotional presentation for agriculturists and a 28 minute feature for general audiences.
Abstract: Highlights wetland ecology, management, and programs administered by public and private organizations to assist rural landowners who wish to conserve wetlands on private holdings.

5. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2523**
Agroecology in Accion: Experiencias En El Diseno De Una Agricultura Sustentable.
Miguel A. Altieri (Berkeley, CA?, 1996?).
1 videocassette (45 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Miguel Altieri discusses fundamental agroecological principles necessary for the transformation of high input degrading agriculture into low input resource conserving agriculture.

6. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2118**
Alabama, the Place for Aquaculture!
Alabama Power Company. Video Services (Alabama, c1991). Distributed by Alabama Power Video Services.
1 videocassette (4 min., 9 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Profiles the size of the Alabama aquaculture industry and its infrastructure.

7. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2482**
Aquatic Ecosystems.
Coronet (Northbrook, IL, 1993). Distributed by Coronet/MTI Film & Video.
4 videocassettes (55 min.): sd. col. 4 discussion guides.
Abstract: Illustrates the basic physical features of freshwater and marine ecosystems as well as the plants and animals that depend on the ecosystems for survival. Examines the effects of human activities on the ecosystems.

8. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2486**
Baitfish Culture in the South.
Texas Agricultural Extension Service (College Station, TX, 1996). Distributed by Texas Agricultural Extension Service.
1 videocassette (30 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Funded through the Southern Regional Aquaculture Center.
Abstract: The golden shiner, fathead minnow, and goldfish comprise the majority of fish raised for bait in the South. This video covers the following steps in the production of those three species: facilities, reproduction, pond management, diseases, pests and problems, harvesting, holding and transport, and marketing.

9. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2166**
Basic Herding.
Burton J. Smith and Graziers Hui (Kamuela, HI, c1993). Distributed by Graziers Hui.
1 videocassette (ca. 50 min.): sd., col. 1 manual + 1 booklet.
Abstract: Discusses stockmanship, herding, and handling of cattle. Includes practice sessions and practical exercises.

10. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2557**
Bay Scapes.
Alliance for the Chesapeake Bay (Richmond, VA, 1994?). Distributed by The Alliance.
1 videocassette (25 min.): sd., col. 7 brochures + 1 pamphlet
Abstract: Assists homeowners in making practical and environmentally sound decisions regarding their landscapes to reduce nonpoint source pollution that would effect the Chesapeake Bay.

11. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2509**
Beekeeping in Northern Climates.
Marla Spivak and University of Wisconsin Extension. Cooperative Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, 1996). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (40 min.): sd., col. 1 manual (68 p.: ill. ; 28 cm.)
"VH-6553.".
Abstract: Dr. Marla Spivak discusses basic principles of beekeeping. These include good equipment, good location, queens should be young and prolific, and hives should be disease and mite free.

12. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2209**
Best Management Practices for Improved Water Quality.
University of Illinois at Urbana Champaign. Cooperative Extension Service (Urbana, IL, c1991). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (ca. 24 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses methods farmers can use to improve water quality. These include establishing a regular soil testing schedule, managing nitrogen application, constructing buffer strips to protect streams, and using conservation tillage systems.

13. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2453**
Best Management Practices in Minnesota Forestry.
Minnesota Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, 1991). Distributed by Minnesota Extension Service, University of Minnesota: Educational Development System.
1 videocassette (20 min.): sd., col.
Produced at KDLH-TV, Duluth, MN.
Abstract: Explains the best management practices for forestry in order to reduce or prevent nonpoint source water pollution.

14. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2510**
Best Management Practices for Nitrogen Fertilizer and Water Use in Irrigated Agriculture.
California. Dept. of Food and Agriculture. Fertilizer Research and Education Program (Sacramento, CA, 1993). Distributed by The Program.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col. 1 study guide (5 leaves ; 28 cm.)
Abstract: Provides growers, consultants and students with information on the efficient use of fertilizers. Nitrogen and water applications, rates and timing; soil and plant monitoring and other practices are discussed in detail. Factors that contribute to nitrate leaching are explored and nitrate sensitive areas in California are also discussed.

15. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2718**
Billion Dollar Crop.
Film Australia Pty Limited (Sydney, N.S.W.?, 1994). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (55 min.): sd., col
Abstract: Although hemp, or cannabis fibre, in its non-toxic form has been used successfully in the production of horse-bedding, building material, clothing fabric, and paper-making, it is a prohibited plant. Doctors, agronomists, farmers and manufacturers comment on its value, especially to the Australian agricultural economy. Archival film supports the points made.

16. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2427**
Biodiversity for Forests and Farms.
Cornell University. Educational Television Center (Ithaca, NY, c1996). Distributed by Educational

Television Center, Media Services, Cornell University: Cornell Cooperative Extension.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Presents concepts of ecosystem management: conservation of biodiversity, specific management for forests and farms. Contains interviews with wildlife and forest ecologists, farmers, and forest owners.

17. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2467**
Biological Control: Learning to Live With the Natural Order.
National Biological Control Institute (Riverdale, MD, 1995, c1993). Distributed by The Institute.
1 videocassette (25 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Hosts, Dale Bradley and Jami Morgan, discuss biological control including a brief history as well as aphid control through predator mites, parasitic wasps, ladybird beetle larva and lacewing larva. The video also describes the development of biological control of the Russian wheat aphid for the United States.

18. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2049**
Biological Control of Weeds in Montana.
Jim Story, Robert M. Nowierski, Charles Quimby, and Montana State University (Bozeman, MT, c1993). Distributed by Montana State University.
1 videocassette (17 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Program looks at research being done on biological control of rangeland weeds in Montana such as spotted knapweed, leafy spurge and dalmatian toadflax. Scientists Jim Story, Robert Nowierski, and Charles Quimby discuss the work being done by their respective institutions, the Montana Agricultural Experiment Station, Montana State University Entomology Research Laboratory and the USDA-ARS Rangeland Weeds Laboratory.

19. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2398**
Biorational Pest Control in the 90's.
Sandoz Crop Protection Corporation (Des Plaines, IL, c1990). Distributed by The Corporation.
1 videocassette (11 min., 27 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses research efforts at Sandoz aimed at finding new ways of controlling pests without any effect on the environment.

20. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2757**
Biotechnology in Agriculture: Challenges for the Future: a USDA Millennium Discussion, March 19, 1999, Jefferson Auditorium.
USDA Millennium Discussion (1st: 1999) (Washington, DC, 1999). Distributed by USDA.
1 videocassette (101 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses the transformation in American agriculture due to crop biotechnology.

21. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2439**
California Farmed Striped Bass.
Craig Carlson and Kent Seafarms Corporation (San Diego, CA, 1996?). Distributed by The Corporation.
1 videocassette (7 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows the production facilities at Kent Seafarms Corporation where three million pounds of striped bass are produced annually.

22. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2623**
Catfish Farming in the South. Rev. 1997.
Mississippi State University. Cooperative Extension Service (College Station, TX, 1997). Distributed by Texas Agricultural Extension Service.
1 videocassette (22 min., 25 sec.): sd., col.
Funded through the Southern Regional Aquaculture Center.
Abstract: Provides an overall view of the catfish industry in the southern United States. Covers areas of production cost, pond and water management, pond site selection and construction, hatchery information, and transport of catfish.

23. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2843**
Close to the Ground.
Land Stewardship Project and Blue Moon Productions for the Land Stewardship Project (Lewiston, MN, 1997, c1998?). Distributed by Land Stewardship Project.
1 videocassette (25 min.): sd., col.
"This video shows how farmers and resource professionals can join together to develop ways for farm families to monitor changes in their management practices"--Container.

24. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2246**
Commercial Hydroponic Tomato Production.
On Sat One Television Productions (Anderson, SC, 1995?). Distributed by On Sat One Television Productions.
1 videocassette (ca. 40 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes various soilless techniques to produce fresh market tomatoes. These include perlite culture, sand culture, sawdust culture, and nutrient film technique.

25. **NAL Call No.: Kit no. 287**
Community Kitchens.
Laura Kalina and Kamloops FoodShare (Kamloops, BC, Canada, 1994?). Distributed by Kamloops FoodShare.
1 videocassette, 3 booklets.
Titles on booklets: Community kitchens, cookbook and shopping guide; Community kitchens, leader's guide; Building food security in Canada.
Abstract: Contains information necessary to set up a community kitchen. Explains what a community kitchen is, who joins, and how it benefits its members. Also contains information on hunger and food security.

26. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2742**
Composting for Pork Producers.
National Pork Producers Council (Des Moines, IA, c1997). Distributed by The Council.
1 videocassette (ca. 14 min.): sd., col.
"Composting basics"--Container.
Abstract: Shows how composting can transform swine mortality and manure into a state where storage, handling, and land application can be achieved without adversely effecting the environment.

27. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1942**
Composting Poultry Mortality.
University of Maryland Cooperative Extension Service (College Park, MD, c1992). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (17 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Demonstrates the applications of composting as a practical, economical, and environmentally safe alternative method of disposing of normal poultry farm mortality.

28. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2797**
Conjunctive Use: a Comprehensive Approach to Water Planning.
Water Education Foundation (Sacramento, CA , c1999). Distributed by Water Education Foundation.
1 videocassette (11 min.): sd., col.
"This program is a production of the Water Education Foundation with assistance from the CALFED Bay-Delta Program.".
Abstract: Discusses methods of coordinating management of surface water supplies with ground water supplies.

29. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2020**
Corn and Soybeans. Fertility, Insects, Compaction, Plus Ridge-Till.
Randall Reeder and Ohio State University Extension (Columbus, OH, c1994). Distributed by Ohio State University Extension.
1 videocassette (120 min.): sd., col.
Title from container.
Abstract: One of a series of programs broadcast via satellite. Includes 21 speakers and includes topics such as manure management, fertilizer management, insect management, ridge-till and no-till compaction. Under ridge-till topics such as machinery selection and modification; cultivation, rotary hoeing, and herbicides; and irrigation are covered.

30. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2019**
Corn and Soybeans. Mulch-Till and Subsoiling.
Randall Reeder and Ohio State University Extension (Columbus, OH, c1994). Distributed by Ohio State University Extension.
1 videocassette (120 min.): sd., col.
Title from container.
Abstract: One of a series of programs broadcast via satellite. Includes 16 speakers and covers topics such as machinery and residue management, subsoiling and deep tillage, weed control and herbicides, and machinery economics.

31. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2018**
Corn and Soybeans. No-Till and Zone-Till.
Randall Reeder and Ohio State University Extension (Columbus, OH, c1994). Distributed by Ohio State University Extension.

1 videocassette (120 min.): sd., col.
Title from container.
Abstract: One of a series of programs broadcast via satellite. Includes 22 speakers and covers topics such as machinery selection and management, harvest, weed control and herbicides, and economics and earthworms.

32. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2677**
Creating a Sustainable Civilization: an Introduction to Holistic Decision Making.
Allan Savory and Center for Holistic Management (Albuquerque, NM, c1996). Distributed by Center for Holistic Management.
1 videocassette (ca. 85 min.): sd., col
"Based on a lecture at the University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, August 1995"--Container.
Abstract: Allan Savory makes a compelling case for the need to change the way we make decisions and introduces you to the new decision-making process on which holistic resource management is based.

33. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2651**
Creative Cover Cropping in Annual Farming Systems.
University of California. Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program (Davis, CA, c1993). Distributed by University of California Communication Services.
1 videocassette (24 min.): sd., col.
"93-V.".
Abstract: Discusses various types of cover crops such as perennial sods, green manures, green leaf manures, catch crops, and scratch crops, and the benefits to growing them.

34. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2183**
Cultural Weed Control in Vegetable Crops.
Visual Media University of California (Davis, CA, c1993). Distributed by University of California, Visual Media.
1 videocassette (ca. 36 min.): sd., col.
Consists of two 18 minute versions. The first is a straight forward presentation. The second provides a lighthearted "down-home" narration style.
Abstract: Describes proven and experimental methods of controlling weeds. These include cover cropping, crop rotation, solarization, flame weeders, steam weeders, and the use of grazing animals.

35. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2702**
Deadly Fields.
Nebraska Educational Television Network (Lincoln, NE, c1995). Distributed by GPN.
1 videocassette (58 min., 6 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses the risks to farmers when pesticides are used and suggests alternatives to using them.

36. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1955**
Depleting the Gene Bank.
Films for the Humanities (Princeton, NJ, c1990). Distributed by Films for the Humanities & Sciences, Inc.
1 videocassette (26 min.): sd., col.
Originally copyrighted in 1988.
Abstract: Speaks to the problems and dangers of selecting and breeding better and better, and fewer and fewer varieties.

37. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2654**
Dig It!: Biointensive Sustainable Mini-Farming.
John Jeavons (Willits, CA, c1997). Distributed by John Jeavons.
1 videocassette (ca. 2 hrs.): sd., col.
Abstract: Learn how to prepare your soil much more easily and effectively. Using double-dug beds and the Biointensive method you can get higher yields while conserving the Earth's valuable resources. As you use Biointensive mini-farming techniques you will be actively participating in a worldwide movement to create a sustainable soil base for future generations.

38. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2710**
Eastern Gamagrass: From the Past to the Future.
United States. Natural Resources Conservation Service. Mid Atlantic Interdisciplinary Resource Team (Dover, DE, 1998?). Distributed by The Team.
1 videocassette (17 min., 45 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses the potential of eastern gamagrass as a forage crop, a tool to improve soil, and as a buffer plant.

39. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2668**
Emu Farming: A Guide to Hatching and Raising Emu.
1993?).
1 videocassette (ca. 30 min.): sd., col.
"Handling, tattooing, and sexing emu"--Cassette label.

40. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2783**
Environmental Liability.
Industrial Training Systems Corporation (Marlton, NJ, c1991). Distributed by The Corporation.
1 videocassette (20 min.): sd., col. 1 leader's guide.
Abstract: Discusses the role that employees play in ensuring a company's compliance with environmental laws and regulations.

41. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2044**
Farm Animal Welfare.
Fisheries and Food. Video Unit Great Britain. Ministry of Agriculture (London?, 199-?). Distributed by Ministry of Agriculture Fisheries and Food.
1 videocassette (17 min., 11 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses various issues of animal welfare for farm animals in Great Britain.

42. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2222**
Farmer to Farmer: Rotational Grazing: Talking With New York's Grassland Farmers.
Catskill Center for Conservation and Development (Arkville, NY, c1994). Distributed by Catskill Center for Conservation and Development.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Grassland farmers from New York state talk about rotational grazing of livestock. Video footage shows examples of their pastures, fencing arrangements, etc.

43. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2648**
Farming a New Fish: Hybrid Striped Bass.
North Carolina State University. Agricultural Communications Video Productions. (Raleigh, NC, c1995). Distributed by Agricultural Communications Video Productions, NCSU.
1 videocassette (22 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes how to build fish ponds and the harvesting and marketing of hybrid striped bass.

44. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2032**
Farming in Harmony With the River
Researched and written by Robin E. Kinney (St. Paul, MN, c1994). Distributed by Minnesota Department of Agriculture.
1 videocassette (12 minutes): sd., col. ; ½ in.
Abstract: Discusses the impact of farming on water quality and describes agricultural practices that protect the environment.

45. **NAL Call No.: ArU QH87. 3.F37 1991**
Farming With Wetlands: How to Turn Those Nuisance Areas into Profit for Farmers While Improving the Environment.
Sierra Club. National Wetlands Committee (Cincinnati, OH, c1991). Distributed by Videoworks.
1 videocassette (9 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Farming techniques compatible with habitat enhancement and wetland management.

46. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2396**
Farmscaping.
San Luis Video Publishing (Los Osos, CA , c1996). Distributed by San Luis Video Publishing.
1 videocassette (33 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows tactics that enhance a farm's biological diversity, enrich its soil fertility, drainage & tilth, achieve biological weed and insect pest management, and reduce the need for agricultural chemicals.

47. **NAL Call No.: Kit no. 185**
Field Scout Manual.
Robert J. Wright, Keith J. Jarvi, Ronald C. Seymour, and Nebraska Cooperative Extension Service (Lincoln, NE, 1990?). Distributed by Cooperative Extension Service, University of Nebraska--Lincoln, IANR.
1 set of reading materials, 2 videocassettes.
Videocassettes titles: Insect scouting in corn, and Insect scouting in soybeans & alfalfa.
Abstract: Identifies various field crop pests, weeds, and diseases, and discusses how integrated

pest management can work to control and reduce crop losses. Focuses on corn, sorghum, soybeans, alfalfa and wheat, as well as some specialty crops. Emphasizes the importance of a regular scouting program to identify pests and diseases.

48. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2522**
The Flame.
Dick Young and Dick Young Productions. (Little Rock, AR, c1995). Distributed by Heifer Project International.
1 videocassette (14 min., 27 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows how one of Heifer Project's programs, Women in Livestock Development (WiLD) is assisting women by providing them with animals which will produce food for them as well as an income.

49. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1313**
Food for Thought
Robert Dean, Roger Bingham, and Bullfrog Films (Oley, PA, c1990). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (29 min.): sd., col. ; ½ in.
Abstract: This film features science writer Roger Bingham in a update of information first presented in Bullfrog's "Diet for a small planet" about the environmental consequences of a meat-centered diet. Using the example of an automobile, Bingham explains the inefficiency of using meat as fuel for the human body, especially in the light of the environmental impact of raising all that meat - from loss of topsoil and groundwater depletion and pollution, to methane's contribution to global warming, and the growing gap between the rich and poor nations.

50. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2822**
Food Safety: Pesticides, Antibiotics, Hormones, Food Additives, and Biotechnology.
Health Science Institute (McLean, VA, c1997). Distributed by The Institute.
1 videocassette (15 min.): sd., col. 1 teacher's guide (42 p.)
Abstract: Introduces popular concerns about carcinogens, pesticides, antibiotics, hormones and food additives. Discusses HACCP systems, and how food is monitored by the FDA, EPA and USDA to ensure its safety from crops to your table.

51. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2709**
Forest Stewardship at the Urban/Rural Interface.
Pennsylvania State University. College of Agricultural Sciences (University Park, PA , c1992). Distributed by The College.
1 videocassette (26 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
"Development and funding of this video was coordinated by: the Pocono Northeast Resource Conservation and Development RC&D Council for and in cooperation with the Pike County Conservation District"--Container.

52. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2487**
Fresh From the Family Farm: Where Our Food Comes From.
ZMedia Inc. (United States, c1995). Distributed by ZMedia Inc.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Aimed at children, this video shows how fruit and vegetables grow on a family farm.

53. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2395**
From Barnyard to Field: Manure Management and Clean Water.
University of Wisconsin Extension (Madison, WI, c1990). Distributed by The University.
1 videocassette (16 min., 55 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes how the proper handling of manure by farmers can help maintain good water quality.

54. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2556**
From the Ground Up.
Green & Growing (Association) (Winnipeg, Man., Canada, c1994). Distributed by Green & Growing.
1 videocassette (28 min., 28 sec.): sd., col. 1 teacher's guide (45 p. ; 28 cm.)
Abstract: Discusses sustainable development issues in modern agriculture in North America through interviews with farmers, agricultural experts, and students.

55. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2068**
Garden Song: Alan Chadwick's Vision of Abundance.
Alan Chadwick and Bullfrog Films, Inc. (Oley, PA, c1980). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.

1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Focuses on actor, gardener, and inventor, Alan Chadwick, who has developed an agricultural technique that produces four times the amount of food of conventional gardening methods and that requires only a fraction of the chemical and technological resources.

56. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2572**
Genetic Time Bomb.
Oregon Public Broadcasting (Ben Lomond, CA, c1994). Distributed by Video Project.
1 videocassette (50 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Explores the loss of genetic diversity in food crops as farmers around the world grow hybrids instead of local varieties. Looks at efforts to collect, save, grow, and distribute rare and threatened seeds.

57. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2665**
Goat Breeding and Kid Rearing.
Hilary Matthews and Farming Press Videos (Ipswich, UK; Alexandria Bay, NY, c1995). Distributed by Diamond Farm Enterprises (in No. America).
1 videocassette (63 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: This video focuses on the management of breeding for the domestic goatkeeper. It covers mating, pregnancy, kidding, and care of young stock. Hilary Matthews demonstrates the techniques that she has successfully used for many years to control the breeding cycle, detect pregnancy accurately, and keep a healthy breeding goat herd.

58. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2179**
Good Farming in Karst Country.
University of Illinois at Urbana Champaign. Office of Agricultural Communication & Education. Information Services (Urbana, IL, c1992). Distributed by University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, College of Agriculture, Office of Agricultural Communications & Education, Information Services.
1 videocassette (20 min.): sd., col.
"OACE #002"--Container.
Abstract: Discusses techniques farmers can use to protect groundwater and reduce soil erosion in karst areas. These include using no-tillage or conservation tillage, controlling the use of nitrogen fertilizers, and stabilizing sinkholes.

59. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2411**
The Greening of Cuba.
Institute for Food and Development Policy (Oakland, CA, c1996). Distributed by Food First.
1 videocassette (38 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: This video profiles Cuban farmers and scientists working to reinvent a sustainable agriculture, based on ecological principles and local knowledge rather than imported agricultural inputs. In their quest for self-sufficiency, Cubans combine time-tested traditional methods with cutting-edge biotechnology.

60. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2787**
The Ground Water Adventures of Walter Wet.
Passic River Coalition (Basking Ridge, NJ?, c1998).
1 videocassette (ca. 13 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Walter Wet describes the hydrologic cycle of water and how we can protect our water supply.

61. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2795**
Groundwater: Water for California's Future.
Water Education Foundation (Sacramento, CA, c1998). Distributed by Water Education Foundation.
1 videocassette (15 min., 40 sec.): sd., col.
Cassette label shows c1999.

62. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2027**
Growing Season.
Bullfrog Films, Inc. (Oley, PA, c1992). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (25 min.): sd., col. 1 pamphlet.
Abstract: The horticulture program at San Francisco County Jail is teaching prisoners to care for plants, animals, & themselves so they can get a new sense of self-worth & respect for life. The program, created by Catherine Sneed, now goes outside the jail to community gardens.

63. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2658**
Growing Shiitake Mushrooms in the Mid-South.
Shirley Community Service & Development Corporation (Shirley, AR, c1996). Distributed by

Shirley Community Service & Development Corp.
1 videocassette (27 min., 39 sec.): sd., col.

64. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2743**
A Guide to Making Safe Smoked Fish.
North Central Regional Aquaculture Center (Ames, IA, c1999). Distributed by The Center.
1 videocassette (21 min., 32 sec.): sd., col.
Funded in part by the North Central Regional Aquaculture Center, USDA-CSREES grant #97-38500-3957.
Abstract: Shows the steps necessary to make safe smoked fish. Provides directions for brining, smoking, cooling, packaging and labeling, and cold storage to ensure safety.

65. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2219**
A Guide to Poultry Composting.
Polk County Soil & Water Conservation District (Benton, TN, c1994). Distributed by Polk County Soil & Water Conservation District.
1 videocassette (ca. 14 min.): sd., col. 1 brochure (10 identical copies).
Abstract: Describes how to design a poultry compost facility.

66. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2695**
H2O 2010.
Water Education Foundation (Sacramento, CA , c1992). Distributed by The Foundation.
1 videocassette (ca. 24 min.): sd., col. 1 teacher's guide (18 p. ; 28 cm.)
Abstract: Discusses issues that revolve around water and its use in California.

67. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2649**
Harness the Wind.
National Film Board of Canada (Oley, PA, c1978). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (12 min.): sd., col.
Intended audience: Junior high school students through adults.
Abstract: A lively, animated program that traces the history of wind machines from the ancient Persians to the present. Also shows many variations of the standard horizontal and vertical shaft windmills.

68. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2199**
Hartz Desire and Steiner Farms.
John Hughes, Ohio Ecological Food and Farm Association, and Shoe String Productions (Vienna, OH, 1989?). Distributed by Shoe String Productions.
1 videocassette (29 min.): sd., col. ; ½ in.
Abstract: Presents a tour of the Steiner and Hartz Desire farms in Ohio.

69. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1966**
Hemp for Victory.
United States. Dept. of Agriculture (St. Paul, MN, 1990?). Distributed by The Institute for Hemp.
1 videocassette (15 min.): sd., b&w
Originally produced in 1942 as a motion picture.
Abstract: Raw fiber was not available from the Philippines during World War II. This program, intended to encourage farmers to grow hemp in support of the war effort, presents aspects of the early history and the commercial cultivation and production of hemp.

70. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2740**
Here and Now.
Hound's Head Productions (c1989).
1 videocassette (ca. 13 min.): sd., col.

71. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2234**
Home Composting: "Turning Your Spoils to Soil".
Connecticut. Dept. of Environmental Protection. Recycling Program (Hartford, CT, c1991). Distributed by The Department.
1 videocassette (17 min.): sd., col.

72. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2763**
Homecoming--: Sometimes I Am Haunted by Memories of Red Dirt and Clay.
Charlene Gilbert and Kinfolk Productions, Inc. (San Francisco, CA, c1998). Distributed by California Newsreel.
1 videocassette (57 min.): sd., col. with b&w sequences
Abstract: Documentary examines the history of land ownership and rural economics in the South among Afro-Americans from the end of the Civil War to the present. Includes archival footage and photographs and commentary.

73. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2788**
The Human Electrical System and Flower Essences.
Machaelle Small Wright and Perelandra, Ltd. (Warrenton, VA, c1998). Distributed by Perelandra, Ltd.
1 videocassette (137 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Talk given by Machaelle Small Wright, researcher into both the human electrical system and flower essences.

74. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2181**
Integrated Pest Management: A Chance for the Future Produced for Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.
United States. Dept. of Agriculture. Video & Film Division. Writer, Lynn Wyvill, Video and Film Division (Washington, D.C.?, 1992?). Distributed by The Division.
1 videocassette (ca. 21 min.): sd., col., b&w sequence
Abstract: Discusses alternatives to pesticides in combating harmful pest infestations. These include the sterile male technique, parasites, and crop rotation.

75. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2048**
Integrated Pest Management in Agriculture.
Joe Clokey, Jim Harrigan, and San Luis Video Productions (San Luis Obispo, CA, c1990). Distributed by San Luis Video.
1 videocassette (29 min.): sd., col.
Originally produced by San Luis Video Productions; issued by San Luis Video Publishing.
Abstract: Describes why integrated pest management was developed and presents basic strategies of "IPM", including proper pest identification, monitoring, biological, physical and chemical control. Illustrates the use of "IPM" on orchards, vegetables, field crops and strawberries.

76. **NAL Call No.: S441.S855**
Integrating New Cultivation Technology and Photocontrol of Weeds to Reduce Herbicide Use in Vegetables.
R. R. Bellinder (1996). Distributed by Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education SARE research projects Northeast Region.
SARE Project Number: LNE94-40. Record includes computer diskette. Date of report is December 12, 1996. The 14 page report also includes a Videocassette entitled "New tools for mechanical weed control in vegetables".

77. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2134**
An Introduction to Herbs.
Herbfarm (Fall City, WA , c1993). Distributed by The Herbfarm.
1 videocassette (50 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: You'll learn growing, harvesting, preserving and cooking with: culinary herbs, perennial herbs, shade herbs, salad herbs, tea herbs, everlasting herbs, and dessert herbs.

78. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2533**
Kansas Farm Women: Growing Out of the Tilth: A Multi-Image Production.
Cynthia Vagnetti and Kansas Rural Center. (United States, c1992).
1 videocassette (18 min., 35 sec.): sd., b&w
"Sponsored by the Kansas Rural Center.".

79. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2520**
Keeping Ducks: Beautiful Comical Things.
Tom Bartlett and Farming Press Videos Farming Press Videos (Ipswich, UK ; Alexandria Bay, NY, c1996). Distributed by Diamond Farm Enterprises (in No. America).
1 videocassette (ca. 48 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Tom Bartlett explains his own methods of feeding, housing, breeding, and generally caring for ducks on the farm and at show.

80. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2319**
Keeping Nature in Balance.
Jay. Novacek and National Cattlemen's Association (Engelwood, CO, c1994). Distributed by National Cattlemen's Association.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: This documentary features seven award-winning cattlemen and the steps their families are taking to ensure the land is productive for this and future generations.

81. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2431**
Keeping Our Shores: Shoreland Best Management Practices.
Minnesota Arrowhead Water Quality Team (Two Harbors, MN, c1995). Distributed by Lake County Soil & Water Conservation District.
1 videocassette (ca. 16 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses preferred actions that shoreland property owners can take to reduce their impact upon the environment. Topics covered include landscaping, septic systems, and lawn care.

82. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2435**
Kenaf Harvesting.
(United States, 1994?).
1 videocassette (4 min., 53 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses harvesting of kenaf in southeast Texas and a new harvester designed specifically for kenaf is demonstrated.

83. **NAL Call No.: Kit no. 291**
Know Your Watershed.
Conservation Technology Information Center (West Lafayette, IN, 1995?). Distributed by Conservation Technology Information Center.
1 videocassette (VHS), 6 sheets, 6 booklets, 1 pamphlet (10 identical copies).
Abstract: Describes what a watershed is and how people can join with state and federal agencies to form a partnership to protect the water quality of their watershed.

84. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2638**
Land Application: Water Reuse in Agriculture.
Creative Educational Video, Inc. (Lubbock, TX, c1995). Distributed by Creative Educational Video.
1 videocassette (23 min.): sd., col.
"Tape #727.".
Abstract: Examines the agricultural reuse method at Lubbock, Texas.

85. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2221**
Land Link: A Program to Increase Opportunities for Beginning Farmers and Encourage Sustainable Agriculture.
Land Link Realty (Walthill, NE, 1991?). Distributed by Land Link Realty.
1 videocassette (ca. 29 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Consists of a series of reports about Land Link (a pilot program in Nebraska that matches up older farmers nearing retirement with younger farmers struggling to get started) that originally aired on television.

86. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2536**
LEPA: Saving Water for Future Producers.
Texas Tech University. Water Resources Center (Lubbock, TX, c1993). Distributed by Video Services, Texas Tech University.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Examines the use of Low Energy, Precision Application, or LEPA, center pivot irrigation systems on farms on the Texas High Plains. LEPA is an irrigation and tillage management system designed to eliminate nearly all evaporation and deep percolation losses. Presents various aspects of LEPA center pivots for producers to consider to be more informed consumers.

87. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2356**
Llama Reproduction: A Neonatal Clinic.
LaRue W. Johnson and Hartworks Video (Olympia, WA , c1989). Distributed by Juniper Ridge Press.
2 videocassettes (3 hr., 34 min.): sd., col. 1 booklet (70 p.: ill. ; 28 cm.)
Abstract: Through lecture, slides, and live footage, Dr. Johnson presents his clinic covering llama reproductive anatomy, breeding, fetal development, birth, and newborn care. He also covers the delivery of crias in a variety of positions, using plastic uteruses and stillborn crias.

88. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2362**
Managing Lakes Through Community Participation.
Federation of Lake Associations (Cazenovia, NY, 1993?). Distributed by Federation of Lake Associations.
1 videocassette (25 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: This video highlights interviews with homeowners who have implemented successful projects to restore their lakes. Topics include how lake associations are formed, maintaining ties with

local government and educating the lake community.

89. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2559**
Managing Riparian Areas on Forest Lands.
Paul W. Adams, Thomas E. McMahon, and Oregon State University. Forestry Media Center (Corvallis, OR, 1991). Distributed by Forestry Media Center, Oregon State University, College of Forestry.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col. 1 script "987 V-T.".
Abstract: This program is designed to show how the functions and benefits of riparian areas often call for active management. It will also show how logging and other forest practices can effect riparian functions and benefits. This program demonstrates the values of careful informal management decisions and finally describes some key challenges and opportunities in management of riparian areas.

90. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2399**
Managing Woodlands for Wildlife.
Minnesota Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, c1993). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (23 min., 50 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Improving habitat for wildlife is a common goal for woodland stewards. Habitat consists of food, water, cover and space. Wildlife species differ in their habitat needs. This program shows how to evaluate woodland habitat and improve it for a variety of wildlife.

91. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2165**
Managing Your Fish Ponds.
Alabama Cooperative Extension Service (Auburn, AL, 1990?-1995). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (24 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses pond construction, watershed ponds, ratio of watershed acreage to pond acreage, depth, removal of unwanted fish species, stocking ratios, pond fertilization, pond liming, use of white amur for pond weed control, fish population balance and oxygen control.

92. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2078**
Maple Sugaring: A Sweeter Future.
Ohio Agricultural Research and Development Center. Section of Communications and Technology (Wooster, OH, c1994). Distributed by Ohio State University, Ohio Agricultural Research and Development Center, Section of Communications and Technology.
1 videocassette (21 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Maple sugaring produces over 100,000 gallons a year in the state of Ohio, and is a $3,000,000 industry. This video is a history of the practice and shows how its done.

93. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2666**
My Father's Garden.
Miranda Smith and Miranda Smith Productions (Oley, PA, c1995). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (58 min.): sd., col. and b&w
Abstract: In less than fifty years agriculture has been transformed by synthetic chemicals which have had a serious impact on the environment and on the health of farm families. This film tells the story of two farmers. Herbert Smith, championed the new miracle sprays of the 50's in his orange grove in Florida, while Fred Kirschenmann of North Dakota, steered his land through the transition to organic farming to prove, 20 years later, that sustainable organic agriculture is a viable economic alternative for any size farm.

94. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2274**
My Urban Garden.
National Film Board of Canada (Santa Rosa, CA, c1984). Distributed by Arthur Mokin Productions.
1 videocassette (26 min., 33 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Follows a home gardener through the growing season cycle of planting, fertilizing, and weeding to show how anyone can keep one's family supplied with a variety of vegetables.

95. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2197**
New Rangeland Compact.
(Payson, AZ, 1994?). Distributed by Holistic Resource Mangement.
1 videocassette (20 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Promotes a holistic management plan of domestic livestock grazing on public lands. Shows how proper grazing procedures benefit grassland and riparian areas.

96. **NAL Call No.: Kit no. 172**
Northeast Network: Food, Agriculture, and Health Policy Education.
Agriculture and Health Policy Education Program Northeast Network: Food (1991?). Distributed by Northeast Network?
1 videocassette, 5 booklets, 5 fact sheets, 5 overviews, 5 briefs, 1 report, 1 facilitator's manual.
Title on videocassette: Food policy education--making connections.
Abstract: Involves both citizens and community leaders in facilitated discussions and activities around three key issues that relate to agriculture, health, and the processing, distribution and marketing of food. These issues are food safety, food costs, and nutrition.

97. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2047**
Nourish the Roots, Gather the Leaves: Sustainable Taro Culture in the Pacific.
University of Hawaii at Mania. College of Agriculture and Human Resources (Honolulu, HI, 199-?). Distributed by Pacific Agricultural Development Office, University of Hawaii at Mania.
1 videocassette (27 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes how taro is cultivated on tropical Pacific Islands with the use of appropriate technology. Emphasizes the importance of soil conservation, soil fertility, pest and disease control, and crop rotation in the growing of taro.

98. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2031**
One Second Before Sunrise: A Search for Solutions.
Lynn Redgrave and Bullfrog Films, Inc. (Oley, PA, c1991). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
5 videocassettes (ca. 60 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Lynn Redgrave is the on-camera host for programs focusing on solutions to environmental problems, providing viewers with ideas for their own communities.

99. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1965**
Oral History Interview With Jayne T. Maclean by Jane Gates.
Jane Potter Gates, Jayne T. Maclean, and National Agricultural Library (Beltsville, MD, 1994). Distributed by The Library.
1 videocassette (40 min.): sd., col.

100. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2067**
Organic Gardening: Composting.
Rodale Press. (Oley, PA, c1972). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (11 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Uses live action and animation to demonstrate how to build a compost heap, what ingredients to use and in what proportions, and how to layer the heap to ensure speedy and uniform decomposition.

101. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2532**
Ostrich Processing.
American Ostrich Research Foundation (United States, 1996?).
1 videocassette (50 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows commercial slaughter and meat fabrication techniques developed through research at Texas A&M University.

102. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2704**
Ostrich Ranching: Past, Present, Future.
King Ostrich Ranch, Inc. (Elmwood Park, IL, 1993?). Distributed by Ostriches On Line.
1 videocassette (ca. 35 min.): sd., col.

103. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2684**
Ostriches and Emus.
Bobbie Floyd, Kenny Page, and Georgia Center for Continuing Education (Athens, GA, c1994). Distributed by Georgia Center for Continuing Education.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Veterinarian Kenny Page describes ratites as flightless birds, explains reasons for increased interest in them, and answers questions and gives advice about raising ostriches and emus. Part of a series of programs showing various species of animals found on a farm and intended to give a sense of appreciation for livestock and how it affects and enriches our lives.

104. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2512**
Our Precious Groundwater: A Celebration.
Nebraska Educational Telecommunications (Lincoln, NE?, 1994). Distributed by The

Foundation.
1 videocassette (13 min., 44 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows highlights of a groundwater festival held in Nebraska where the purpose was to educate young people about conserving groundwater resources.

105. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2734**
Outstanding in Her Field.
Media Network Society (Vancouver, BC, Canada, c1995). Distributed by Moving Images Distribution.
1 videocassette (23 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Women farmers in British Columbia are making a living in organic farming and have established the Moss Street Market to sell their produce.

106. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2675**
Part-Time Farming.
University of Nebraska Lincoln. Cooperative Extension (Lincoln, NE, c1996). Distributed by The Extension.
1 videocassette (ca. 69 min.): sd., col.

107. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2318**
Partners With Nature.
Teddy Gentry and National Cattlemen's Association (Englewood, CO, 199-?). Distributed by National Cattlemen's Association and Beef Board.
1 videocassette (27 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Features seven cattlemen who have incorporated sound conservation practices into their successful cattle businesses.

108. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2182**
Partnerships for Watersheds.
Conservation Technology Information Center (Washington, D.C.?, 1995?). Distributed by The Division.
1 videocassette (13 min.): sd., col. 1 pamphlet.
Abstract: Describes what a watershed is and how people can join with state and federal agencies to form a partnership to protect the water quality of their watershed.

109. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2725**
Pathways to a Sustainable Future.
Robert Gilman, Scott Fedale, and Washington State University. Center for Sustaining Agriculture and Natural Resources (Pullman, WA, 1996). Distributed by Cooperative Extension, Washington State University.
1 videocassette (90 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Scott Fedale interviews Dr. Robert Gilman, who received his Ph.D. in astrophysics from Princeton University. Since 1975, he has devoted himself to the study of sustainability and strategies for positive cultural change. His background includes innovation theory, sustainable economics, and appropriate technology.

110. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2790**
The Perelandra Garden: A Tour With Machaelle Small Wright.
Machaelle Small Wright and Perelandra, Ltd. (Warrenton, VA, c1998). Distributed by Perelandra, Ltd.
2 videocassettes (221 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: "The famous Perelandra Garden in Virginia comes alive as you join its founder and researcher Machaelle Small Wright for a full personal tour. Learn the new principles of co-creative science as demonstrated in the garden since 1976."--Container.

111. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2739**
Pfiesteria and the Factory Farm.
Humane Society of the United States (Washington, DC, c1998). Distributed by The Society.
1 videocassette (7 min., 30 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses how the disposal of animal wastes, particularly poultry manure, contributes to outbreaks of pfiesteria in the Chesapeake Bay.

112. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2820**
Phytochemicals.
Health Science Institute (McLean, VA, c1997). Distributed by The Institute.
1 videocassette (15 min.): sd., col. 1 teacher's guide (60 p.).
Abstract: This program explains the chemical structure of phytochemicals, and describes the proposed mechanisms by which these natural food elements might lower risk for cancer.

113. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2721**
Plant.
BBC Scienceworld (New York, NY?, c1997). Distributed by DK Vision: BBC Worldwide Americas.
1 videocassette (ca. 35 min.): sd., col.
At head of title: Eyewitness.
Abstract: A colorful tour of the world's most dazzling flora-- from the most magical to the most bizarre. Watch buds burst, flowers bloom, and discover the myriad ways plants struggle to survive.

114. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2097**
Preserving Our Livestock Heritage.
American Minor Breeds Conservancy (Pittsboro, NC, 199-?). Distributed by American Minor Breeds Conservancy.
1 videocassette (13 min., 50 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses how many livestock breeds are facing extinction as breeders seek to meet farmer requirements for specialized animal traits. Concludes with a brief description of the work of the American Minor Breeds Conservancy.

115. **NAL Call No.: S441.S8553**
Production of a Videotape Series Demonstrating Improved Grazing Practices to Promote Forage-Based Livestock Production in the Upper Midwest.
J. R. Russell Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education SARE research projects North Central Region 1995).
SARE Project Number: LNC94-71. Date of report is December 1995. Included with this 31 page report are the following videotapes: 1) Managing Grazing: Introduction, 2) Managing Grazing: Animal Management, 3) Managing Grazing: Fencing and Watering, 4) Managing Grazing: Year Around Resource Management and 5) Managing Grazing: Managing Pasture Plants.

116. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2172**
Profit With Manure
Minnesota Extension Service. University of Minnesota Educational Development System (St. Paul, MN, c1993). Distributed by The System.
1 videocassette (11 min., 40 sec.): sd., col. ; ½ in.
"AG-VH-6082."; Content specialists, Timothy Arlt, Michael Schmitt.
Abstract: Shows how to calculate and adjust solid and liquid manure application rates and demonstrates application methods.

117. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2440**
Profitable Conservation Cropping Systems: Insights From the USDA-ARS IPM Project.
John Francis, Information Department. College of AG & Home Economics. Washington State University, Washington State University. Cooperative Extension, and United States. Agricultural Research Service Script, Chris Boerboom (Pullman, WA?, c1992). Distributed by Cooperative Extension, Washington State University.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col. ; ½ in.
Abstract: Describes the USDA-ARS IPM project conducted by a group of scientists from USDA-ARS, Washington State University, and the University of Idaho. The project demonstrates that conservation cropping systems with effective pest management can actually be more economical and less risky than conventional systems.

118. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2438**
The Progress of Our Dreams: Assessing Sustainability for Communities Large and Small.
Alan Atkisson and Washington State University. Cooperative Extension (Pullman, WA, 1995). Distributed by Cooperative Extension, Washington State University.
1 videocassette (90 min.): sd., col.
"VT0070"--Container.
Abstract: Alan Atkisson introduces a comprehensive picture of what sustainable development means both in theory and in practice, drawing on examples from around the Pacific Northwest, the U.S., and the rest of the world.

119. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2584**
Raising Emus & Rheas.
Ken Wilson and Sportsmen on Film (Kerrville, TX, c1993). Distributed by Sportsmen on Film.
1 videocassette (60 min.): sd., col.

Abstract: Ken Wilson shows how emus and rheas are raised on the Kerrville Ratite Ranch. Topics covered include egg collection, incubation, candling, hatching, housing, and feeding.

120. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2707**
The Restoration of Bonsall Creek: A Community Co-Operates to Enhance Crops, Cattle, Cutthroat Trout and Coho Salmon.
Wayne Haddow (British Columbia, Canada, c1996).
1 videocassette (ca. 27 min.): sd., col.

121. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2508**
Restoring the Balance: Biological Control of Purple Loosestrife.
Cornell University. Educational Television Center (Ithaca, NY, c1996). Distributed by Cornell University.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.

122. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2664**
Rhea Intensive Farming.
Lea Hosman and Chris Ramsey (Utopia, TX, c1993). Distributed by Hosman/Ramsey Rheas.
1 videocassette (ca. 45 min.): sd., col.

123. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2383**
Rice: A Better Way.
Haskell Simon and Lower Colorado River Authority (Austin, TX, c1994). Distributed by The Authority.
1 videocassette (11 min., 30 sec.): sd., col. 1 script.
Abstract: A group of rice farmers in Matagorda County, Texas demonstrate production techniques (best management practices) that keep production costs low, yield high, and minimize the impact on the environment.

124. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2560**
Rodale's Rediscovering Herbs With Cy Hyde at the Well Sweep Herb Farm--Overview.
Cy Hyde and Rodale Press (Oley, PA, c1981). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Cy Hyde, owner of an organic herb farm, describes the role of herbs in home remedies, cooking, potpourris, pest control in the garden, dyeing, and home decorating.

125. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2711**
Ruth Stout's Garden.
Arthur Mokin Productions (Santa Rosa, CA, c1976). Distributed by Arthur Mokin Productions.
1 videocassette (23 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Recounts the life of Ruth Stout, who describes her own gardening methods and her experiences of subjects ranging from growing vegetables to growing old.

126. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2563**
The Salmon Project.
Pacific Mountain Network Digital Studios (Aptos, CA; Denver, CO, c1996). Distributed by Pacific Mountain Network.
2 videocassettes: sd., col. 1 teacher guide
Additional information about the salmon project is available on the World Wide Web.
Abstract: Teaches students in grades 7-12 to develop critical thinking skills about the preservation and use of natural resources, using the decline of the Pacific salmon population as a case study.

127. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2028**
The Science of Biological Decomposition: Effective Composting Methods.
Joe Clokey, Jim Harrigan, Mark Skinner, and San Luis Video Productions (Los Osos, CA, c1993). Distributed by San Luis Video Publishing.
1 videocassette (33 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses the science of composting. Includes information on how the process of composting transforms organic matter into humus.

128. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2540**
Seeds of Plenty, Seeds of Sorrow.
Manjira Datta and Media Workshop (Oley, PA, c1992). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (50 min.): sd., col.
"Developing stories I, environment and development"--Container.
Abstract: This documentary film shows the effects of the once-vaunted Green Revolution in India. Instead of massive harvests of wheat, pesticide

poisoning and fertilizer shortages have turned the revolution's workers into a new serf class and created a bureaucratic nightmare.

129. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2171**
Shrimp Farming.
Texas Agricultural Extension Service (College Station, TX?, 199-?). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (25 min., 20 sec.): sd., col.
Closed-captioned for the hearing impaired.
Abstract: Discusses shrimp production in the United States. Hatchery and pond facilities are shown.

130. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2720**
Slow Food: Sustainable Agriculture and Responsible Eating.
Linda Gammell, Michal M. McCall, and Sandra Menefee Taylor (St. Paul, MN, c1997). Distributed by L. Gammell, M. McCall, S. Taylor.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col.
Funding by S.A.R.E., U.S.D.A.
Abstract: Consists of interviews with farmers about sustainable agriculture.

131. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2639**
Social Capital and Sustainability: the Community and Managing Change in Agriculture.
Iowa State University. University Extension (Ames, IA, c1996). Distributed by Iowa State University, University Extension.
1 videocassette (22 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Social capital, community interest and sustainable agricultural practices will be critical components in managing agricultural change in the rural communities of the future.

132. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2500**
Soils & Their Role in Protecting Water Quality.
Cornell University. Media Services (Ithaca, NY, c1996). Distributed by Dept. of Soil, Crop & Atmospheric Sciences, Cornell University.
1 videocassette (20 min., 55 sec.): sd., col.
"T-12229"--Cassette label.
Abstract: Discusses the function, composition, texture, porosity and permeability, and hydrology of soils and their impacts on soil and water quality.

133. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2025**
Sowing for Need or Sowing for Greed?: The Promises of the Green Revolution: A Film.
Judith Bourque, Peter Gunnarsson, and Bullfrog Films, Inc. (Oley, PA, c1989). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (56 min., 15 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Examines the effects of the Green Revolution in Third World countries and finds many negative ones.

134. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2084**
Steps Toward a Humane Sustainable Agriculture.
Michael W. Fox and Center for Respect of Life and Environment (Washington, DC; Old Saybrook, CT, 1989). Distributed by Connecticut Video Productions.
1 videocassette (ca. 33 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses how agriculture effects the environment and the positive aspects of sustainable agriculture. These include conserving energy, reducing soil erosion and compaction, minimizing the agricultural pollution of the environment, and preserving the family farm.

135. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2800**
The Stockman's Best Friend.
Charles. Widener and Inc. Boulder Bluff (Greenwood, AR, c1996). Distributed by Boulder Bluff, Inc.
1 videocassette (113 min., 13 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Charles Ridener shows how to train dogs to handle livestock.

136. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2360**
Successful Queen Rearing.
Marla Spivak and Minnesota Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, c1994). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (13 min., 18 sec.): sd., col.
"VH-6335.".
Abstract: Dr. Marla Spivak demonstrates how to rear queen bees.

137. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1940**
Sunshine Bass From Tank to Market.
Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University. Dept. of University Relations. Visual Communications (Blacksburg, VA, c1992). Distributed by Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Dept. of University Relations, Visual Communications.
1 videocassette (17 min., 40 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Demonstrates a marketing system for sunshine bass. Topics covered include how the aquaculture products will be distributed and what aquaculture products will meet customer expectations.

138. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2012**
Sustainability: The Quiet Revolution.
Minnesota Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, c1994). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (50 min., 52 sec.): sd., col.
"AG-VH-6349.".
Abstract: Features Minnesota farm families who have changed their way of farming to achieve better quality of life and better stewardship of the land.

139. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2059**
Sustainable Agriculture.
Jim Harrigan and San Luis Video Publishing (San Luis Obispo, CA, c1991). Distributed by San Luis Video Publishing.
1 videocassette (23 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Discusses alternative crops, tillage styles and systems, pest management, and soil fertility in terms of improving farms while preserving the environment. Visits several farms managed as sustainable operations.

140. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2674**
Sustainable Agriculture Perspectives From Across America: Introduction to Concepts and Principles.
Sustainable Agriculture Research & Education (Program). (Lincoln, NE, 1997?). Distributed by University of Nebraska Extension Service.
1 videocassette (24 min., 14 sec.): sd., col. 1 user's guide
"This material is based upon work supported by the CSREES, USDA under special project number 95-ESAG-1-1001.".
Abstract: Discusses sustainable practices that can help a farmer work with the environment as well as reduce farm operating costs. These include conservation tillage, buffer strips, composting manure, and integrated pest management.

141. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2180**
Sustainable Potato Farming: The Farmers' Side of the Story
Oregon Tilth, Inc. Director/producer, script writers, Sharon Genasci, Harry MacCormack and Paul Thiers (Tualatin, OR, c1993). Distributed by Oregon Tilth.
1 videocassette (ca. 29 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Several Oregon farmers discuss their experiences growing potatoes without environmentally damaging chemicals and describe their techniques for soil, weed, insect, and disease management.

142. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1945**
Sweet Corn IPM: Insect Pest Management.
University of Massachusetts at Amherst. Cooperative Extension Service. Integrated Pest Management Program (Amherst, MA, 1994?). Distributed by University of Massachusetts, Cooperative Extension System, Integrated Pest Management Program.
1 videocassette (ca. 35 min.): sd., col.

143. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2784**
Symposium on Plant Biotechnology Issues: Risk Assessment: Issues in Plant Biotechnology.
College Park, Maryland Symposium on Plant Biotechnology Issues (1996: University of Maryland) (College Park, MD, 1996). Distributed by University of Maryland.
1 videocassette (ca. 120 min.): sd., col.
Funded by the U.S. Department of Agriculture and A*DEC.
Abstract: Four panelists, Terry Medley, Rebecca Goldburg, Alan R. Goldhammer, and Elizabeth Milewski, address the risks associated with the introduction of genetically altered organisms into the environment and how these risks can be evaluated.

144. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2502**
Take Time? Training Your Dog From Farm Work to Trialling.
H. Glyn Jones and Farming Press Videos (Ipswich, UK; Alexandria Bay, NY, c1995). Distributed by Diamond Farm Enterprises (in No. America).
1 videocassette (ca. 56 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Glyn Jones demonstrates how a working sheep dog can become a competent trials competitor.

145. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2275**
Tara's Mulch Garden.
National Film Board of Canada (Santa Rosa, CA, 198-?). Distributed by Arthur Mokin Productions.
1 videocassette (20 min., 35 sec.): sd., col.
Originally released as motion picture in 1976.
Abstract: Explains the principle of mulching and demonstrates planting, transplanting, watering, and harvesting.

146. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2644**
This Good Earth.
Salwa Khan and VCS, Inc. (Wimberley, TX, c1995). Distributed by VCS.
1 videocassette (35 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes how to bring garden soil to life organically. Includes discussion of microscopic life forms that help release nutrients vital to healthy, productive plants, how to make a perfect compost and the benefits of cover crops.

147. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2640**
Towns in Transition: Managing Change in Natural Resource-Dependent Communities.
John Cullum and Oregon State University Extension Service. (Corvallis, OR, c1996). Distributed by Oregon State University Extension and Experiment Station Communications.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col. 1 study guide (41 p.)
Subtitle from study guide cover.
Abstract: This video presents how change was dealt with by the citizens of Tulelake, Calif., Astoria, Ore., and Forks, Wash., when their natural resource-based economies went through transitions. It includes insights from framers, loggers, fishermen, and other community residents.

148. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2484**
Tree Planting on Agricultural Land.
Minnesota Extension Service (St. Paul, MN, between 1989? and 1992). Distributed by Minnesota Extension Service: Educational Development System.
1 videocassette (24 min.): sd., col.
"VH-3743"--Cassette label.
Abstract: Describes the benefits of trees and the design, establishment and maintenance of tree planting on agricultural land.

149. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2026**
Turn Here Sweet Corn.
Helen De Michiel and Bullfrog Films, Inc. (Minneapolis, MN; Oley, PA, c1990). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (38 min.): sd., col.
"VH S0003" on container.
Abstract: A video essay on the Diffley family, organic farmers in Eagan, Minnesota, and their struggle to continue farming amidst rapid suburban development.

150. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2530**
Unlocking Nature's Secrets.
National Cattlemen's Association (Englewood, CO, 199-?). Distributed by National Cattlemen's Association: Beef Board.
1 videocassette (27 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows how seven cattlemen have unlocked some of nature's secrets by working daily to care for the natural resources that provide for their livelihoods.

151. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2647**
USDA Slaughter.
American Emu Association (United States, 1995). Distributed by The Association.
1 videocassette (ca. 23 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows what the inspector looks for in the slaughtering process of emus.

152. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2786**
Use of Constructed Wetlands for Stormwater Runoff.
Cornell University. Educational Television Center (Ithaca, NY, c1999). Distributed by Cornell University.
1 videocassette (20 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Video shows how properly designed and constructed wetlands moderate flow extremes and improve water quality.

153. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2276**
The Vacant Lot.
National Film Board of Canada (Santa Rosa, CA, c1977). Distributed by Arthur Mokin Productions.
1 videocassette (17 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows a community garden run by senior citizens.

154. **NAL Call No.: Kit no. 186**
Vanishing Rain Forests.
World Wildlife Fund (Washington, DC, c1988). Distributed by The Fund.
1 teacher's manual, 1 booklet, 1 videocassette, 2 posters.
VHS videocassette titled: Rain forest rap.
Abstract: Presents the rain forest with its exotic plant and animal life as a place of intrigue where valuable scientific discoveries wait to be made. Species potentially useful to medical discoveries, such as a cure for cancer, could be lost forever if steps are not taken to halt rain forest destruction. Tells how to be active in the protection of resources threatened by rain forest loss.

155. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2524**
Vegetable Farmers and Their Weed Control Machines.
University of Vermont. Extension System (Burlington, VT, 1996?). Distributed by The System.
1 videocassette (75 min., 50 sec.): sd., col.
Funded by Northeast Region of the USDA Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program.
Abstract: Features visits with nine New England vegetable farmers. These farmers explain their weed management philosophy and demonstrate the use of custom-built and trade-name weed management equipment.

156. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2102**
A Visit With J.I. Rodale.
J. I. Rodale and Rodale Press. (Oley, PA, c1972). Distributed by Bullfrog Films.
1 videocassette (15 min.): sd., col.
Intended audience: Junior high school students through adults.
Abstract: J.I. Rodale, pioneer organic farmer, talks about his ideas on organic farming, health, and ecology.

157. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2168**
Warm Water Finfish: Harvesting, Handling and Transportation Southern Region[al] Aquaculture Center Educational Video Production
Louisiana State University Agricultural Center, Cooperative Extension Service. Producer, H. Red Hebert. (College Station, TX, c1993). Distributed by Texas Agricultural Extension Service.
1 videocassette (ca. 31 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Shows various fish harvesting techniques. These include using seines, dip nets, and fish pumps. Methods for preparing and loading fish for transport are also shown.

158. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2108**
Water and Fencing Systems for Streambank Protection.
Northcentral Technical College (Wausau, WI, c1990). Distributed by Northcentral Technical College.
1 videocassette (18 min., 40 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Explains the different types of fencing systems, grazing methods, watering systems, and funding programs available to provide protection from erosion for your streambanks.

159. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2430**
Water Conservation: Managing Our Precious Liquid Asset.
Minnesota Arrowhead Water Quality Team (Two Harbors, MN, c1996). Distributed by Lake County Soil & Water Conservation District.
1 videocassette (21 min., 45 sec.): sd., col.
"Shoreland best management practices"--Cassette label.
Abstract: Discusses simple and inexpensive ways to conserve water in the home.

160. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2505**
Watershed Management in Virginia.
Cornell University. Media Services (Ithaca, NY, c1995). Distributed by Dept. of Soil, Crop & Atmospheric Sciences, Cornell University: Cornell Cooperative Extension.
1 videocassette (26 min., 45 sec.): sd., col.
Abstract: Describes ways to help protect watersheds in Virginia. These include efficiently applying fertilizers and efficiently utilizing animal manures.

161. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no.-2241**
Ways to Grow: Alternatives for Small Farmers: Growing Brambles.
Craig. Marberry and North Carolina Agricultural and Technical State University (Greensboro, NC, c1994). Distributed by North Carolina A&T State University, Cooperative Extension Program.
1 videocassette (17 min., 29 sec.): sd., col.
"Agricultural Communications, North Carolina A&T State University"--Container.
Abstract: Discusses the cultivation of raspberries and blackberries. Includes growing tips that cover fruit yields, temperature, soil conditions, water requirements, pruning, and harvesting. Also looks at market research.

162. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2426**
We All Live Downstream.
Steve Dodrill, Oregon State University Extension Service, and Oregon State University. Agricultural Communications (Corvallis, OR, c1996). Distributed by Oregon State University Agricultural Communications.
1 videocassette (28 min., 30 sec.): sd., col. ; ½ in. + introductory pamphlet (1 folded sheet (12 p.): col. ill. ; 19 cm.)
Abstract: Examines the problems of runoff and nonpoint source pollution in Oregon's Tualatin River and how local residents and government officials are trying to reduce nonpoint source pollution. It also offers tips to help each of us play an active role in cleaning up our nation's drinking water supplies.

163. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2184**
Welcome to the Fungal Jungle.
Michael S. Mease, Larry L. Evans, Ritch Doyle, and Cold Mountain, Cold Rivers (Missoula, MT, c1993). Distributed by Cold Mountain, Cold Rivers.
1 videocassette (15 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Illustrates some of the familiar mushrooms of the Pacific Northwest forests and discusses their use as food and medicine. Also emphasizes the importance of fungi in forest ecology.

164. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2798**
Wetland Restoration: Steps to Success.
Wetlands Conservancy (Tualatin, OR, 1996?). Distributed by The Conservancy.
1 videocassette (21 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Provides information for planning a successful wetlands restoration project.

165. **NAL Call No.: QH76.5.P4W38 1992**
Wetlands Educational Program and Demonstration Site (at the Peterson Industrial Park).
Robert P. Brooks, Aura L. Stauffer, Gary W. Petersen and Pennsylvania State University. Environmental Resources Research Institute (University Park, Pa, 1992). Distributed by Penn State, Environmental Resources Research Institute.
3 volumes text: ill., maps 1 videocassette (22 min.)
Cover title.

166. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2022**
Wheat, Small Grains: Conservation Tillage for the Great Plains.
Randall Reeder and Ohio State University. Extension (Columbus, OH, c1994). Distributed by Ohio State University Extension.
1 videocassette (120 min.): sd., col.
Title from container.
Abstract: One of a series of programs broadcast via satellite. Includes 20 speakers and covers topics such as wind erosion, disease and weed management, and crop rotation for the Great Plains.

167. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2789**
Working With Nature in Soil-Less Gardens.
Machaelle Small Wright and Perelandra, Ltd. (Warrenton, VA, c1998). Distributed by Perelandra, Ltd.
2 videocassettes (252 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: "This is a fascinating, dynamic and humorous talk given by Machaelle Wright for those who wish to apply the principles of co-creative science to every aspect of their lives: business, education, the arts, the home, research, your job, personal and professional projects and goals-- all those gardens in life that are not rooted in soil. By the end of this talk, you will know exactly how to work with nature to achieve any goal you wish with extraordinary efficiency and balance"--Container.

168. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 2262**
A World of Difference.
United States. Soil Conservation Service (Davis, CA?, 1995?). Distributed by The Service.
1 videocassette (30 min.): sd., col.
Abstract: Soil Conservation Service employees describe how they plan and care for the needs of California resources.

169. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1786**
Xeriscape: A Quiet Revolution.
Elizabeth Gilmore, Jim Knopf, Denver Museum of Natural History, and Denver Water Department (Denver, CO, c1992). Distributed by The Museum and Denver Water.
1 videocassette (28 min.): sd., col.; ½ in.
Abstract: George and Sonja Ek go through the process of converting their yard from thirsty, high-maintenance bluegrass. Landscape architect Jim Knopf helps them plan their new xeriscape.

170. **NAL Call No.: Videocassette no. 1936**
Your Own Back Yard: A Xeriscape Primer.
Judy Closser Cheatham, Luan Akin, Linda Rea, and Linda Rea Productions (Denver, CO, c1992). Distributed by Linda Rea Productions.
1 videocassette (53 min.): sd., col.
"Funding was provided by the Denver Water Department and U.S. EPA with additional support from KRMA-TV.".
Abstract: Shows how to design an attractive water-conserving landscape in your own back yard.

The New Frontiers of Ranching: Business Diversification and Land Stewardship

Sonoran Institute

Contents

Courtesy of Karen Simms

Acknowledgments iv

Preface v

Introduction: Why Business Diversification Is a Good Idea 1

Niche Marketing: Taking Advantage of Consumer Demand 7
- *Niman Ranch:* Turning a Livestock Operation into a Meat Business 13
- *Anchor Ranch:* Improving Ranch Finances and Rangeland Health by Selling All-Natural Beef 16
- *Taylor Ranch:* Restoring the Landscape and Tradition by Adding Value to Wool Products 19

Guest Ranching: Welcoming Guests to a Working Ranch 21
- *Flynn Ranch:* The Profitability of Diverse Recreation Opportunities 25
- *Hunewill Ranch:* The Overwhelming Popularity of Horseback Riding 28
- *Bonanza Creek Ranch:* The Financial Benefits of Offering a Quality Experience 31

Creating a Small Business: Adding a New Enterprise Not Related to Ranching 33
- *Strang Ranch:* Growing Turf, Boarding Horses, and Selling Hay to Specialty Markets 39
- *Keewaydin Ranch:* Supplementing Ranch Income with a Nursery 41
- *Cross A Ranch:* Producing and Selling Skin Care Products from a Remote Ranch 43

Innovative Management: Linking Rangeland Health and Business Diversification 45
- *Milesnick Ranch:* Range and Riparian Improvements Lead to New Business Opportunities 50
- *N-Bar Ranch:* Innovative Cost-Cutting Techniques and New Marketing Ventures 53

Conclusion: Why the Time Is Ripe for Diversification 57

Appendixes 59
- A. Business Plan Outline 60
- B. Selecting the Right Legal Structure for Your Firm 61
- C. Small Business Development Centers 63
- D. Rangeland Health Evaluation Matrix 64

Notes 65

OUTREACH & EXTENSION
UNIVERSITY OF MISSOURI
LINCOLN UNIVERSITY

MISSOURI ALTERNATIVES CENTER

"KNOWLEDGE IN ACTION"

531 Clark Hall, Columbia, MO 65211
Phone: 800-433-3704 (MO only) • 573-882-1905 • Fax 573-884-4336
moac@umsystem.edu • http://www.ext.missouri.edu/agebb/mac

Ideas for Alternative Agricultural Enterprises

Missouri Alternatives Center

Revised November 1996

Sponsored by University of Missouri Outreach and Extension, Lincoln University, MU Extension Division
MU College of Agriculture, Food and Natural Resources, Missouri Department of Conservation

Missouri Alternatives Center does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability or status as a Vietnam-era veteran in employment or programs.

ALTERNATIVES FOR THE NEW FAMILY FARM

Aquaculture

There are approximately 350,000 farm ponds in Missouri, or about 250,000 acres of water. This existing resource has the potential to support a substantial food-fish industry. Cage culture of catfish is one popular aquacultural enterprise, because aquaculture uses existing water bodies, reduces capitalization costs and makes otherwise unsuitable ponds usable for fish production. Other aquaculture opportunities include fee fishing; cage culture of trout, catfish and other species; fingerling production; carp; bass, bluegill; minnows and other bait fish; raceway culture, crawfish; tilapia; mosquitofish; aquaponics; and paddlefish.

Beekeeping

With a little marketing, beekeeping can be a profitable part of a diversified small farm. Honey, beeswax and other products can be direct marketed through farmers markets, roadside stands, door-to-door, through the local paper, to local health food and stores, and by other methods.

Direct Marketing

Most specialty and alternative crops and livestock have few, if any, established markets. There aren't any catfish sale barns. So the producer must rely on either selling to local retailers, selling through cooperatives, or direct marketing. Some types of direct marketing include pick-your-own, farmers markets, roadside stands, mail order and subscription marketing.

Dogs

Breeding dogs for sale as pets, especially unusual ones like the Chinese Shar-Pei, is a possible rural enterprise. Other possibilities include breeding and training stock dogs or livestock guardian dogs, or operating a boarding kennel.

Exotic Livestock

Increasing demand for exotic animals has led many small-size agripreneurs to find it profitable to raise exotic livestock. Some popular animals include llamas and alpacas, ostriches and other flightless birds, pygmy goats, elk, fallow deer, axis deer, water buffalo, bison, potbellied pigs, mouflon and aouded sheep, miniature animals, watusi, and exotic birds.

Fee Hunting

Charging money to let people hunt on your land is the simplest form of fee hunting. At the other extreme, you may breed either game birds or big game and provide hunting dogs and guides to hunters.

Field Crops

Field crops don't have to mean corn, wheat or soybeans. Some more familiar alternatives are sunflowers, barley, buckwheat, and oats. Examples include: *Amaranth*, a little-known crop native to the Americas, is grown either as a grain crop or as a leafy vegetable. As a grain, it can be found in some multi-grain crackers, cereals and other items produced by small companies. In the garden, it can provide fresh greens in the heat of the summer. Amaranth grows vigorously, resists drought, heat and pests, and adapts readily to new environments. *Crambe*, a mustard-like crop, is a potential replacement for imported high-erucic rapeseed oil used in manufacturing polyethylene, waxes and nylons. Its low cost of production is attractive to growers in the East, the Corn Belt and the Southern Delta; however, unproven commercial yields and a low world market price for rapeseed are limitations. *Canola*, low erucic acid rapeseed, is used for vegetable oil. It has traditionally been the domain of Canadian growers. However, low cost of production and increasing demand from processors has made it more attractive to US growers.

Floriculture

Flowers and ornamental plants make a good combination with a market gardening program. Fresh flowers can be sold to local florists; dried flowers are in demand by craftspeople. Edible flowers and wild flowers are also possibilities.

Forages

There are many alternative opportunities in grazing livestock, such as controlled grazing and other intensive rotational grazing methods for cattle and sheep; using warm-season native grasses; honey locust pods, acorns and other tree crops to feed livestock; grazing lambs on cowpeas; using Angora goats to control brush in pastures; and others.

Forestry

Many small farmers virtually ignore their woodlot. However, with proper management and marketing, an existing woodlot can be a source of revenue from veneer-quality wood, firewood, etc. Christmas trees are also a forestry product with potential for Missouri.

Fur

Mink, fox and chinchilla are possible alternatives for those interested producing furs.

Game Birds

Pheasants, Chukar and Quail can be raised in Missouri to supply gourmet meat, eggs, exotic breeding stock, or to supply hunting preserves.

Ginseng and Goldenseal

Digging and selling ginseng and goldenseal roots has been a traditional source of income for many Ozarkians. Some Missourians are discovering profits in cultivating ginseng under forest canopy. Ginseng is prized in China as an herbal medicine.

Goats

Commercial dairy goat milk producers encounter serious marketing problems, as goat milk cannot be sold for human consumption except through a Grade A Dairy. However, dairy goats can be a welcome addition for milk, cheese and meat for home use.

Some people sell young goats for their meat, (chevon), which, because it is very lean, may have an increasing market in today's health-conscious environment. The tender meat of young goats -cabritos in Spanish -- is beginning to get recognition from gourmet restaurants. This requires some marketing.

Angora goats raised for mohair production have been making profits for farmers in Texas, Michigan, Oklahoma, Missouri and other states. Mohair prices range from S 1.75 to $7.25 a pound, depending on quality. USDA's Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service (ASCS) also helps by matching the price with a substantial subsidy under the Wool Act.

A topic of recent interest is the beginnings of a cashmere industry in the United States. Cashmere is produced from the downy undercoat of certain types of goats. Currently most cashmere is produced in Asia, the Middle East and Australia.

Herbs

Growing fresh herbs to sell to local restaurants and grocery stores, to wholesalers or through direct marketing, is a horticultural alternative. Fresh herbs are in increasing demand.

Home-Based Business

Arts and crafts, candy and other food production, custom sewing, bed and breakfasts, and many other enterprises can be run from your home or farm. Adding value to what you produce, such as selling flavored popped corn from popcorn you grow, is an excellent way to build profits.

Horses

Draft horses are finding their way back onto many small farms as an economical and enjoyable alternative to tractors for field work, feeding , forestry work, hauling hay, etc. Horse breeding, whether draft horses or saddle breeds, is also a viable farm enterprise.

Hydroponics

Many Missourians are interested in the hydroponic production (without soil) of fruits, vegetables, flowers, house plants and herbs. Hydroponics allows you to exert greater control over your plants, ensure more uniform results, and grow more plants in a limited space.

Sustainable Agriculture

The term "organic" used to conjure up visions of hippie love beads and health food stores. However, as more consumers are demanding fresh, chemical-free foods, and as more farmers are rebelling against the ever-increasing costs of chemicals, organic, low-input, or sustainable agriculture is gaining ground. Many grocery stores now have organic produce sections. "Natural" branded beef is appearing. People flock to farmers markets for farm-fresh produce and come back for better-tasting organic fruits and vegetables.

Minor Breeds

Until fairly recently in the history of agriculture, the rural landscape was rich in a diversity of livestock breeds. Many were all-purpose animals that fulfilled a variety of needs for small family farms. However, as agriculture has become more industrialized and production-oriented, it has encouraged the development of highly specialized animals. Today there is increasing interest in the minor breeds ignored by agribusiness. Most minor breeds are hardy, and some carry unique traits that would be forever lost if the breed died out. Minor breeds also can play an important role in crossbreeding programs. The Texas longhorn cattle, for example, which once came close to extinction, is now popular in crossbreeding programs for leaner beef.

Beef Cattle: Beef Devon, Belted Galloway, Red Poii, White Park, Scottish Highland.
Dairy Cattle: Dutch Belted, Milking Devon, Canedienne, Dexter, Guernsey, Milking Shorthorn.
Donkeys and Mules: Poitu, Spotted, Miniature; all donkeys and mules.
Draft Horses: Canadienne, Cleveland Bay, Shire, Suffolk Punch, Clydesdale.
Goats: Nigerian Dwarf, Spanish, San Clemente, Tennessee Fainting.
Horses and Ponies: Exmoor, Lipizzan, Bashkir Curly, Hackney.
Poultry: Ancona, Black Jersey Giant, White Jersey Giant, Black Minorca, Brown Leghorn, Delaware, White Wyandotte, Khaki Campbell Ducks, Pilgrim Geese
Sheep: Barbados, Border Leicester, Cotswold, Karakul, Lincoln, Navajo-Churro, Tunis, Vermont Merino, Delaine Merino, Shetland, Mouflon, American Jacob, Oxford, Shropshire, Southdown, Wiltshire Horn, Dorset Horned.
Swine: Mulefoot, Gloucester Old Spot, Tamworth, Red Wattle.

Mushrooms

Shiitake mushrooms, or Japanese forest mushrooms, have received much attention recently as an agricultural alternative. They grow on hardwood logs and sell for $7 to $8 a pound fresh, $4 to $5 a pound dried. A major export in Japan, shiitake production is a relatively new and small industry in the United States. Like

many specialty crops, there are no established markets. However, consumer demand is growing. White button mushrooms and oyster mushrooms may also hold promise as agricultural alternatives.

Nuts

Black walnuts, pecans and hicans (a cross between hickory and pecans) are all grown in Missouri. Butternuts and Japanese walnuts or heartnuts may also have possibilities.

Poultry

At one time, almost every farmer had some chickens, guinea hens, ducks or turkeys. Today, commercial egg and chicken operations have taken over the market. However, there are opportunities in supplying small homestead poultry flocks, locally-marketed country fresh eggs, exotic and fancy breeds, gourmet meat (squab, goose, capon), organic free-range chickens, etc. These, like most alternative enterprises, will require marketing skills.

Rabbits

The meat rabbit industry has faced problems with a lack of markets. Rabbit meat is high in protein and low in fat, so you can find a market niche with good marketing skills. Other opportunities in rabbits include Angora rabbits for Angora fiber, Rex rabbits for fur, and Dwarf rabbits for pets.

Sheep

Sheep can be profitable with good management and creative marketing of meat and wool. The relatively low investment required is an advantage for the small farmer. Some potential specialty markets include colored wool, which commands premium prices, and dairy sheep for milk, cheese and yogurt for gourmet markets. Direct marketing methods such as subscription marketing can be used for sheep products. Hair sheep, which have hair like a goat instead of wool, are an alternative for those who are only interested in meat production.

Small Fruits

Strawberries, grapes, blueberries, blackberries, raspberries, gooseberries, etc., provide good opportunities for direct marketing (pick-your-own, farmers' markets, roadside stands, subscription marketing, etc.). They can also be sold to local grocery stores or through cooperatives. Grapes can be grown to supply wineries. Hardy kiwi is a new fruit that may have possibilities.

Tree Fruits

Apples and peaches are two tree fruit crops common in Missouri. Dwarf fruit orchards are an interesting alternative.

Vegetables

There are many opportunities in vegetable production: traditional crops like tomatoes and carrots, newly popular colored bell peppers, Chinese vegetables, baby vegetables, heirloom varieties and so forth. Direct marketing and organic production are both applicable to vegetable production.

Worms

Worms can be produced by themselves or under rabbit hutches for sale to fishermen and gardeners.

National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service

December 02, 2003

1-800-346-9140 (English)
1-800-411-3222 (Español)

Breaking News

Research Helps Alternative Hog Farmers Tap Niche Markets

Interest in Manure Digesters Increasing

Country of Origin Labeling Delayed by Congress

...more

Funding Opportunities

North Dakota Marketing Assistance Program

USDA Forest Service Rural Community Assistance Grants

Ecological Systems and Research RFP

...more

Coming Events

Crop Rotation Workshop

NOFA/Massachusetts Annual Winter Conference

Tilling the Soil of Opportunity Course

...more

USDA SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE UPDATES

Native American Outreach Program Grants Announced

ASK A SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE EXPERT

NEW! Submit questions to our professional staff online

QUESTION OF THE WEEK

The 400ppm of bicarbonate in the irrigation water I use on my vegetables clogs my irrigation equipment. Does it also damage plants and soil, and if so, how can I reduce it?

NEW & UPDATED PUBLICATIONS

Bringing Local Food to Local People

Grasshopper Management

Organic Orchard, Vineyard, and Berry Crop Documentation Forms

Check out Sustainable Farming Internships & Apprenticeships: A Resource List

Appropriate Technology Transfer For Rural Areas (ATTRA)
P.O. Box 3657
Fayetteville, AR 72702

1-800-346-9140 (English)
1-800-411-3222 (Espanol)

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas

Text Only Version

On-Line Publications List

- ATTRA Materials List
- Fundamentals of Sustainable Agriculture Series
- Agronomy Series
- Horticulture Series
- Livestock Series
- Pest Management Series
- Soil and Fertility Series
- Marketing & Business Series
- Value-Added & Processing Series
- Alternative Farming Systems Series
- Resource Series
- Planting Your Farm's Future Leaflets

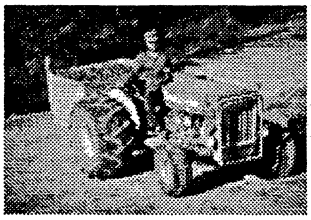
webmaster@attra.org

What's New
About ATTRA
Publications
Newsletter
Resources
Related Sites
Search
Site Map

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas

Text Only Version

ATTRA - Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas - is the national sustainable farming information center operated by the private nonprofit National Center for Appropriate Technology (NCAT).



ATTRA provides technical assistance to farmers, Extension agents, market gardeners, agricultural researchers, and other ag professionals in all 50 states. Topics addressed by ATTRA can be categorized into three broad areas:

- sustainable farming production practices
- alternative crop and livestock enterprises
- innovative marketing

Technical assistance, publications, and resources are provided free of charge to appropriate users. ATTRA is funded through a cooperative agreement with the USDA Rural Business--Cooperative Service agency.

The National Center for Appropriate Technology is a 501(c)3 non-profit organization with programs in sustainable agriculture, rural development, renewable energy, and low-income housing. The ATTRA program is one of several sustainable agriculture projects managed by NCAT.

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
P.O. Box 3657
Fayetteville, AR 72702
1-800-346-9140
M-Th 8:30am-4:30pm CST
F 8:30am-12:30pm CST

Whats New || About ATTRA || Publications || Newsletters || Resources || Related Sites || Search || Site Map

webmaster@attra.org

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas

ATTRA

MATERIALS LIST

January 2000

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA)
P.O. Box 3657
Fayetteville, AR 72702
Phone: 1-800-346-9140 --- FAX: (501) 442-9842

Index

Introduction
Fundamentals of Sustainable Agriculture Series
Soil Series
Resource Series
Livestock Series
Marketing & Business Series
Horticulture Series
Agronomy Series
Pest Management Series
Value-Added & Processing Series
Alternative Farming Systems Series

Introduction

ATTRA is the national sustainable agriculture information service that offers technical assistance and information free of charge to people and organizations involved with U.S. commercial agriculture, including full- and part-time farmers, Extension agents, agricultural support groups, researchers, educators, and agribusiness. Founded by the nonprofit National Center for Appropriate Technology (NCAT) in 1987, ATTRA is funded through a grant from the USDA Rural Business-Cooperative Service.

ATTRA specializes in responding to specific sustainable practices or enterprise questions. Our staff will research the question, summarize findings in writing, and compile supporting literature as appropriate to accompany the report which a caller receives by mail. On this list are ATTRA's current information packets on a host of sustainable agriculture topics.

In addition to providing customized research, we offer five types of standard materials within series, or families, of sustainable farming topics. When you receive our informational packets, you will notice subtitles on each which denote them as:

- **Fundamentals of Sustainable Agriculture Series**, *which covers broad topics of*

importance to sustainable farming advocates.

- **Systems Guides**, *offering broad treatments of topics that include inter-related systems.*
- **Production Guides**, *which focus on a specific crop or livestock series.*
- **Technical Notes**, *targeting specific sustainable ag methods.*
- **Resource Series**, *which identifies many helpful organizations, agribusinesses, services and informational materials.*

To order them, please call ATTRA's toll-free number 1-800-346-9140.

Go To Top

FUNDAMENTALS OF SUSTAINABLE AG SERIES

Holistic Management: A Whole-Farm Decision Making Framework
A decision making framework that assists farmers and others in establishing a long-term goal, a detailed financial plan, a biological plan for the landscape and a monitoring program to assess progress toward the goal.

Integrated Pest Management
Uses, benefits, IPM and sustainable agriculture, monitoring, economic thresholds, planning, tools & options, microbial pesticides, useful information resources.

Making the Transition to Sustainable Farming
Goals of becoming economically, ecologically and socially sustainable, planning & decision-making, rotations & cover crops, developing a cropping mix, weed & pest management, key ideas.

Overview of Cover Crops & Green Manures
Soil benefits from cover crops, nitrogen production, weed suppression, cover crops in rotations, pest management benefits, economics, many sources of additional information.

Sustainable Soil Management
Covers the components of the living soil, soil organisms, and organic matter, fertilizers, and soil quality. Provides ways to assess soil health, build soil, and manage the soil livestock. Complete with resource list of additional information.

Go To Top

SOIL SERIES

Alternative Soil Testing Laboratories (available only in print)
Labs are in two broad categories: (1) humus, organic matter, and microbial analysis, and (2) mineral analysis and fertilizer recommendations. References for soil quality and alternative fertility.

Farm-Scale Composting Resource List
Suggested reading, compost references, associations, web links, software, magazines, email lists, bibliographies.

Overview of Cover Crops & Green Manures
Soil benefits from cover crops, nitrogen production, weed suppression, cover crops in rotations, pest management benefits, economics, many sources of additional information.

Nonconventional Soil Amendments (available only in print)
Mineral powders, plant & animal byproducts, seaweed, growth regulators, inoculants, enzymes, micronutrients, dusts/powders.

Sources for Organic Fertilizers & Amendments
A listing of manufacturers, national distributors, major regional distributors, and mail-order sources.

Sustainable Soil Management
Covers the components of the living soil, soil organisms, and organic matter, fertilizers, and soil quality. Provides ways to assess soil health, build soil, and manage the soil livestock. Complete with resource list of additional information.

Go To Top

RESOURCE SERIES

Sustainable Farming Internships and Apprenticeships

K-12 Sustainable Agriculture Curricula
Education, curricula, publications, electronic resources.

Sustainable Agriculture Organizations & Publications

University Programs and Contacts

Go To Top

LIVESTOCK SERIES

Avian

Sustainable Chicken Production (available only in print)
Housing, breeds, feeding, health, marketing.

Ratites: Ostrich, Emu, Rhea (available only in print)
Brief history, considerations before investing, marketing options.

Beef & Dairy

Alternative Beef Marketing
Value-added beef, lean beef, direct marketing, cooperatives, niche markets: organic, natural, pasture-finished.

Sustainable Beef Production
Grazing & feeding options, low-stress handling, alternative parasite control, environmental & social concerns.

Beef Farm Sustainability Checksheet
Assessment tool to help plan a whole farm in which beef production is a major enterprise. Management of animals, forage, soil, watershed, marketing, economics and goal-setting are addressed in the 200 questions.

Grass-Based & Seasonal Dairying
Pasture as primary feed source for dairy cattle; seasonal production to reduce feed costs.

Fish & Worms

Evaluating an Aquacultural Enterprise
Considerations (physical, biological, financial), culture and species options, resource lists.

Worms for Composting (Vermicomposting)
Describes systems that use worms to process animal and other organic wastes; gives commercial examples of various types; provides a sample production budget; suggestions about marketing included; lists many further resources, both print and electronic.

Grass Farming

Assessing the Pasture Soil Resource
How to take a soil sample and an easy way to assess soil biological activity and water infiltration. Assessment sheet included.

Matching Livestock and Forage Resources in Controlled Grazing
Grazing objectives, maintaining botanical balance, encouraging rapid growth, compromising between yield and quality, minimizing mowing, producer goals.

Meeting the Nutritional Needs of Ruminants on Pasture
(available only in print)
Impact of grazing management on nutrition, supplemental feeding on high quality pasture, feed profiling, feed budgeting, matching livestock and forage resources for efficient pasture use.

Nutrient Cycling in Pastures
Examines elements of pasture ecology, including soil organisms, plants, and animals. Discusses their interactions and ways to enhance nutrient cycling with minimal losses to air or ground and surface waters.

Introduction To Paddock Design And Fencing-Water Systems For Controlled Grazing
Designing a controlled grazing system, determining paddock size based on forage availability for the number of animals grazed, shape of the paddock based on landscape and other variables, purchasing fencing items, water systems, sources.

Rotational Grazing
How to manage pastures and grazing animals to more profitably utilize the farm's resources.

Sustainable Pasture Management (available only in print)
Managing fertility and pests, grazing systems, conserved forages, maintaining productivity, additional resources.

Hogs & Sheep

Sustainable Hog Production Overview
Breed selection, feed alternatives, odor and dust problems, waste and crop nutrient management, health, humane concerns, vertical integration, identifing an alternative marketing niche, and sources of additional information.

Alternative Marketing of Pork
Commodity vs. direct marketing, what is direct marketing, niche markets such as organic and ethnic, direct market consideration and channels, and sources of further information.

Hooped Shelters for Finishing Hogs
Hooped shelter design, purchasing a complete or noncomplete shelter, deep bedding, cost, sources for additional information.

Sustainable Sheep Production (available only in print)
Pasture & range grazing, alternative health strategies (parasites & diseases), marketing, industrial development, sources for additional information.

Other Livestock

Bison Production
Advantages and disadvantages of raising bison, information on pasturing, fencing, and handling of bison, as well as marketing options, and diseased and parasites of bison. Sources of additional information are also provided.

Pest Management

Integrated Parasite Management for Livestock
A system approach to assess and manage the soil, forages and animals to decrease internal

parasites and their effects.

Go To Top

MARKETING & BUSINESS SERIES

Holistic Management: A Whole-Farm Decision Making Framework
A decision-making framework that creates a link between sound economics and the environment. Managing people, land, and money in a responsible way. Framework to evaluate sustainability of farm decisions.

Organic Certification
Comprehensive list of organic certification organizations.

Community Supported Agriculture
Examining the full spectrum of CSA arrangements from subscription marketing to "shareholders," including success factors, financial concerns, profiles, management challenges.

Direct Marketing
Importance of marketing, market research, niche marketing, value-added marketing, pricing, promotion, related resources.

Farmers' Markets
Information for organizing a market and for selling at market.

Pick Your Own & Agri-Entertainment
Covers advertising, crops, facilities, and pricing for pick-you-own crops and various forms of agri-entertainment.

Resources for Organic Marketing
Pondering the options, proactive approach, national and regional organic trade organizations and publications, market research studies, many contact sources.

Go To Top

HORTICULTURE SERIES

Flowers, Mushrooms

Field Grown Cut & Dried Flower Production & Marketing
(available only in print)
Marketing, climate, trade organizations, conferences, literature, species list.

Mushroom Cultivation & Marketing

General review of cultivation technologies (including shiitakes), enterprise evaluation, further research resources.

Phenology Web Links: Sequence of Bloom, Floral Calendars, What's in Bloom
Links to web sites that discuss phenology as a tool for observing seasonal events in nature such as emergence of crop pests. Other sites link to data on sequence of bloom, floral calendars, and what plants are blooming in gardens and arboertums. .

Fruit Crops

Overview of Organic Fruit Production
Fertilization, pests, weed control, obstacles.

Organic and Low-Spray Apple Production
(temporarily available only in print)

Organic Blueberry Production
Highbush, fertility, insect pests, diseases.

Organic Culture of Blackberries and Raspberries
Diseases, pests, resistant varieties.

Organic Grape Production
(temporarily available only in print)

Pawpaw Production
Culture, research, markets, pesticidal properties.

Strawberries: Organic & IPM Options (available only in print)
Fertility, weed control (cultural, biological and mulches), insect and mite control, disease control, symptoms and identification, alternatives to Methyl Bromide, references.

Herbs

Echinacea as an Alternative Crop (available only in print)
Production of Echinacea root as raw material for the herbal supplement industry.

Ginseng, Goldenseal & Other Native Roots
Status of ginseng and related (opplopanax, Siberian ginseng, sarsaparilla), goldenseal and black cohosh (related), and blue cohosh as alternative root crops for the herbal supplement industry. Includes USDA bulletin. (Online copy does not include bulletin.)

Herb Overview
Marketing strategies, trade organizations, literature, conferences, consultants, resource list.

Lavender as an Alternative Crop
Medicinal herb, essential oils, climate zone, uses, resources.

St. Johnswort as an Alternative Crop

Evaluation of St. Johnswort as an alternative U.S. farm crop (raw materials for the herbal supplement industry).

Nut Crops

Agroforestry Overview
Alleycropping, silvopasture, shelterbelts, buffer strips, forest farming, costs, marketing, products, resources.

Black Walnut Agroforestry (available only in print)
Culture of black walnuts for timber/crops, marketing, other resources.

Sustainable Pecan Production
Native pecan groves, papershell orchards, northern varieties, general culture, agroforestry, pests, diseases.

Vegetable Crops

Organic Allium Production
Discusses all alliums (onions) except for garlic. Information is presented on varieties, culture, soils and fertility, irrigation, integrated pest management (including weeds, insects, and diseases), harvest, postharvest, and economics.

Companion Planting
The scientific and traditional bases for plant associations are discussed. A companion planting chart for common herbs, vegetables and flowers is provided, along with a resource list.

Manures for Vegetable Crop Production
Discusses problems associated with using both raw and composted manures for commercial vegetable growing and suggests some solutions.

Organic Sweet Corn Production
This publication features traditional ideas and current concepts for fertility, pest management, and marketing of a popular vegetable crop.

Sprouts and Wheatgrass Production
Hydroponic and shallow bed methods to sprout vegetable and cereal grain seeds. Food safety issues are addressed. Books, seed suppliers, and equipment sources are listed.

Organic Tomato Production
Organic certification, economics, variety selection, crop rotation, fertility, weed management, training systems, insect and disease control, resources and web links.

Related Topics

Alternative Pollinators: Native Bees
Discusses using solitary bees (non-honeybees) for pollination. Includes information on how to attract and raise alkali bees, bumblebees, leafcutter bees, mason bees, sweat bees and

others. A list of suppliers of bees and bee equipment is also included.

Alternative Seed Suppliers: Untreated, Heirloom, Organic
Some sources for hard-to-find untreated, heirloom and organic vegetable seed. Includes electronic contacts.

Organic Potting Mixes
Describes potting mix ingredients and appropriate mixes for organic and sustainable operations; extensive listing of prepared mixes and suppliers.

Postharvest Handling of Fruits & Vegetables
A guide to maintaining produce quality and safety for the market gardener.

Sustainable Small-Scale Nursery Production
Container and field production, irrigation and runoff, weed control, integrated pest management, fertilization, potting media, marketing, costs, sources for additional information.

Season Extension Techniques for Market Gardeners
Cultural practices, mulches, floating row cover, slitted and punched row cover, cold frames, high tunnels, shade cloth, economics, sources for additional information.

Solar Greenhouse Resource List
List of resources available on construction, operation and manufacturers of solar and small-scale greenhouses.

Grass/Turf

Sustainable Turf Care
Least-toxic practices, compost, irrigation, variety selection, mowing, insect & disease management, weed management, references, organizations, reading, databases, supplies.

Go To Top

AGRONOMY SERIES

Agroforestry Overview
Alleycropping, silvopasture, shelterbelts, buffer strips, forest farming, costs, marketing, products, resources.

Alternative Agronomic Crops
(temporarily available only in print)
Considerations before diversifying, marketing alternative crops, and sources of additional information.

Alternative Soil Testing Laboratories
Supplies a range of soil testing labs and supplies that support the special analytical needs

of farmers using organic or sustainable methods of production.

Intercropping Principles and Production Practices
Implementing nature's principle of diversity on the farm. Intercrop concepts, production, and management with examples.

Principles of Sustainable Weed Management For Croplands
Root cause of weeds, understanding weed banks & germination, monoculture vs biodiversity, management strategies, costs.

Sustainable Corn & Soybean Production
Tips and ideas for successful corn and soybean production with minimal inputs and limited environmental impact.

Use of Baking Soda as a Fungicide

Go To Top

PEST MANAGEMENT SERIES

Integrated Pest Management
Uses, benefits, IPM and sustainable agriculture, monitoring, economic thresholds, planning, tools & options, microbial pesticides, useful information resources.

Integrated Pest Management for Greenhouse Crops
Monitoring, sanitation, biological controls, biorational pesticides, insect growth regulators, disease control methods.

Greenhouse IPM: Sustainable Aphid Control
Focuses on monitoring sanitation, biological controls, biorational pesticides and insect growth regulators.

Greenhouse IPM: Sustainable Thrips Control
Controlling thrips in the greenhouse with biological controls, biorational pesticides, and planning, tools & options, microbial pesticides, useful information resources.

Alternative Nematode Control
Nematode suppressive cover crops, crop rotations, soil solarization and steaming, nematode suppressive soil amendments, references.

Compost Teas for Plant Disease Control
Diseases for which compost extracts are effective, suppressive effects, active components, fermented versus aerated, Weltzein and Brinton fermentation method, Cantisano and Luebke aerobic method, extraction variations, references, suggested reading.

Disease Suppressive Potting Mixes
How they are developed, suppressing pathogens through general competition or specific

microbial antagonists, using peat moss, compost systems and analysis, other natural disease control methods, suggested reading, suppliers.

Farmscaping to Enhance Biological Control (available only in print)
Description & benefits, strategies & techniques. Tables include Plants that Attract Beneficials, Pests and Associated Beneficial Insects, and Seed Blends to Attract Beneficial Insects.

Late Blight in Potatoes: Alternative Controls
New strains of late blight have given rebirth to an old pest problem. Organic management options are available and are outlined in this publication.

White Mold on Soybeans: Alternative Controls
White mold is a fungal pest associated with intensive soybean production practices. This publication addresses the key strategies and options for control.

Use of Baking Soda as a Fungicide
Discusses the use of sodium and potassium bicarbonate sprays to control powdery mildew and other foliar fungal diseases. Also includes recommendations for use.

Fire Ant Management
Least-toxic options for suppression of fire ants.

Grasshopper Management
Focuses on preventive management, non-chemical strategies,cultural and biological controls.

Management Alternatives for Thrips on Vegetable & Flower Crops in the Field
Organic control options for this common insect pest are described in detail. Information is especially relevant to onion growers.

Go To Top

Value-Added & Processing Series

Grain Processing
Profiles of farmers who are processing grains, from whole-wheat flour to baked goods. Resource list for additional information, supplies, and equipment.

Overview: Adding Value to Farm Products
Presents the basic concept, keys to success, sources of information on business planning and regulations.

Small-Scale Food Dehydration: A Resource List
Describes dehydration process, equipment and designs and lists resources for more information.

Small-Scale Oilseed Processing
Description of basic process, including a low-tech method for small-scale processing of sunflower seeds. Provides list of sustainable raw materials, sources for equipment, and additional information.

Soy Foods
Introduces a few of the food products made from soybeans, and basic process for tofu. Describes sources for in-depth processing and marketing information.

Go To Top

ALTERNATIVE FARMING SYSTEMS SERIES

Biodynamic Farming & Compost Preparation
History, concepts, biodynamic preparations, compost preparation, herbal teas, planetary influences, companion planting, community supported agriculture, research, web links and resources.

Introduction to Permaculture
Introduction, definitions, characteristics, practical application, ethics, principles, resources, book, email chat groups, web links.

Radionics in Agriculture (available only in print)
Introduction and history of radionics, instruments for plant and animal diagnosis and treatment, uses (analysis, evaluation of materials, vitalization), resources.

Go To Top

---

webmaster@attra.org

Sustainable Agriculture...Continuing to Grow

A Proceedings of the "Farming and Ranching for Profit, Stewardship & Community" Conference

March 7-9, 2000

Funding for this publication was provided by
USDA Western Region Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (Western SARE).

The SARE program, which was mandated by Congress in the 1990 and 1996 Farm Bills, is implemented by four regional councils in cooperation with the USDA Cooperative State Research, Education and Extension Service. Western SARE is coordinated by Utah State University soil scientist V. Philip Rasmussen and led by an Administrative Council that represents diverse agricultural and public interests.

The Western Region includes Alaska, Arizona, California, Colorado, Hawaii, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, New Mexico, Oregon, Utah, Washington, Wyoming and the Island Protectorates of American Samoa, Guam, Micronesia and the Northern Mariana Islands.

For information about Western SARE grant programs, educational resources or funded project results, contact the headquarters office at (435) 797-2257 or wsare@mendel.usu.edu.

Western Region
Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Western SARE does not discriminate on the basis of
race, religion, national origin, sex, age, handicap or veteran status.

Message from the Western Coordinating Committee on Sustainable Agriculture. 7
Message from Sustainable Northwest. 8
Message from The Food Alliance. 10

THE SUSTAINABLE FARM

Profile of Larry Thompson, Thompson Farms, and Regional Chair of Western SARE's Administrative Council. 14
Profile of Karla Chambers, Stahlbush Island Farms. 17

The Long-term Sustainable Farming Systems Comparison Trial: Results from Ten Years of Research
Profile of Ed Sills. 19
Profile of Bruce Rominger. 21
Steve Temple. 22
Karen Klonsky. 23
Howard Ferris. 24

Biologically Integrated Farming Systems in California: Partnerships for Environmental Protection and Farm Profitability
Carolee Bull. 25
Joseph Grant. 26
Randall Mutters. 27
Gary Obenauf. 28

Agroforestry: Multiple Uses of Trees in Agricultural Landscapes
Garry Stephenson. 29
Kim Wilkinson. 30
Mike Dosskey. 31

Water Conserving Systems
Profile of Howard Wuertz. 32
Clint Shock. 34
Larry Schwankl. 36

Alternative Crops and Systems for Dryland Production
Gary Peterson. 37
Diana Roberts. 38
Jim Krall. 39

Biologically Integrated Viticulture Production
Jenny Broome. 40
Steve McIntyre. 41
Cliff Ohmart. 42

SOIL

Payoffs from Improving Soil Quality: A Grower's Perspective
Profile of Jim Durst. 44
Profile of Dale Gies. 46

Organic Matter: How to Conserve It
Profile of Peter Kenagy. 48
Richard Dick. 50
Fred Magdoff. 51

Experiences with No-till and Strip-till Production
Profile of John Aeschliman. 52
Profile of Steve Groff. 54
John Luna. 56
Jeff Mitchell. 57

Invisible Allies: Lessons Learned about Soil Biology and Nutrient Cycling
Louise Jackson. 58
Howard Ferris. 59
Bob Linderman. 60

Managing Organic Sources of Nutrients
Mal Westcott. 61
Patricia Millner. 62
Dan Sullivan. 63

DISEASE, PESTS AND WEEDS

Integrated Approaches to Weed Management
Profile of Alec McErlich. 66
Profile of Vicki Swift. 68
Tim Prather. 70

Biological Approaches to Disease Management
Wesley Chun. 71
Mark Mazzola. 72
Krishna Subbarao. 73

Enhancing Plant Resistance to Disease through Biological Inoculants and Farm Management Practices
Sally Miller. 74
Caroline Press. 75

Geoff Zehnder. 76
Biological Control of Insect Pests: Making it Work
Ralph Berry. 77
Mark Morris. 78
Lynn Wunderlich. 79

Biologically-based Pest Management Systems for Tree Crops
Jay Brunner. 80
Kent Daane. 81
Sean Swezey. 82

THE SUSTAINABLE RANCH

Profile of Doc and Connie Hatfield, Oregon Country Beef. 84

Producing a Healthy Range
Profile of Joe Morris. 87
Ken Crane. 89
Roy Roath. 90

Innovations in Livestock Production Systems
Profile of Duane Roecks. 91
Profile of Dante Benedetti. 93
Profile of Tom Larson. 95

Holistic Management of Farm and Ranch Resources
Russ Camper and Chance Gowan. 97
Don Nelson. 98

Paid to Graze: Renting Livestock for Vegetation Management
Profile of Terry Wheeler. 99
Hudson Glimp. 101
An Peischel. 102

MARKETING IN A SUSTAINABLE ECONOMY

Strategies for Direct Marketing
Profile of Diane Green. 104
Larry Lev. 106

Eco-labeling: Linking Customer Demand with Farm Stewardship and Social Values
Deborah Kane. 107
Michael Sligh. 108
Theresa Steig. 109

Getting off the Bulk Commodities Treadmill: What Buyers of Specialty Crops Expect, What Dryland Small Grain Farmers can Provide
Profile of Kay Heine. 110
Profile of Cal Stengel. 112
Profile of Bob Quinn. 114
Profile of Richard Repp. 116

Marketing Natural Meats
Profile of Joel Salatin. 118
Profile of David and Kay James. 120

SUSTAINING AGRICULTURE

A Message from Glenda Humiston, Assistant to the Undersecretary of Agriculture. 124

Public Policy and Funding Support for Sustainable Agriculture
Margaret Krome. 125
Mark Lipson. 126
Pete Price. 127

The Role of Non-profit Organizations in Sustaining Western Agriculture
Profile of Jan Tusick. 128
Karen Murphy. 130
Bonnie Rice. 131

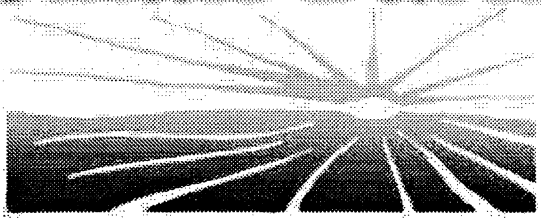
To Plow or to Pave: Farmland Preservation in the West
Profile of Jon Meikle. 132
Profile of Bob Rose. 134
Greg Kirkpatrick. 136

Sustainable Community Food Systems
Colette DePhelps. 137
Gail Feenstra. 138
Steven Garrett. 139
Deb Lippoldt. 140

Grant Writing for Farmers and Ranchers: Funding your On-farm Research Projects
Margaret Krome. 141

Welcome to

Small Farms @ USDA



Creating Opportunities
Preserving Choices

In the Spotlight

1. Introduction
2. Background
3. National Commission
4. Advisory Committee
5. Time To Act Campaign!
6. Small Farms Council
7. Small Farms Coordinators
8. Reports/Policies/Regs
9. Small Farms Database
10. Newsroom
11. Hotlinks/Resources
12. Acronyms/Abbreviations
13. Upcoming Events
14. E-mail Us

USDA Progress Reports
& Small Farms Database

800-346-9140

ATTRA
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas

SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE: AN INTRODUCTION

ATTRA SUMMARY

ATTRA is the national sustainable agriculture information center funded by the USDA's Rural Business -- Cooperative Service.

A sustainable agriculture provides nourishing food, protects those who work the land, helps stabilize the earth's climate, and safeguards soil and water.

- Asilomar Declaration, California, 1990.

A sustainable agriculture is one that, over the long term, enhances the environmental quality and the resource base on which agriculture depends; provides for basic human food and fiber needs; is economically viable; and enhances the quality of life for farmers and society as a whole.

- American Society of Agronomy

Sustainable agriculture was defined in Public Law 101-624, Title XVI, Subtitle A, Section 1683, Government Printing Office, Washinton, D.C., NAL KF 1692.831 1990. Under that law, "the term sustainable agriculture means an integrated system of plant and animal production practices having a site-specific application that will, over the long term:

A) satisfy human food and fiber needs;
B) enhance environmental quality and the natural resource base upon which the agricultural economy depends;
C) make the most efficient use of nonrenewable resources and on-farm resources and integrate, where appropriate, natural biological cycles and controls;
D) sustain the economic viability of farm operations; and
E) enhance the quality of life for farmers and society as a whole."

- Food, Agriculture, Conservation, and Trade Act of 1990 (FACTA)

Agriculture is defined as the science and art of farming, of cultivating the ground, sowing, planting, and caring for plants and harvesting them for the purpose of producing food. In its broadest sense, it includes gardening, horticulture and raising livestock. **Sustainable** means to be able to support or endure continuously. **Sustainable agriculture,** therefore, suggests a system of farming that produces food as benignly as possible without undermining the viability of humans as a species.

The term sustainable agriculture was first used in 1978 by Wes Jackson of the Land Institute in Salina, Kansas, to describe an alternative system of farming based upon resource conservation and quality of rural life. Although it has been defined and discussed vigorously since then, a clear and comprehensive understanding of its meaning still evades us.

The term sustainability is a difficult and elusive concept. What is it that is being sustained and for whom? Is sustainable agriculture a moral crusade by zealots? A matter of food security? A science-based necessity for human survival? A way to redistribute economic wealth?

Advocates of sustainability maintain that the natural environment must be sustained for generations to come. Natural resources must be utilized only within their capacity to regenerate and renew themselves. Modern agriculture, which developed rapidly after World War II "is credited with dramatically increasing the availability of cheap food." This abundance of food, however, has been accompanied by steep environmental and social costs — loss of topsoil, water pollution, loss of bio-diversity, dependence on non-renewable resources, rising farm production costs, and the decline of rural communities, among other things.

Over the past several decades a number of labels for agricultural systems emphasizing the common themes of resource conservation and

Elements of Competing Agricultural Paradigms

Conventional agriculture	Alternative agriculture
Centralization ◆National/international production, processing, and marketing ◆Concentrated populations; fewer farmers ◆Concentrated control of land, resource and capital	Decentralization ◆More local/regional production, processing and marketing ◆Dispersed populations; more farmers ◆Dispersed control of land, resources and capital
Dependence ◆Large, capital-intensive technology and production units ◆Heavy reliance on external sources of energy, inputs and credit ◆Consumerism and market dependence ◆Emphasis on science, specialists, and experts	Independence ◆Smaller, low capital production units and technology ◆Reduced reliance on external sources of energy, inputs and credit ◆More personal and community self-sufficiency ◆Primary emphasis on personal knowledge, skills and local wisdom
Competition ◆Lack of cooperation; self-interest ◆Farm traditions and rural culture outdated ◆Small rural communities not necessary to agriculture ◆Labor an input to be minimized ◆Farming is a business only ◆Primary emphasis on speed, quantity and profit.	Community ◆Increased cooperation ◆Preservation of farm traditions and rural culture ◆Small rural communities essential to agriculture ◆Farm work rewarding, labor an essential to be made meaningful ◆Farming a way of life and a business ◆Primary emphasis on permanence, quality and beauty
Domination of nature ◆Humans separate from and superior to nature. ◆Nature consists primarily of resources to be used ◆Recycling wastes neglected ◆Production maintained by agricultural chemicals ◆Highly processed, nutrient fortified food.	Harmony with nature ◆Humans are part of and subject to nature ◆Emphasis on life cycle; growth and decay balanced ◆Natural ecosystems are imitated.
Specialization ◆Narrow genetic base ◆Monocultures ◆Single-cropping in succession ◆Separation of crops and livestock ◆Standardized production systems ◆Specialized, reductionist science and technology	Diversity ◆Broad genetic base ◆Emphasis on polycultures ◆Multiple crops in complementary rotations ◆Integration of crops and livestock ◆Locally adapted production systems ◆Interdisciplinary, systems-oriented science and technology
Exploitation ◆External costs often ignored ◆Short-term benefits outweigh long-term consequences ◆Heavy use of non-renewable resources ◆Confidence in science and technology ◆High consumption to maintain economic growth ◆Financial success, busy lifestyles, materialism	Restraint ◆Consideration given to external costs ◆Short-term and long-term outcomes equally important ◆Based on renewable resources; non-renewable resources conserved ◆Appropriate use of science and technology ◆Consumption restrained to benefit future generations ◆Simpler lifestyles, non-materialism

From: Beus, Curtis E. and Riley E. Dunlap. "Conventional Versus Alternative Agriculture: The Paradigmatic Roots of the Debate." *Rural Sociology*. Vol. 55, no. 4 (1990): 590-616.

environmental protection have emerged. Although they go by different names — organic, natural, low-input, alternative, regenerative, bio-dynamic or biological farming — some of these labels are occasionally used synonymously with others.

The new models of agriculture aim for ecological soundness. Sustainable systems are diversified and mimic nature as closely as possible – a high degree of bio-diversity predominates, plant nutrients are recycled, soil is mulched, tillage kept to a minimum, livestock are well-integrated into the landscape, and a variety of perennials lend stability to the ecosystem.

To the farmer desperate to survive on the farm, however, sustainability means more than just ecological soundness. It means economic viability, a decent family income and a good quality of life. Sustainable agriculture therefore, at least at the farm level, has increasingly become a balancing act that ensures both the economic *and* ecological robustness of the farm; an integrated system of production and marketing that reduces input costs by conserving nutrients, energy and biological diversity, while emphasizing strategies like value-added and niche marketing to enhance profitability.

Some characteristics of a sustainable farm enterprise are:

Economic viability:

A) Reduce production costs, minimize use of costly external inputs by tightening nutrient cycles on the farm, composting and crop rotation.

B) Diversify farm enterprises, emphasize direct marketing and premium specialty markets.

Water management:

Minimize surface and ground water pollution, conservation of water. Reduce use of synthetically-derived pesticides by enhancing conditions that inhibit insect pests and disease. Cultural, physical, and biological measures include monitoring for insect pests, enhancing habitat for beneficial organisms, use of pest- and disease-resistant varieties, crop rotations, improving soil health and other measures.

Bio-diversity:

A high degree of bio-diversity provides control of insect pests and diseases, increases pathways for nutrient cycling and overall system stability.

To facilitate the transition to a more sustaining agriculture, other discussions on sustainability emphasize the need for change in the socioeconomic environment within which farmers operate.

Such changes include but are not limited to:

- More direct connections between farmers and consumers;
- Regional food self-sufficiency;
- Reduced economic concentration in production, processing and marketing (giant hog and poultry operations are an example);
- Policies that encourage resource conservation.

Advocates of alternative agriculture maintain that in the absence of such a society-wide transformation, sustainability, especially for farmers, will remain a myth and a cruel hoax. And so the debate continues. Clearly, sustainability is not just a set of practices but a characteristic of agricultural systems as a whole. It is a continuing quest that is constantly being modified to reflect present realities - political, economic and environmental. Innovative farmers, grassroots activists, and consumers looking for alternatives are quietly working to define this movement and there is reason to hope that the emerging models of sustainability will meet the challenge posed by the unrestrained growth of industrial agricultur

Preliminary resources:

National Agricultural Library (ed.) 1995. Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Books.

SRB 95-02. Special Reference Briefs. Alternative Farming Systems Information Center. National Agriculture Library, Beltsville, Maryland. For a copy, contact:

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
National Agricultural Library, Room 304
10301 Baltimore Blvd.
Beltsville, MD 20705-2351
301-504-6559; FAX 301-504-6409
E-mail: afsic@nalusda.gov
Internet:
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/afsabout.htm

DeMuth, Suzanne. 1995. Sustainable Agriculture in Print: Current Periodicals. SRB 95-08. Special Reference Briefs. Alternative Farming Systems Information Center. National Agriculture Library, Beltsville, Maryland. For a copy, contact the above address.

Hegyes, Gabriel and Charles A. Francis (eds.) 1997. Future Horizons: Recent Literature in Sustainable Agriculture. Extension and Education Materials for Sustainable Agriculture: Volume 6. Institute of Agriculture and Natural Resources, University of Nebraska — Lincoln. 222 p. Contact:

Center for Sustainable Agricultural Systems
University of Nebraska — Lincoln
225 Keim Hall
Lincoln, NE 68583-0949
402-472-2056; 402-472-4104
E-mail: csas003@unlvm.unl.edu
Available on the Internet at:
http://ianrwww.unl.edu/ianr/csas/v6ch8.htm#8int

Internet sites:
(The following are only a handful of the hundreds of Internet sites on sustainable agriculture.)

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
http://www.nal.usda.gov/afsic

Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas
http://www.attra.org

Center for Sustainable Agricultural Systems
http://ianrwww.unl.edu/ianr/csas/

Community Alliance with Family Farmers
http://www.caff.org/home

Ecological Agriculture Projects
www.eap.mcgill.ca

Henry A. Wallace Institute for Alternative Agriculture
http://www.hawiaa.org

Intergarden
http://sunsite.unc.edu/london/permaculture.html

Minnesota Institute for Sustainable Agriculture
www.misa.umn.edu/

Missouri Alternatives Center
http://www.ext.missouri.edu/agebb/mac
(also visit
http://www.ssu.missouri.edu/faculty/Jikerd/default.htm

Sustainable Agriculture Network
http://www.ces.ncsu.edu/san or www.sare.org

Sustainability book list
http://sustainable.state.fl.us/fdi/fscc/res/booklist.htm

Sustainable Farming Connection
http://sunsite.unc.edu/farming-connection/

Sustainable Communities Network
http://sustainable.org/economy/agriculture.html

University of California Sustainable Agriculture
Research and Education Program
http://www.sarep.ucdavis.edu/

World Sustainable Agriculture Association
http://www.igc.org/wsaala/

WWW Virtual Library Sustainable Agriculture
http://www.floridaplants.com/sustainable.htm

March 1999

ATTRA

P.O. Box 3667
Fayetteville, Arkansas 72702

West-Wide Conference

Sheridan, Wyoming
September 24 - 26, 2002

Exploring Agricultural Diversification Options

PROCEEDINGS

$25.00

PROJECT PARTNERS:

- **Sonoran Institute**
- **University of Wyoming Cooperative Extension Service**
- **USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service**
- **Wyoming Business Council**
- **Wyoming Department of Agriculture**
- **Wyoming Rural Development Council**
- **Wyoming Small Business Development Center**

Partial funding provided by
Western Region Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education

Table of Contents

PROJECT PARTNERS **3**

CONFERENCE SPONSORS **4**

CONFERENCE EXHIBITORS **5**

LETTER FROM HONORABLE MIKE ENZI **6**

AUTHORS OF PROCEEDING SUMMARIES **7**

OPENING DAY **9**

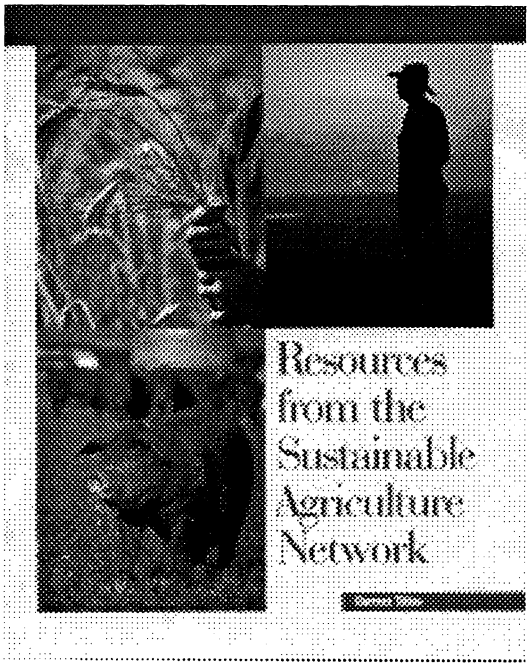
INTRODUCTORY REMARKS 11
Ron Micheli *12*
OVERVIEW OF AGRICULTURAL ENTERPRISE DIVERSIFICATION 13
Dr. Larry Butler *15*
Dr. Ed Mahoney *15*
INCORPORATING AGRI-EDUCATION AND AGRI-TAINMENT INTO YOUR FARMING OPERATION 17
Darren Schmall *18*
LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS IN ESTABLISHING A DIVERSIFIED OPERATION 19
Dr. Alan Schroeder *37*
DETERMINING THE FEASIBILITY OF AN AGRICULTURAL ENTERPRISE 39
John Hewlett *43*
FINANCING OPPORTUNITIES FOR A DIVERSIFIED RANCHING OR FARMING OPERATION 45
Ryan Fieldgrove *51*
SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR WOMEN IN BUSINESS 53
Deb Farris *54*
FUNDAMENTALS OF MARKETING 55
Dr. Ed Mahoney *56*
ESTABLISHING GOALS / IDENTIFYING FAMILY VALUES 57
Dr. Randy Weigel *66*
INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR AN ALTERNATIVE ENTERPRISE 67
Dave Bell *68*
PERMITTING AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS 69
Paul Howard *70*
UNDERSTANDING U.S. EXPORT PROGRAMS 71
Robert Tse *83*
ADVANTAGES OF FORMING A MARKETING COOPERATIVE 85
Scott Zimmerman *86*
LINKING WITH YOUR LOCAL COMMUNITY 87
Lynn Jensen *88*

CLOSING DAY **89**

PROS AND CONS OF DEVELOPING AN ORGANIC ENTERPRISE 91
Lew Grant *92*
AN OVERVIEW OF VALUE-ADDED LIVESTOCK OPPORTUNITIES 93
Bob Rolston *96*
AN OVERVIEW OF FEE HUNTING / FISHING ENTERPRISES 97
Dr. Larry Butler *98*
AN OVERVIEW OF RANCH RECREATION OPPORTUNITIES 99
Ted Flynn *100*
DEVELOPING ALTERNATIVE CROPS 101
Phil Hartman *102*
Lew Grant *102*
ESTABLISHING AN ALTERNATIVE LIVESTOCK ENTERPRISE 103
Dr. John Woiwode *106*

POTENTIAL FOR FEE HUNTING / FISHING 107
Ben Peterson *109*
Ray Heaton *109*
RANCH RECREATION FROM A PRODUCER'S PERSPECTIVE 111
Pachy Burns *113*
Kris Johnson *113*
PROVIDING GROUP TOURS ON YOUR DIVERSIFIED OPERATION 115
Judy Steeneck *116*
POTENTIAL FOR VALUE-ADDED CROPS 117
Ryan Foxley *118*
Harry O'Connor *118*
POTENTIAL FOR VALUE-ADDED LIVESOCK 119
Erwin Young *122*
Alan Reed *122*
WATCHABLE WILDLIFE / NON-CONSUMPTIVE USE 123
Linda Campbell *124*
HOW TO INCORPORATE INTERNATIONAL TOURISM INTO YOUR OPERATION 125
Susan Maxwell *131*
Scott Balyo *131*
ADDING A BED AND BREAKFAST TO YOUR FARM OR RANCH ENTERPRISE 133
Barb Madsen *134*
CLOSING REMARKS 135
Ben Alexander *139*

Resources from the Sustainable Agriculture Network



How to Order

SAN Titles at a Glance

- **Building a Sustainable Business: A Guide to Developing a Business Plan for Farms and Rural Businesses**
  Description | PDF Edition (3.4 meg)| To Order

- **The New Farmer's Market: Farm-Fresh Ideas for Producers, Managers and Communities**
  Description | Book excerpts

- **Building Soils for Better Crops, 2nd Edition**
  Description

- **Steel in the Field: A Farmer's Guide to Weed Management Tools**
  Description | Book excerpts

- **Managing Cover Crops Profitably, 2nd Edition**
  Description | Online edition | On CD-ROM | (1st Edition)

- **How to Manage the Blue Orchard Bee as an Orchard Pollinator**
  Description

- **The Small Dairy Resource Book: Information Sources for Farmstead Producers and Processors**
  Description | Online edition

- **The New American Farmer: Profiles of Agricultural Innovation**
  Description | Online edition

- **Sustainable Agriculture Directory of Expertise, 3rd Edition**
  Description | Online edition

- **Source Book of Sustainable Agriculture**
  Description | Online edition

- **The Real Dirt: Farmers Tell About Organic and Low-Input Practices in the Northeast**
  Description

- **Ten Years of SARE**

Online edition

- **Free Titles**
  Descriptions | Online editions (see below)

- **Resources from SARE-funded Projects**
  Online edition

- **"Reap New Profits: Marketing Strategies for Farmers and Ranchers"** A PowerPoint Presentation for Educators on CD-ROM
  Description | Online edition

- **USDA's "Farming for Profit, Stewardship & Community" tip sheets for small farmers on: soil, marketing, weed management, livestock and more.** Online edition

- **Building Better Rural Places: Federal programs for sustainable agriculture, forestry, entrepreneurship, conservation and community development**

- **Exploring Sustainability in Agriculture**
  Online edition | Adobe Acrobat (712 k)

How to Order SAN Publications

Online Informational Bulletins

- Opportunities in Agriculture: Transitioning to Organic Production" | Adobe Acrobat Version (1283 k)
- Meeting the Diverse Needs of Limited-Resource Producers: An Educator's Guide | Adobe Acrobat Version (5850 k)
- Profitable Poultry: Raising Birds on Pasture | Adobe Acrobat Version (1283 k)
- Profitable Pork: Strategies for Hog Producers | Adobe Acrobat Version (1112 k)
- A Whole-Farm Approach to Managing Pests | Adobe Acrobat Version (638 k)
- Marketing Strategies for Farmers and Ranchers | Adobe Acrobat Version
- How to Conduct Research on Your Farm or Ranch | Adobe Acrobat Version
- Diversify Crops to Boost Profits and Stewardship | Adobe Acrobat Version
- Profitable DAIRY OPTIONS

National SARE Reports

- SARE 2003 Project Highlights HTML | Adobe Acrobat Version (1.4 mb)
- SARE 2002 Project Highlights HTML | Adobe Acrobat Version (1.4 mb)
- SARE 2001 Project Highlights HTML | Adobe Acrobat Version (1.1 mb)
- SARE 2000 Project Highlights
- SARE 1999 Project Highlights
- SARE 1998 Project Highlights
- SARE 1997 Project Highlights

- SARE 1996 Project Highlights

SAN Databases

SAN produces the following publications.

- 1990 Farm Bill
- 1996 Farm Bill
- Forage and Conservation Planting Guide
- Intermountain Pasture Database
- Pinyon Juniper Ecosystem Bibliography

SARE is a program of USDA's Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service (CSREES).

UNIVERSITY OUTREACH
University Extension
UNIVERSITY OF MISSOURI SYSTEM
LINCOLN UNIVERSITY

Vol. 6, No. 3
May–June 1996

Ag Opportunities

• Small Farms
• New Family Farms
• Agricultural Alternatives

"Choosing Your Enterprises: A Checklist"

(Reprinted with permission from *"Sell What You Sow"* by Eric Gibson)

Personal and family considerations

* Have you identified goals and objectives for your business and personal life?
* Have you conducted a full inventory of your resources (human, physical and financial) which can contribute to accomplishing these goals and objectives?
* Are you willing to make sacrifices required to make this enterprise profitable (time, changes in lifestyle, privacy)?
* What do you wish your business to look like five years from now, and what are some intermediate steps or objectives required to get there?

Inventory resources

Physical resources: land, soils, climate, water, buildings, machinery and equipment;
* Management and labor resources;
* Local marketing options available;
* Financial resources;
* Miscellaneous: sources of information, suppliers, processors and distributors;
* Time

Identify enterprises

* Current and potential buyers, produce managers, books, magazines and publications, seed companies, chefs, etc.

Enterprise feasibility

* Is this enterprise technically feasible for your location given the following factors: climate, soils, water, insects, diseases, growing season?
* What are the building, machinery, equipment, management and labor requirements? If you don't have the necessary resources, what is the cost (in dollars and time) of acquiring them? Do you have the facilities to pack, package and ship the product?

Market factors

* Have you clearly defined what your product/service is (features such as size, quality, varieties, etc. and benefits to buyer or user)?
* Are there markets for the product, and if so, what is your target (niche) market(s)?
* Market outlet alternatives;
* Geographic location of market(s);
* Demographic characteristics (age, income, etc.);
* Behavioral characteristics (lifestyle, etc.);
* How large is the existing market demand?
* Number of potential buyers;
* Annual per capita consumption;
* Average purchase per buyer:
* Can the market be created or expanded to absorb an increased supply of the commodity? Are advertising and promotion efforts worthwhile?
* What are the favorable market windows for the product? (Compare historical prices against projected costs per unit);
* Does the market demand specific grade/quality/size standards?
* What is the cost of transportation to the targeted markets?
* Are there any middlemen services involved (brokers, wholesale distributors, etc.)? If so, do they have any specific requirements (delivery, volume, etc.)?
* How many competitors are located nearby? What do you have to offer to surpass your competitors?
* What prices does the market offer and how steady are those prices? What is the highest price and the lowest price you are likely to receive and what conditions create these price situations?
* What is your expected sales volume? What is the minimum and maximum volume of product you believe you could sell in one year?

If your market research shows that supply already exceeds demand for the product/service being evaluated, or that the trend is one of declining consumption and/or prices, do not pursue the enterprise any further. If your market research is favorable, continue with the following considerations.

Financial considerations

* Once you are in full production, what are the expected costs and returns (enterprise budgets)?
* What will be the impact of varying yields/production levels on profitability?
* What are the costs of production given varying climatological and pest problems?
* Are you able to acquire the necessary start-up capital to establish the enterprise? What about the annual operating funds necessary to continue the enterprise?
* What is the impact of the new enterprise on the profitability of any existing enterprise?
* Is the proposed enterprise complementary or supplementary to existing enterprises, or does it compete with them? If so, what is the impact on the profitability of the other enterprises?
* How will the additional costs and returns of the new enterprise affect the cash flow of the business?
* How will investment of additional resources and the diversion of existing resources from present uses affect the financial risk position of the farm?

Miscellaneous considerations

* Are there any legal restrictions, regulations or liability factors associated with the new enterprise?
* Does the enterprise require any special recordkeeping to provide information for both management decisions and/or government reports?
* Does the enterprise require an abundant or continuous supply of special production inputs?
* Will the proposed enterprise limit off-farm employment opportunities?

If you have satisfactorily answered all of the questions from this checklist, you probably have enough information to make a decision about the new venture. If you decide to go ahead with the enterprise, you should now develop an implementation plan, including a business development plan that specifies a timetable, production schedule, marketing plan, management structure and financial plan.

"The Farmers' & Gardeners' Resource Catalog" has dozens of agricultural, gardening and herb books and reports. For a free copy, contact Eric Gibson, New World Publishing, 3085 Sheridan St, Placerville, CA 95667, 916-622-2248; email-newworld@innercite.com; WWW - http://www.innercite.com/~newworld

University Extension does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability or status as a Vietnam-era veteran in employment or programs.

Moderate-sized farms: Is the future bleak, or rosy?

By Gene Johnston
Managing Editor
Successful Farming

The question above was posed to a group of farmers at the Iowa Forage Conference by Fred Kirschenmann, director of the Leopold Center for Sustainable Agriculture. He proceeded to answer his question this way: Your future is probably bleak if you chose to compete as a low-cost producer of commodity products; it may indeed be rosy if you chose to produce higher-value differentiated products in which you become an integral part of the marketing chain.

Kirschenmann said there are several barriers to mid-sized farms being successful in producing undifferentiated commodities such as No. 2 corn.

1. The power of consolidated markets. Big businesses form marketing contracts with big retailers that fully control shelf space, locking out mid-size producers. "The story of David and Goliath is a nice story, but it doesn't always turnout that way," says Kirschenmann.

2. There is generally a lack of infrastructure to support mid-size value chains.

3. Public policies and public investment generally support the low-cost suppliers of undifferentiated commodities.

4. Most mid-size farmers and the value chains they try to create are under-capitalized. In general, there is more capital in the marketing and input sectors of agriculture than there is in the farmer/production sector, and mid-size producers can't compete.

Kirshchenmann showed statistics about what has happened to the farmer's share of economic activity in the last century. A century ago, of all the economic activity in agriculture, 44% was accounted for in the marketing of products (after it leaves the farm gate). Today, that share is at least 67%. A century ago, the input side of agriculture accounted for 12% of economic activity, and now that number is up to 24%. Meanwhile, the farmer's share has gone from 44% a century ago, to only 9% now.

"What farmers need to do is find ways to reduce their input costs, and capture more of the market share," says Kirschenmann. "That means that incr ea si ngly, there is just not a future for mid-size farmers in undifferentiated products. It's very sad in a way, but it's the realistic way to look at things."

Kirschenmann says there are two questions for farmers:

1. Will your farm be better off investing in activities that reduce input costs or add technology?

2. Will your farm be better off selling into niche markets with a marketing relationship that makes the farmer an integral part of the product?

Kirschenmann comes firmly down on the side of question 2 -- invest in a differentiated product in which you have more control through the marketing chain. He gives five examples of farm business that are pushing forward with this model.

1. **Oregon Country Beef (www.countrynaturalbeef.com/)** - This business was started a few years ago by the Hatfield family in Oregon. They and their neighbors produce the grass-fed product, and market it direct through retailers and restaurants on the West Coast.

2. **Dakota Country Meats (www.dakotalamb.com/)** - This business in Jamestown, North Dakota, was started by one rancher. The beef is processed to his standards, and sold through two restaurants. The business has also expanded into lamb meat for Mideastern standards.

3. **Niman Ranch Pork (www.nimanranch.com/)** - This company started with organic beef in California, and it did so well that they decided to branch into pork. They went to Iowa to find farmers to grow hogs in very humane conditions with no hormones or antibiotics. They have formed marketing chain relationships with very exclusive restaurants.

4. **Organic Valley Dairy (www.organicvalley.com/)** - This group started with 15 wisconsin farmers, and is now a nationally-marketed differentiated product that does over $100 million in annual business. Farmer members get a substantial premium for their milk.

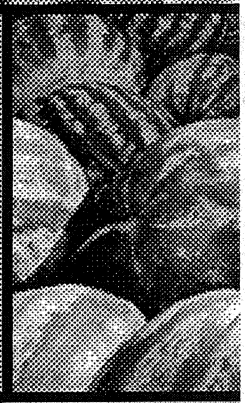
5. **Greenstuff Beef** - This is a new company in Great Britain that is now sellling meat with a 4-d ig it c ode on the label. The consumer can go on the Internet and enter the code, and learn information about the actual animal that the beef came from. Reportedly, sales are exploding in Great Britain.

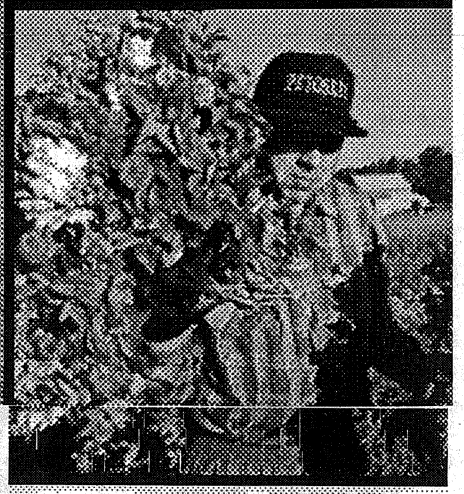
MICHIGAN LAND USE INSTITUTE

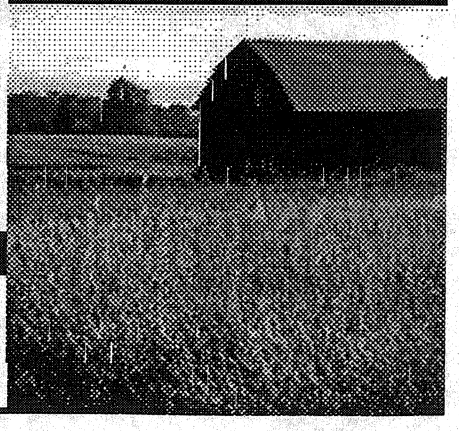
A MICHIGAN LAND USE INSTITUTE SPECIAL REPORT

The New ENTREPRENEURIAL Agriculture

A KEY PIECE OF THE FARMLAND PROTECTION PUZZLE







Incentives for Wildlife Enhancement on Midwestern Farms
Prepared by: Marcos Robles for
Environment and Agriculture Program
Institute for Agriculture and Trade Policy; May 2000

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements, Preface iii

Introduction: How to use this booklet 1

Part 1 Marketing Strategies

Eco-labeling 3

Example 1: Salmon-Safe 4

Example 2: Predator Friendly Wool 5

Example 3: Tallgrass Beef 6

Example 4: Environmental Quality Initiative 7

Example 5: Nature Co-operatives 8

Example 6: Park labels 9

Example 7: Cooperative Forestry Initiatives 10

Wildlife Tourism 12

On-Farm Tourism 13

Example 1: County Heritage Adventures 13

Example 2: Bison ranching - J&L Ranch 14

Example 3: Inn Serendipity, Bluff Creek Inn 15

Birding Festivals 16

Example 4: Minnesota birding trails 17

Example 5: Great Texas Coastal Birding Trail 18

Example 6: Salton Sea International Birding Festival 18

Example 7: Trumpeter Swan Festival Week 19

Wildlife Recreation 20

Example 1: Campbell Resources, Inc. 21

Example 2: Triple W Farms 21

Example 3: Hammack's hunting fee operation 21

Part 2 Private Sector Stewardship Incentive Programs

Financial and Technical Assistance Programs 22

Example 1: Cannon River Watershed Partnership 22

Example 2: Delta Farmland and Wildlife Trust 23

Example 3: Ducks Unlimited 24

Public Recognition and Registry Programs 26

Example 1: River-Friendly Farmer 27

Example 2: The Nature Conservancy 28

Example 3: Minnesota Valley Heritage Registry Program 28

Example 4: Wildlife Stewardship Farm Awards 29

Part 3 Public Stewardship Incentives
Tax Incentives 30
Wisconsin Regional Programs
Example 1: Conservation Credit Initiative 31
Example 2: Pollution Reduction Incentive Program 32
Minnesota State Programs
Example 3: Native Prairie Tax Exemption Program 33
Example 4: Wetland Tax Exemption Program 33
Example 5: Tree Growth Tax Law Program 33
Texas State Programs
Example 6: Agricultural Property Tax Conversion for Wildlife Management 34
Transfer of Development Rights Programs 35
Example 1: New Jersey Pinelands 36
Example 2: Central Pine Barrens 36
State Walk-in Hunter Programs 37
Future Directions: Next Steps 39
Additional Resources 41
Appendix 1. Whole-Farm Monitoring and Assessment Tools 42
Appendix 2. Wildlife Tourism Marketing Tips 44

Sustainable Agriculture...Continuing to Grow

A Proceedings of the "Farming and Ranching for Profit, Stewardship & Community" Conference

March 7-9, 2000

Funding for this publication was provided by
USDA Western Region Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (Western SARE).

The SARE program, which was mandated by Congress in the 1990 and 1996 Farm Bills, is implemented by four regional councils in cooperation with the USDA Cooperative State Research, Education and Extension Service. Western SARE is coordinated by Utah State University soil scientist V. Philip Rasmussen and led by an Administrative Council that represents diverse agricultural and public interests.

The Western Region includes Alaska, Arizona, California, Colorado, Hawaii, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, New Mexico, Oregon, Utah, Washington, Wyoming and the Island Protectorates of American Samoa, Guam, Micronesia and the Northern Mariana Islands.

For information about Western SARE grant programs, educational resources or funded project results, contact the headquarters office at (435) 797-2257 or wsare@mendel.usu.edu.

Western Region
Sustainable Agriculture
Research and Education

Western SARE does not discriminate on the basis of
race, religion, national origin, sex, age, handicap or veteran status.

Message from the Western Coordinating Committee on Sustainable Agriculture. 7
Message from Sustainable Northwest. 8
Message from The Food Alliance. 10

THE SUSTAINABLE FARM

Profile of Larry Thompson, Thompson Farms, and Regional Chair of Western SARE's Administrative Council. 14
Profile of Karla Chambers, Stahlbush Island Farms. 17

The Long-term Sustainable Farming Systems Comparison Trial: Results from Ten Years of Research
Profile of Ed Sills. 19
Profile of Bruce Rominger. 21
Steve Temple. 22
Karen Klonsky. 23
Howard Ferris. 24

Biologically Integrated Farming Systems in California: Partnerships for Environmental Protection and Farm Profitability
Carolee Bull. 25
Joseph Grant. 26
Randall Mutters. 27
Gary Obenauf. 28

Agroforestry: Multiple Uses of Trees in Agricultural Landscapes
Garry Stephenson. 29
Kim Wilkinson. 30
Mike Dosskey. 31

Water Conserving Systems
Profile of Howard Wuertz. 32
Clint Shock. 34
Larry Schwankl. 36

Alternative Crops and Systems for Dryland Production
Gary Peterson. 37
Diana Roberts. 38
Jim Krall. 39

Biologically Integrated Viticulture Production
Jenny Broome. 40
Steve McIntyre. 41
Cliff Ohmart. 42

SOIL

Payoffs from Improving Soil Quality: A Grower's Perspective
Profile of Jim Durst. 44
Profile of Dale Gies. 46

Organic Matter: How to Conserve It
Profile of Peter Kenagy. 48
Richard Dick. 50
Fred Magdoff. 51

Experiences with No-till and Strip-till Production
Profile of John Aeschliman. 52
Profile of Steve Groff. 54
John Luna. 56
Jeff Mitchell. 57

Invisible Allies: Lessons Learned about Soil Biology and Nutrient Cycling
Louise Jackson. 58
Howard Ferris. 59
Bob Linderman. 60

Managing Organic Sources of Nutrients
Mal Westcott. 61
Patricia Millner. 62
Dan Sullivan. 63

DISEASE, PESTS AND WEEDS

Integrated Approaches to Weed Management
Profile of Alec McErlich. 66
Profile of Vicki Swift. 68
Tim Prather. 70

Biological Approaches to Disease Management
Wesley Chun. 71
Mark Mazzola. 72
Krishna Subbarao. 73

Enhancing Plant Resistance to Disease through Biological Inoculants and Farm Management Practices
Sally Miller. 74
Caroline Press. 75

Geoff Zehnder. 76
Biological Control of Insect Pests: Making it Work
Ralph Berry. 77
Mark Morris. 78
Lynn Wunderlich. 79

Biologically-based Pest Management Systems for Tree Crops
Jay Brunner. 80
Kent Daane. 81
Sean Swezey. 82

THE SUSTAINABLE RANCH

Profile of Doc and Connie Hatfield, Oregon Country Beef. 84

Producing a Healthy Range
Profile of Joe Morris. 87
Ken Crane. 89
Roy Roath. 90

Innovations in Livestock Production Systems
Profile of Duane Roecks. 91
Profile of Dante Benedetti. 93
Profile of Tom Larson. 95

Holistic Management of Farm and Ranch Resources
Russ Camper and Chance Gowan. 97
Don Nelson. 98

Paid to Graze: Renting Livestock for Vegetation Management
Profile of Terry Wheeler. 99
Hudson Glimp. 101
An Peischel. 102

MARKETING IN A SUSTAINABLE ECONOMY

Strategies for Direct Marketing
Profile of Diane Green. 104
Larry Lev. 106

Eco-labeling: Linking Customer Demand with Farm Stewardship and Social Values
Deborah Kane. 107
Michael Sligh. 108
Theresa Steig. 109

Getting off the Bulk Commodities Treadmill: What Buyers of Specialty Crops Expect, What Dryland Small Grain Farmers can Provide
Profile of Kay Heine. 110
Profile of Cal Stengel. 112
Profile of Bob Quinn. 114
Profile of Richard Repp. 116

Marketing Natural Meats
Profile of Joel Salatin. 118
Profile of David and Kay James. 120

SUSTAINING AGRICULTURE

A Message from Glenda Humiston, Assistant to the Undersecretary of Agriculture. 124

Public Policy and Funding Support for Sustainable Agriculture
Margaret Krome. 125
Mark Lipson. 126
Pete Price. 127

The Role of Non-profit Organizations in Sustaining Western Agriculture
Profile of Jan Tusick. 128
Karen Murphy. 130
Bonnie Rice. 131

To Plow or to Pave: Farmland Preservation in the West
Profile of Jon Meikle. 132
Profile of Bob Rose. 134
Greg Kirkpatrick. 136

Sustainable Community Food Systems
Colette DePhelps. 137
Gail Feenstra. 138
Steven Garrett. 139
Deb Lippoldt. 140

Grant Writing for Farmers and Ranchers: Funding your On-farm Research Projects
Margaret Krome. 141

B. Wildlife

B. Wildlife

WILDLIFE AND THE AMERICAN MIND

Public Opinion on and Attitudes toward Fish and Wildlife Management

Mark Damian Duda
Steven J. Bissell
Kira C. Young
Responsive Management

Contents At A Glance

Part I: The Public and Fish and Wildlife Conservation and Management

1. Overview of the Human Element in Fish and Wildlife Management Programs 3
2. Measuring Public Opinion on Fish and Wildlife Management Issues 11
3. Marketing in a Fisheries and Wildlife Organization 27
4. Fish and Wildlife Agencies and Organizations 43
5. Fish and Wildlife Laws and Law Enforcement 75
6. The Value of Wildlife 95
7. Wildlife Levels and Cultural Carrying Capacity 109
8. Threatened, Endangered and Nongame Wildlife 135
9. Large Predator Reintroduction 169
10. Nuisance Animals and Animal Damage 235
11. Consumptive Wildlife-Related Activities 247
12. Animal Rights, Animal Welfare, and the Use of Animals 285
13. Habitat Protection And Development 295
14. Water Resources 331
15. Landowner Assistance 351
16. Private Property and Wildlife Recreation 357
17. Volunteerism and Taking Action for Fish and Wildlife 379
18. Information and Education 393
19. Sources of Information 403
20. Funding Fish and Wildlife Programs 425
21. Biological and Management Information Needs of Fish, Wildlife and Natural Resource Agencies 495

Part II: Fish and Wildlife Constituents

22. Hunting and the Hunter 517
23. Fishing and the Angler 607
24. Wildlife Viewing 679

Part III: Survey Research at Work

25. Developing Effective Fish and Wildlife Information, Education and Outreach Programs 723
26. Incorporating the Human Element into Fish and Wildlife Management Programs 759
27. Literature Cited 775

Wildlife Management

for Missouri Landowners

Third Edition

with updated grass/legume recommendations

Missouri Department of Conservation

1 Wildlife and the Land 1

2 Land Planning for Wildlife 4
Evaluating Your Land 4
Making a Wildlife Management Plan 7

3 Cropland Management 9
Crop Fields 9
Field Borders, Fencerows & Turn-Rows 11
Fallow Fields & Set-Aside Acres 11
Grassed or Wooded Waterways 12
Terraces 13
Field Shelterbelts, Windbreaks & Fencerows 15
Cropland Management Tips 16

4 Grassland Management 17
Grasslands in General 18
Cool-Season Grasslands 21
Warm-Season Grasslands 21
Remnant Native Grasslands 23
Grassland Management Tips 24

5 Woodland Management 25
Woodland Interiors 25
Woodland Edges & Openings 30
Woodland Management Tips 32

6 Idle Area Management 33
Old Fields 33
Landscaping for Wildlife 34
Abandoned House Sites 35
Glades & Balds 35
Pond Areas 36
Stream Banks or Riparian Corridors 37
Brushy Draws 38
Springs, Seeps & Fens 38
Erosive Areas 38
Fencerows 39
Idle Area Management Tips 40

7 Wetland Management 41
Flooded Fields 42
Flooded Cropland 42
Flooded Timber 42
Temporary Wetland Pools 43
Natural Sloughs & Small Ponds 44
Wetland Management Tips 44

8 Species Management 45
Bobwhite Quail 45
Cottontail Rabbit 48
Wild Turkey 50
White-Tailed Deer 52
Squirrel 53

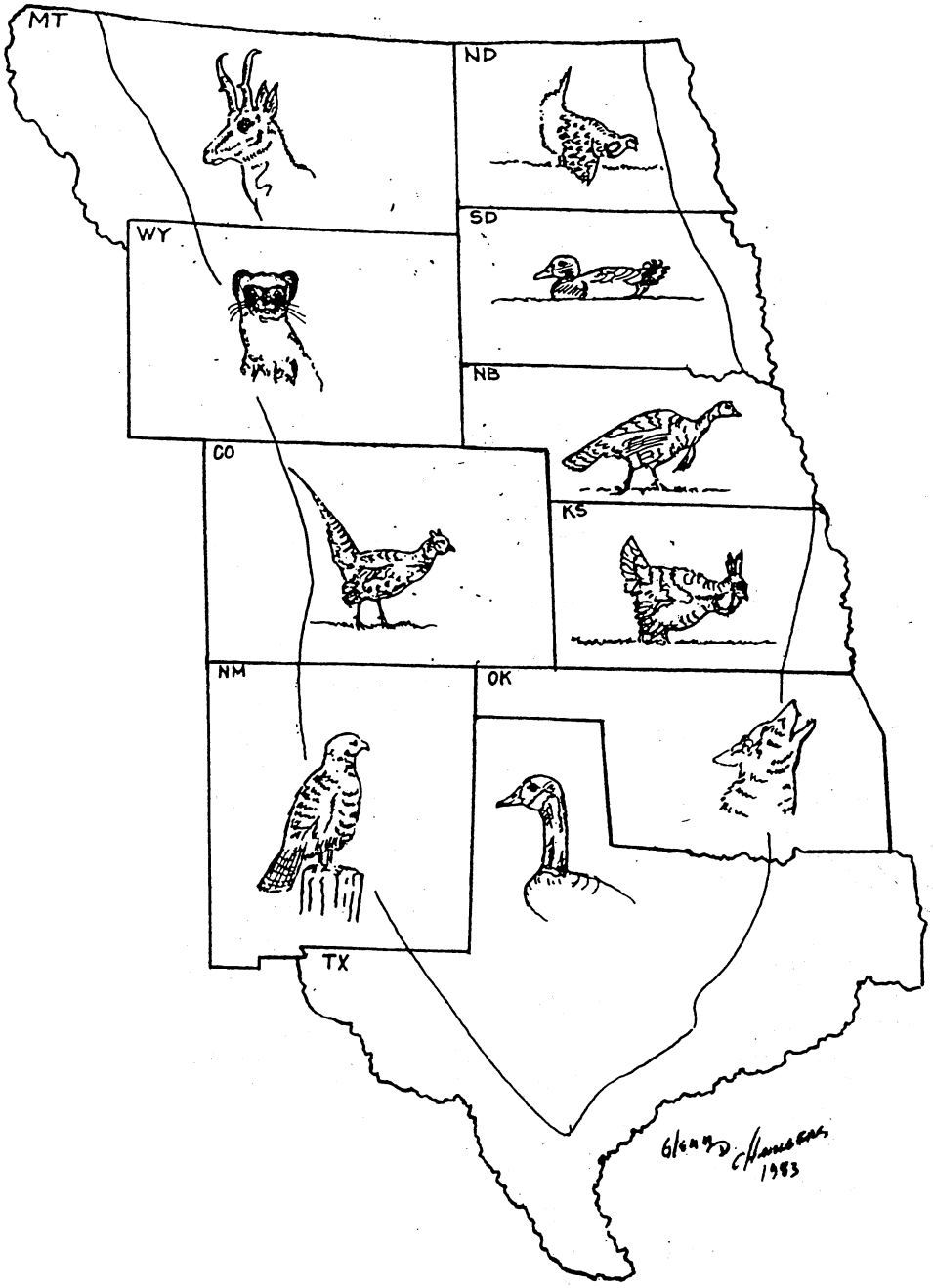
9 Wildlife Management Services 55
Missouri Department of Conservation 55
University Outreach & Extension 57
Farm Service Agency 58
Natural Resources Conservation Service 58
Soil & Water Conservation District 59
Missouri Department of Natural Resources 59

10 Wildlife Management Practices 60
Green Browse Plots 61
Annual Grain Food Plots 63
Field Measurements for Wildlife Plots 65
Grass/Legume Mixtures Beneficial to Wildlife 66
Plantings Beneficial to Wildlife 66
Fencing to Protect Wildlife Food & Cover 67
Brush-Pile Construction for Escape Cover 68
Squirrel Den Box 70
How to Take a Soil Sample 72
Interpreting Missouri Soil Test Reports 74
Establishing Native Warm-Season Grasses 77
Seeding Rates for Planting Native Warm-Season Grasses . 79
How to Calculate "Pure Live Seed" 80
Developing Wetlands 82
Wood Duck Nest Box 84
Bluebird Nest Box 86
Windbreaks 88

Guidelines for

Increasing Wildlife On Farms and Ranches

With Ideas for Supplemental Income Sources for Rural Families



Great Plains Agricultural Council
Wildlife Resources Committee

Cooperative Extension Service
Kansas State University

GUIDELINES FOR INCREASING WILDLIFE ON FARMS AND RANCHES

With Ideas for Possible Supplemental Income Sources for Rural Families

Preface i
Introduction 1

Chapter One:
THE BASICS OF WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT 1A
Benefits of Wildlife 5A

Broad Habitat Regions in the Great Plains 9A
Tall Grass Prairie 11A
Prairie Brushlands 13A
Shortgrass Prairie 14A
Other Important Habitats 17A

State Habitats Today
Texas 21A
Colorado 22A
Montana 23A
North Dakota 24A
Oklahoma 25A
Kansas 26A
New Mexico 27A
South Dakota 28A
Nebraska 29A
Wyoming 30A

Chapter Two:
HABITAT MANAGEMENT—INTRODUCTION
Introduction 1B
Diversity and Interspersion 1B
Critical Habitat 2B
Total Resource Management 3B
Developing a Habitat Plan 4B

Rangeland 7B
Grazing Management to Maintain or Enhance Wildlife Habitat 9B
Rest-Rotation Grazing System 15B
Brush Management and Wildlife in Southern Great Plains 21B
Wooded Draws in Rangeland of Northern Great Plains 27B
Re-seeding Pastures and Rangeland for Wildlife Benefit in the Central and Southern Great Plains 37B
Seeded Grasslands for Wildlife Benefit ... 43B
Prescribed or Controlled Burning 47B

Farmland 55B
Odd Areas of Wildlife 59B
Ecofarming 65B
Undercutting Saves Birds, Moisture, Soil, and Money 69B
Pesticides and Application Methods 75B
Helping Wildlife While Reducing Soil Erosion 81B
Organic Farming 85B
Opportunities with Land Set-Aside Programs 91B
Winter Wheat, Ducks and the Dakotas 93B
Roadsides for Wildlife 95B
Food Plots for Wildlife 99B
Wildlife Problems on Farms 105B

Woodland 107B
Wildlife Habitat of Small Woodlands and Woodland Borders in the Great Plains 111B
Riparian Habitat on the Great Plains 117B
Hedgerows and Field Border Management 123B
Wildlife Habitat of Shelterbelts and Tree Rows in the Great Plains 127B
Brush Piles Improve Habitat 135B
Backyard Wildlife 137B

Water Areas 151B
Wildlife Watering Places in Arid Parts of the Great Plains 155B
Aquatic Habitats—Waterfowl 161B
Playa Management 177B
Blasting 183B
Waterfowl Migration & Wintering Habitat Management 185B
Center Pivot Irrigation and Wildlife 189B
Stream Improvement 193B
Fish Pond Management 199B

Chapter Three:
SPECIFIC GUIDELINES FOR INCREASING CERTAIN SPECIES OF WILDLIFE—INTRODUCTION 1C
POND FISH SPECIES AND MANAGEMENT 5C
Large Mouth Bass 5C
Bluegill 6C
Redear Sunfish 6C
Hybrid Sunfish 7C
Channel Catfish 7C
Trout 8C
Minnow 8C

Shad 9C
Crappie 9C
Green Sunfish 9C
Bullhead 10C
Rough Fish 10C
Other Species 10C
Stocking 11C
Warmwater Ponds 11C
Coldwater Ponds 13C
Stocking Size and Chronology 13C
Stocking the Fish 14C
Where to Obtain Fish 15C
Fisheries Management 16C
Fish Harvest 16C
Pond Balance Determination 17C
Pond Rehabilitation 17C
Aquatic Vegetation Control 24C
Turbidity 27C
Fertilization 29C
Other Management Problems 29C
Pond Culture 32C

Waterfowl 41C
Goose Populations 41C
Mallard 44C
Gadwall 46C
Wood Duck 48C
Blue Winged 50C

Upland Game Birds 53C
Wild Turkey 55C
Sage Grouse 60C
Sharp-tailed Grouse 63C
Greater Prairie Chicken 69C
Lesser Prairie Chicken 75C
Scaled Quail 79C
Bobwhite Quail 83C
Ring-necked Pheasant 89C
Hungarian Partridge 95C
Mourning Dove 99C

Small Game Mammals 105C
Jackrabbits 120C

Big Game 127C
Pronghorn Antelope 129C
Mule Deer 136C
White-Tailed Deer 142C
Elk 147C

Furbearers 151C
Beaver 153C
Muskrat 156C
Mink 161C
Raccoon 164C
Opossum 166C
Badger 168C
Striped Skunk 170C
Spotted Skunk 172C
Weasel 173C
Bobcat 174C
Coyote 177C
Red Fox 180C
Grey Fox 183C
Swift Fox 185C

Songbirds 187C
Birds of Woodland 192C
Northern Cardinal 193C
Black-Capped Chickadee 194C
American Goldfinch 195C
Dark-Eyed Junco 196C
American Robin 197C
Chimney Swift 200C
Song Sparrow 201C
Red-Headed Woodpecker 202C
House Wren 203C
Birds of Open Area 204C
Dickcissel 205C
Western Meadowlark 205C
Horned Lark 206C
Grasshopper Sparrow 207C
Lark Sparrow 208C
Birds of Wetland Habitats 210C
Killdeer 211C
Marsh Wren 212C
Common Yellowthroat 213C
Other Habitat 214C
Common Nighthawk 214C
Birds of Prey 217C
Barn Owl 224C
Marsh Hawk 225C
American Kestrel 229C

Endangered Species 229C
Bald Eagle 235C
Whopping Crane 238C
American Peregine Falcon 241C
Interior Least Tern 244C
Black-Footed Ferret 247C
River Otter 249C

Chapter Four:
LANDOWNER OPPORTUNITIES 1D
Economic Returns for Landowners 4D
Strategies for Economic Returns 7D
The Liability Questions 14D
State Habitat Programs on Private Lands .. 18D
Colorado 18D
Kansas 20D
Montana 21D
Nebraska 21D
North Dakota 22D
New Mexico 23D
Oklahoma 23D
South Dakota 25D
Texas 26D
Wyoming 27D
Tax Incentives 29D

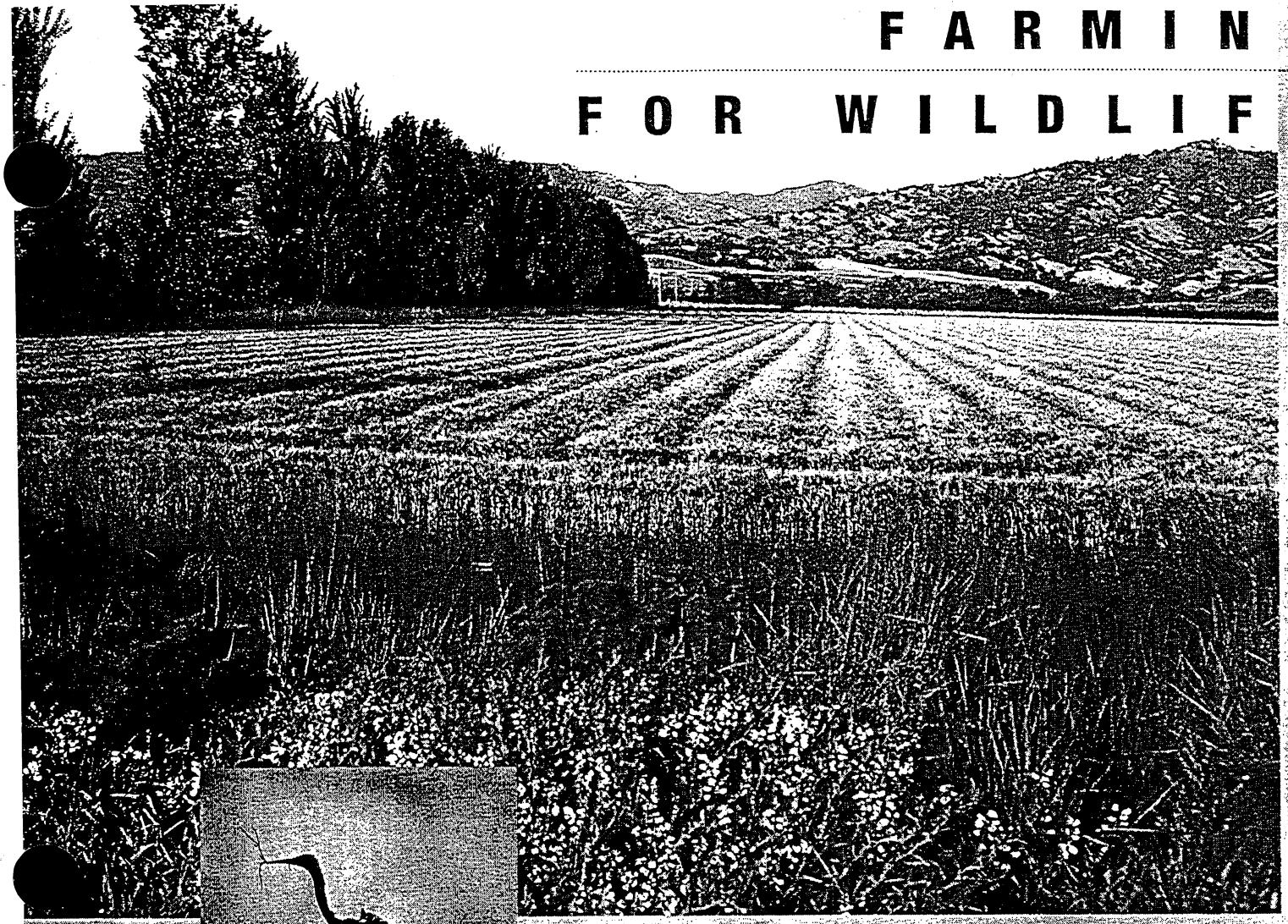
APPENDIX:
EDUCATIONAL AIDS FOR TEACHING WILDLIFE HABITAT IMPROVEMENT

Films 1E
List of Scientific Names 4E
Proposed New (1980) Model Legislation 11E
Model Lease 14E
Example Leases 15E

State Statutes Relating to Landowner Liability
Colorado 21E
Kansas 21E
New Mexico 22E
Oklahoma 22D
Texas 23E

Great Plains Agricultural Council
Wildlife Resources Committee 24E
Soil Conservation State Biologists 25E
State Wildlife Agencies 26E
ASCS Field Offices 27E
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Habitat Related Contacts 27E
State Extension Wildlife Specialists 28E
Conversion Tables 29E
USDA Fish and Wildlife Policy 32E
Photo Credits 39E
Wildlife Damage Control Handbook
Order Blank 42E

FARMING FOR WILDLIFE



VOLUNTARY PRACTICES FOR ATTRACTING WILDLIFE TO YOUR FARM

Table of Contents

ting Wildlife to Your Farm 2
Valley Farmlands Vital to Wildlife 2
Managing Your Land to Benefit Wildlife 3
Why Should You Get Involved? 4
How to use this publication 5
Management Practices 6

Managing Crop Lands
Alter your harvesting schedule 7
Farmer Profile: Roger Moore 8
Change harvesting pattern or reduce harvesting speed 9
Delay fall tillage 10
Leave some of your crop unharvested 11
Farmer Profile: Jim and Sally Shanks 12
Flood harvested fields 13
Farmer Profile: Fred Smeds 14
Plant permanent or temporary cover crops between rows 15
Farmer Profile: Claude and Linda Sheppard 16
Consider using Integrated Pest Management techniques 17
"IPM innovators" Win "Good Bug" Award 18

Using Fallowed Fields
d discing fallowed fields 19
er Profile: Jeff Thomson 20
ant fallowed fields with barley-vetch, grass-seed mix, or grain 21
Try to fallow the same fields three years in a row 22
Flood all or some fallowed fields 23

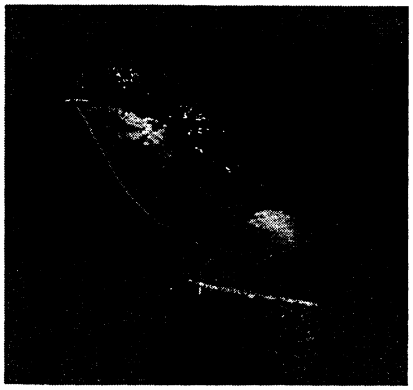
Taking Advantage of Non-Farmed Areas
Farmer Profile: John Anderson 24
Plant perennial vegetation in areas that can stay undisturbed 25
Planting Native Vegetation in Non-farmed Areas 26
Plant shelterbelts bordering or between fields 28
Install artificial nesting and/or roosting structures 29
Plant wildlife food plots 30
Plant perennial vegetation on ditch slopes or clean only one side each year 31

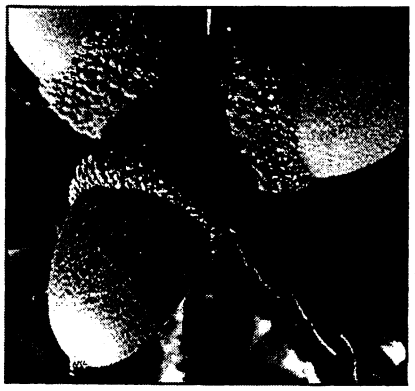
Making the Most of Water
Farmer Profile: Charlie Rominger and Allen Garcia 32
Build tailwater ponds or holding ponds 33
Spring and Summer Wetlands Boost Pheasant Survival 34
Establish seasonal ponds within two miles of good nesting cover 35
Turn Drain Water into a Farming and Wildlife Asset 36
Establish vegetation adjacent to sloughs, streams, and ponds 37
Leave some ditches and sloughs flooded year-round 38

Where to Begin – Help is Available 39
ther Central Valley Farmers and Farm for Wildlife 39
Organizations That Can Offer Assistance 40
Organization Directory . . . . . Inside Back Cover

DAVID ROSEN/DUCKS UNLIMITED

MARK SALVESTRIN/DFG PHOTO CONTEST


VIRGIL KETNER/ DFG PHOTO CONTEST


DEDE GILMAN/DFG PHOTO CONTEST

A SYMPOSIUM ON

THE ECONOMICS OF

WILDLIFE RESOURCES

ON PRIVATE LANDS

SYMPOSIUM PROCEEDINGS
AUGUST 5-7, 1996
AUBURN UNIVERSITY
AUBURN, ALABAMA

EDITOR: RHETT JOHNSON

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

PREFACE

GENERAL ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL IMPACTS

Comparison of Fishing and Hunting Expenditures and their Impact on Community Economies - *Rebecca J. Travnichek, Howard A. Clonts, Mark Wallace and H. Lee Stribling*

Economic Impact and Associated Values of the Wild Turkey in Mississippi - *Stephen C. Grado, George A. Hurst, and K. David Godwin*

The National Wild Turkey Federation Land Stewardship Partnership Program - *Robert C. Maddrey, James Earl Kennamer, and Ron E. Brenneman*

The Pulse of the People: Attitudes, Perceptions, and Human Dimensions in Forest Ecosystem Management - *Deborah T. Yarrow, David C. Guynn, and Patricia C. Calkins*

Education and Economics: A Model to Improve Success of Natural Resource Income Enterprises - *Jonathon S. Kays and Steven M. Bogash*

WILDLIFE RECREATION: BENEFITS AND CONCERNS ABOUT RESOURCE MARKETING AND INVESTMENT FOR LANDOWNERS

Hunted and Non-Hunted Wildlife and Recreation on Private Lands in the United States with Perceptions of State Wildlife Agency Administrators about Access and Management - *Delwin E. Benson*

Landowner Recreation Liability: A Review of Tennessee Law and Related Cases - *Mark Fly and Frank Fly*

Willingness to Pay for Recreational Access and Wildlife Linear Strips - *Kameran L. Bailey, Webb M. Smathers, and David C. Guynn*

Investment in Wildlife Enhancement on Private Lands: Does Recreational Demand Provide Sufficient Profit Incentive? - *Ted Morris*

HUNTING LEASES ON PRIVATE LANDS

The Willingness of Hunters to Pay for Access to Timber Company Lands - *Becky Stephens, Paul M. Jackus, and J. Mark Fly*

Wildlife Recreation Market Surveys: An Aid to Establishing Lease Prices - *Joe McGlincy and Hugh Durham*

Forest Industry Hunt-Lease Programs in the Southern United States: 1994 - *Don F. Roach, Allan Marsinko, and David C. Guynn*

Hunting Leases on Institutional Timberland - *Jon P. Caulfield and Marshall Thomas* -

Gulf States Paper Corporation's Forest Recreation Business: A Case Study - *John Roboski*

ECONOMICS OF WILDLIFE DAMAGE

Economics of Fish-Eating Bird Depredation on Aquaculture Facilities in Alabama - *P.G. Ross and James B. Armstrong*

Crop Damage Levels in South Carolina Imply a Changing Role for White-Tailed Deer Hunters - *Gary R. Stratton and Webb M. Smathers*

THE ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT AND ITS ECONOMIC IMPLICATIONS

Endangered Species Habitat Expansion - *Fred Kinard*

Opportunity Costs of Implementing the Red-Cockaded Woodpecker Procedures Manual for Private Lands - *Steve Meyers*

A Market-Based Approach to Conservation of the Red-Cockaded Woodpecker on Private Lands - *Robert Bonnie*

Cooperative Conservation Agreements for Managing Red-Cockaded Woodpeckers on Industrial Forest Lands: What are the Motivations? - *Ralph Costa and John Edwards* .

ECONOMICS OF WILDLIFE RESOURCES - AN OVERVIEW

Economics of Wildlife Resources on Private Lands: Synopsis, Conclusions, and Future Directions - *David C. Guynn*

PREFACE

Four years after a very successful Symposium on Fee Hunting held at Clemson University in 1989, members of the Private Lands Committee of the Southeastern Section of The Wildlife Society began to discuss the possibility of a subsequent meeting, broadening the scope to include all economic aspects of wildlife management on private lands. At the Committee meeting in Biloxi at the 1994 Southeastern, I agreed to help put such a meeting together in Alabama, hosting it at Auburn University. Committee members involved in the planning phase included Rick Busch from Virginia's Department of Wildlife and Inland Fisheries, Fred Kinard of Westvaco Corporation, Mickey Easley of Wyncreek Plantation, Jim Miller, USDA Natural Resource and Environment Extension, Kirby Brown of the Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, and Dave Guynn and Greg Yarrow of Clemson University and coordinators of the 1989 Fee Hunting Symposium. Other early contributors included Pete Bromley and Lee Stribling from N.C. State and Auburn University, respectively.

The response to the "Call for Papers" was excellent and covered the variety of topics we wanted to feature. Topics included evaluations of the economic impacts of hunting and fishing, animal damage costs and control, the economic ramifications of endangered species protection, economic returns from wildlife management, natural resource entrepreneurship, hunting lease values and concerns, and landowner liability. The only disappointment was a dearth of papers on non-consumptive wildlife recreation and the potential economic benefits for private landowners. Papers came from a variety of regional and national universities, game and fish agencies around the region, environmental groups, forest industries and independent biologists.

The audience was equally diverse, with all of the aforementioned represented and attendees coming from nearly every southern state. In addition, requests from non-attendees for these Proceedings come in on a regular basis. The interest displayed by the natural resources community in this relatively newly recognized and evolving aspect of the wildlife profession suggests that subsequent symposia might be appropriate.

Greg Yarrow, Conference Coordinator for the Clemson Fee Hunting Symposium, kicked off the program with an introduction and the rationale for this meeting and we were off and running for three information-filled days. Too many people helped make this meeting a success to recognize all, but particular thanks go to Mickey Easley, Fred Kinard, Dave Guynn, Greg Yarrow, Tommy Counts, Chris Isaacson, Keith Hudson, and Susan Moll for their assistance and support.

Rhett Johnson

BIRDS on the Web

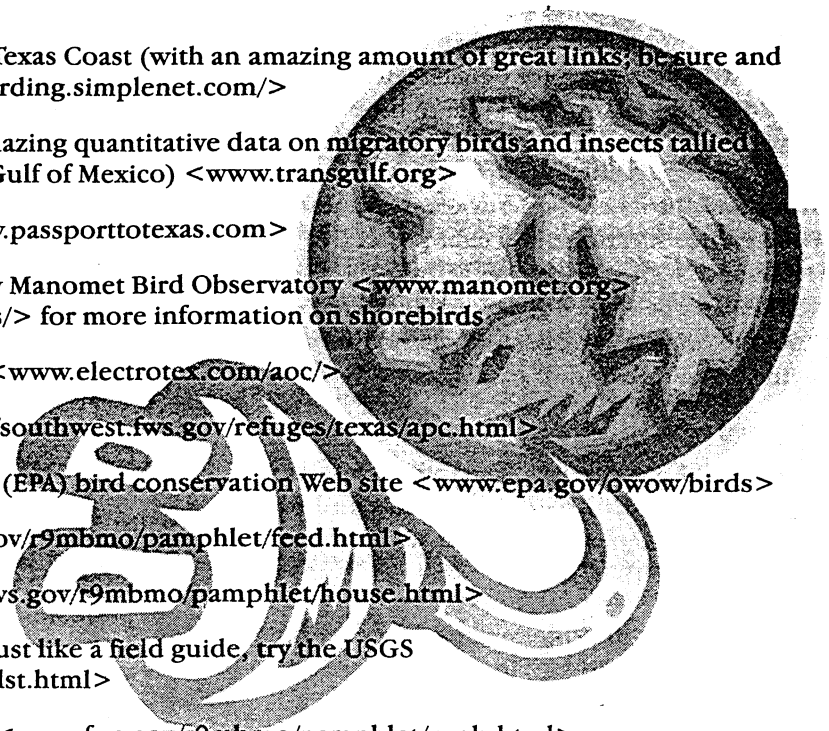
Over Forty Useful and Interesting Web Sites on Birds and Bird Conservation

(Listed in no particular order)

- Texas Parks and Wildlife Birding Page (lots of great information; don't miss checking out this site!) <www.tpwd.state.tx.us/nature>
- Partners In Flight <www.partersinflight.org> and the Colorado Bird Observatory <www.cbobirds.org/pif/index.html>
- American Bird Conservancy <www.abcbirds.org>
- The Great Texas Birding Classic <www.tpwd.state.tx.us/nature/birding/bclass/index.htm>
- International Migratory Bird Day information and so much more, try the American Birding Association's Web site <www.americanbirding.org>
- World Birding Center <www.tpwd.state.tx.us/nature/birding/wbc.htm>
- North American Bird Conservation Initiative (NABCI) <http://rfi.on.ca/cec/about_frame.htm>
- Conservation and Reinvestment Act (CARA; formerly called Teaming With Wildlife where, if approved/passed, millions of dollars in secured funding will go towards nongame conservation and more) <www.teaming.com>
- Physiographic Regional maps for Partners In Flight <www.cast.uark.edu/pif/main/maincont.htm>
- Bird Species Management Abstracts by The Nature Conservancy's "Wings of the America" project <http://www.tnc.org/wings>
- Breeding Bird Lab <www.mbr.nbs.gov/bbs/bbs.htm> and <www.mp2-pwrc.usgs.gov/bbs/>
- Christmas Bird Count data, Project Feeder Watch, and many other great Cornell Lab of Ornithology citizen science projects <http://birdsource.tc.cornell.edu> and <www.birds.cornell.edu>
- Migratory songbird conservation <www.fws.gov/r9mbmo/pamphlet/songbird.html>
- Free-roaming domestic cats and their effect on native wildlife <www.dfg.ca.gov/licpb/feralcat.html> and <www.abcbirds.org/catindoo.htm>
- Updates on Legislation, Regulation and Policy matters affecting birds <www.nmnh.si.edu/BIRDNET>
- Texas Ornithological Society (TOS) Web site <http://www.io.com/~pdhulce/tos/tos.html>
- Archives for the listserv "Texbirds" <www.audubon.org/listserv/TEXBIRDS.html>
- Aplomado Falcon reintroduction in Texas information, try the Peregrine Fund's Web site <www.peregrinefund.org/conserv_aplomado.html>
- Purple Martin Conservation Association <www.purplemartin.org>
- Hawk Watches in Texas <www.electrotex.com/aoc/>
- Information on bird diseases, mortality and health <www.emtc.nbs.gov/nwhchome.html>

Want to join the Southeast Partners in Flight Listserv?

To subscribe, simply send an e-mail message to <listserv@listserv.uark.edu> with the following message in the body: subscribe separt-l *your name* (Example message: subscribe separt-l Cliff Swallow). The character after "separt" is a lower case L, not the number one.



- David Sarkozi's Birds of the Upper Texas Coast (with an amazing amount of great links; be sure and check this one out!) <http://texasbirding.simplenet.com/>
- Migration Over the Gulf Project (amazing quantitative data on migratory birds and insects tallied from off-shore oil platforms in the Gulf of Mexico) <www.transgulf.org>
- Archives of Passport to Texas <www.passporttotexas.com>
- Shorebirds, wetlands, and more, try Manomet Bird Observatory <www.manomet.org> or <www.mesc.usgs.gov/shorebirds/> for more information on shorebirds
- Whooping Cranes at Aransas NWR <www.electrotex.com/aoc/>
- Attwater's Prairie-Chickens <http://southwest.fws.gov/refuges/texas/apc.html>
- Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) bird conservation Web site <www.epa.gov/owow/birds>
- Backyard bird feeding <www.fws.gov/r9mbmo/pamphlet/feed.html>
- Providing homes for birds <www.fws.gov/r9mbmo/pamphlet/house.html>
- Bird Identification Web site that is just like a field guide, try the USGS <www.mbr.nbs.gov/id/framlst/framlst.html>
- Backyard bird problems/nuisances <www.fws.gov/r9mbmo/pamphlet/prob.html>
- Problems with cormorants, try the USFWS home page <www.fws.gov/index.html> or for a more specific fact sheet <www.fws.gov/r9mbmo/issues/cormorant/fish%5Fimpacts.html>
- Problems with an urban heronry/rookery (coming to this Web site in mid-2000) <www.tpwd.state.tx.us/nature/birding>
- Waterfowl and wetland information <www.ducks.org>
- Alpha Codes used by banders and birders <www.pwrc.usgs.gov/bbl/manual/aspeclst.htm#E>
- Gulf Coast Bird Observatory <www.gcbo.org>
- Land Trust Alliance information <www.lta.org>
- Texas Department of Transportation county maps <www.lib.utexas.edu/Libs/PCL/txdot/TXDOTCounty.html>
- Information on flying birds striking towers, wires, buildings, etc. <www.towerkill.com>
- Information on constructing a wastewater wetland for birds and other wildlife <www.humboldt.edu/~ere_dept/marsh/ownmarsh.html#top>

BACKYARD CONSERVATION
It'll grow on you.

Wildlife Habitat

Make a home for birds, butterflies, and nature's other creatures

In your backyard

Habitat is a combination of food, water, shelter, and space arranged to meet the needs of wildlife. Even a small yard can be landscaped to attract birds, butterflies, beneficial insects, and small animals. Trees, shrubs, and other plants provide shelter and food for wildlife.

The plants you use for food and cover will help determine the wildlife species attracted to your backyard. Nesting boxes, feeders, and watering sites can be added to improve the habitat.

Planning your wildlife habitat

Planning is necessary for attractive and productive wildlife habitat. You have both a horizontal area to work with–the size of your lot–as well as a vertical area that stretches from your soil to the treetops. The vertical area is composed of the canopy formed by the tallest tree branches; understory vegetation consisting of smaller trees, shrubs, and vines; the floor which is often dominated by low-growing groundcovers; and the basement where a variety of organisms exist in the soil. Different wildlife species live in each of these zones, so numerous habitats can be provided on a small piece of land.

Trees and shrubs are the backbone of any landscaping design and are important for wildlife shelter. Many tree and shrub species are excellent sources of food for wildlife. Proper selection of plant material can meet both the aesthetic needs of the homeowner and the food and shelter needs of wildlife. Remember that you are part of the habitat!

To attract wildlife to your backyard, choose and plant the trees, shrubs, and plants that offer the food and shelter that those species of wildlife need to survive. Add a water source, too.

Lynn Betts USDA

Backyard Conservation

is a cooperative project of:

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service

National Association of Conservation Districts

Wildlife Habitat Council

April 1998
Rev. October 2002

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital and familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (Braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact USDA's TARGET Center at (202) 720-2600 (voice and TDD). To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250, or call 1-800-245-6340 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

One in a series of 10 tip sheets on backyard conservation

Steps to create habitat for wildlife

1. Identify all existing plants. Note:
   - Condition of the plants and their locations.
   - How much shade the trees and shrubs provide.
   - Are trees evergreen or do they drop their leaves in the fall?
   - Do they provide valuable food sources?

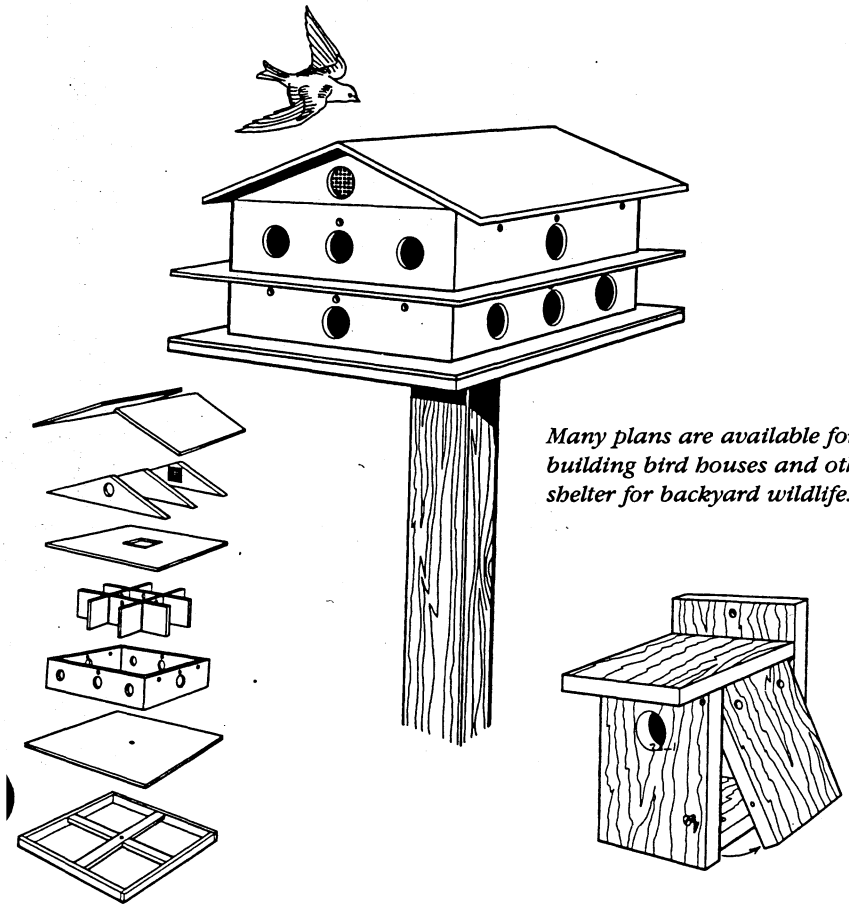
2. Make a sketch of your yard noting all existing plants, buildings, utilities, and pathways. You may even consider removing some plants. In some cases, trees have been planted too close to buildings or have grown much larger than the previous owner envisioned. Some species may be of little wildlife value and may not be particularly attractive. Once you have identified existing plants you want to save, start exploring options for plants that will work well with these species. The existing plants around your yard may be adequate to attract some wildlife, but a few changes can effectively enhance the existing habitat. Diversity in the landscape is necessary. Some plants provide food but very little cover; others provide cover but little food.

3. Add trees, shrubs, flowers, and groundcovers to your plan. Not all the planting needs to be done at once. If money or time is limited, consider it a work in progress.

4. Plant a variety of trees first. Select evergreen species for year-round cover and shelter. Select fruit or nut-bearing plants for a food source. Native species are well suited for providing wildlife habitat because they are adapted to the local soil, climate, and wildlife. Other considerations for choosing and placement:
   - Eventual size. Whether they are evergreen or deciduous (trees that drop their leaves). Deciduous trees planted on the south side of a house will provide summer shade, but will not completely block winter sun.
   - Neighboring properties.
   - Flowering and fruiting habit. Select plants that flower and bear fruit at different times of the year. Some shrubs that produce berries can provide food throughout the year. Trees with nuts and fruit can also provide seasonal foods. (See the tip sheet on tree planting for suggested species.)

5. Fill in with smaller shade-tolerant understory trees and shrubs. Add these to an existing landscape to enhance the vertical structure that is common in natural landscapes. Many smaller trees and shrubs are colorful at spring flowering, and provide berries for fall and winter feed.

6. Flowering annuals (plants that live one growing season) and perennials (plants that live for more than a year) add color to the yard and can be added at any stage to attract birds and butterflies. If your yard is large, consider using part of it for tall native grasses that provide beauty, as well as a natural source of food and shelter. A native wildflower garden provides the same function. Even on a small lot, native wildflowers, as well as some common garden species, can provide habitat for a variety of birds and butterflies. Avoid straight lines and perfect symmetry. Natural habitat has curves and clumps of vegetation. Wildlife is not particularly attracted to a well-manicured lawn. Wildlife is more likely to come out into the open for viewing when the boundary of the yard is designed and maintained as a retreat for animals.



Many plans are available for building bird houses and other shelter for backyard wildlife.

Plant Species for birds

Below are some plant species to consider for wildlife habitat. Check with a local nursery on plants suitable for your area. Some of these plants, while suited for wildlife, may have characteristics such as shallow roots or weak limbs that make them inappropriate for small urban properties–or they may not be winter hardy in all locations. Birds eat many flower seeds–depending on the species of bird.

Trees for birds
American beech (Fagus grandifolia)
American holly (Ilex opaca)
Balsam fir (Abies balsamea)
Black cherry (Prunus serotina)
Black gum (Nyssa sylvatica)
Crabapple (Malus spp.)
Flowering dogwood (Cornus florida)
Hawthorns (Crataegus spp.)
Hickories (Carya spp.)
Live oak (Quercus virginiana)
Oaks (Quercus spp.)
Red mulberry (Morus rubra)

Shrubs for birds
Common juniper (Juniperus communis)
Highbush blueberry (Vaccinium spp.)
Hollies–both evergreen and deciduous species (Ilex spp.)
Pyracantha (Pyracantha spp.)
Red-osier dogwood (Cornus stolonifera)
Serviceberry (Amelanchier arborea)
Spicebush (Lindera benzoin)
Sumacs (Rhus spp.)
Viburnums (Viburnum spp.)
Wax myrtle (Myrica cerifera)

Vines for birds
American bittersweet (Celastrus scandens)
Trumpet honeysuckle (Lonicera semper virens and related spp.)
Strawberry (Fragaria spp.)
Trumpet creeper or vine (Campis radicans)
Virginia creeper (Parthenocissus quinquefolia)
Wild grape (Vitis spp.)

Nectar plants for hummingbirds, butterflies, and bees
Aster (Aster spp.)
Azalea (Rhododendron spp.)
Bee balm (Monarda spp.)
Butterfly bush (Buddleia alternifolia)
Butterfly weed and other milkweeds (Asclepias spp.)
Cardinal flower (Lobelia cardinalis)
Clover and other legumes
Columbine (Aquilegia spp.)
Coneflower (Echinacea spp.)
Delphinium (Delphinium spp.)
Fuchsia (Fuchsia spp.)
Honeysuckle (Lonicera spp.)
Jewel weed (Impatiens capensis or I. pallida)
Lobelia (Lobelia spp.)
Lupine (Lupinus spp.)
Penstemon (Penstemon spp.)
Phlox (Phlox spp.)
Salvia (Salvia spp.)
Trumpet creeper or vine (Campis radicans)
Weigela (Weigela spp.)
Zinnia (Zinnia spp.)

Landscaping for birds

Food and cover are essential for the survival of all species. Loss of suitable nesting sites is a major factor in the decline of some bird species. In the wild, many species nest in cavities of dead trees. With the loss of hedgerows in some parts of the country and the removal of dead trees in towns, natural nesting sites are often limited. Also, some highly competitive, non-native species of birds have taken over some of the existing nesting sites once occupied by native birds.

Bird species are extremely variable in their habits. Some like deeply wooded areas; others prefer open fields and meadows. Many species are year-round residents, while others such as the cedar waxwing appear only for a few days a year during migration. Other species such as sparrows, blue jays, cardinals, robins, juncos, and chickadees are highly adaptable and found in many environments.

Many people are not aware of the value of dead, dying, and hollow trees, as well as logs on the ground, for birds and other wildlife. Dead trees provide homes to more than 400 species of birds, mammals, and amphibians. Fish, plants, and fungi also benefit from dead and dying trees. Consider leaving standing dead and dying trees in your yard unless they pose a human safety or property hazard, and use old logs and stumps in gardens and landscaping.

Addtional food and shelter for birds

Few yards will be able to supply sufficient food or shelter for a variety of birds all year long. However, you can improve shelter and food supplies by building or purchasing feeders and houses, and by setting out certain foods.

Most bird species have specific nesting requirements. Because of these requirements, your yard may not accommodate certain species. For instance, Eastern bluebirds prefer nesting sites that border open fields or lawns with a tree or fence post nearby to provide feeding perches. Chickadees prefer to nest in more wooded areas.

Before setting out nesting houses, find out which species are common in your area and can be encouraged to nest in your yard. Make or buy a bird house specifically designed for the bird you wish to attract. The size of the entrance hole is critical to prevent the eggs and young from

being destroyed by larger birds–always check a list of appropriate hole sizes. Other considerations include box size, height above the ground, direction the entrance hole faces, and amount of sunlight. Boxes may need baffles or other protective devices to limit access by cats and other predators. A good reference publication is *Homes for Birds* by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Office of Migratory Bird Management. It is available at two internet sites: http://library.fws.gov/bird_publications/house.html or http://www.birding.com/backyardhouses.asp.

Many species of birds can be attracted by a variety of feed in different styles of feeders. There are many styles of bird feeders available, from window-mounted feeders to those that hang from branches and stands. [illegible] birds will readily eat right off [illegible]ground. Bird feed comes in a variety of choices; however, sunflower seeds appeal to many birds, as well as small mammals.

Woodpeckers, nuthatches, and chickadees are especially attracted to suet. Citrus fruit, chopped apples and bananas, and raisins will be eaten by numerous species, including robins, titmouse, nuthatches, woodpeckers, and mockingbirds.

Feeders may also attract wildlife species you may not want to feed such as starlings, crows, and squirrels. Feeder type and placement and the type of food can help deter unwanted species.

Unlike many other species of birds, hummingbirds rely on nectar as their source of food. These tiny, migratory birds are commonly seen in the sum[illegible] northern states gathering nec[illegible]om colorful flowers. Hummingbirds are typically attracted to red and yellow tubular flowers, although they frequently visit others. Hummingbird feeders can be purchased and filled with a sugar-water solution, consisting of 1 part sugar to 4 parts water. Every 3 to 4 days, wash the feeder with a little bleach and water, rinse thoroughly, and add new sugar water.

Food and shelter for butterflies

Colorful butterflies and moths add beauty and interest to your backyard. There are hundreds of different species of butterflies and moths in North America. Butterflies and moths are insects. They hatch into larvae (commonly referred to as caterpillars), eventually become pupae, and develop into colorful adults. How long the process takes depends on the species and the climate.

Butterflies and moths are amazingly particular in their food choices. The larval stage of the butterfly may require food quite different from that of the adult. Some larvae consume tremendous amounts of plant material, seemingly devouring plants overnight. A common example in the garden is the tomato hornworm which rapidly strips tomato plants of their leaves. An equally voracious, but beautiful, larvae is the Eastern black swallowtail which is found only on plants in the carrot family, including celery, carrot, dill, and parsley. A close relative is the Eastern tiger swallowtail that eats the foliage of wild cherry, birch, poplar, ash, and tulip trees.

Adult butterflies require food in liquid form such as plant-produced nectar. They get some of it from flowers and from juices of extra-ripe fruit. The types of flowering plants you grow will determine the kinds of butterflies you attract to your backyard. In addition to the plants listed for hummingbirds and butterflies, butterfly bush is especially attractive for butterflies. Find out what species are common in your area and use plants they like. Nectar feeders can be placed in the yard to attract butterflies. Do not use insecticides near plants for butterflies. Learn to recognize larval and egg forms. That large green and black caterpillar eating your dill may one day turn into the gorgeous butterfly you were hoping to attract!

Butterflies, like all insects, are most active when temperatures are warmer. While moths are commonly found at night, most butterflies are active on sunny, warm days. Butterflies will benefit from a basking site where they can warm up on cool mornings. Add a light-colored rock or concrete garden sculpture as a basking site. Butterflies also need a source of water. A shallow dish of water or a depression in a rock that retains water is all they need.

Attracting bees

In the United States, there are nearly 5,000 different species of native bees. Most of them are solitary, friendly bees that nest in holes in the ground or burrows in twigs and dead tree limbs. These bees do not have hives to protect them, so they are not aggressive and rarely sting. Bumblebees, carpenter bees, sweat bees, leafcutter bees, digger bees, and others pollinate many different kinds of plants. They play a critical role in healthy wild plant communities and gardens. About 30 percent of our diet is the direct result of a pollinating visit by a bee to a flowering fruit tree or vegetable plant. Providing bee habitat in your yard can increase the quality and quantity of your fruits and vegetables.

Bees are extremely sensitive to many commonly applied insecticides. If you must use chemical insecticides in your garden, apply them in the evening when bees are less likely to be active.

Bees are attracted to most flowering plants, and are especially fond of blue and yellow flowers. Try planting your garden to have different species blooming in the spring, summer, and fall.

Bee houses

A good use for untreated scrap lumber (at least 3 to 5 inches thick) is to drill holes (from 1/8-inch to 5/16-inch in diameter) about 90 percent of the way into the thick wooden block. Space the holes about 1/2-inch to 3/4-inch apart. The 5/16-inch holes work best as homes for orchard bees which are excellent pollinators of fruit trees. Hang your bee blocks under the eaves of your house or garden shed, protected from direct sun and rain.

Attracting bats to your yard

Bats are a beneficial and interesting mammal. Bats are the single most important controller of night-flying insects, including mosquitoes, moths, and beetles. For example, a single little brown bat can catch up to 600 mosquitoes in an hour. Watching bats fly around light posts catching bugs can be an interesting nighttime activity.

A bat house in your yard will help attract bats and provide them with much-needed roosting habitat. The house should be placed on a pole at least 15 feet high in a spot that receives sun at least 4 to 6 hours a day. Tree trunks are usually too shady for bat boxes. Some bat species such as gray bats, red bats, and hoary bats will use shrubs and trees for roosting under loose bark or in cavities.

Many species of bats migrate in the fall and hibernate throughout the winter months in caves, mines, or buildings. If disturbed during hibernation, their metabolism is increased, depleting fat reserves and reducing their chances of survival.

As with all wildlife, bats should be watched, but not handled or chased. Generally, bats are shy of humans and will not attack or fly after a person. However, if caught or picked up from the ground, a bat may bite.

Attracting reptiles and amphibians

Toads, frogs, lizards, turtles, and snakes all have a place in the backyard. While many people may not want some of these animals in their yards, most species are harmless and often quite beneficial–feeding on destructive insects or rodents.

Reptiles and amphibians are cold-blooded animals. Their body temperature rises and falls as the surrounding temperatures change. Because of this, these animals need a sunny basking spot to warm up in the morning. They also need a shady, cool spot to spend time during the heat of the day and for protection from predators.

Shelter for reptiles and amphibians is easy to provide. Several rocks piled in a sunny spot will provide basking sites. Consider planting shade-tolerant groundcovers under trees and leaving a thick layer of leaves to provide cool shelter. Stumps, logs, and rock piles in a shady spot can be valuable.

Water for wilflife

Clean, fresh water is as important to birds, bats, butterflies, and other wildlife as it is for people. Water in a saucer, bird bath, or backyard pond is adequate for wildlife. Be sure to change the water every few days to keep it fresh. In hot weather, it may be necessary to refill the container daily.

Logs, rocks, and water-holding structures provide drinking and basking habitat for turtles, butterflies, and songbirds. Stones with depressions that collect water will help attract butterflies.

A word about attracting mammals

Squirrels, chipmunks, rabbits, raccoons, opossums, skunks, woodchucks, mice, and deer are commonly found in many urban environments. These species are highly adaptable and, in many cases, are becoming unwanted visitors rather than welcome guests.

As with all wildlife, cover is essential for the survival of these species. Small brush piles intended for amphibians and reptiles will also provide shelter for rabbits and mice. Chipmunks and woodchucks are adept at digging their own burrows. Trees may provide shelter for squirrels, raccoons, and opossums.

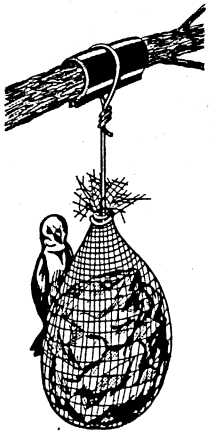
Food set out for birds may attract many of these animals. Squirrels, chipmunks, and mice will readily eat birdseed. Raccoons will feed on suet. Woodchucks and rabbits will eat a variety of vegetation including garden vegetables and flowering plants. Deer are browsers and will nibble at trees, shrubs, hay, and grain.

A few precautions can be taken to avoid unwanted encounters with these animals. Avoid setting out food that may attract scavengers such as raccoons. Keep garbage cans in a secure shed or garage or use metal cans that scavengers cannot chew through. Check the exterior of your house for loose or rotted boards that could allow access by mice or other rodents. Remember that these animals are wild, and if threatened they can bite. Raccoons can be particularly aggressive. All these species can carry diseases. Do not handle them.

Laws vary from state to state on wildlife issues. If you have questions or concerns about wildlife, check with your state's Department of Natural Resources or Conservation Department before taking any action.

Backyard habitat programs

The National Wildlife Federation (NWF) sponsors a certification program designed to help individuals plan and apply a wildlife habitat plan for a home site or small acreage. On request, NWF will send you an application package and instructions for its Backyard Wildlife Habitat Program. If your application and plan meet the criteria, you will receive a certificate and, if you wish, a sign to show your commitment to wildlife conservation. Contact:
Backyard Wildlife Habitat Program
ional Wildlife Federation
00 Wildlife Center Drive
Reston, VA 20190-5362
or http://www.nwf.org/
backyardwildlifehabitat



Careful thought, such as using branch protectors for hanging bird food, will create a more lasting backyard habitat.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's Office of Migratory Bird Management works with groups and individuals to conserve and manage migratory birds. This agency offers information about backyard habitats for birds and wildlife. Several pamphlets are available: *Backyard Bird Feeding, Backyard Bird Problems, Attract Birds, Homes for Birds, and Migratory Songbird Conservation.* (http://library.fws.gov/bird_pubsindex.htm). For more information contact:
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Office of Public Affairs
1849 C. St.
Washington, DC 20240

The Natural Resources Conservation Service, National Association of Conservation Districts, and Wildlife Habitat Council encourage you to sign up in the "Backyard Conservation" program. To participate, use some of the conservation practices in your backyard that are showcased in this series of tip sheets–tree planting, wildlife habitat, backyard pond, backyard wetland, composting, mulching, nutrient management, terracing, water conservation, and pest management. Then, simply fill in the Backyard Conservation customer response form, send a Backyard e-mail request to backyard@swcs.org, or call 1-888-LANDCARE.

On the farm

When most of us think of natural resource protection or wildlife haibtat, images of vast expanses of open land and unbounded water probably come to mind.

But to hundreds of species of animals and insects, home is where they find it. Many of them would love to find their home in your backyard, just as many have found a home in the large backyards of America's farmers and ranchers.

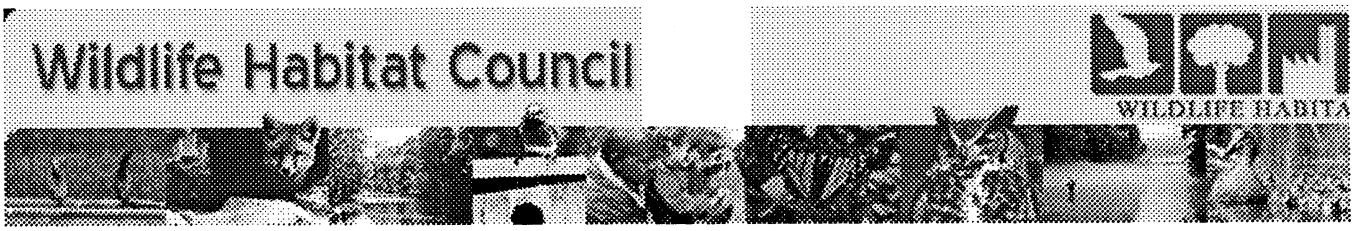
As a matter of fact, pirvate landowners provide the bulk of the food and habitat for wildlife in this country. They deserve the credit for making a home for wildlife on a whopping 70 percent of the land.

Farmers are installing grass, tree, and shrub plantings; ponds; riparian buffer strips; wetlands; and other wildlife habitats at record rates.

On the farm, sometimes the tree, shrub, and grass plantings don't offer enough food or cover for wildlife. So some farmers plant food plots especially for wildlife, or put up structures geese and ducks and birds can use as protected nests.

Some farmers also provide bird and bat houses, while others plant or leave food plots of corn, millet, or other grains specifically for wildlife.

Like your neighbors in the country, you'll soon discover that by making your yard more hospitable to nature, you'll add pleasure to your life, and harmony around your home.



8737 Colesville Road
Suite 800
Silver Spring, MD 20910
Telephone: 301.588.8994
Fax: 301.588.4629
Whc@wildlifehc.org

Please contact our Regional Offices should you find our Main Office closed as a result of bad weather or another unforeseen reason.

Press Room
Events
Publications
Links Directory
Wildlife Management Tools
Wildlife at Work℠
Certified Sites
Corporate Lands for Learning℠
Waterways for Wildlife
Brownfields/Remediation
Nest Monitoring
Apply for Programs/Awards
Members Only

Wildlife Teams in Action

About WHC

15th Anniversary
WILDLIFE HABITAT COUNCIL

When the Wildlife Habitat Council was formed in 1988, the founders conceived a new and innovative concept of bringing together - conservation and business.

Today, with our members and partners, we continue to share a vision to conserve and restore natural ecosystems for the benefit of humanity and the earth's biological diversity. Join us in this special anniversary celebration.

The Wildlife Habitat Council (WHC) is a nonprofit, nonlobbying 501(c)(3) group of conservation organizations, and individuals dedicated to protecting and enhancing

Created in 1988, WHC helps large landowners, particularly corporations, manage lands in an ecologically sensitive manner for the benefit of wildlife. WHC also work understanding of wildlife values. Over 120 companies are WHC members as are t conservation organizations, plus many supporters and contributors. Over 2 million states, Puerto Rico, and fifteen other countries are managed for wildlife through W projects.

Habitat projects on these lands are corporate-driven cooperative efforts between r employees, community members, local conservation groups, and local, state, and agencies. Among many honors, WHC has received Presidential recognition for its building partnerships, and in 1994, won the Chevron-Times Mirror Magazines Con Award. Just recently, WHC was recognized in the nonprofit category at the Virgini Stewardship Awards for undertaking initiatives to restore and enhance natural res

The Three Rivers Habitat Partnership, a *Waterways for Wildlife* regional project of awarded a prestigious **2002 Governor's Award for Watershed Stewardship** by Governor Mark Schweiker and PA Department of Environmental Protection Secre Hess.

The Wildlife Habitat Council's main office is located in Silver Spring, MD. To find a area or to contact our Membership, Marketing & Communications and Research E Departments, please contact us at Whc@wildlifehc.org or call 301-588-8994. We several regional offices staffed by expert Wildlife Biologists.

C. Trees/Forestry

Proceedings of the

North American Conference on Enterprise Development Through Agroforestry:

Farming the Agroforest for Specialty Products

October 4-7, 1998
Double Tree Park Place Hotel
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Scott J. Josiah, Editor

Production Coordination: Susan Vosler, University of Nebraska-Lincoln, and Erik Streed, Center for Integrated Natural Resources and Agricultural Management, University of Minnesota

Layout: Susan Vosler, University of Nebraska-Lincoln

Publisher: Center for Integrated Natural Resources and Agricultural Management, University of Minnesota, 1530 Cleveland Ave. N., 115 Green Hall, St. Paul, MN 55108. 612-624-4299

December 1999

Contents

Sponsors i

Planning Committee ii

Preface iv

Acknowledgments v

SECTION 1: Farming the Forest For Specialty Forest Products: From Production to Marketing 1

Farming the Forest in Agroforestry Systems: An Overview
Bruce C. Wright 3

From Wildcrafting to Intentional Cultivation: The Potential for Producing Specialty Forest Products in Agroforestry Systems in Temperate North America
Wayne S. Teel and Louise E. Buck 7

Social Values of Specialty Forest Products to Rural Communities
Marla R. Emery 25

Indigenous Use of Nontimber Forest Products by the Guidar of 6Northern Cameroon (Poster Abstract)
Steven Olson 33

Developing Special Forest Products Markets for Non-Industrial Private Forest Land Owners
Jim Freed 34

Menominee Forest-Past and Present (Paper Abstract)
Steven J. Arnold 40

Multiple Benefits of Arid Land Agroforestry Home Gardens and Riparian Ecosystems
Peter F. Ffolliott 41

Forest Farming in British Columbia
Richard D. Hallman, Jill Hatfield and Harold E. Macy 47

Exploring and Valuing Urban Non-Timber Forest Products (Poster Abstract)
Melanie Bode 51

SECTION 2: Medicinals And Botanicals 53

Medicinal and Dietary Supplements: Specialty Forest Products With a Long Tradition
Jim Chamberlain and A.L. Hammett 55

Balancing Conservation With Utilization: Restoring Populations of Commercially Valuable Medicinal Herbs in Forests and Agroforests
Richard A. Cech 64

Assessing and Developing New Markets For Ethnobotanicals and General Medicinals
Trish Flaster 69

Growing American Ginseng in its Native Woodland Habitat
W. Scott Person 74

Producing and Marketing Wild Simulated Ginseng in Forest and Agroforestry Systems
Andy Hankins 85

Large-Scale Contract Growing of Medicinals and Botanicals in Agroforestry Systems
Edward Fletcher 92

On-Farm Hedgerow Production of Certified Organic Medicinal Plant Materials (Poster Abstract)
Dean Hively 94

SECTION 3: Handicrafts, Specialty Woods And Decorative Florals 95

Using Resource Inventories to Determine the Potential for Non-Timber Forest Product Production
John Krantz and Shelby G. Jones 97
Specialty Wood & Wood Products for Handicraft Markets
Shelby G. Jones 99
What is it Craft Buyers Want? Results of a Nationwide Survey
Pamela J. Brown 101
Finding a Buyer in the Wholesale Market
Pamela J. Brown 103
Christmas Trees: Plantations to Agroforestry Systems
Richard D. Hallman 105
Profitable Crops for Unlikely Places: Producing Handicraft and Floral Products in Riparian Agroforestry Buffer Zones (Paper Abstract)
Bruno Moser 108
Value Added Processing/Marketing of Forest Based Florals: Workshop Notes (Paper Abstract)
Don Mitchell and Cherie Mitchell 109
Designer Pine Straw Mulch: Biology, Production and Marketing (Paper Abstract)
C.A. Blanche and H.F. Carion 110

SECTION 4: Forest-Based Food Products 113

Producing Forest-Based Food Products in Permaculture Systems
Mark L. Shepard 115
Will the Big Bad Wolf Get Food Poisoning From Grandma's Cooking?
Joellen M. Feirtag 131
Emerging Business Produces and Markets North Dakota Fruit Products (Poster Abstract)
Marcus Jackson 132
The Potential of Hybrid Hazelnuts in Agroforestry and Woody Agriculture Systems
Philip A. Rutter 133
Regeneration Management of Oak and Associated Wild Forages (Poster Abstract)
James J. Zaczek 135
Pollination and Honey Production in the Forest and Agroforest
Deborah B. Hill 136
Flower Collection for Pollen Production (Paper Abstract)
Barry Jones 142
Farming Forest Fungi for Added Income (Paper Abstract)
Joseph Krawczyk 144
Marketing: The Key to a Successful Shiitake Mushroom Business
Don Schoepski 145
Notes on Shiitake Mushroom Production and Marketing
(Letter from *Andy Hankins*) 148
What do we Still Need to Know About Commercial Production of Forest-Grown Specialty Fungi?
Johann N. Bruhn 147
Log Culture of *Auricularia polytricha* Utilizing Different Woody Substrates in Hawaii (Poster Abstract)
N.S. Dudley and S. Schenck 159

SECTION 5: The Unique Challenges of Producing and Marketing Specialty Forest Products 161

Decisions...Decisions...Decisions: Considerations for Starting a Natural Resource-Based Enterprise
Jonathan S. Kays 163
Improving the Success of Natural Resource-Based Enterprises
Jonathan S. Kays 171
Designing Marketing Plans for Specialty Forest Products
Clyde Vollmers and Stacy Vollmers 175
Creating Marketing Support for Specialty Forest Products
Clyde Vollmers and Stacy Vollmers 182
Weaving Sustainability Into A Cooperative Network
Christina Johnson 186
Building Cooperative Networks
Christina Johnson 189
Wholesale and Direct Marketing of Specialty Forest Products
Jennifer-Claire V. Klotz 190
Marketing of Specialty Forest Products in the Southeast: Opportunities for Research, Education and Outreach (Poster Abstract)
A.L. Hammett and Jim Chamberlain 194
Non-Timber Forest Products in Central Appalachia: Market Opportunities For Rural Development (Poster Abstract)
A.L. Hammett and James L. Chamberlain 195
The Formation of the Minnesota Agro-Forestry Cooperative (Poster Abstract)
Joe Dooley 196

SECTION 6: Emerging Issues in Forest Farming for Specialty Forest Products 197

The Role and Importance of Regional and National Trade Associations in Marketing Specialty Forest Products
Charlie Touchette 199
Opportunities and Limitations for the Certification of Non-Timber Forest Products From Well-Managed Forests
Alan R. Pierce 201
Specialty Forest Products in the Forest: Integrating Special Products Into Ecosystem and Landscape Management
John R. Davis 207
The World Wide Web: An Emerging Technology for Marketing Special Forest Products
A.L. Hammett, Shelby Jones and Phil Araman 217

SECTION 7: Conference Summary 219

Conference Summary
Bruce C. Wight and Melvin J. Baughman 221

Appendix 233

98 Conference Registrants 235

AGROFORESTRY

IN THE UNITED STATES

RESEARCH AND TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER NEEDS FOR THE NEXT MILLENNIUM

THE ASSOCIATION FOR TEMPERATE AGROFORESTRY
COLUMBIA, MISSOURI
FALL 2000

Funding for this project was provided by the USDA National Agroforestry Center.
Photos courtesy of the USDA.

Table of Contents

Introduction 1

Alley Cropping 5

Forest Farming 9

Riparian Forest Buffers 13

Silvopasture 17

Windbreaks 21

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Woodlots

At least 6 million people own woodlot parcels averaging 40 to 50 acres in size that make up 33 percent of the Nation's 348 million acres of private timberland. Many can improve their land management. This factsheet is intended mainly for them rather than for others who may want to try to get into the business.

Many newcomers are farmers who are planting trees on more than 2 million acres under 10-year crop retirement contracts with USDA. They start woodlots under the Conservation Reserve Program (CRP), administered by the Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service (ASCS) with assistance from cooperating State foresters. Owners receive cost-share assistance from ASCS and technical advice from the foresters on how to establish timber stands on cropland.

There are other Federal aid programs, such as the Forestry Incentives Program jointly administered by ASCS and USDA's Forest Service, which helped 92,000 farmers with timber management on nearly 3 million acres from 1975 through 1986.

The Forest Service (FS), working through State programs, provides thousands of private landowners with assistance annually for tree planting, seeding, timber stand improvement, and other woodland activities. The FS also is helping to support "Global ReLeaf," an American Forestry Association campaign to urge U.S. residents to plant 100 million trees by 1992.

Some owners may want to improve their management so as to boost timber production. Many others, however, favor production not only of wood but of other goods and services...water, wildlife, forage, esthetics, and recreation, including cross-country skiing. Not so incidentally, they also help with fire protection by way of fire lanes they maintain.

Management Lacking

Experts in the Forest Service and State and industry forestry circles say most woodlot farmers don't fully manage their operations. Their timber growth generally reaches only 50 to 60 percent of potential.

Good timber management means getting each acre to produce the maximum annual growth of trees spaced adequately to maintain good form and quality. It also means regenerating the stand to replace harvested trees.

According to many foresters, the most immediate need in most private hardwood timber operations is for a timber stand improvement cut, according to many foresters. Some State universities and Cooperative Extension departments have published booklets on timber stand improvement.

Several States have forestry officials who, at no charge, will arrange visits by a forester who will suggest plans for improvement of immediate and long-term commercial potential of woodlands. Private commercial foresters may be called in for more detailed plans and to oversee their proper execution.

The latter often work on the basis of a percentage of sales.

Some State foresters will show owners how to spot and mark trees that should be felled rather than left growing. They can review a written contract with a logger hired to harvest trees. Too many landowners have been defrauded and had timber and woodland abused by failing to clarify arrangements.

Officials can give names of professional foresters available for hire, as can the Association of Consulting Foresters, 5410 Grosvenor Lane, Bethesda, MD 20814. (Telephone: 301/530-6795)

Another source of information or help is The American Tree Farmer, official magazine of The American Tree Farm System, which has certified 65,000 tree farmers of 91 million acres. The system is managed by the American Forest Council, 1250 Connecticut Ave. NW, Suite 320, Washington, DC 20036. The magazine goes 6 times a year to persons paying annual dues of $15.

The owner may learn from a State forester how to protect water quality, how large a buffer to put between the logging and a stream, where to locate skid roads, and how to manage "slash" (trash) to avoid fires. Some States require a portion of the sales dollar from logging be set aside for slash management and reforestation. There may be forest practice laws requiring inspection before, during, and after logging to help insure replanting.

State foresters may tell of availability of small, portable mills and other ways to maximize profits. They may give written material and tell of workshops on timber management. Such foresters may provide landowners with plans to achieve double objectives, such as wildlife habitat improvement and increased timber productivity. Usually these two objectives can be accomplished together.

Without professional advice, improper logging may occur that reduces not only beauty but the biologic diversity of a forest by destroying essential wildlife habitat.

If a landowner can't locate the State forester, he or she can contact the National Association of State Foresters (NASF), comprised of the directors of State forestry agencies. NASF is at Hall of the States, 444 N. Capitol Street, NW, Washington, DC 20001. (Telephone: 202/624-5415)

Advice is available from the 33,500-member National Woodland Owners Association. The NWOA is at 374 Maple Avenue E, Suite 210, Vienna, VA 22180. (Telephone: 703/255-2700) Formed by nonindustrial private woodland owners, the NWOA is independent of the forest

products industry and forestry agencies. For $15 a year, members receive 8 issues of the Woodland Report and 4 issues of the National Woodlands Magazine. NWOA can arrange for a visit by a forester to a new member's location.

The Society of American Foresters (SAF), 5400 Grosvenor Lane, Bethesda, MD 20814, lists help professionals can provide:

o Inventory a forest to estimate its extent, quality, and value;

o Reestablish trees on bare land;

o Improve protection from fire, insects, and disease;

o Select timber for harvest;

o Help insure that timber is sold at a fair price;

o Administer harvest activities to prevent soil and remaining tree damage;

o Take advantage of financial incentives and other help offered by public agencies, industrial firms, and tax laws;

o Review the owner's tax situation.

Foresters sometimes specialize. A woodlot owner should select one whose specialty matches the owner's objectives.

Best Prospects

Owners with already-established woodlots often have immediate income potential. Sometimes, however, the return covers decades. An example appeared in the Winter 1989 issue of The American Tree Farmer, in an item from President Nels Hanson of the Washington Farm Forestry Association. He reported that when Lula and Vern Johnson bought their 40-acre Washington farm for $102 an acre, it had a 6-acre patch of 40-year-old Douglas fir. Between 1949 and 1987, as money was needed to clear and plant understocked areas and to supplement their income, they logged and thinned the stand. When the well-managed stand was sold to the Weyerhaeuser Company in 1988, it had 660,000 board feet of lumber. That high bidder paid the widow nearly $382 per thousand, or $252,000. Not everyone can find a timber investment to match that.

Benefits are available not only through selling logs but also through wildlife or other outdoor recreation projects. Information for the latter—such as developing hunting leases—is available from many Extension Service specialists and State and private foresters.

For those wanting to begin a long-term timber growth project, unused areas along creeks or streams often are excellent sites. Depending on the region (and advice from the experts), hardwoods or conifers can be planted. The exact species would depend on local growing conditions. As mentioned earlier, State and Federal officials often offer not only advice but also financial help in planting.

Woodlands along creek areas serve to filter agricultural chemicals from the soil to prevent contamination of the creek and watersheds below. Forested wetlands will become more important over time in controlling farm runoff.

The years it takes to develop a woodlot on idle land depends on the region.

The South produces salable lumber products in 15 to 25 years. In the North and West it usually takes 30 to 50 years. In the South, final harvests usually take place in 30 to 40 years and in the North and West about 60 to 80 years. Fairly intensive management is required to produce sawlogs in those timeframes.

A forester's services can be utilized to help determine proper species for planting, thinning cycles, and the right timing for a final harvest cut, not to mention reforestation plans.

What About Alley Cropping?

In many States, tree farmers can farm more than trees. One farmer plants potatoes in freshly logged areas. Dr Gene Garrett, University of Missouri forestry professor, suggests that in the Midwest, farmers plant Eastern black walnut trees (*Juglans Nigra*) in rows about 40 feet apart and then do "alley cropping." Alley crops can include soybeans or small grain or even vegetables.

In the South, a similar approach might be used with pecan trees. Harvesting the wood as timber takes many years, but in the meantime nut production can provide some income in about a dozen years.

Printed Information

There are many publications and books that a potential woodlot owner can consult. One fairly universally accepted is "The Woodland Steward," by James R. Fazio. A copy may be obtained for $15.55 (including postage) from the American Forestry Association, P.O. Box 2000, Washington, DC 20013.

USDA's Forest Service publishes Agriculture Handbook No. 681, "Forest Owners' Guide to Timber Investments, the Federal Income Tax, and Tax Recordkeeping," last issued in July 1989. It includes forms for recording timber transactions. A copy may be obtained for $5 from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325.

West Virginia University's Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station published a 55-page Circular 148, "How to Estimate the Value of Timber in Your Woodlot," by Professor Harry V. Wiant, Jr. He also explains how owners often lose thousands of dollars by cutting too soon. A copy may be obtained by writing to Mrs. Mildred Spangler, Communications Bldg., West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV 26506.

Prepared by Jared D. Wolfe of USDA's Forest Service and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service, Room 342-D, Aerospace Building, USDA, Washington, DC 20251-2200. (Telephone: 202/447-3640)

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

March 1990

*U.S.GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE:1990-261-427:20324/CSRS

D. Livestock

D. Livestock

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Angora Goats

Angora goats may be the most efficient fiber producers on Earth. These makers of mohair came from and were named after Ankara (Angora prior to 1930), the Turkish province where they have thrived for centuries. Turkey guarded these goats against exportation until 1849 when seven does and two bucks were imported into the United States. Later, more were imported from Turkey and South Africa, the two principal mohair producers in the 19th century.

But now the United States has become one of the two biggest producers (along with South Africa) of mohair—the long, lustrous, wavy hair that goes into fine garments. The other primary fiber from goats is cashmere. (See "A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative, Cashmere Goats," December 1992.) Never the twain should meet! To cross Angora with cashmere goats results in a fiber called cashgora, with very limited use and characteristics of neither fine fiber.

The two goat types differ in temperaments, too. The Angoras are pretty laid back and docile, while cashmere and/or Spanish meat goats are often flighty and high strung. (Incidentally, Angora goats, which do produce mohair, do not produce Angora hair; only rabbits can produce that.)

Although Angora goats are somewhat delicate, they grow their fleeces year-round. This puts considerable strain on the animal and probably contributes to their lack of hardiness.

About 90 percent of the U.S. mohair clip originates in Texas, but the goats are raised over wide areas of the United States. They adapt well to many conditions, but are particularly suited to the arid Southwestern States. Central and southwestern Texas have all the major mohair warehouses.

Shear Twice a Year

Angora goats are sheared twice a year, before breeding and before kidding. The hair grows about 3/4 of an inch a month, and adult hair should be 4-6 inches long at shearing. Shearing most often follows the method developed by the Mexicans, with the goats lying down with legs tied. Shearing should be done on a clean-swept floor or sheet of plywood.

Care should be given to keep mohair clean and free from contaminants—weeds, grass seeds, or urine. Buyers severely discount unclean hair and hair showing second cuts. Fleeces should be bagged separately in 6-foot burlap bags. Not acceptable are polyethylene bags or poly twine.

Each bag should show the grower's name marked with a permanent-type felt-tip pen, be tagged, and contain only one fleece type clearly marked: Kid, yearling, young adult, adult, buck, and stained with spring or fall clip. Special problems, such as burrs or coarse, extra long, or short fleece, should also be listed on the tag. Buyers slit the bag's side when inspecting before buying; sellers must present a uniform product.

An adult goat usually will produce 8-16 pounds of mohair a year. Kid mohair should be 4 inches long, is finer, and may yield 3-5 pounds a year. Mohair fiber diameter ranges from 20 to 40 microns.

If kemp fiber (long, straight, hollow and brittle) shows up on any goats, especially along the backbone and thighs, such "kempy" animals should be culled, as suggested by the U.S. Mohair Marketing Board. Kemp fiber breaks easily and does not readily accept dye.

The U.S. Government has a direct-payment program for mohair producers to help maintain a viable industry. The direct payment through the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service (ASCS) is based on the difference between the national average market price and a support price. In one recent year, producers received an average of $2.475 for every dollar's worth of mohair marketed. Details can be found at ASCS offices in many counties.

Selecting Bucks

Bucks should be chosen for body conformation and fine hair. Preferred are open-faced bucks not blinded by hair. Bucks should be left with does for 6 weeks. Angora goats are seasonally in estrus. The normal breeding season is from late September into December.

The gestation period for goats is usually 150 days, but it can vary several days each way. Kids are usually dropped from late February through April or early May. Twins may account for 40 percent of births, with a much lower percentage being triplets.

Fiber Comes First

Angora goats have high nutrient requirements and give nutritional advantage to fiber growth at the expense of other demands. Meeting nutritional needs should be the producer's main concern. Range forage of browse and forbs, protein supplements, grain and crop residues, and cereal crop pastures can help supply needed nutrients for growth and reproduction.

Goats, browsing animals, can be pastured with sheep and cattle; each species prefers different plants. Goats prefer brush, tree leaves, and rough plants. They can improve pasture, clear reforestation areas,

control leafy spurge, and destroy multiflora roses, red cedars, sand burs, knapweed, hound's tongue, Canadian thistle, sagebrush, buckbrush, giant ragweed, sunflowers, and many other weeds.

When growing plants are not available, Angora goats need supplemental hay and perhaps grain. While gaining at breeding time, young does should weigh at least 55 pounds (sheared weight) and mature does at least 75. Does need extra feed before and after breeding so fetuses can develop hair follicles.

During pregnancy and lactation, does need almost 1/2 pound of crude protein daily. Supplement feeding must start as soon as does begin to lose weight and condition. Improved nutrition brings more and better big growthy kids and heavier fleeces. Poor nutrition is the leading cause of abortion and poor mothering. Young or lighter-weight goats are most subject to abortion. Stress from disease, moving long distances, or cold wet weather also cause abortions.

Goats should be given adequate nutrition before and after shearing. Angora must be able to take shelter from wet and cold; great death loss can occur without shelter for 4 to 6 weeks after shearing. Goats do not carry layers of body fat, unlike sheep.

Kidding on the Range

Due to lack of labor and facilities, large herds are usually kidded on the range, while many small herds use a more intensive confinement system. For open-range kidding, small pastures with shelter, centrally located watering and supplement feeding areas, and bedding spots reduce numbers of lost kids.

Angora does and kids should be undisturbed for several weeks, since does may abandon their kids. When goats are moved, pastures should be rechecked for kids.

An even more intensive kidding system uses buildings, small individual stalls, heat lamps, and feeder space. This "system" can be done earlier in the year but is much more labor intensive and therefore more expensive. But a larger kid crop can be realized with good management. Before kidding, does should be outdoors except in cold or wet weather or at night; this helps keep bedding clean and dry and encourages needed exercise.

As does kid, they should be moved into stalls and kids' navels treated with 7 percent iodine. C and D antitoxin should be given. Cold kids will not try to suck and may need a heat lamp. When warm, they will usually suck by themselves but may need help to begin. Angora kids, very sensitive to cold, can die within a short time if too chilled. Immersion in warm water to speed restoration of body temperature and then thorough drying may save severely chilled kids.

After identification with matching paint or ear tags, well-fed does and kids can be moved to group pens or holding areas. Twins and triplets should not be grouped with singles since stronger kids often rob milk from usually smaller multiple-birth kids. Groups should contain kids of similar age.

Parasites Trouble Goats

Among goats, major health problems are internal and external parasites, coccidiosis (in kids before and after weaning), and pneumonia. A good health care program includes vaccination for most diseases and should be established between a grower and a veterinarian.

Goats' hooves may need to be trimmed, depending on walking conditions. Rocky ground may take care of that problem.

Goats may need special 4-foot-high fencing to keep them in and predators out. Goats like to go under or through obstacles. Five-wire electric fences, with three wires hot and two grounded, make a good system. Woven-wire fences may be used with the addition of a 12-inch "outrigger" electric wire about 12 inches above the ground. Small-mesh fencing also may be used.

Horns caught in the fence or the crotch of a tree become life-threatening, not only from predators but also from other goats. While most goats are not aggressive toward humans, they are not always kind to other goats and in seconds can do serious or lethal damage with their horns. A goat raiser may find horns useful—as handles. For safety, both for the handler and for other animals, horns' sharp points may be clipped, using a bolt cutter or similar device.

Following are additional information sources on Angora goat production:

Mohair Council of America
P.O. Box 5337
San Angelo, TX 76902
telephone: 915-655-3161

Ranch Magazine
P.O. Box 2678
San Angelo, TX 76902
915-655-4434

E (Kika) de la Garza Institute
for Goat Research
Langston University
P.O. Box 730
Langston, OK 73050
405-466-3836

Texas A & M University System
7887 North Highway 87
San Angelo, TX 76901
915-653-4576

"Angora Goats the Northern Way"
Susan Black Drummond
Stony Lonesome Farm
1451 Sisson Road
Freeport, MI 49325

By Harriet L. Jensen, R.R. 3, Box 144; Cozad, NE 69130 (Telephone: 308-784-3312) and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

* * *

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

April 1993

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Cashmere Goats

The world is beginning to give goats—nature's best herbicide—more attention. Leafy spurge—poisonous to some animals—is causing even people who laughed about goats to take a more serious look. When some Nebraska goats were taken on a demonstration tour, people could hardly believe the sight of goats walking through high brome grass to select out spurge heads!

But while most goats go for spurge, only cashmere goats also have the fiber of kings. And their owners now know better than to cross them with Angoraproducing goats. (Angora hair is another important fiber.) Australia and New Zealand breeders experimented with a cross to try to develop heavier fleeces. It proved to be a mistake. The crossed goats produced—cashgora—with limited uses and characteristics of neither cashmere nor mohair.

Demand Exceeds Supply

Demand for cashmere, the fine underdown from cashmere goats that has long been preferred by royalty, has always exceeded supply. Garments made of cashmere are prized for their unique feel. Cashmere is very soft, warm and long wearing. It feels much softer to the skin than wool, and while not as strong, cashmere outwears wool!

Cashmere goats are a type, not a breed. Most goat breeds, except Angora, can produce this down in varied quantities and may be called cashmere goats. There is no such thing as a "purebred" cashmere goat.

The fleece consists of the very fine, crimpy down and the usually longer, outside, coarse, straight guard hairs. A goat that does not display both types of fiber should be avoided.

Cashmere fibers must be separated, either by combing out the down or by using a commercial dehairer on sheared fibers. The longest, finest down is used in knitted garments and the shorter down in woven fabrics. The separated guard hairs go into rugs or hair canvas used in tailored garments.

The majority of the world supply of cashmere has come from Afghanistan, Iran, Outer Mongolia, India, and China. In recent years, when these countries' political disarray disrupted cashmere supplies, manufacturers began looking for more stable sources.

New Zealand and Australia have been producing cashmere for more than a decade. Breeding selection began even some years earlier with captured feral (wild) goats.

Selecting Breeding Stock

Prospective herd members can be selected from either dairy goat or meat goat sources. Cashmere down growth begins on about the longest day of the year and stops on about the shortest day. (Shortly after down growth stops it will be shed naturally if not combed or sheared.) Best time for goat selection is in the latter part of growth-stopping period; down quality can be easily assessed. The guard hair is parted to determine whether there is down underneath.

If the goat carries the gene for down, it can, over time, be developed into saleable amounts. The crimp is called the character or style of the fiber; a very tightly crimped down is most desirable. The diameter (measured in microns) of the fiber must be under 19 microns to be labeled cashmere. Select goats may have fiber as fine as 14 microns. The usual range is 16 to 19 microns.

A yield of at least 30 percent down is desirable, but is not the average by any means. Buyers pay on the down weight or weight of dehaired fiber, not the weight of the entire fleece. Prices vary over time.

Goats come in many colors and combinations of colors, but solid colored goats are much preferred. Cashmere down is either white, brown, or gray in solid colored goats. The less desirable down from mixed colored goats is classed either as white with color or mixed color.

Some U.S. growers have imported goats from Australia or New Zealand as a herd or as breeding stock to improve selected native goats. This might produce greater returns more quickly than would native stock alone.

Some Natives Are Good

There are, however, many very good goats among native breeds. Their fiber's diameter is apt to be smaller, but the length and yield of fiber are much less. The aim through selective breeding is to keep the finer diameter and increase the length and yield. Dramatic results in fiber are shown in crosses of imported bucks and native does, these crosses are called FI or bred-on crosses.

The Spanish meat goats from Texas and the Southwest provide cashmere breeding stock that also produces big meaty goats. Of the dairy breeds, Toggenburg, Saanen, and Nubian are being used with good results. Pygmy and Fainting goats are being used by some growers.

Large goats with wide, thick, meaty bodies bring in more income when sold for meat or culled. Large bodies can also produce more hair if they also have dense hair follicles.

The gestation period for goats is usually 150 days, but it can vary several days each way. The first kids can be expected 156 days after the buck goat is turned in the does. Kids are usually "dropped," as the term goes, from late February through April or early May.

As noted above, goats are browsing animals and can be pastured with sheep and cattle, since each species prefers different plants. Goats prefer brush, tree leaves, and rough plants. They are used for pasture improvement and in reforestation areas. Ranchers in the high plains find them most useful in controlling leafy spurge. Goats will also destroy multiflora roses and red cedars.

Breeding Does Need Extra Feed

When growing plants are not available, goats will need to have supplemental feedings of hay and, perhaps, grain. Does also need extra feed prior to breeding. Pregnant does need good feed in order for the fetus to develop hair follicles. To assure big growthy kids, nursing does need good feed.

In does, poor nutrition is the leading cause of abortion and poor mothering, with

younger or lighter weight does most likely to abort. Stress from disease, moving long distances, or cold wet weather also can [illegible] abortions.

[illegible]es should be in good condition and gaining weight at breeding time. Young does should weigh at least 55 pounds and mature does at least 75 pounds sheared weight at breeding.

During pregnancy and lactation, does need almost 1/2 pound of crude protein daily. Supplement feeding must be started as soon as the goats begin to show a loss of top condition and/or weight. The rewards of improved nutrition are more and better kids and heavier fleeces. However, overfeeding of protein can cause fleeces to coarsen prematurely.

Goats should be given adequate nutrition both before and after shearing. Goats have neither the layer of body fat nor lanolin-laden wool that sheep have. So, goats sometimes need shelter from cold rains and chilling winds. If shelter has not been provided, goats may even die. Depending on weather variations, goats may need shelter for 4 to 6 weeks after shearing.

Not Many Triplets

Twins may account for 10 percent of births, most commonly in older does, with a much [illegible] percentage being triplets. With prop[illegible]agement it is possible to get three kid crops within a 2-year period.

Does may be bred to kid when they are a year old if they have sufficient growth. Since male kids usually reach sexual maturity at 4 months of age, they should be removed from the herd to prevent accidental breeding.

Kidding problems are nothing any experienced livestock person would find unusual. Unless it is a breech delivery or a tough sack that does not break and allow the kid to breath or the doe is too small, there usually are no complications.

Due to lack of labor and facilities, large herds are usually kidded on the range, while many small herds use a more intensive confinement system to handle the goats. For open kidding, small pastures with some sort of shelter, centrally located watering and supplement feeding area, and a bedding area are required. This arrangement reduces the number of kids that get separated from the does.

On the range, does and kids should be left undisturbed for several weeks, since the does may abandon the kids. When goats [illegible]ed, pastures should be rechecked [illegible] that have been left behind.

A more intensive kidding system makes use of buildings, small individual stalls, heat lamps, and feeder space. With this type of system kidding can be done earlier in the year. However, such a system is much more labor intensive and therefore more expensive. A larger kid crop can be realized if the facility is well managed. Before kidding, the does should be outdoors—except in cold or wet weather or at night; this helps keep bedding clean and dry and encourages the does to exercise.

As does kid they should be moved into stalls and the kids' navels treated with 7 percent iodine. C and D antitoxin should be given. Cold kids will not try to suck and a heat lamp may be needed; they will usually suck by themselves when they are warm. Some kids may need help to begin to suck if does' teats are not adequately open. After identification with matching paint or ear tags, does and kids can be moved to group pens or holding areas after the kids are well established. Twins and triplets should not be grouped with singles since stronger kids often rob from the usually smaller multiple-birth kids. Likewise, the groups should contain kids of similar age.

Maintenance Pointers

As with sheep, internal and external parasites and pneumonia are a major health problem with all kinds of goats. Lice can be controlled by spraying after shearing. Coccidiosis is a threat to kids, both before and after weaning, and any kid not growing properly is probably infected.

Their hooves may need to be trimmed, depending on the walking conditions, but wear from rocky ground sometimes helps take care of this problem.

Working with a veterinarian, a grower should establish a good health care program that includes vaccination for most diseases.

Goats need special 4-foot-high fencing both to keep them in and predators—always a threat to kids—out. Goats like to go under or through obstacles. Five wire electric fences constructed with three hot wires and two grounded wires work well. Existing fences can be used with the addition of a 12-inch outrigger electric wire located about 12 inches above the ground.

Horns Handy, Sometimes!

Other types of small-mesh fencing may be used. Horns caught in the fence or the crotch of a tree become life-threatening, not only because of predators but also because of other goats. While most goats are not aggressive toward humans, they are not always kind to other goats who cannot defend themselves. They can quickly do serious or lethal damage with their horns.

A goat raiser soon discovers that horns are useful—as handles! A goat without horns is hard to control; some shearing stands even depend on horns when securing the goat for shearing. Unlike Angora goats, cashmere animals are sheared standing.

Care should be taken not to damage a young goat's horns by rough handling. A frightened or startled goat is apt to jump or flail around and handlers should always use caution to prevent injury from the horns—especially to eyes. For safety, both for other animals and the handler, sharp points of horns may be clipped off using a bolt cutter or similar device.

Sources of Information

The American Cashmere Growers Marketing Cooperative (ACGMC), P.O. Box 1105; Castle Rock, CO 80501 (Telephone: 303-621-2874). Its trade name is Cashmere America. Its manager, Terry Sim, is Australian-born and an Australian fiber classer.

Cashmere Producers of America (CaPrA); 1-800-FOR-GOAT; *Concerning Cashmere* (bimonthly publication from CaPrA).

Ranch Magazine; P.O. Box 2678; San Angelo, TX 76902. (915-655-4434)

Cashmirror Magazine; P.O. Box 639; Toledo, WA 98591. (206-864-4200)

By Harriet L. Jensen, R.R. 3, Box 144; Cozad, NE 69130, and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Cooperative State Research Service, USDA, Room 328-A, Aerospace Building, Washington, DC 20250-2200. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804

* * *

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U. S. Department of Agriculture.

December 1992

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Dairy and Meat Goats

Since pre-Biblical times, goats have been the most useful of domesticated animals, producing milk for drinking or for cheese, gourmet meat (commonly called cabrito in the Southwest and chevon in the North), leather, and fiber for clothing (cashmere or mohair — not to be confused with Angora rabbit fur). Relatively clean, goats make fine pets and show animals, and number as many as 460 million in the world. They can be easily pastured with cattle as they prefer head-high grazing. Goats stress easily, so they need careful protection from dogs, and skillful management is necessary to prevent diseases and internal and external parasites such as lice, mites, and fleas.

According to USDA's Agricultural Research Service, goats produce as much as 4.5 million tons of milk a year worldwide. Goat milk is so popular that some people have begun raising dairy goats before knowing whether they can sell the milk or learning how to make cheese. Yet most major U.S. cities do not have liquid goat milk available in local retail outlets, according to research by Judy Kapture, Dairy Goat Information Services, P.O. Box 298, Portage, WI 53901.

In at least 21 States, goat milk must be pasteurized when retailed. Pasteurization requires a big investment in equipment. Even in areas where milk can be sold raw, producers must be licensed. Selling milk for human consumption requires extensive marketing to overcome resistance among consumers raised on cow milk. Price may be an obstacle, too — the cost of complying with the myriad regulations involved may force producers to raise the cost beyond the means of the average consumer.

Goat Milk Alternatives

Dairy goat owners might well follow the lead of feeder-calf producer Lillian Buckley of Laura, Illinois, who raises calves on goat milk. Originally, she milked the goats, bottled the milk, and then let newborn calves nurse from the bottles their first 10 to 12 weeks. This shortcut, including doe training, allows the calves to do the nursing directly. Ms. Buckley, her husband, Mike, and family raise up to 35 Holstein-Semental or Holstein-Angus crossbred feeder calves, using 25 goats. The family also feeds about 40 to 50 hogs and handles 50 acres of vegetables, emphasizing sweet corn.

Making goat milk soap is a great alternative to selling the milk for food, since soap producers do not have to comply with the costly regulations that pertain to food products. Elizabeth Lauer, a successful entrepreneur, started making goat milk soap because she was allergic to other soaps. Her business grew into the current Does' Pride Natural Goat Milk Soap, Home Soap Works, P.O. Box 317, Millington, NJ 07946; telephone 908-604-2170 or 800-542-7180.

Dairy Goat Information

Do you want to make goat cheese? Get a free catalog from the New England Cheese Making Supply Company. Contact: Ricki Carroll, P.O. Box 85-S, Ashfield, MA 01330; telephone 413-628-3808; fax 413-628-4061. Ms. Carroll advises that although their "Cheesemaker's Journal" is out of print, all back issues are still available. Beginning cheesemakers can refer to the Carroll's "Cheese Making Made Easy - 60 Delicious Varieties" (1982, $9.95 postpaid). "Goat Cheese: Small-Scale Production" ($8.95 postpaid) is also recommended for mold-ripened cheeses. For the more advanced cheesemaker, the Carroll's offer Jean-Claude Le Jaouen's 206-page book "The Fabrication of Making Farmstead Goat Cheeses," available for $22.95 postpaid. Le Jaouen is head of the Goat Research Section, Technical Institute of Sheep and Goat Research, Paris, France.

The American Cheese Society, 1523 Judah Street, San Francisco, CA 94122 (415-661-3844), publishes "A Guide to American Specialty and Farmstead Cheeses," by Barbara Lang, which includes a list of cow and goat cheese producers. Not all producers make all types of goat cheeses, which include blue, caerphily, camembert, cheddar, chevre, feta, semi-aged, soft ripened, shepherd's, tomme, and capriano. The last three are hard aged cheeses.

Don't want to produce cheese? Instead, you might try selling fresh goat's milk curd, which is used in sauces and from which cheese can be made. Coach Farms, the 800-goat farm at Pine Plains in New York's Hudson River Valley, delivers curd to New York City stores, where it sells for $10.98 per pound. Goat curd has a special cooking attribute — it enriches and thickens cooked sauces, yet does not break down or separate like yogurt or sour cream when heated. The fat content of goat curd is 7 grams, about half that of cream, and the curd may be kept in the refrigerator up to 3 weeks. Coach Farms also produces a goat yogurt that retails from $.99 to $1.59 for 4 ounces.

Some dairy goat producers also sell young goats for meat. One example is Hazel McTeer, former president of both the Missouri Goat Breeders Association and the Central States Dairy Goat Marketing Cooperative. Ms. McTeer operates the Fancy "M" Dairy Goat Ranch, Route 1, Box 545, Springfield, MO 65803. She says dairy goat people in her area sell about 500 kids annually, ranging in weight from 17 to 38 pounds. At Easter, when goat meat is very popular, the goats are trucked to New York City. The 1994 price is $1.00 per pound live weight.

Nondairy Goats

Some successful entrepreneurs stay away from dairy goats, concentrating on goats for meat, leather, or fine hair. Those with the greatest chance for success may be already pasturing sheep and/or cattle and can add some meat and/or Angora goats without damaging their pasture improvement programs. Goats eat some plants that sheep and cattle do not seek, so they can be pastured together.

Meat Goats

An economically inviting aspect of goat production is the raising of animals for meat. According to the Agricultural Research Service (ARS), goats of all sizes worldwide produce more meat (1.2 million tons a year) than do cattle or hogs. The tender meat of young goats is especially popular among U.S. communities whose citizens are of Middle Eastern, Asian, African, Latin American, and Caribbean heritage. Gourmet restaurants have long recognized the appeal of goat meat, which tastes almost exactly like venison, but without the "gaminess" some find distasteful.

As immigration rates increase steadily (approximately 60,000 monthly, according to the September 1994 issue of the "Cooperative Farmer"), new processing plants and marketing techniques designed to meet the needs of ethnic consumers are emerging. Chevon can be found nationwide in grocery stores specializing in global foods.

The Halal Meat and Food Corporation, opened in 1993 in the Blanden Industrial Park, 211 Bypass Road, Blandenboro, North Carolina 28320, telephone 910-648-6143, is the first USDA-approved halal plant. The company — whose Arabic name refers to the ritual slaughter of animals according to strict Islamic laws

— processes more than 800 goats and sheep and 90 cattle weekly. Processing plants receive their goats primarily from farms in Texas. The Nation's largest goat auction is at [illegible]n, TX. Other high-volume auctions are [illegible]Angelo and Goldwaithe, TX, Hackettstown, NJ, and Lancaster, PA.

Because the Muslim population is increasing significantly in the United States due to conversion of Americans and to immigration, halal goat meat can be found in most major American cities. According to a recent article in the Washington Post (8/31/94), there are more than 40 butcher shops in the Washington, DC, metropolitan area alone — seven side-by-side in the block-long Build America Skyline Shopping Center in Baileys Crossroads, VA. They cater primarily to international students and diplomats, but also to a growing customer base of non-Muslims who have learned to enjoy goat meat.

The meat goat industry is rapidly developing. Reports from the National Agricultural Statistical Service indicate that more than 300,000 goats were slaughtered for meat in 1993. A decade earlier, only 79,403 were processed. Most goat meat comes from excess dairy goats, spent Angora goats, and "brush" or "briar" goats.

Genetically speaking, except for the South African Boer Goats imported via New Zealand in early 1993, there are no true meat goat breeds in the United States. However, several [illegible]rmers have developed intensive selec[illegible]grams using Spanish and dairy crosses [illegible]er to pull together genes that would make a meatier goat.

Dr. Morse B. Solomon, at the USDA/ARS Meat Science Research Laboratory in Beltsville, MD, reports that roasted and broiled chevon provides red meat that is 50 to 65 percent leaner than beef and 42 to 59 percent leaner than lamb. These figures apply to choice and prime grades. The low-fat (low cholesterol) goat meat is a boon for nutrition-conscious consumers.

Among the goat producers persevering in the improvement of meat goats are Jay and Gayle Nellsch, P. O. Box 98, Ft. Cobb, OK 73938. They have bred goats for the last 8 years and are producing animals with meat production capabilities far superior to those of the foundation herd.

Since 1972, the 8-Mile Ranch, run by Jim and Elaine Willingham, P. O. Box 1828, Uvalde, TX 78802, has been selecting animals for adaptability to the environment of West Texas, multiple births, and soundness. Another enduring meat goat producer, Robert Kensing, Bowie Spring Meat Goats, P. O. Box 55, Menard, TX 76859, has been selling quality meat bucks since 1985. Due to the growing [illegible]rity of goat meat, the American Boer [illegible]ssociation (address listed below) was chartered in June 1993; breed standards were established and an animal registry was begun.

As the acceptance of goat meat increases in the United States, additional information is certain to be published for both producers and consumers. This publication is one of several from the U. S. Department of Agriculture's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture on various types of dairy and meat goats, and is meant to provide preliminary information only. The following associations and research institutes represent a cross-section of sources throughout the United States.

More Information:

Dairy Goat Journal
W2997 Markert Road
Helenville, WI 53137
414-593-8385

United Caprine News
P.O. Drawer A
Rotan, TX 79546
915-735-2278

American Dairy Goat Association
and
Dairy Goat Products Association
P.O. Box 865, 209 W. Main Street
Spindale, NC 28160
704-286-3801

American Meat Goat Association
P.O. Box 979
Mertzon, TX 76941
Executive Director: Kay Keen
915-835-5704
Southeast Regional Meat Goat Association
P.O. Box 99731
Raleigh, NC 27624-9731
919-676-1917

American Boer Goat Association
P.O. Box 248
Whitewright, TX 95491
1-800-414-0202

"Cooperative Farmer" (September 1994 issue)
Southern States Cooperative, Inc.
P. O. Box 26234, Richmond, VA 23260-6234
Laura H. McBride, Associate Editor
804-281-1317

GEORGIA: Seyoum Gelaye, Director, Dairy Goat Research Center, Fort Valley State College, Box 5744, Ft. Valley, GA 31030; telephone 912-825-6817.

NORTH CAROLINA: M. Ray McKinnie, Extension Research Animal Science, North Carolina Agricultural and Technical State University, Greensboro, NC 27411-1011; telephone 910-334-7500.

OKLAHOMA: Nelson Escobar and Thian Hor Teh, Directors, E. "Kiki" de la Garza Institute for Goat Research, Langston University, Box 730, Langston, OK 73050; telephone 405-466-3836.

TEXAS: Scott D. Horner, International Dairy Goat Research
Center, College of Agriculture, Drawer U, Prairie View A & M University, Prairie View, TX 77446; telephone 409-857-3926.

UTAH: Sheep and Goat Research Center, Utah State University, Logan, UT 84322, telephone 801-797-1000.

VIRGINIA: Terry Gipson and Stephen Wildeus Meat Goat Research Project, Agriculture Research Center, Virginia State University, Bo[illegible] 456, Petersburg, VA 23803; telephone 804-524-6716.

By George B. Holcomb (Retired), Office of Communication, U. S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), and Gail Damerow, Editor of "Rural Heritage" for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244 Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its program on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, or audiotapes) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720-5881 (voice) or 202-720-7808 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250 or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

November 1994

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Exotic Livestock

January 1989

Where's the beefalo? It's still around, but the excitement is gone. Such a query arises because introduction of exotic types of creatures into a country where they are scarce encourages speculators to bid prices extremely high. Breeding stock becomes the focus of attention rather than the basic use of the animal for meat, work, hide, fur, or feathers.

However, restaurant demand for "different" meat has risen to the extent that on February 24, 1988, the U.S. Department of Agriculture's Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS) proposed (in the Federal Register) to expand its voluntary exotic animal inspection program. FSIS would add reindeer (caribou), elk, antelope, water buffalo, and deer, such as red or fallow, under the head of "exotic animal." In the past the program covered only American bison and cattalo or beefalo.

FSIS officials say fewer than 2,000 "exotics" are slaughtered annually in this country compared to more than 32 million cattle per year. In view of the demand, small-scale entrepreneurs find it profitable to market federally inspected meat from certain exotic animals.

For the moment, the biggest dollar demand is for such exotics as ostriches and South American humpless camels such as llamas, alpacas, guanacos, and vicunas. Little demand is noted for Alaska's yaks or musk oxen. African pygmy goats are gaining in popularity, says Pamela Ames, executive for the National Pygmy Goat Association (5621 West Michigan, Tucson, AZ 85746).

In 1987, with almost no advance notice or publicity, a company called "Camelids,Inc.," sold 52 male and female llamas at an estimated cost of more than $1 million, according to the slick 24-page tabloid publication called "Llama Life." It is published quarterly by Terry and Kathy Price at 925 W. Culver, Phoenix, AZ 85007. An annual subscription costs $10 domestically and $15 in Canada.

One buyer paid $100,000 apiece for two studs. Three other males also brought $100,000 apiece at the opening rush, which drew nearly 100 buyers from all over the country.

Some people predict that 3,500 U.S. owners of 12,000 llamas will begin to price themselves out of the market, even if camelid wool is sought by handspinners and weavers and the pack animals are used in all sorts of fund-raising events—shows, fairs, and 4-H projects. Owners contend llamas excel as 300-pound pets.

USDA's Forest Service people traveling into wilderness country often use llamas as pack animals instead of horses or mules, both of which are ecologically more intrusive. You can rent a llama for $20 a day; there are more than two dozen commercial llama packers in business.

Females can bring from $6,500 to $16,000 and up as breeding stock. Males of age 6 months to a year bring $500 and up for training as pack animals. Already trained, they cost about $1,200 apiece.

They are hot investments, says a three-page chapter of the 189-page book called "ADAPT2," published by SUCCESSFUL FARMING magazine after its December 1987 conference on farm diversification. The publication costs $12.95 postpaid from P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50336.

Owners have formed the International Llama Association (P.O. Box 37505, Denver, CO 80237). It publishes educational brochures.

The industry has a thick, colorful magazine, LLAMAS, published every 2 months. (Subscription: $20 a year from P.O. Box 100, Herald, CA 95638.) Although covering all camelids (a recently coined word), it emphasizes llamas.

It is expensive and difficult to import llamas or other animals from South America because livestock of some countries of origin have foot-and-mouth disease. USDA's Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) regulates importation.

Camelid experts include Dr. LaRue W. Johnson, an associate professor and veterinarian in the Department of Clinical Sciences, College of Veterinary Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, CO 80523; Dr. William L. Franklin, an associate professor in the Department of Animal Ecology, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011; and Dr. Juan Leon, College of Veterinary Medicine, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR 97331.

Misunderstanding Carabao

Water buffalos, unlike llamas, aren't in great demand, despite such plaudits as a media advisory from Gail Porter for the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) saying the water buffalo may be the most misunderstood and underutilized animal. Despite its intimidating appearance and large size, the water buffalo's gentleness contrasts sharply with the ferocity of the African cape buffalo. Porter noted the former's tameness in "The Water Buffalo: New Prospects for an Underutilized Aminal," published by the NAS's National Academy Press in 1981.

The first commercial herd was imported to the United States in February of 1978. The two major types of water buffalo are the swamp buffalo, or carabao, and the river buffalo. Both are used for work and meat. The carabao is rarely used for milk, while the river buffalo is noted for milk. With either tightly coiled or drooping straight horns, breeds of the latter are commonly found in the temperate climates of Italy, Albania, Yugoslavia, Greece, Turkey; the Georgian and Azerbaijan areas of the Soviet Union; and in cold, mountainous areas of Pakistan, Afghanistan, and Nepal.

Latin America countries are beginning to catch on to their value. About 18 different breeds of both types can work in tropical mud that can bog down a tractor. One of these animals can work as many as 20 years.

Milk from river buffalo goes into mozzarella cheese in Italy. It has a higher content of both butterfat (at about 5 to 8 percent) and nonfat solids (at 16 percent) than cow's milk. River buffalos produce about 170 percent of India's milk; they also produce milk in Italy, Iraq, Turkey, Egypt, and Eastern Europe.

In taste preference tests, water buffalo steaks were judged to be leaner and just as tender as those of cattle.

Water buffalo usually maintain their appetite in hot weather, and thus may be more adaptable to it than cattle; but they may need shade or a pond in summer. Sensitive to some cattle diseases, they are highly resistant to others.

Chief breeders of water buffalo in this country are A.P. Leonards, Route 1, Box 74, Sulphur Springs, AK 72768, and Dr. Hugh L. Popenoe, Director, International Programs, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL 32611. Both are selling unbred young heifers at about $3,500 and bulls at various lower prices.

Another expert in water buffalo management is Dr. W.S. Cripe, College of Veterinary Medicine, University of Florida. Dr. Martin Drost, of the same address, is experienced in water buffalo reproduction matters.

European Fallow Deer

Despite competition from New Zealanders, deer farming and venison production is a business where demand continues to exceed supply, according to members of the North American Deer Farmers Association. Its founder and president, Joseph von Kerckerinck (Lucky Star Ranch, Chaumont, NY 13622), has authored a colorful book, "Deer Farming in North America," and also has produced a videotape on the subject. (Each item is available at $48 apiece postpaid. A set costs $86.)

In 1978, Von Kerckerinck and his wife, Illiana, began the first and largest operating European fallow deer farm in North America. About 3,000 deer roam 1,500 fenced acres of the 5,000-acre ranch. He says, "Deer farming combined with the right marketing approach can give hundreds of farmers the chance to stay on their land and make a decent living."

Part of the Lucky Star's success, he says, rests with the direct marketing program that assures venison is shipped fresh, unfrozen, by overnight express to arrive almost anywhere on the date needed. It also can be shipped frozen, with 3-day delivery. The Lucky Star has its own USDA inspected slaughterhouse.

For the 225-page book, he gathered data from New Zealand and Europe. West Germany has about 2,000 deer farms, with herds ranging from 5 to 500 animals. Yet, West Germany also imports more than 20,000 tons of venison annually; its venison consumption is second to that of beef. He says venison has less cholesterol than beef or chicken and only about a fifth of the fat in most beef. Its caloric content is almost as low as chicken. To preserve tenderness, venison should not be cooked beyond medium rare.

U.S. restaurants import from 500 to 1,000 tons of venison annually, mostly from New Zealand, which has about 3,000 deer farms that mainly produce red deer and North American elk or wapiti, plus hybrids of these breeds.

A problem with deer or elk is the need for fence about 7 feet high, a major expense in getting started.

Jim Hoar, manager of the Lucky Star's deer as well as its Hereford cattle, said it costs 5 to 7 cents a day to feed a deer. A deer needs about a quarter of an acre for healthy roving, but uses only a seventh as much pasture as a cow and can share cattle feed such as corn silage. An animal slaughtered at about 15 months of age yields a 65-pound carcass bringing $5 a pound. Thus a feeding cost of less than $35 can bring a gross of about $325. This, however, does not count the cost of fencing, housing, land, slaughtering, or depreciation, as well as farming disasters such as marauding coyotes or vultures.

Lucky Star sells breeding stock at about $800 a head for does and $1,000 to $2,000 for bucks, depending on age. One buck can tend 40 does.

Like Lucky Star, elk cow-calf farmers Rush and Inez Johnson (R.R. 1, P.O. Box 199, Bucklin, MO 64631), report a 2-year backup on orders for stock from their 200 head of Rocky Mountain elk on their 1,600 acres. Rush has sold most elk calves at $1,200 to $1,500 by weaning time. He said a good manager should get a 20 percent return on investment. Elk meat is usually the highest priced item on restaurant menus, he said. But most of it comes from New Zealand at about $7 a pound, he indicated.

Small-scale entrepreneurs without their own butchering facilities usually can find a cattle slaughtering house to handle deer or elk.

Ostriches

Ostrichskin boots cost a bundle when they can be found. U.S. shoemakers once bought ostrich hides from South Africa. That source has been cut off by trading restrictions.

Several ostrich ranchers are in Oklahoma. First known to raise ostriches were Bob and Bernadine Moore, who bought some in 1981. Bob Moore died in 1987 and his widow and sons Randy and Scott carry on with exotic animals, birds, and catfish. (They had a llama until a "deer hunter" shot it.) In 1987 they began publishing "Ostrich News," an 8-page newsletter. ($18 for 10 issues per year, from Route 2, Box 415, Inola, OK 74036.)

Kenneth and Judy Roberts of Rush Springs, Oklahoma, say pairs of the breeding size adults bring $12,000 to $50,000, depending on age and quality. Ostrich chicks at last reports fetched $1000 apiece at 8 weeks of age, when sex can be distinguished.

Chicks are susceptible to nutritional problems and pneumonia unless kept well fed, warm, and dry. An ostrich hen can lay as many as 50 eggs a year but not all eggs hatch; too few owners have proper hatcheries.

Leon Vandiver (8200 Northwest 32d, Bethany, OK 73008), founder and elected president of the National Ostrich Breeders Association, claims ostrich meat is low in cholesterol and has a taste somewhat similar to beef. But so far, virtually no U.S. ostriches are being eaten or skinned for their hides. That way, they can live as long as 70 years and produce plumes.

Ostriches can become overstressed with abuse or teasing. They should not be left alone with small children; they don't understand the strength of their peck. Their big bills can snatch up a wrist watch, glove, ring, or buttons in an instant, Dale Coody reported in an article in the "ADAPT2" book.

He said 6 or 7 strands of strong, smooth wire is enough for fencing, since most adults with strong forward kicks can protect nests from coyotes or stray dogs. In urban areas, many owners use high chain-link fences.

Ostrich fancier Dale Coody has produced a 36-page how-to manual for beginners called "Ostriches: Your Great Opportunity." ($12.50 postpaid from 4-C Ostrich Farm, Route 1, P.O. Box 71A, Lawton, OK 73501.)

Free information on care and feeding of ostriches can be obtained from Dr. Fred D. Thornberry, Texas Agricultural Extension Service, Texas A&M University, College Station, TX 77843. Veterinarians with expertise include Dr. J.P. Hoover and Dr. Frank V. Lochner, Veterinary Medicine Department, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK 74078.

Predicting prices in a few years at $50 per chick, Thornberry says, "Current prices appear completely unrealistic when related to potential profitability from an as yet unproven demand for skins, meat, and feathers." He expects the farmer's price for skins would not exceed $200.

Veterinarian Lochner treats many sick ostriches because their owners don't know how to feed or care for them. He said he has heard that the minimum operation for profitability under ordinary circumstances should have about 2,000 birds.

Exotic animals are not tax deductible except as part of a genuine commercial farm, according to rulings from the Internal Revenue Service.

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agricuture, Cooperative State Research Service/Office of Grants and Program Systems, Room 342-D, Aerospace Building, USDA, Washington, DC 20251-2200. (Telephone: Area Code 202-447-3640.)

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Minor adaptations made by the Small Farm Center, University of California, Davis, CA. 95616. 2/89

☆ U.S. Government Printing Office : 1989 - 241-800/80428

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research, Educatation, and Extension Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Draft Animals

The word "draft" represents not a specific kind of animal, but a usage. Although "draft," mentioned in reference to a horse, has become synonymous with "heavy," animals of any size may be trained for draft purposes.

Horses, mules, and oxen are once again an important power source for today's small farms and woodlots.They cost less than mechanized equipment and are environmentally friendly. In fields, they don't compact the soil, and in woodlots, they cause minimal erosion and tree damage.

Unlike tractors, draft animals are not dependent on outside fuel sources. Instead, they help plant and harvest their own feed, and they provide an unending supply of organic fertilizer.

Draft animals are less costly to maintain than mechanized equipment and don't need constant repair. They can work in hilly terrain that would defy a tractor, and in soil wet enough to bog down machinery. They can easily be worked by one person, which you will readily appreciate if you try operating a motorized hay wagon or log skidder by saying "get-up."

Instead of depreciating as they get older, well-trained draft animals increase in value. Although mules don't reproduce because they are hybrids, and oxen don't reproduce because they are castrated, horses make little horses you can sell or keep as replacements. Virginia horse-power proponent Jason Rutledge is fond of pointing out that no farmer has ever gone to the barn to find a newborn tractor.

Horses

Young harness-trained horses, experienced draft teams, and farm implements are available at frequent sales in Indiana, at the Topeka Livestock Auction (Robert Bale, P.O. Box 279, Topeka, IN 46571; telephone: 219-593-2522); in Iowa, at the semi-annual Waverly Midwest Horse Sale (Bill and Ron Dean, P.O. Box 355, Waverly, IA 50677; telephone: 319-352-2804), and in Columbus, OH, at the annual Eastern States Draft Horse Sale (Sally Reed, 17588 Old Mansfield Road, Fredericktown, OH 43019; telephone: 614-694-5730).

Orchards, vineyards, and nurseries worked with draft animals may be planted with twice as many rows, since they can be spaced half as far apart as would be required for mechanized cultivation. Pick-your-own farm operators can attract new and repeat customers through entertainment farming by offering festive hay and sleigh rides.

Lin and Allan Ayers of Faulkner Farms (14292 Telegraph Road, Santa Paula, CA 93060; telephone: 805-525-9293) use Clydesdales for normal farming activities, but are best known for the horse-drawn hay rides offered through their pumpkin patch and Christmas tree farm. Stanley Gilbert offers both horse-drawn and ox-drawn sleigh rides on his upstate New York Christmas tree plantation (336 Partridge Hill Road, Barneveld, NY 13304; telephone: 315-896-2904).

In Wyoming, ranchers use horses to haul cattle feed during winter. From June through September, when the horses would otherwise be idle, Walt M. Korn of Box K Ranch (P.O. Box 110, Moran, WY 83013; telephone: 800-729-1410) leases neighboring horse teams for his Grand Teton Covered Wagon Cookouts; guests ride in a horse-drawn wagon to and from the cookout site.

Jerry Rapp and his Colorado neighbors use horses for summer hay production. During the snow months, Rapp leases neighboring horse teams to give sleigh rides to tourists. When he had trouble finding qualified sleigh drivers, Rapp started 4 Corners Driving School (47 Electra Lake Road, Durango, CO 81301; telephone: 303-247-8923), which now offers instruction in horse-drawn hay making and log skidding, as well as sleigh driving.

Demand for horse loggers is rising among woodlot owners wishing to minimize damage or who haven't enough timber to justify hiring heavy equipment. Horse loggers are regularly hired by the U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service to extract timber from environmentally sensitive areas.

In Washington state, Gregg and Deb Caudell run a productive horse-powered ranch and a profitable horse logging business. Although logging with horses is more labor intensive and slower than mechanized logging, the couple find that the income-to-expense ratio can be 10 times greater. The Caudells network through their quarterly publication, *Horseloggers International Newsletter*, Star Route Box 34-CC, Keller, WA 99140; telephone: 509-634-4388.

Another logger's resource is The North American Horse and Mule Loggers Association, c/o Glenn French, 8307 Salmon River Highway, Otis, OR 97368; telephone: 503-994-9765. Regional Director Jason Rutledge of Ridgewind Farm (8014 Bear Ridge Road, Copper Hill, VA 24079; telephone: 703-651-6355) offers horse logging workshops. Rutledge has obtained a grant from the state to develop horse logging as a tool for marketing value-added wood products extracted in an environmentally sensitive manner.

Amish communities in Ohio and elsewhere have long used horses for transportation, as well as for farming and logging. Recognizing the increasing interest in horses as a source of power, Amish farmer Eli J. C. Yoder (445 South Mill Street, Sugar Creek, OH 44681; telephone: 216-852-4603) offers hands-on driving instruction at his horsemanship school for beginners.

While members of the Nation's largest Amish community in Ohio prefer horses, the Lancaster County, PA, Amish favor mules. Differences in local preference, climate, and terrain result in different choices of draft animals in various parts of the country.

Farmers use light horses, donkeys, ponies, and even miniature horses no bigger than a goat for draft work. Indeed, goats can be readily trained to turn garden soil or pull a cart. Goat-sized accessories are available from Hoegger Supply Co., P.O. Box 331, Fayetteville, GA 30214; telephone: 800-221-4628. Even dogs can make handy draft animals, as Colorado's Richard Klimesh and Cherry Hill discovered when they trained their Rottweilers to haul horse feed. Richard designed and now manufactures a small chore cart appropriate for dogs. (Cherry Mountain Forge, P.O. Box 140, Livermore, CO 80536; fax: 303-491-9898).

Farmers who work larger acreages prefer heavy horse breeds standing 16 hands high or more (1 hand equals 4 inches), measured from the ground to the withers, and weighing 1,600 pounds or more. Of the many heavy breeds, North Americans favor five: Belgian (the most popular), Percheron, Clydesdale (the "Budweiser" horse), Shire, and Suffolk (the only breed developed specifically for farming).

For hilly terrain, smaller, more agile breeds include the Haflinger from Austria and the Fjord from Norway. When a horse is used for both farming and transportation, a light-weight, dual-purpose crossbreed, or a pure breed like America's old-style Morgan (Lippitt and Brunk bloodlines), combines the necessary strength and endurance.

Experienced trainers can adopt wild horses through the Bureau of Land Management (BLM) (P.O. Box 12000, 850 Harvard Way, Reno, NV 89520; telephone: 702-785-6586). For a small fee per horse which for training purposes should be no

more than 3 years old, one person may acquire up to four horses per year. At maturity each will weigh 800-1,000 pounds and stand 14-15 hands high.

Lowell Tart (85 Roberts Road, Lexington, [illegible] 38351; telephone: 901-968-8536), [illegible] sells wild horses for harness work. By [illegible] regulation, he must house them in a strong corral and must keep each horse for at least a year before he can sell it. While wild horses are inexpensive to obtain, taming them requires skill and patience and is not a task for beginners.

Horse Reference Materials

A ready source of information on harnessing horses and mules is the Draft Horse and Mule Association of America, (DHMAA), which distributes a variety of written materials and sponsors workshops in Illinois and elsewhere. Since 1994, DHMAA has produced the annual Horse Progress Days trade show, where manufacturers and distributors demonstrate both new and antique horse-drawn implements. For details on upcoming events, contact Phil Farrell, Route 1, Box 98, Lovington, IL 61937; telephone: 217-864-5450.

Guide books include *The Draft Horse Primer*, by Maurice Telleen, ($13.00 from Draft Horse Journal, P.O. Box 670, Waverly, IA 50677; telephone: 319-352-4046) and two volumes by L.R. Miller, *Training Workhorses, Training Teamsters* ($24.95) and *Work Horse Handbook* ($16.45), both from Small Farmer's Journal, P.O. Box 1627, Sisters, [illegible] 97759; telephone: 503-549-2064. [illegible] *Evener Work Horse, Mule & Oxen Dir[illegible]y and Guide* ($6.00) is issued each May by Rural Heritage, 281-A Dean Ridge Lane, Gainesboro, TN 38562; telephone: 615-268-0655. This directory lists sources for harness, implements, and draft animals; schedules of workshops and stock sales; and information on participation in the Good Farming Apprenticeship Network.

Mules

A mule is a hybrid resulting from the mating of a mare (female horse) with a jack (male donkey). An average farm mule measures 13-14 hands and weighs about 1,000 pounds.

Mules have long been a tradition on southern cotton plantations, and are still very popular, because they can withstand steamy weather better than horses. A less well known fact is the ability of mules to endure extremely cold weather as well as, if not better than, a horse. Ongoing studies at the Louisiana State University-Baton Rouge and the University of California-Davis are researching endurance and optimum loads for mules in harness.

Mules favored by the Lancaster County Amish are the result of mating a heavy-bre[illegible]are to a Mammoth Jack. Offspring av[illegible] 6-18 hands and 1,500-1,700 pou[illegible]

Mules have smaller feet than horses, an advantage for cultivation, especially in hilly terrain. Any mule owner will tell you that a mule is smarter than a horse because it won't do anything to endanger itself. This admirable trait gives mules their reputation for being stubborn.

Unlike a horse, a mule won't overheat or eat so much it will founder (go lame). A mule will thrive on coarser, cheaper, and less feed than is needed by a horse of comparable size. Mules live longer than horses and are more useful as senior citizens—a mule can be productive to 35 years of age, while a horse is "old" at 20.

Sellers and exhibitors of quality harness mules gather each July at Tennessee's Great Celebration Mule Show (Cathy Neal, P.O. Box 1010, Shelbyville, TN 37160-1010; telephone: 615-684-5915). The oldest consecutive draft mule show occurs each August at the Missouri State Fairgrounds, 2503 West 16th Street, Sedalia, MO 65302; telephone: 816-530-5600.

Mule Reference Material

Basic mule and donkey information is distributed by the American Donkey and Mule Society (Paul and Betsy Hutchins, 2901 North Elm Street, Denton, TX 76201; telephone: 817-382-6845), which publishes an informative quarterly magazine, *The Brayer*, and offers a 10-page catalog of donkey and mule literature. *Mules And More* is a monthly magazine edited by Sue Cole, P.O.Box 460, Bland, MO 65014; telephone: 314-646-3934. The definitive book on the history of mules in America is a two-volume set, *The Missouri Mule: His Origin And Times*, by Melvin Bradley ($35.00), from Extension Publications, 2800 Maguire Blvd., University of Missouri, Columbia, MO 65211; telephone: 314-882-7216.

Oxen

An ox is a castrated steer of any breed that has reached 4 years of age and has alertness, tractability, strong bones and muscles for power, and straight, strong legs for traveling. Breeds and crossbreeds vary in popularity according to local custom. New Englanders traditionally favor dairy breeds such as Holstein and dairy Durham, while others may prefer beef breeds such as Hereford and beef Durham, or perhaps such exotics as the giant Chianina or the miniature Dexter.

Oxen in North American can be traced back to French and German settlers. Oxen were once popular for field and forest work across North America, but now are found mainly in New England. Today they are regaining stature throughout the Nation, thanks in part to the efforts of teamster and trainer Drew Conroy, who teaches dairy farm management at the University of New Hampshire (Thompson School of Applied Science, 291 Mast Road, Durham, NH 03824-3562; telephone: 603-862-1024). Conroy advocates oxen as being inexpensive to purchase and economical to maintain, making them ideal for small-acreage farms.

Oxen are similar to mules in their ability to handle rough terrain, but do become lethargic in hot weather. The productive life span of an ox is little more than 10 years.

An excellent introduction to working oxen is *The Oxen Handbook* by Drew Conroy ($13.95), from Butler Publishing, P.O. Box 1390, LaPorte, CO 80535; telephone: 800-728-3826. Workshops in oxmanship are offered by Tillers International, Richard Roosenberg, Director, 5239 South 24th Street, Kalamazoo, MI 49002; telephone: 616-344-3233. Recognizing that not all potential teamsters care to travel to Michigan, Missouri Town 1855 Living History Museum sponsors a Tillers International workshop in Lee's Summit, Missouri, Heritage Museums and Programs, 22807 Woods Chapel Road, Blue Springs, MO 64015; telephone: 816-795-8200 ex. 1-260.

Other Information Sources

Before acquiring horses, mules, or oxen as a power source, or as a means of increasing the value of your small-farm produce, first find out what's involved. You can increase your knowledge by joining an organization promoting the use of draft animals. Arrange to spend time working with a farmer or logger experienced in using animal power or sign up for a course on handling draft animals, and, of course, read the literature.

Additional sources of information include: Lance Gegner, Technical Specialist, Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas, P.O. Box 3657, Fayetteville, AR 72702, telephone 800-346-9140.

The Draft Horse Journal, Maurice Telleen, Editor, P.O. Box 670, Waverly, IA 50677; telephone: 319-352-4046.

Rural Heritage, Gail Damerow, Editor, 281-A Dean Ridge Lane, Gainesboro, TN 38562; telephone: 615-268-0655.

Small Farmer's Journal, L.R. Miller, Editor, P.O. Box 1627, Sisters, OR 97759; telephone: 503-549-2064.

Small Farm Today, Ronald E. Macher, Editor, 3903 W. Ridge Trail Road, Clark, MO 65243-9525; telephone: 800-633-2535.

Prepared by Gail Damerow, Editor, *Rural Heritage*, and Melvin Bradley (retired), University Extension, University of Missouri-Columbia for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244; telephone: 202-720-5245; fax: 202-205-2448; Internet: bkerr@reeusda.gov.

May 1995

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720-5881 (voice) or 202-720-7909 (TDD).
To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC, 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Sheep

The relatively low investment and the natural, gradually increasing size of a flock may make sheep ideal for the beginning small and part-time farmer, according to Dr. Clair E. Terrill. An animal breeding specialist, Terrill has been watching the economics of sheep production for years. Terrill, who retired from the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Agricultural Research Service, says "the future of sheep is bright."

There are several kinds of markets for small-scale sheep production in the United States: plain white wool, naturally colored wool, "freezer lambs," ordinary slaughter lambs, and sheep-milk products.

According to Paul Rodgers, director of producer services for the American Sheep Industry Association (ASI), the conventional approach of adding 20 to 100 ewes to a farm operation can be profitable. Other approaches require careful marketing and would be more difficult and risky. Still, they might also prove more profitable.

Experts say it takes about 2 hours of work per year to maintain one ewe and her offspring on farm pasture. Farmers caring for 20 to 100 ewes thus would add 40 to 200 more hours of work to their regular duties.

Advantages of Sheep

Where a farmer already has some beef cattle, there are economical and biological advantages to adding some sheep to the operation, Terrill says. Shared pastures can work well, he points out. Sheep tend to prefer finer plants and cattle the coarser ones.

Sheep can be fed out to market on forage alone if it is adequate, thus requiring little outlay for feed. There are many acres of idle pastureland that could be used for sheep—natural meadowland, waterways, woods, orchards, or abandoned cropland, for example—as long as the sheep are protected from predators such as coyotes or dogs.

For small-scale entrepreneurs who prefer the conventional production of slaughter lambs and wool, the ASI is a good source of information.

The *Farm Flock Budget*, one of the Updates that ASI sells, shows a typical budget for a flock of 104 animals—4 rams and 100 ewes. It shows annual costs and returns based on farm prices for slaughter lambs varying from $63 to $75 per hundredweight (cwt). At $75 per cwt, and assuming wool brings $10.10 per ewe, gross annual income per ewe can average $106.98—if 129 lambs can be marketed from 100 ewes. Variable costs, including feed and labor, range from $74.45 to $77.03 per ewe. Fixed costs, including interest, average $12.77 per ewe. This puts total costs at about $87 to $89 per head.

A list of educational materials may be obtained by writing or telephoning ASI at 6911 S. Yosemite St., Englewood, CO 80110-1414; 303-771-3500. ASI also sells subscriptions to its *Research Journal* and its *Sheep Production Handbook*. The journal is published three times a year and sells within the United States for $30 per year. The handbook sells within the United States at $35 each for one to nine copies. Additional pricing and foreign shipment information is available by contacting ASI.

Costs of raising fewer sheep than ASI's example are detailed in *Raising A Small Flock of Sheep in Ohio*, Bulletin No. 654, from Ohio State University and the Cooperative Extension Service (CES). Startup cost of a 30-ewe flock is estimated to range between $187.50 and $235.84 per ewe and the annual cash operating cost at about $51 each. The bulletin makes the point: "To make money with sheep, you must raise more than one lamb per ewe." Local county agricultural extension agents throughout the United States may obtain copies of the 12-page bulletin to answer public inquiries.

The bulletin costs 50 cents to the public.

Problems

Help in dealing with problems can be found in *Recommendations for a Sheep Management Program*, Publication No. 240, of the North Central Regional Office of the CES. The booklet has details on feeding and marketing as well as on common diseases and parasites. A copy may be obtained at no charge from CES offices at the State universities of Iowa, Illinois, Michigan, Indiana, Ohio, Kansas, Missouri, and North Dakota.

One money-saving suggestion: Boundaries are essential, but where predators or thieves are not a problem, inexpensive electric fencing may suffice.

Keeping Track of Prices

A weekly news summary on average lamb and wool prices may be obtained for $35 a year from ASI's *Lamb & Wool Market News*. A similar report may be obtained for $70 a year from USDA's Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS). The AMS Livestock Market News Service (LMNS), P.O. Box 9646, Washington, DC 20090-6456, will also send a list, at no charge, of the numerous markets from which instant livestock market news may be obtained by phone in 36 States. Lamb prices are usually highest in the spring. ASI also publishes an annual Situation and Outlook Report that notes prices, production, and projects trends.

Freezer Lambs

Farmers-suppliers of freezer lambs may earn more profits than the average. They may produce and sell lambs at premium prices somewhat higher than 75 cents a pound for an unbutchered lamb weighing up to about

110 pounds. Sales sometimes can be made directly to individuals of certain ethnic backgrounds. Such buyers are likely to do the butchering themselves. Slaughter can be done on the farm or at a local freezer-locker plant. Many freezer plants or slaughterhouses will have a butcher available for processing after slaughter. An ASI publication, *Marketing Out of the Mainstream*, explains many aspects of direct and niche marketing of lamb and wool.

Improving Earnings

An entrepreneur can increase earnings by improving flock quality. Higher quality means production of faster growing lambs and more lambs per ewe, for example. The ASI has organized the National Sheep Improvement Program (NSIP) to help producers find superior animals through a computerized evaluation system. Entrepreneurs who want to buy ewes or rams on the basis of NSIP data may do so if the producer from whom they buy keeps NSIP records. Details may be obtained from NSIP by contacting ASI.

Several informational videotapes developed to assist sheep producers are available from Lincoln University. For information contact: University Extension, Lincoln University, Box 29, Jefferson City, MO 65101; telephone 314-681-5544.

Dairy Sheep

Livestock expert Dr. W.J. Boylan of the University of Minnesota, telephone 612-624-1727, says sheep product opportunities are not limited to meat and wool. He suggests cheese making, noting that U.S. consumers buy as much as 45 million pounds of imported sheep-milk cheese annually. Sheep cheeses include Roquefort from France, Feta from Greece, Ricotta and Pecorino from Italy, and Manchego from Spain.

Dr. R.M. Jordan, retired from the University of Minnesota, in his article "Angora Goats: New Home in the North," compared the economics of ewe/lamb operations with Angora goat operations. He found that either can make a profit. But higher lamb prices may give the edge to the ewe/lamb operator, he wrote.

Boylan will provide lists of publications on sheep milking and cheese manufacturing, equipment, and sources of supply. Write to the Department of Animal Sciences, Peters Hall, Room 122, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN 55108. One commercial source of equipment and information on cottage industry cheese is the American Cheese Society, 34 Downing Street, New York, NY 10014; telephone 212-727-7939.

One U.S. dairy sheep pioneer believes that making hard cheeses is not the best option for American producers. He is Ken Kleinpeter (Hollow Road Farms, Box 93, Hollow Road, Stuyvesant, NY 12173). Ken Kleinpeter and his partner, Joan Snyder, concentrate on producing yogurt and fresh cheeses from their sheep's milk, because unlike hard cheeses, these products are not imported from overseas. Kleinpeter notes that there are many imported hard sheep's milk cheeses on the market in the U.S., which sell for less than a domestic producer's cost of production. This is because dairy sheep in other parts of the world produce several times what U.S. breeds are capable of, and many European countries subsidize their cheese producers.

Kleinpeter is within 3 hours of two major gourmet markets, New York City and Boston, MA. Unless a small-scale entrepreneur has a secure market, he cautions, a gourmet item such as sheep's milk yogurt may be a hard sell. It would be difficult to support such an operation in areas not within 2 to 3 hours of a major metropolitan market, he said.

Dairy Sheep People

A few people in 1987 formed the North American Dairy Sheep Association (NADSA), Route 3, Box 10, Hinckley, MN 55037; telephone 612-384-6612. NADSA has grown to 150 members in the United States, England, Canada, Australia, and India. NADSA held annual conferences until 1992, when conferees decided to meet every other year. Depending on status and location, annual dues range from $10 to $25 and include 3 or 4 copies yearly of the NADSA newsletter, *Dairy Shepard*. NADSA has books on sheep topics and videotapes of conferences, available at various prices listed by NADSA. Roger and Lucy Steinkamp have served as NADSA president and treasurer, respectively.

Colored Wool

While everyone knows about black sheep, not so well known are those that produce blond, red, beige, brown, silver, and grey wool.

Breeders of such relative rarities usually belong to the Natural Colored Wool Growers Association (NCWGA), at P.O. Box 487, Willits, CA 95490.

NCWGA spokesperson Carole Sanders says the best fleeces of natural colored wool command premium prices. New colors are being developed, fiber diameter is being refined, and the staple length is increasing.

Sanders also says undyed, unprocessed, natural colored fleece is popular with the fiber industry, weavers, and felt markets. There is a growing recognition of colored wool in boutique clothing manufacture. So far, however, no major woolen mills handle colored wool because of the wide variation in its grade quality and color. All countries are trying to commence colored woolprocessing on a large scale commercial basis, but none have succeeded.

Sanders suggests seeking an outlet for colored wool with schools that have classes in fiber and textile arts.

Another approach: Attend the school and learn to produce yarn, or find spinners who want exotic fleeces.

Besides promoting colored wool sheep classes at fairs, NCWGA publishes a directory and a national newsletter, *The Marker*. One of NCWGA's objectives is to increase flock quality through flock and breeding line registry.

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address is:

Ag Box 2244
Washington, DC 20250-2244
Telephone: 202-401-1805
Fax: 202-401-1804

***

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Slightly Revised July 1993

The Small Dairy Resource Book

Information sources for farmstead producers and processors

By Vicki Dunaway

"Your search is over. A comprehensive list of resources for small dairies, along with clear concise reviews. *The Small Dairy Resource Book* will help you find what you need and tell you how to get it. This book will save you hours of searching and direct you to books you may have never found otherwise. It is an investment that you will turn to time and again."

Paul Hamby
Weatherby, Missouri
Dairy Equipment Dealer and Alpine dairy goat producer

The Small Dairy Resource Book is an annotated bibliography of books, periodicals, videos and other materials on farmstead dairy processing. The *Resource Book* is intended primarily for the family farmer who is interested in producing value-added dairy products on-farm, but also will provide Extension agents and other agricultural educators with a cohesive guide to information sources on small-scale dairy processing.

Topics include:

cheesemaking	butter
ice cream	other dairy foods
dairy processing	food safety
dairy animals	feeds & grazing
business & marketing	

The appendix lists suppliers, consultants, dairy processing courses, related organizations, interesting Web sites and more.

The Small Dairy Resource Book was developed as a product of the Hometown Creamery Revival project, sponsored by the Southern Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program. It is published by the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN), the outreach arm of SARE.

To order, please send a check or purchase order for $8 to:

Sustainable Agriculture Publications
Hills Building, Room 12
University of Vermont
Burlington, VT 05405-0082

Be sure to include your name, address, phone number and the name of the publication you are ordering.

To order SAN publications by credit card (VISA or MC) please call (802) 656-0484.

For further information contact: lhendric@zoo.uvm.edu

Visit the SAN publication Web site: www.sare.org/san/htdocs/pubs/

and The Hometown Creamery Revival: www.metalab.unc.edu/creamery

CONTENTS

Determining the Right System 2
Deep Straw Systems 3
Farrowing in Deep Straw 3
Feeder Pigs in Hoop Structures 4
Pigs on Pasture 6
Manure Management 8
Odor & Pollution 8
Soil 10
Animal Health 10
Niche Marketing 11
Cooperative Marketing 12
Organic Pork 14
Working Conditions 14
Resources 16

Published by the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN), the national outreach arm of the Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program, with funding by USDA's Cooperative State Research, Education and Extension Service.

Also available at: www.sare.org/bulletin/hogs

SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE NETWORK
THE NATIONAL OUTREACH ARM OF USDA-SARE

Profitable Pork: Strategies for Hog Producers

Iowa producer Tom Frantzen employs pasture and cropland in managed grazing strips that allow him to produce a 30-pound feeder pig "for half the price you can indoors."

– Photo by Prescott Bergh, courtesy of Minnesota Department of Agriculture

FOR 14 YEARS, NEW HAMPTON, IOWA, FARMER TOM FRANTZEN reared hogs from farrow to finish, alternating the 1,200 hogs he raised annually from closed buildings each winter to pastures each summer. The buildings, where Frantzen raised the sows in pens with slatted floors, were an unpleasant winter home. In the cold months, the hogs did not gain weight very efficiently and behaved aggressively.

Pig waste fell through the slats into a pit. Frantzen pumped and disposed of manure on his crop fields, where he grew corn, soybeans and hay. "Our manure management was haphazard," he recalls. "I was both over-applying and under-utilizing those nutrients."

Frantzen had to race to the finish line every season. And while he always got everything done, reaching that point was difficult and stressful. In 1992, he decided to create a more environmentally sound system that would be both profitable and allow him to spend more time outside. The linchpin: a combination of pasture and housing that brought his livestock and crops into sync.

Today, permanent pastures, rotating strip pastures and cropland offer him a plethora of options for feeding pigs, including having them "hog down" – or self-harvest – crops. As they move across the fields, the pigs spread their own manure. Deep-straw bedding in huts or sheds provides warmth and exercise for the animals and produces a pack of solid waste that is far easier to handle and spread on crop fields than the slurry from Frantzen's former liquid manure system.

The new life cycle worked. After receiving a producer grant from USDA's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program to document the economics of farrowing hogs on pasture, Frantzen found he could halve his feed costs compared to his former indoor/outdoor system. The SARE grant "showed we can produce a 30-pound feeder pig for half the price that you can indoors," he said.

Special Sample Issue

Cream Line

a new voice for little dairies

Making Profitability Part of the Plan

"We came from a generation who thought it was a sin to make money. We had to get past this mental block before we eventually learned that in order to do the things we wanted to do we had to be able to make a living, and that means making enough profit to pay the bills." So began cheesemaker Alyce Birchenough during the Southern SAWG (Sustainable Agriculture Working Group) conference session by the same name as the title of this article.

Alyce and her husband Doug Wolbert operate "Sweet Home Farm" in – where else? – southern Alabama, on the "Redneck Riviera," near Gulf Shores. Although Alyce's cheesemaking began as a hobby after Alyce received her dreamed-for cow as a wedding present, over the years the couple has developed a strong, stable business selling farmstead cheeses from their on-farm store, made from milk produced by a herd of only 10-12 Guernsey cows. They began farming in Michigan, but got tired of shoveling frozen manure, so picked up the whole operation and moved to the balmier climate of Elberta, Alabama. While the two were selling milk to a co-op, they calculated their milk production cost at $11.68/cwt. At $17/cwt from the co-op, they weren't making a lot of money. Adding value by making cheese offered them an opportunity to gross between $40 and $70/cwt, a noticeable improvement.

The couple built their processing business over time, having to take off-farm jobs in the beginning to save enough money to capitalize the business. Alyce advises anyone interested in value-added processing to milk to start small, and start with the inspectors. At Sweet Home they must pass inspection on three different levels – county, state and federal. The inspectors signed off on their plans before they began building; this helped them to avoid problems later. For a cheese vat, Alyce and Doug converted a 200-gallon ice bank cooling tank, in which they can make cheese from three days' production of milk. The conversion consisted of removing instrumentation and the copper coils for cooling, and welding shut any openings that resulted. Then hot water pipes were installed in the jacket to allow for heating the milk. This was a cost-effective way to obtain a cheese vat, but appropriate sized equipment was not easy to come by. Alyce suggests looking for equipment in the Midwest, while noting that it took eight years to find her 30-gallon pasteurizer. They made their own cheese presses using Corian (the countertop material) arms. Bleach bottles filled with water are hung from the arms to apply weight to the presses, an inexpensive and flexible sys-

Continued on page 3

In This Issue:

The Editor's Page ..... p. 2

The Other Dairy Animal ..... p. 4

Feta Cheese Recipe ..... p. 5

A Case for Unhomogenized Milk .... p. 6

Cheesemakers-L
Small Dairy Project
BGH-Free List
ACS Stands Up for Raw Milk Cheese
Curd Harp Maker
..... all on p. 7

Small Dairy Resource Book .....p. 8

Do you know the singular, gender-neutral term for "Cattle"?
See page 2.

February 8 -- Small Dairy Resource Book Released!

The first major publication of the Hometown Creamery Revival, *The Small Dairy Resource Book*, has just returned from the printer. To order, send $8 check or money order to Sustainable Agriculture Publications, Hills Building, Room 12, University of Vermont, Burlington, VT 05405-0082; or call (802) 656-0484 to order with Visa or Master Card. Questions? E-mail lhendric@zoo.uvm.edu for more information.

About *CreamLine:*

This issue is a small sampling of the contents of the first four issues of *CreamLine*. Issue 1 is 8 pages, and issues 2, 3 and 4 each consist of 16 pages. Regular additional features include a chef's column, book reviews, notification of cheesemaking and other dairy processing classes and conferences, and classified ads. *CreamLine* subscribers also receive occasional "surprise" bonuses. Individual back issues may be ordered as part of your subscription.

Issue 1 -- Spring 1999

Making Profitability Part of the Plan
Tour de France for Goat Dairying
Northeast Value-Added Dairy Project
ACS Stands Up for Raw Milk Cheese

Issue 2 -- Summer 1999

Ice Cream for Fun and Profit
So This is Retirement? (Gwamma's dairy goat farm in Ohio)
Chef's Corner - Ricotta cheese
Ice Cream Recipes (chocolate cappuccino gelato, butter pecan, goat milk ice cream, more!)
Book Reviews - five ice cream books
Do Weeds Make Good Feeds?

Issue 3 -- Fall 1999

Raw Milk Cheeses Endangered?
The Other Dairy Animal - features two sheep dairies
Friesian sheep and minor breeds
Chef's Corner -- sheep milk cheeses
Preparing Pastures for Winter and Beyond
Book Reviews -- Cheesemaking Practice, new edition
Practical Sheep Dairying
Feta Cheese recipe
National Farmers Union Ethnic Cheeses Project

Issue 4 -- Winter 2000

To Make a Better Butter
The Small Dairy Project
Dairy Sheep, Other Breeds
Titratable Acidity and pH
Chef's Corner -- Butter
Devonshire Cream and Whey Butter
Butter Resources

CreamLine
P.O. Box 186
Willis, VA 24380

Oregon Country Beef: growing a solution to economic, environmental, and social needs

an interview with Doc and Connie Hatfield by Peter Donovan

BROTHERS, OREGON—Futurists and students of paradigm shifts have observed that the important and significant changes do not originate in the center, but along the edges—of knowledge, of belief, of institutional influence, of economic security. In the following interview, Doc and Connie Hatfield tell how and why the Oregon Country Beef cooperative started, what its goal was, and why it became successful.

In the 1960s, the Hatfields moved from Enterprise, Oregon to a small irrigated ranch in Montana's Bitterroot Valley. Doc's large-animal veterinary practice was mostly occupied with the problems caused by inappropriate genetics and animal management. Connie tended a herd of 150 cows, which depended on heavy inputs of labor, fertilizer, and electricity to pump water to raise forage. In 1974, costs were way up and 500-pound steer calves were down to 28 cents a pound.

They began seeking a place where cattle and land could function together in a more profitable and sustainable manner. In 1976 they bought a 25,000-acre ranch in the juniper-clad hills north of this high desert junction with its gas station, highway maintenance division, and one-room elementary school. Their phone was an 11-party radio phone that didn't always work. Their two children went 12 miles to school in Brothers.

An hour away, the town of Bend was filling and spilling with urban people who cared about health, diet, and the natural beauty of the surrounding rangeland.

Nine years later, in 1985, things still weren't very encouraging in the cattle business.

CONNIE: We were going broke. We were borrowing from the PCA [Production Credit Association] and they gave us a bit of a lecture.

DOC: Cows were our lifeline. We thought the beef industry was going to be a severely declined, marginal business for a long time.

CONNIE: Doc would tell me it rained in Brazil and that made the price of cattle go down. What does that have to do with what we're doing? Just nothing. We needed to do something different.

We'd had six years of down markets. I said to Doc, I don't think we could get our payment made this next year. All you heard was, don't eat red meat, it's bad for you.

FROM THE FEED TROUGH ...
by Woody Lane, Ph.D. © 1998

OPTIMISTICALLY SPEAKING

As I write this, the Chicago Cubs are contending for the wildcard spot in the National League playoffs. The Cubs in the playoffs?!? Well, if the world has gone topsy turvy, I suppose that I can write about almost anything, even a little shameless commentary.

Like about grazing and the meaning of life.

Management Intensive Grazing is all the rage now, at least among those who do it, but not among scientists. MIG trials are not easy. Researchers trying to measure the effects of MIG are a little like the blind men in the fable who tried to "see" the elephant by feeling different parts with their hands — they all came away with strong impressions but no one grasped the entire picture. Graziers, on the other hand, are *forced* to see the entire picture; they have to live with it.

In research, scientists routinely compare grazing animals against confinement animals — growth, milk production, meat quality. Surprise, surprise — MIG never looks great in research. Simple reason: animals fed grain will almost always outperform animals on pasture. Agronomists see equivalent results with their forage plants. Experimental plots composed of pure species are carefully groomed, highly fertilized, and cut at precise intervals. Plants in grazed swards, on the other hand, face a tougher life: they get cut at odd times, they are under greater water and heat stress, and they get stepped on by large animals. Plant for plant, grazed forages will almost always seem more productive for longevity or yield than mechanically-harvested

But those results have limited value. Like the blind men, they miss the whole story, and it's the whole story that matters to a grazier. MIG is more than just giving animals a daily allotment of forage and moving them around from paddock to paddock. MIG is really about sunlight — about trying to maximize the amount captured by forages and ultimately sold as animal products.

To appreciate and practice MIG, a grazier must overcome a common mental hurdle: to think in terms of *output per pasture* rather than *output per animal*. Most research, unfortunately, evaluates treatment response as output per animal. Frankly, I can always increase animal output by feeding more grain. MIG tries to maximize production per acre, not per animal. But producing more pounds of meat or wool or milk per acre means increasing the *efficiency* of harvesting sunlight through the solar panels of forages. And sunlight is cheaper and less risky than grain.

MIG is a way of thinking, *a strategy of intensively managing resources*. MIG attempts to balance the entire system. It requires skill and knowledge and a shrewd analysis of risks. It aims for a sustainable way of life, which is also a sustainable business.

Profit is a funny animal; it can be real or it can be a mirage. I can usually devise livestock budgets which demonstrate that confinement systems will make a larger profits than grazing systems. Animal productivity is almost always higher. But science has unequivocally demonstrated that sheep and cattle have legs and that manure and bedding do not. For all confinement systems, *someone* has to haul feed on a daily basis, and *someone* has to haul the manure and bedding and find a place to put it. *Someone* has to build barns and confinement pens, maintain equipment for feeding and harvesting, erect structures for feed storage, and deal with the inevitable health problems caused by reduced ventilation and increased crowding. It's just like a treadmill.Similarly, I can devise crop budgets which demonstrate that annual crops — like corn or soybeans — will outyield perennial forages and often will return a larger profit. But what about risk? Where in those budgets is a line item for the lack of sleep due to worry? How often do you have to replant corn with a short-season variety because the spring was too wet or too cold? Or fear a late freeze or an early freeze or a hailstorm? These may be unpredictable acts of nature, but we know that they *will* occur — we just don't know when. But these problems are *not* catastrophic for grazing systems based on perennial forages like orchardgrass or fescue. Sure, harsh weather can cause a loss of 20% or more of a rotation's yield, but never 100%, and we can adjust our stocking rate or supplementation and keep going. Nature may be predictably unpredictable, but perennial forages will not lose everything to its whims.

Clever. And good business.

But no successful business runs itself; it's people who make things happen. Shrewd, skillful people who recognize a good opportunity and follow it towards the future. For example, I know a fellow here in Douglas County, a grazier, who is really part of this future. He runs 500-1,000 head of cattle, a small flock of sheep, and some goats. He owns the sheep and goats but not the cattle. Every spring he receives truckloads of heifers and steers from eastern Oregon under contract — he gets paid for pounds of gain or on a per month basis. He owns or rents the land and sells the forage. Actually, he raises forage on that land and sells his ability to provide high quality feed and good animal care. He moves cattle every 12-24 hours and creates pastures on the fly with electric fence. He doesn't own a tractor or a large barn. He runs his entire operation with an ATV, a pickup truck, two stockdogs, and a calculator. Especially the calculator. He knows his costs of production as precisely as any corporate accountant.

When he walks his fields — and I've accompanied him many times — he speaks excitedly about grazing. Not about a government program or a new piece of heavy equipment — but about the land itself, the pastures, the forages. He describes how certain grass varieties are outcompeting the thistles, or how phosphorus levels in the soil are increasing, or how he extended his pasture growth into the dry summer by building low dikes to retain runoff water. There is a justifiable pride here. He is running a thriving business.

This is not the traditional image of a farmer. That image was described by Edwin Markham in his poem "The Man With The Hoe":

Bowed by the weight of centuries he leans
Upon his hoe and gazes on the ground,
The emptiness of ages in his face,
And on his back the burden of the world.

That man was definitely not a grazier.

Woody Lane is a livestock nutritionist in Roseburg, Oregon. He teaches Forages and Livestock Nutrition courses and workshops in the US and Canada, and operates an independent consulting business "Lane Livestock Services" 240 Crystal Springs Lane, Roseburg, Oregon 97470, USA.
Phone: (541)-440-1926 Fax: (541)-440-1007 E mail: wlane@rosenet.net

FROM THE FEED TROUGH ...
by Woody Lane, Ph.D. © 1999

NOT HORSING AROUND

Last spring I visited the beautiful area around Lexington, Kentucky and spent time looking at, well, horses. And pastures. I saw fields of early-spring grass with lots of horses playing and galloping. But something intrigued me. At a couple of those horse farms, the owners spoke reverently about their forages. One forage, actually — Kentucky Bluegrass. They said that their horses did wonderfully on it; that it was the most nutritious grass in the world; that it was the basis of their entire farms. Hmm, I don't believe in panaceas, but I also don't argue with success, especially when the successful people are such considerate hosts. So I kept my own counsel and ruminated about it for a while. After considering all sides of the issue, I finally understood why KBG is so important to those farms. It's not the nutritional value. The real reason is far more basic and profound than that. In fact, the reason demonstrates how on a farm, *all the pieces*, including forages, must fit together to make a successful operation.

First, a textbook description of Kentucky Bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*): KBG is a low-growing, persistent, sod-forming, winter-hardy, cool season perennial grass that grows well throughout the northeast and north-central U.S., often in conjunction with white clover (*Trifolium repens*). KBG has slim leaves with a characteristic boat-shape tip. Young shoots are folded. KBG has shallow roots and spreads by rhizomes. It responds well to good fertility, although other forages will easily out-yield it, like the ryegrasses or orchardgrass or timothy. KBG also is quite seasonal: its main growth occurs in the [illegible]ring and fall. During its unproductive period in midsummer, many [illegible]r grasses will grow better, such as orchardgrass or tall fescue.

Nutritionally, KBG is nothing to write home about. Like any other grass, KBG is highly nutritious when the leaves are young and vegetative, but its nutritional value drops off rapidly as it matures. And remember that horses — even thoroughbred racehorses — don't have the high nutritional requirements of dairy cows or lactating ewes raising twins. Nearly any reasonable grass hay may be good enough nutritionally for these horses.

KBG excels, however, in one very critical trait. KBG can withstand close grazing well, and it will survive and flourish under set-stocking conditions. This, of course, is one of the main reasons why KBG is so common on many farms around the country.

But a farm is not a farm is not a farm. Kentucky horse farms are quite different from New York dairy farms or Oregon sheep ranches. Kentucky horse farms specialize in raising fine thoroughbred animals. Each horse can be worth hundreds of thousands or even millions of dollars, These farms own their own horses or board horses owned by others. They rear these animals, breed them, train them, and sometimes, they race them.

All these farms contain rolling pastures where horses can run and graze. Their forages must provide feed for grazing, of course, and some hay. KBG hay is no different than other grass hays: it can vary from good to poor, depending on the date of cutting and the rainfall. And KBG is not waterproof — rain will soak it as much as any other grass.

But think about this: what is the real *product* sold by these horse [illegible]s? And to whom?

These farms don't sell hay. They don't sell feed. Yes, they do sell horses (at least the ones they own). But their real product is something that few other livestock farms can match — they sell an *image*. They sell the smell of liniment and leather; they sell the chance for a horse owner to lean over the railing at a track and watch horses run training laps, blowing steam in the early frosty mornings.

For some markets, image is nearly everything. Remember the *Marlboro Man* or *Joe Camel* — two of the most successful advertising images in history? One portrayed dreams of the great glowing West; the other suggested an urban cool, the cocky boldness of James Dean. We may not all support the products they represented, but we can't deny how they increased sales.

So for those Kentucky horse farms, who is their market? Investors. Investors who have lots of money. Investors who own million-dollar horses. Corporate executives, politicians, lawyers, doctors, investment bankers, professional athletes. And they all must find places to board their horses. Places that will train them, run them in races, and give the chance for a big payoff in the winner's circle.

These are city folk who will come out to the farms on weekends to watch their horses gallop through the pastures and maybe "talk shop" with the trainers. They want to see beautiful colts and fillies playing in lawn-like paddocks. They want to buy into an image.

And these horse farms provide that image. Their investors aren't interested in "grazing cells" or intensive grazing or forage management or the cost of hay. Let's ignore the clubhouse complaints about the price of feed. These farms don't need high-yielding pastures to produce hay. They can buy any hay they need — paying an extra $30 per ton is trivial when compared to getting a contract to board a million-dollar horse.

Therefore, high-yielding forages like orchardgrass or tall fescue would not suit these farms. These are bunch grasses which require careful grazing management, which is not easily possible with horses. No trainer would risk crowding thoroughbred racehorses tight enough for controlled grazing — the animals would hurt each other or run into fences. And using cattle or sheep to graze pastures is not an option, not on these farms, not with their image. But without good grazing management, bunch grasses would become clumpy and rank and weedy. Potential investors don't want to see their horses struggling through a muddy field of turnips.

But KBG will do the job. It forms a tight sod that will hold down the mud and withstand the pounding of flying hooves. It persists year after year even when continuously grazed by horses, which are notorious for destroying pastures. KBG can provide green, manicured paddocks even though it doesn't yield well under those conditions or provide excess nutrients for the animals. No wonder why my hosts praised it. Better than any other forage, it helps them sell an image.

Young colts galloping on a spring green pasture. Manes flying in the wind. The promise of great races. Crowds rising to their feet as horses thunder into the final stretch.

Kentucky Bluegrass.

Woody Lane is a livestock nutritionist in Roseburg, Oregon. He teaches Forages and Livestock Nutrition courses and workshops in the US and Canada, and operates an independent consulting business "Lane Livestock Services" 240 Crystal Springs Lane, Roseburg, Oregon 97470, USA.
Phone: (541)-440-1926 Fax: (541)-440-1007 E mail: wlane@rosenet.net

FROM THE FEED TROUGH ...
by Woody Lane, Ph.D. © 1997

ANIMALS AND ACRES

In every grazing workshop, someone asks, "How many sheep can I put on my pasture?" Or "How much space does my flock need for grazing?" Or "How long can my flock graze in a 10-acre field?"

These are really all variations of the same question. Let's discuss two principles of pasture growth and then describe a method for calculating a reasonable answer.

Principle #1: Forage grows in stages. When grasses and clovers first come out of the ground, the tiny plants spend their time and energy collecting sunlight, transporting sugars down to the roots, and constructing more solar panels, which we call leaves. Because young plants only have a couple of scrawny leaves, this process takes time. Once enough photosynthetic machinery is in place, however, the carbohydrate assembly line kicks into high gear. Then, with enough sunlight and root-supplied nutrients, these plants make lots of sugars and protein, build more leaves, and grow profusely. Finally the forage plants become tall enough to shade out their lower leaves, which die. New plant growth then just about equals senescence, so the net effect is little or no additional high quality tissue. From a graziers perspective, those plants may be healthy but the pasture is actually gaining very little nutritional mass.

These stages, or "phases," are called *Phase I, Phase II, and Phase III*. For any pasture, we can identify the phase by measuring the amount of dry matter in an acre. As I described last month, pasture height is not the best measure of growth. We really need to describe a pasture in terms of pounds of dry matter. Pastures with less than 1,000-1,200 lbs/acre are in Phase I. Pastures containing more than 3,500-4,000 lbs/acre are usually in Phase III. Everything in between is Phase II.

These are rough estimates, of course. Different types of pastures have different numbers. Height can be misleading. Species that specialize in prostrate growth — like Kentucky bluegrass, Gala grazing brome, and some varieties of white clover, birdsfoot trefoil, and perennial ryegrass — contain more of their biomass in the lower inches of growth than upright forages like tall fescue, orchardgrass, and Ladino clover.

Phase I is a preparatory phase, a lag phase. Plants in Phase I are highly nutritious, but their growth is very slow. Phase II is the grow-like-gangbusters phase. Plants in Phase II are large and robust and still have high nutritional value. Phase III is the inefficient, too-tall-for-good-grazing phase. Hay is almost always Phase III forage. But the initial questions were about grazing, which is definitely not the same as making hay.

In a system of sustainable, controlled grazing, we'd ideally like to keep our pastures oscillating between the high and low ends of Phase II. If possible, we should put animals into a paddock *just before* the plants reach Phase III and take them off *just before* the plants are reduced to Phase I.

Principle #2: My "Five Day Rule": Don't keep animals in a tightly fenced paddock for more than five days. Reason? Because grazing animals eat the most delectable forages first. Consider some of the new, improved forage varieties — bred for palatability and quick growth. Five days after they are munched, if given water and nutrients, these plants will begin to send out new shoots. These are *precisely* the forages that we want in our pastures. But if our sheep are still inside that paddock, what do you think that they will eat? Animals spend all day searching for those new shoots. Yummy! But re-defoliating plants so quickly puts them under severe stress, which ultimately exerts a steady selection pressure *against* the very species that we want to encourage. The answer is really simple: move livestock *before* they can eat those new shoots.

Now the main question: how large an area for our sheep? Let's approach the problem in discrete, logical steps: How many sheep are in the mob? How much do they weigh? How much do they eat (dry matter intake — DMI)? And how much forage dry matter is available for grazing? Then we match the answers, find a balance, and stir in the 5-day constraint.

Our hypothetical flock consists of 25 adult Targhee ewes and their month-old lambs, mostly twins. Let's guess that the ewes weigh approximately 175 pounds. A reference table in the SID Sheep Production Handbook lists an expected DMI at 6.6 lbs, which is 3.8% of their body weight. But that DMI is based on feeding some grain. In reality, I would expect that ewes on pasture would consume (and also stomp and soil) approximately 5% of the body weight, or maybe even 6%. Let's use 5% for this example, which means that the total daily DMI of the entire flock, including stompage, would be 219 pounds (= 25 x 175 x 0.05).

On the pasture side of the equation, our field contains smooth brome, orchardgrass, and white clover, with 2,800 lbs of total dry matter per acre. We'd like to move the sheep off the pasture at the low end of Phase II, so let's decide to leave a residual of 1,200 lbs. By subtraction, therefore, our pasture contains 1,600 lbs of available dry matter. If our ewes use 219 lbs/day, one acre of this pasture will last the flock 7.3 days (= 7 days, 7 hours, 20 minutes, and 30 seconds). This is longer than our 5-day rule. One acre, therefore, is clearly too large.

In five days, our sheep would use 1,095 lbs of DM (= 5 x 219), which is available from 0.68 acres of pasture. But if we wanted to move our sheep after only 3 days (more reasonable) and still leave 1,200 pounds of residual, then our flock would need only 657 lbs of DM (= 3 x 219), which equates to only 0.4 acres. For a three day movement, that's where we could put our fence.

Pasture management: fire up the calculator, move fence, and watch the sheep graze. But one word of warning: although your attention may be focused on pasture weights and grazing areas, just remember that before you move the electric fence, first turn it off.

Woody Lane is a livestock nutritionist in Roseburg, Oregon. He teaches Forages and Livestock Nutrition courses and workshops in the US and Canada, and operates an independent consulting business "Lane Livestock Services" 240 Crystal Springs Lane, Roseburg, Oregon 97470, USA.
Phone: (541)-440-1926 Fax: (541)-440-1007 E mail: wlane@rosenet.net

OPENING A DOOR

Spring in Douglas County, Oregon: the hills are a vibrant, rich green, as green as the fabled Irish countryside, and the valleys are filled with a lush carpet of grass and clover growing at 80 lbs. per day or more . . .

Huh? Isn't forage growth measured in inches? Well . . . not here, not during the grazing season. Inches are too imprecise; inches don't give us information about forage density, maturity, or carrying capacity; and inches can't be applied to anywhere else. Also, animals eat *pounds* of feed, not inches. *Pounds* are the numbers we need for good grazing decisions. So let's look at forage management in a new way — by the numbers.

Whenever we want to formulate a grazing plan for a specific paddock, *before we put the animals on it*, we should always do one thing first — we should estimate how much forage is really out there. This is not hard. Just take a sample (or a few samples, as defined by your time and energy). Here, we use a simple wooden frame, two feet long and one foot wide (inside diameter). We place the frame on the ground and cut off everything inside it with a pair of hand-shearing blades. Right to the ground. Then we weigh the sample, dry it in a regular oven or microwave until it is dry, and weigh it again. We stop drying it when its weight stabilizes, which occurs after a few hours in a warm oven (but not too hot and not overnight), or after an initial 5-minute period in a microwave plus successive 2-minute periods. Remember to put an open glass of water in the microwave. A tip: first warn the rest of the family about your intentions. The fragrance of drying forage should not catch them by surprise.

Our sample gives us the total amount of forage dry matter in two square feet. For example, if our dried sample weighs 0.16 pounds (we may actually use a gram scale, convert to pounds, and correct for the weight of the paper bag. Everyone does it slightly differently), this equates to 0.08 lbs/square foot (= 0.16 ÷ 2). This is a nice value but not really very useful, unless we are raising a herd of slugs. But since an acre contains 43,560 square feet, we can convert this number to a total dry matter per acre of 3,485 pounds (= 43,560 x 0.08). Now *that's* a number that we can use.

It's a good beginning. Now we must adjust this value for the realities of grazing, because we never let our animals eat *all* the grass in a paddock, not unless we want to batter our fields into a desert. Generally, we open a gate, allow the animals into a paddock, and then pull them off when they graze it down "low enough." This leftover "residual forage" is the amount remaining when the animals leave.

So now we have a fundamental equation for grazing: *the amount of forage available to our grazing livestock is the difference between the total forage and the residual forage.* This amount is called, not surprisingly, the "*available forage.*" Therefore, good grazing management is quite simple: we just need to measure the total mass, decide on the residuals, and let the sheep and cattle do the rest. There are, of course, a *few* other details . . . but we'll get to some of them later.

Let's return, for a moment, to our much-maligned height measurement, because height is what we see. In New Zealand, where farmers have made a few zillion measurements on forage height and mass, they've devised a general rule-of-thumb for their type of pasture: the lowest inch of forage contains approximately 1,000 pounds of dry matter per acre, and every additional inch contains 500 pounds (translated from the metric). Now don't rush off to take those height measurements just yet — remember *that those numbers apply only to a very specific type of pasture managed in a very specific way.* Those numbers were derived from well-managed New Zealand pastures composed of perennial ryegrass and white clover, pastures which are very dense, heavily fertilized, and intensively grazed.

Frankly, very few pastures in North America are like that. Our pastures often differ in forage species, grazing management, and fertilizer use. The New Zealand rule-of-thumb, however, gives us a handle, a rough idea about a possible relationship between forage height and forage mass.

We've checked the accuracy of this relationship here in Douglas County, in western Oregon. Many of our improved pastures seem to average 800/300 — that is, 800 pounds in the first inch and 300 pounds for every inch above that. Eight inches of forage clearly means different things in different places: 4,500 pounds/acre on lush New Zealand-type pastures and 2,900 pounds/acre on many local pastures.

Why? Well, our local pastures contain more than perennial ryegrass and white clover. They also contain orchardgrass, tall fescue, bentgrass, subclover, foxtail, and an occasional thistle or two — and these species have different growth forms than perennial ryegrass. Also, we haven't fertilized our pastures as heavily or grazed as tightly as many New Zealand farmers, so our swards aren't as dense. This 800/300 relationship is only a general average, however, and there is quite a bit of variation. Some pastures probably range from much less than that up to, in the very best swards, nearly 1000/500.

So what does this mean? Simple. Pasture weights give us information about forage density and growth. Weight (mass) values allow us to discuss pasture management intelligently with *anyone* in the world and learn from *their* management. For example, if I hear that a successful Irish sheep farmer puts his lactating ewes onto a perennial ryegrass paddock at 3,500 lbs/acre and aims for a residual of 1,200 lbs/acre, I know exactly what he did. I also can assess his management in terms of my own pastures.

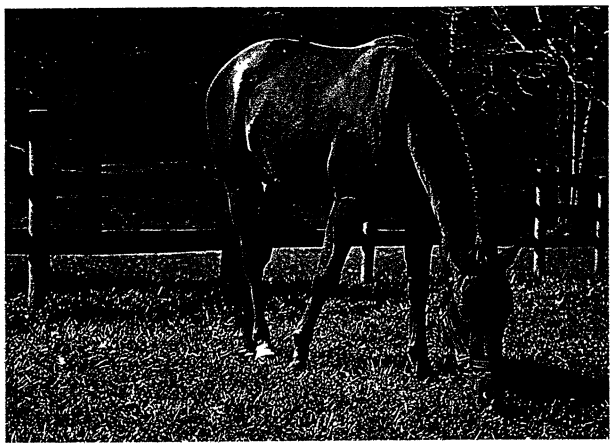
And more than that — with those weight numbers, I can infer how he managed his livestock, what grazing options he faced in that paddock, and how that sward may respond to the next grazing cycle. Compared to that, inches, ahem, just don't measure up.

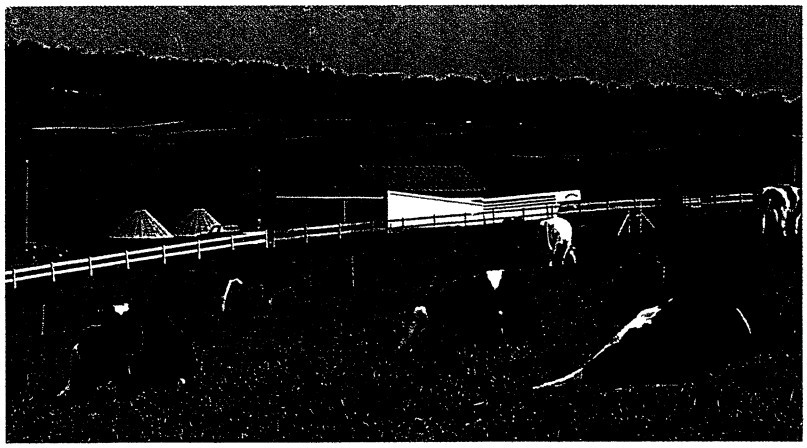
More next month . . .

Woody Lane is a livestock nutritionist in Roseburg, Oregon. He teaches Forages and Livestock Nutrition courses and workshops in the US and Canada, and operates an independent consulting business "Lane Livestock Services" 240 Crystal Springs Lane, Roseburg, Oregon 97470, USA.
Phone: (541)-440-1926 Fax: (541)-440-1007 E mail: wlane@rosenet.net

Managing Grasslands For Profit

A guide to grazing management in the Southeast





Produced by
USDA Natural Resources
Conservation Service

in cooperation with

American Farm Bureau Federation
American Farmland Trust
National Association of Conservation Districts
National Association of State Conservation Agencies
National Cattlemen s Beef Association
Southeast Conservation Buffer Campaign
Mississippi Chemical Corporation
Tennessee Valley Authority

Well Managed Grasslands = $$$$

Grazing lands are a very important resource in the eastern part of the United States. Thousands of farming operations in the Southeast depend on grasslands for their livelihood.

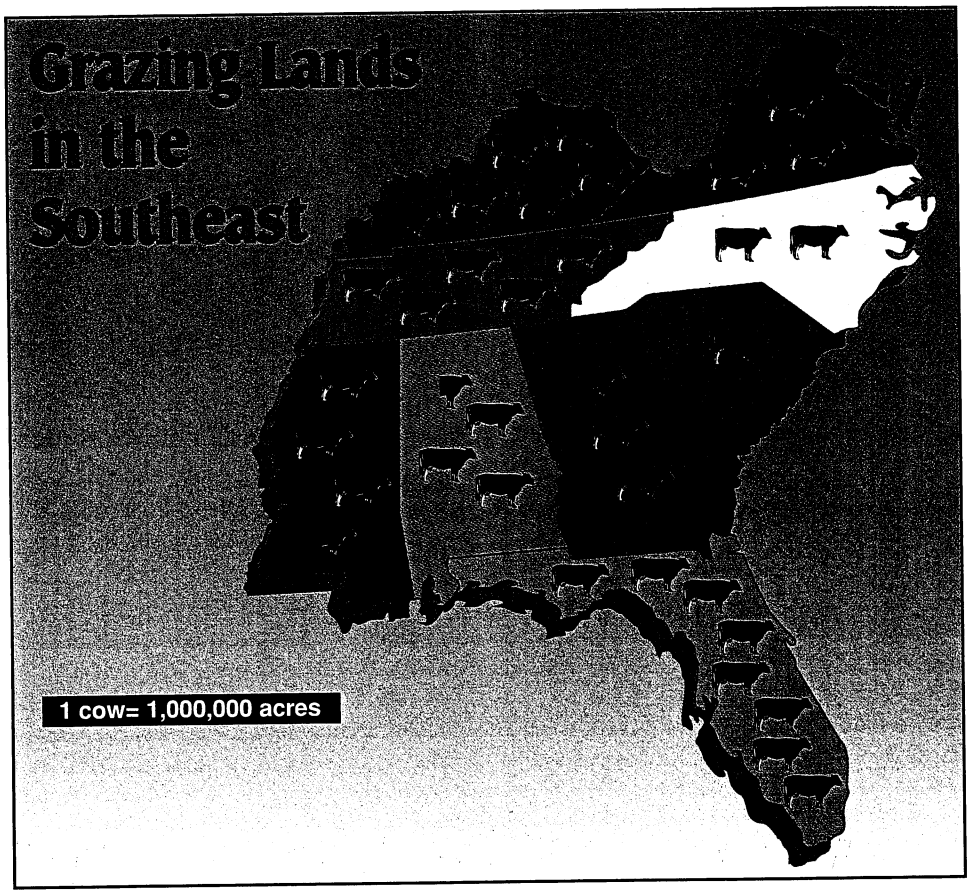
Grazing lands cover more than 34 million acres or 10 percent of the land in nine southeast states. The value of the forage alone adds $4.4 billion to the economy of these states. Grazing lands provide the forage that is the heart of the area's beef, sheep, goat, dairy and horse operations.

Whether you farm full-time or part-time, have numerous livestock or few, good grazing management can improve your bottom line. It also helps protect natural resources, improves water quality, benefits tourism and enhances the environment.

Grassland management is more than just moving livestock from one pasture to another. It involves choosing and managing forages, soil fertility, fencing, water development and distribution, harvesting, resting grasslands and much more.

This booklet discusses each of these subjects and takes you through a step by step process to develop a successful grazing plan that will work for you. It shows you options for grassland management, including different grazing systems.

Many producers are interested in taking care of grassland resources, but admit the bottom line is economics. Producers who have implemented some or all of the grassland management practices in this book have increased their profits.



To help producers improve grazing management, a national effort was started called the Grazing Lands Conservation Initiative (GLCI).

This initiative was started by a group of producers representing the following agricultural and conservation organizations:

American Farm Bureau Federation

American Sheep Industry

American Forage and Grassland Council

National Association of Conservation Districts

National Cattlemen's Beef Association

Soil and Water Conservation Society

The goal and purpose of this initiative is to ensure that technical assistance in proper grassland management is continued and enhanced.

For more information about grazing management, contact your state's Grazing Lands Coalition or local USDA Service Center.

Maps | Newsletters | Site Map | Subscribe to the Print Edition | Traffic | Wireless Delivery

The Sacramento Bee
Life. Captured daily.

Advanced Search Enter Keywor

↑ Dow +108.96 | ↑ NASDAQ +17.14 | ↑ NYSE +4.54 |

| News | Sports | Business | Politics | Opinion | Entertainment | Lifestyle | Travel | Women | Classifieds | Homes | Cars | Jobs | Sh

Sacbee: / Business / Agriculture

Powered by: accessBee -- Internet fo

Sections:
- 24-Hour Business News
- 24-Hour State Business News
- 24-Hour Technology News
- Wall Street Journal
- Careers/Find a Job
- Agriculture
- Autos
- Calendar
- Personal Finance
- Real Estate - Commercial
- Small Business
- Technology

Business AGRICULTURE

It's the -- goat -- cheese

Sloughhouse family taps into growing niche

By Cathleen Ferraro and Clint Swett -- Bee Staff Writers
Published 5:30 a.m. PDT Tuesday, November 20, 2001

Linda Mitchell and her son Wayne give their goats a treat of weeping willow leaves at their Sloughhouse farm. They raise about 100 goats and milk 30 of them.

Sacramento Bee/Leilani Hu

The Mitchell family faced an unusual dilemma in the 1970s -- give up the goat they were raising or sell their Southern California home and keep the goat.

They dumped the house, a decision that has had long-lasting changes for the family and, many years later, inspired the launch of a family-run goat cheese business, Mitchell's Melody Dairy.

Today, the small company in Sloughhouse is one of about 15 goat-cheese makers in California -- and the only such producer in Sacramento County.

These companies are finding growing demand for their product and increasing competition from experienced European cheese makers that have aggressively sought market share.

The Mitchell family -- Linda and Rowe and their six adult children -- started raising goats in the early 1970s while living in Simi Valley, outside Los Angeles. The inspiration was more novelty than business: Oldest son Rowe Jr. wanted to enter a goat in 4-H competition at the Ventura County Fair.

CURRENT TOP NE
The Sacram

Farmers feel c on pollution
TULARE -- No one can recall exactly California Legislat specifically exemp machines from sm more than 30 yea state water pollut granted farmers 2 waivers on rules t and streams free

Almond mark
Almond growers C Manhart and Joe M have done withou devastating frost i They lost sizable s crop, as did score almond farmers ir Sacramento Valle

Making A Diff Room to grow
In a remote corne High School camp unlikely oasis, a r the poverty and u that plague much surrounding comn

Gray skies clea cherry farmer
The ugly black clo unseasonably hea pelting hail had th this week.

Growers asses damage from s
Jim Culbertson wa a cherry orchard c on Tuesday morni what he didn't see

At the time, they were boarding the goat, named Melody, at a neighbor's house. But when the neighbor decided to move out of Southern California, the family had to decide what to do.

They opted to sell their home and move to the Sacramento area where Linda's sister had found a Sloughhouse ranch that could accommodate everyone.

Soon, Rowe Sr. landed a job as a computer engineer at Aerojet. Linda occasionally drove a school bus and the five Mitchell sons and one Mitchell daughter all continued to raise goats.

Over the years, they sometimes took on sheep, steers and horses, too, but it was the goats that stayed constant on the ranch.

Today, the Mitchells raise 100 goats and milk about 30 for their budding cheese business.

They have tapped into a trend that began in 1979 when Laura Chenel launched a Sonoma business, Laura Chenel's Chevre (French for "goat cheese"). The field began -- and has remained -- an industry where women predominantly own and operate small production shops.

By the late 1980s, as Americans' palates grew more sophisticated, Canadian and Israeli companies were exporting their goat cheese to the United States.

The French already had been shipping their goat cheese to America for years. But a few firms took things a step further in the 1990s and set up cheese plants in Wisconsin, Pennsylvania and California.

European firms with brand names such as Bresse Bleu, Fleur de Lait and Couturier started buying American goat milk to sustain their cheese production here.

Today, about 100 licensed goat-cheese makers operate throughout the United States, according to the American Dairy Goat Association, with most production clustered in Vermont, Wisconsin, California and Virginia.

"Goat cheese is one small part of the evolution, an awakening or broadening in the U.S. of healthier ways to eat," said Chenel. "We eat better bread, better vegetables that we didn't know about 30 years ago that were common in other countries. ... It's all connected."

Breaking into the goat-cheese industry can be difficult because technical information is often scarce and scattered.

"The goat-cheese market is still considered an alternative form of agriculture," said Judy Schad, vice president of the Louisville-based American Cheese Society. "You can't just call a local university and say, 'Show me how to make goat cheese,' or 'Give me the specifics on animal management.' The technical expertise is just not there in any codified system."

So getting into the field typically comes down to making dozens of phone calls to goat herders wanting to sell an animal, or traveling abroad to study the craft, or apprenticing under a domestic goat-cheese maker willing to share the

No trial in far death
A Yolo County jud refused to order a Woodland-area gr of involuntary ma the death of a far

Housing aid a farm laborers
The state budget wiped out $3 milli for a farm worker program, putting plans for an apart for farm workers.

Valley lawmak show wine cau on trip to Eur
WASHINGTON -- winemakers are fl political muscle in week, thanks to s hopping Central V congressmen.

Editorial: Far smog
For 26 years, carr struggled to ratch smog-forming che spewing from tail years, businesses from big oil refine corner dry cleane furniture makers t companies -- hav required to install effective pollution devices. For 26 ye counties have scr meet clean-air sta avoid loss of fede funds.

Global compet imperils farm
The chief source c anxiety in Californ the question of wh irrigation water su dry before the las of farmland is con suburbia's sprawl.

knowledge.

The Mitchells started dabbling in specialty cheese production about four years ago, after a fellow goat breeder at the California State Fair encouraged Linda Mitchell to try making goat cheese.

She took that suggestion to heart and eventually completed two classes in cheese making at California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo.

Now most Thursdays Linda Mitchell and 32-year-old son Wayne Mitchell can be found at Sacramento's Ormonde Cheese and Food Co. on Fruitridge Road, mixing their cheeses that come in three flavors -- plain, garlic herb and mild green chile.

Ormonde pasteurizes the Mitchells' goat milk. Linda, most days, handles the addition of vegetable rennet, which makes the cheese coagulate. She watches for the rising curd and drains off the extra whey matter.

The whole process takes about four hours each week and yields about 100 pounds of cheese from 125 gallons of goat milk.

For now, Mitchell's Melody Dairy sells its fresh cheese only at four local farmers' markets -- three in Sacramento and one in Davis.

"We want to stay small. ... We don't want to get too big, too fast," Linda Mitchell said.

So far, sales have been up and down at the Sloughhouse company since debuting two years ago. That uneven pattern, Linda Mitchell , mostly mirrors the attendance levels at local farmers' markets.

Meanwhile, the company has yet to make a profit.

With the aim of reversing that trend, Mitchell's Melody hopes to secure its first traditional retail client sometime next year.

Goat cheese, naturally, will be the main attraction. But the local small business also expects to

offer its latest product the Mitchells hope will become just as irresistible to consumers hooked on goat cheese -- goat milk soap.

About the Reporter

The Bee's Cathleen Ferraro can be reached at (916) 321-1043 or **cferraro@sacbee.com** .

Contact Us/Feedback | Privacy Policy | Terms of Use

News | Sports | Business | Politics | Opinion | Entertainment | Lifestyle | Travel | Women

Cars | Classifieds | Homes | Jobs | Shopping

Help | Maps | Newsletters | Site Map | Subscribe to the Print Edition | Traffic | Wireless Delivery

About Us | Advertise in The Bee | Advertise Online | Contact Circulation Customer Service | Events

[Sacramento Bee Web sites]

MovieClub.com | Sacbee.com | Sacramento.com

Copyright © The Sacramento Bee / ver. 4

March 2001

Small Acreage Options

Paul Dietman

University of Wisconsin Extension

Sauk County Agricultural Agent

Farmstead Dairy Processing

Facing increasingly volatile milk prices, some small-scale dairy farmers--and large-scale dairy producers, for that matter--have considered on-farm processing as a way of moving up a link on the food chain to capture a larger percentage of the retail dollar. A farmstead dairy processing conference a group of us put together in Wisconsin in November 1999 attracted more than 250 people who were interested in exploring this option.

There are a number of dairy products that could be produced from cow, goat, or sheep milk in an on-farm processing facility. Cheese and bottled milk are the most common but yogurt, cheese curds, or even kefir, a fermented milk product popular in parts of the Middle East, are other possibilities. (In this article we won't discuss Kumiss, a potent fermented drink made from mare's milk which originated in northern Russia).

On-farm processing is not easy. It requires some highly specialized technical skills in addition to marketing savvy. The regulations governing dairy processing are quite strict. The capital outlay to build and equip a processing facility can run to hundreds of thousands of dollars. It takes time to build the market for farm-processed products; it might be years before all of the herd's production can be sold as farm-processed products. However, a dairy farmer who is able to make it over or around all of these hurdles will find that there is the potential to make a respectable profit selling value-added dairy products.

As with almost any non-commodity farm product, a good place to start is by researching the market potential for your products. There is no sense in going any further if there isn't a strong probability that the market is just waiting for your product to land on the shelf. Market assessment is extraordinarily important with processed dairy products because this business is going to take a large investment of time and money. Also, the products are perishable so must be sold quickly. The products usually can't be held in storage while waiting for a market to develop.

Check with your state's food safety regulatory agency to get the relevant regulations governing the type of processing you would like to do. In Wisconsin, talk to the folks in the Division of Food Safety at the Department of Agriculture. In addition to regulations pertaining to the processing facility, food safety staff can also give you details about any technical training requirements you will have to meet. For example, you will have to complete a pasteurization course to operate a milk pasteurizer on your farm. Another example: Under current Wisconsin law, a person has to complete an 18-month apprenticeship before he or she can make cheese for retail sale (although the WI Department of Agriculture is currently working to relax that rule for farmers making cheese exclusively from their own milk).

It is also a good idea to check with your town or county zoning administrator, particularly if you are considering having an on-farm retail store. Some places may require that part of the farm be zoned commercial or that a conditional use permit be obtained in order to operate.

If you are thinking of bottling milk for retail sale, find out how the Federal Milk Marketing Order will affect your operation. Here in Federal Order 30, a dairy farmer who bottles and sells his or her own milk is classified as a "producer-handler" and is no longer a "producer." The good news is that a producer-handler

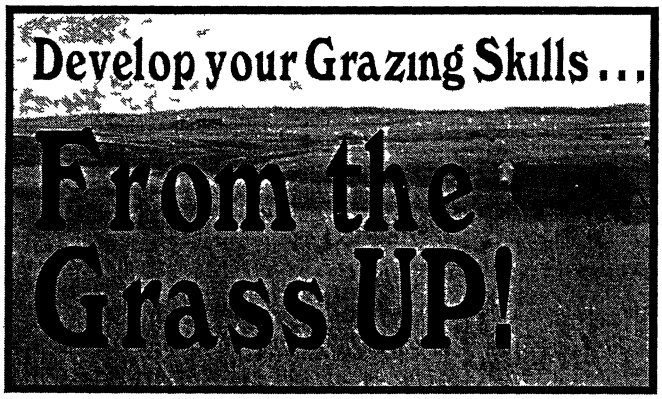
does not have to share with the rest of the pool the (Class I) premium he or she gets for their bottled milk. The bad news is, if the farmer is still selling a portion of their milk as Class III to a plant that participates in the pool, that milk cannot be pooled and thus, is not eligible for a share of the pool's Class I premiums. The plant can essentially pay any price it wants to pay for that milk. You need to negotiate terms with your current plant before you start bottling.

Equipment can be another challenge for the on-farm processor. Smaller-scale equipment tends to be hard to find and relatively expensive. It could easily cost $50,000-$300,000 to set up a basic processing facility, depending on the products to be produced and whether or not the farmer is able to find some used equipment.

There are creative ways to work around some of the regulations and capital costs. Several groups of dairy producers are working with local independent cheese plants to have their milk made into cheese carrying their own label. They are avoiding the apprenticeship requirement, the capital cost, and the time it takes to develop expertise in cheese-making. Instead, they are focusing their efforts on selling the product. There is a dairy farm near Hayward, WI that is leasing cows to people in town and charging a per-gallon "boarding fee" when their leaseholders dip milk out of the bulk tank. It's legal; the milk belongs to the people leasing the cows.

Anecdotal evidence from people who are doing on-farm processing in the upper Midwest suggests that the per hundredweight equivalent price for cows' milk is from $15 to $30 when the products are sold in the retail market. Of course, more labor and other costs are going into processing and marketing than in a conventional dairy operation. However, it appears likely that a producer could get a reasonable return on the investment if he or she does a good job of developing and satisfying their market.

There are some excellent resources available if you would like to explore on-farm processing a bit further. Dr. Gary Frank from the University of Wisconsin-Madison's Center for Dairy Profitability has put together a very helpful decision aid spreadsheet: FarmSTead MILK Processing (FSTMILKP.xls), which is available for free downloading from the Center's website (www.wisc.edu/dairy-profit). The Small Dairy Resource Book: Information sources for farmstead producers and processors by Vicki Dunaway is available from the Sustainable Agriculture Network. Some information from the conference I mentioned above, including a videotape of the presentations, are available from Norm Monsen at the Wisconsin Department of Agriculture (800) 942-2474.



EDITOR S NOTE If you are just starting MiG or want a good review of the basics this column is for you!

Top 10 Mistakes of New Graziers

by Paul Daigle

10 Did not remove all the old worn out fencing and replace it with new superior products Many farmers struggle with old rusty worn out fences The worst is electrified barbed wire that causes more shorts and voltage drop problems than any thing else

Old interior fences that are in the way to properly manage your pastures must also be removed

I encourage the use of decent fences especially perimeter fences Buy quality high tensile fencing products that will last for decades

The name of the game is labor efficiency and flexibility If your old system slows you down or does not work replace it

9 Buy inferior products that don t last In the effort to save a buck many people buy poor qual ity fencing watering products and poor quality seed and seed mixes Many of these products are either hard to work with or break down in a couple of years Seek out the names of high quali ty grazing products from other graziers

You may spend a few more bucks initially but it will save you time and money down the road Remember you are setting this grazing system up to save time w ll e s me ddit l money In this case it pays to spend a little more to make more in the long run—do it right the first time

8 Failure to believe that good management will improve the quality and quantity of the pasture Too many people are looking for the secret recipe when it takes long term commitment and management to create and maintain high quality pastures High quality pastures don t just happen They are the result of years of excellent management not weeks or months or some secret seed mix or some magic fertilizer

7 Believe plowing will improve a pasture Refer to number eight In some cases frost seeding interseeding or reseeding a pasture may help to improve the species of plants that are present in a paddock but it is long term management that will determine what a pasture will look like five or ten years down the road

6 Did not commit an ade quate amount of the best land to grazing Too many people decide to graze but decide they are only going to try a few acres If you study the grass growth curves for the growing season you should realize grass does not grow at a constant rate through out the grazing season Flexibility is the key

Fence in the largest acreage that is feasible mechanically har vest excess growth early in the y d l t th li to k g e more acres late in the grazing season thereby extending your days on grass

5 Spend lots of money on Silver Bullet grasses and legumes No doubt about it there are many better grass and legume varieties to choose from than there were ten years ago Too many people look for that perfect plant for the whole farm and there are plenty of people willing to sell you that perfect seed

In general seed down new fields with late maturing varieties of grasses and legumes that grow on your soils in your climate Again consult other graziers Don t seed your farm down to all of one seed or seed mix Strive to achieve diversity amongst your pastures but not too much with in Now refer back to number eight

4 Failure to properly man age the fertility of your pas tures Refer to number eight again A good fertility manage ment program is needed to grow high quality pastures and to even out the growth curve of pastures especially when starting out graz ing Take advantage of all farm sources of fertility whenever pos sible Manure is the cheapest source of fertilizer you have so manage it properly

> *Manure is the cheapest source of fertilizer you have, so manage it properly*

Whether you are getting your fertility from on farm manure and/or compost sources buying commercial fertilizer having legumes provide nitrogen or whatever strategy you depend on be sure that fertility management is part of your management plan

Also be aware that small fre quent applications are more ben eficial than large single season applications of fertilizer espe cially nitrogen

One more thing to watch is excess nutrient buildup

By buying outside sources of commercial fertilizer or feed you are bringing extra fertility on to your farm Make sure that phos phorus and potassium do not build to excessive levels

Remember with good grazing management manure is being applied at a fairly even rate over your pastures and that after three to five years the manure applied by the grazing livestock will meet the needs of the plant for the most part

3 Failure to plan for a decent lane system on dairy farms Ninety percent of the time you can get away with having poor quality lanes but it is that ten percent of the time that is the killer

When your pasture manage ment is dictated by the condition of your lanes you need to spend a few bucks on building some decent lanes for your cows Sooner or later if you don t have good lanes your pasture manage ment will suffer because you can not get your cows out to the pas ture that needs to be grazed

With good lanes I have seen some graziers get nearly a month earlier start on the grazing sea son because they do not have to wait for the mud in their lanes to dry in the spring The same goes at the other end of the calendar when there are beautiful fields of grass ready but the lanes are too muddy and the lanes do not dry off any more that late in the year I have also seen cows not on pas tures in the middle of the summer because we received five to ten inches of rain in the last week and all the cows are belly deep in mud

One of the reasons people graze is that it is hard to put up high quality stored feeds If your cows cannot get to high quality pasture you are no better off than before you were grazing

2 Failure to plan and imple ment a smooth and efficient transition to a grazing system A new grazier must have a plan to succeed This includes a grazing plan on how the system including lanes water and fencing will be installed and how the pastures will be managed Equally impor tant is a business plan which lays out a successful financial pro gram on how the business will be

implemented and run

If the transition to a grass based livestock system is drawn out the efficiencies of the system are never realized and you may end up with more work If you are transitioning from an existing conventional setup this is espe cially true You may end up just adding another hour to your day if you fail to fully implement your plan and you get stuck between two systems and all your old baggage

If you truly believe in the sys tem and believe you have the skills to implement it DO IT NOW

1 The number one mistake made by new and *experienced* graziers is the failure to con tinue to learn the system It is critical to develop a grazing mindset You must continue to question everything continually improve on what you are doing so you can make the most cost effective decisions possible Many new graziers come to one or just a few pasture walks or meetings and they think they know it all This is probably the biggest mistake you can make

Good grazing is an art as well as a science and it takes many years to learn Granted some basic pasture walks become rep etitious but there are usually a few tips to pick up and the small discussions that take place among graziers at the walks always provide new ideas Advanced grass series are sure to make you think while confer ences book magazines and the Internet are also great places to continue the learning process

At the end of your career don t end up with one year of experi ence thirty times end up with a full thirty years of experience ■

Paul Daigle is a Conservation Specialist for the Marathon County (Wisconsin) Land Conservation Department

Management-Intensive Grazing An Overview

by Will Lathrop and Brian Freking

POTEAU Oklahoma Livestock producers can be viewed as grass farmers They produce the best quality and quantity of forage on a piece of land and har vest the forage with livestock The level of productivity depends not only on how much forage is pro duced but how efficiently it is harvested

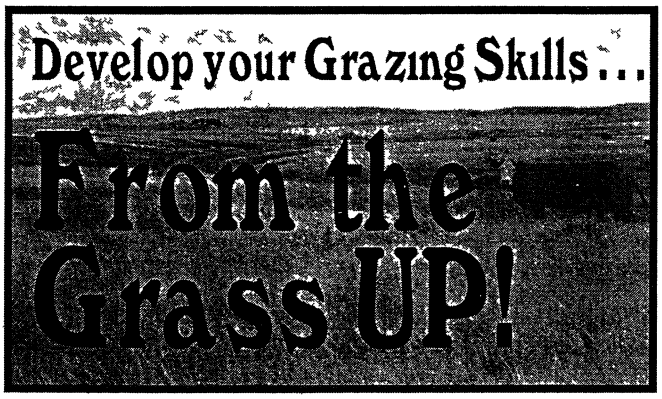
Grazing animals select the most desirable plants and avoid others Controlled grazing is the process of moving a herd of live stock from one paddock to anoth er and allowing each paddock a period of rest before it is grazed again This approach to grazing is also known as rotational or man agement intensive grazing Emphasis is placed on manage ment rather than the system or its components This form of grazing management is gaining popularity because of the need to increase production efficiency to cover the high cost of land labor and operating expenses

Compared to continuous graz ing which is the most widely practiced approach controlled grazing requires a higher level of management The efficiency of the grazing system depends on the amount of time labor and money invested in it

Changing from continuous to controlled grazing allows live stock producers to (1) increase stocking rates (2) extend the grazing season (3) increase nutrient recycling (4) decrease labor and (5) improve animal health and potentially lower para site loads

The management of a con trolled grazing system revolves around the period of rest plants receive during the growing sea son During the rest period plants are allowed to recover from grazing and produce new growth The length of rest varies with season and forage species and is based upon the amount of aboveground growth (residual dry matter) remaining in the pasture after the animals are removed ■

From The Kerr Center for Sustainable Agriculture



EDITOR S NOTE If you are just starting MiG or want a good review of the basics this column is for you!

Top 10 Mistakes of New Graziers

by Paul Daigle

10 Did not remove all the old worn out fencing and replace it with new superior products Many farmers struggle with old rusty worn out fences The worst is electrified barbed wire that causes more shorts and voltage drop problems than any thing else

Old interior fences that are in the way to properly manage your pastures must also be removed

I encourage the use of decent fences especially perimeter fences Buy quality high tensile fencing products that will last for decades

The name of the game is labor efficiency and flexibility If your old system slows you down or does not work replace it

9 Buy inferior products that don t last In the effort to save a buck many people buy poor qual ity fencing watering products and poor quality seed and seed mixes Many of these products are either hard to work with or break down in a couple of years Seek out the names of high quali ty grazing products from other graziers

You may spend a few more bucks initially but it will save you time and money down the road Remember you are setting this grazing system up to save time as well as earn some additional money In this case it pays to spend a little more to make more in the long run—do it right the first time

8 Failure to believe that good management will improve the quality and quantity of the pasture Too many people are looking for the secret recipe when it takes long term commitment and management to create and maintain high quality pastures High quality pastures don t just happen They are the result of years of excellent management not weeks or months or some secret seed mix or some magic fertilizer

7 Believe plowing will improve a pasture Refer to number eight In some cases frost seeding interseeding or reseeding a pasture may help to improve the species of plants that are present in a paddock but it is long term management that will determine what a pasture will look like five or ten years down the road

6 Did not commit an ade quate amount of the best land to grazing Too many people decide to graze but decide they are only going to try a few acres If you study the grass growth curves for the growing season you should realize grass does not grow at a constant rate through out the grazing season Flexibility is the key

Fence in the largest acreage that is feasible mechanically har vest excess growth early in the year and let the livestock graze more acres late in the grazing season thereby extending your days on grass

5 Spend lots of money on Silver Bullet grasses and legumes No doubt about it there are many better grass and legume varieties to choose from than there were ten years ago Too many people look for that perfect plant for the whole farm and there are plenty of people willing to sell you that perfect seed

In general seed down new fields with late maturing varieties of grasses and legumes that grow on your soils in your climate Again consult other graziers Don t seed your farm down to all of one seed or seed mix Strive to achieve diversity amongst your pastures but not too much with in Now refer back to number eight

4 Failure to properly man age the fertility of your pas tures Refer to number eight again A good fertility manage ment program is needed to grow high quality pastures and to even out the growth curve of pastures especially when starting out graz ing Take advantage of all farm sources of fertility whenever pos sible Manure is the cheapest source of fertilizer you have so manage it properly

> *"Manure is the cheapest source of fertilizer you have, so manage it properly"*

Whether you are getting your fertility from on farm manure and/or compost sources buying commercial fertilizer having legumes provide nitrogen or whatever strategy you depend on be sure that fertility management is part of your management plan

Also be aware that small fre quent applications are more ben eficial than large single season applications of fertilizer espe cially nitrogen

One more thing to watch is excess nutrient buildup

By buying outside sources of commercial fertilizer or feed you are bringing extra fertility on to your farm Make sure that phos phorus and potassium do not build to excessive levels

Remember with good grazing management manure is being applied at a fairly even rate over your pastures and that after three to five years the manure applied by the grazing livestock will meet the needs of the plant for the most part

3 Failure to plan for a decent lane system on dairy farms Ninety percent of the time you can get away with having poor quality lanes but it is that ten percent of the time that is the killer

When your pasture manage ment is dictated by the condition of your lanes you need to spend a few bucks on building some decent lanes for your cows Sooner or later if you don t have good lanes your pasture manage ment will suffer because you can not get your cows out to the pas ture that needs to be grazed

With good lanes I have seen some graziers get nearly a month earlier start on the grazing sea son because they do not have to wait for the mud in their lanes to dry in the spring The same goes at the other end of the calendar when there are beautiful fields of grass ready but the lanes are too muddy and the lanes do not dry off any more that late in the year I have also seen cows not on pas tures in the middle of the summer because we received five to ten inches of rain in the last week and all the cows are belly deep in mud

One of the reasons people graze is that it is hard to put up high quality stored feeds If your cows cannot get to high quality pasture you are no better off than before you were grazing

2 Failure to plan and imple ment a smooth and efficient transition to a grazing system A new grazier must have a plan to succeed This includes a grazing plan on how the system including lanes water and fencing will be installed and how the pastures will be managed Equally impor tant is a business plan which lays out a successful financial pro gram on how the business will be

implemented and run

If the transition to a grass based livestock system is drawn out the efficiencies of the system are never realized and you may end up with more work If you are transitioning from an existing conventional setup this is espe cially true You may end up just adding another hour to your day if you fail to fully implement your plan and you get stuck between two systems and all your old baggage

If you truly believe in the sys tem and believe you have the skills to implement it DO IT NOW

1 The number one mistake made by new and *experienced* graziers is the failure to con tinue to learn the system It is critical to develop a grazing mindset You must continue to question everything continually improve on what you are doing so you can make the most cost effective decisions possible Many new graziers come to one or just a few pasture walks or meetings and they think they know it all This is probably the biggest mistake you can make

Good grazing is an art as well as a science and it takes many years to learn Granted some basic pasture walks become rep etitious but there are usually a few tips to pick up and the small discussions that take place among graziers at the walks always provide new ideas Advanced grass series are sure to make you think while confer ences book magazines and the Internet are also great places to continue the learning process

At the end of your career don t end up with one year of experi ence thirty times end up with a full thirty years of experience ■

Paul Daigle is a Conservation Specialist for the Marathon County (Wisconsin) Land Conservation Department

Management-Intensive Grazing An Overview

by Will Lathrop and Brian Freking

POTEAU Oklahoma Livestock producers can be viewed as grass farmers They produce the best quality and quantity of forage on a piece of land and har vest the forage with livestock The level of productivity depends not only on how much forage is pro duced but how efficiently it is harvested

Grazing animals select the most desirable plants and avoid others Controlled grazing is the process of moving a herd of live stock from one paddock to anoth er and allowing each paddock a period of rest before it is grazed again This approach to grazing is also known as rotational or man agement intensive grazing Emphasis is placed on manage ment rather than the system or its components This form of grazing management is gaining popularity because of the need to increase production efficiency to cover the high cost of land labor and operating expenses

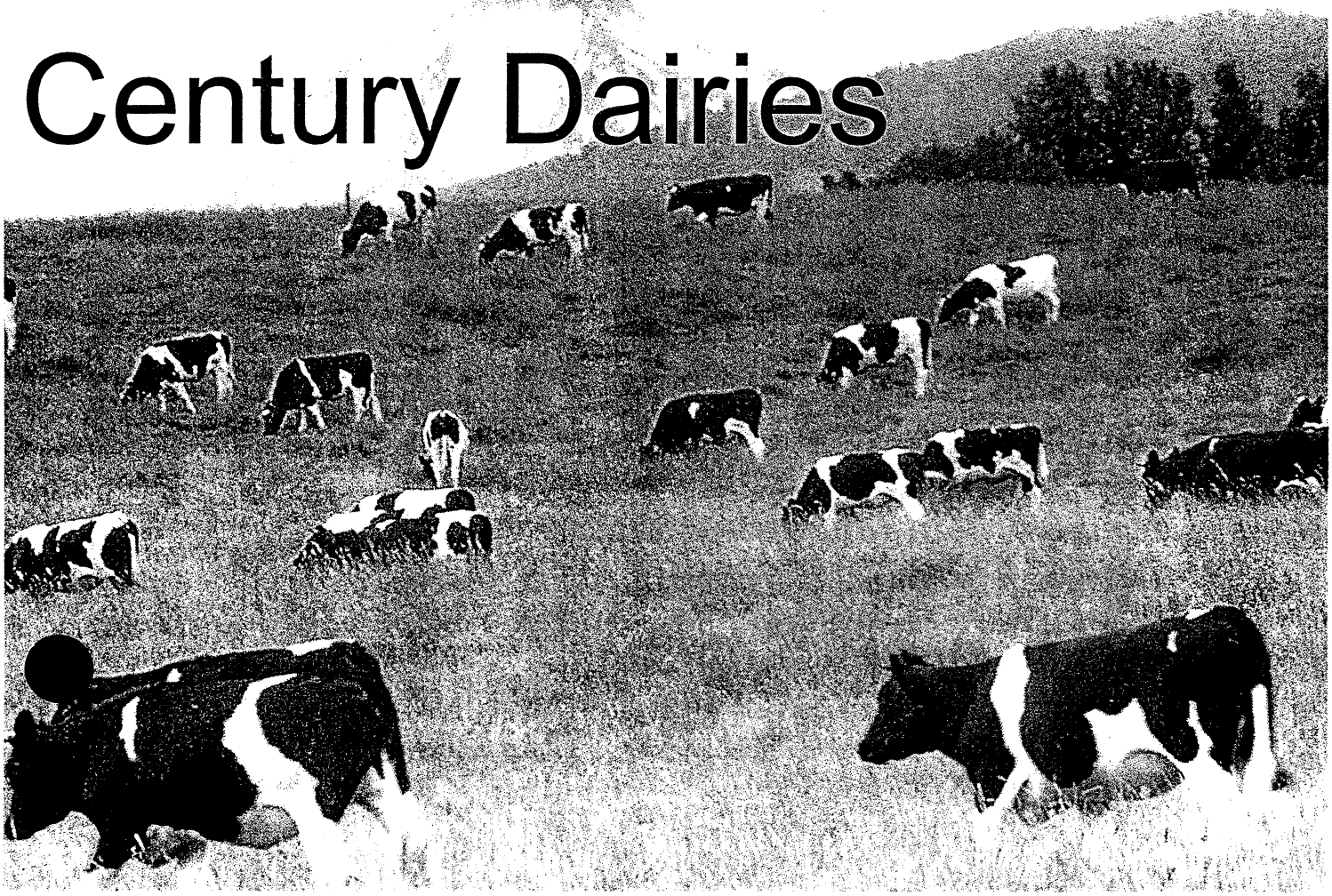
Compared to continuous graz ing which is the most widely practiced approach controlled grazing requires a higher level of management The efficiency of the grazing system depends on the amount of time labor and money invested in it

Changing from continuous to controlled grazing allows live stock producers to (1) increase stocking rates (2) extend the grazing season (3) increase nutrient recycling (4) decrease labor and (5) improve animal health and potentially lower para site loads

The management of a con trolled grazing system revolves around the period of rest plants receive during the growing sea son During the rest period plants are allowed to recover from grazing and produce new growth The length of rest varies with season and forage species and is based upon the amount of aboveground growth (residual dry matter) remaining in the pasture after the animals are removed ■

From The Kerr Center for Sustainable Agriculture

Trends for 21st Century Dairies



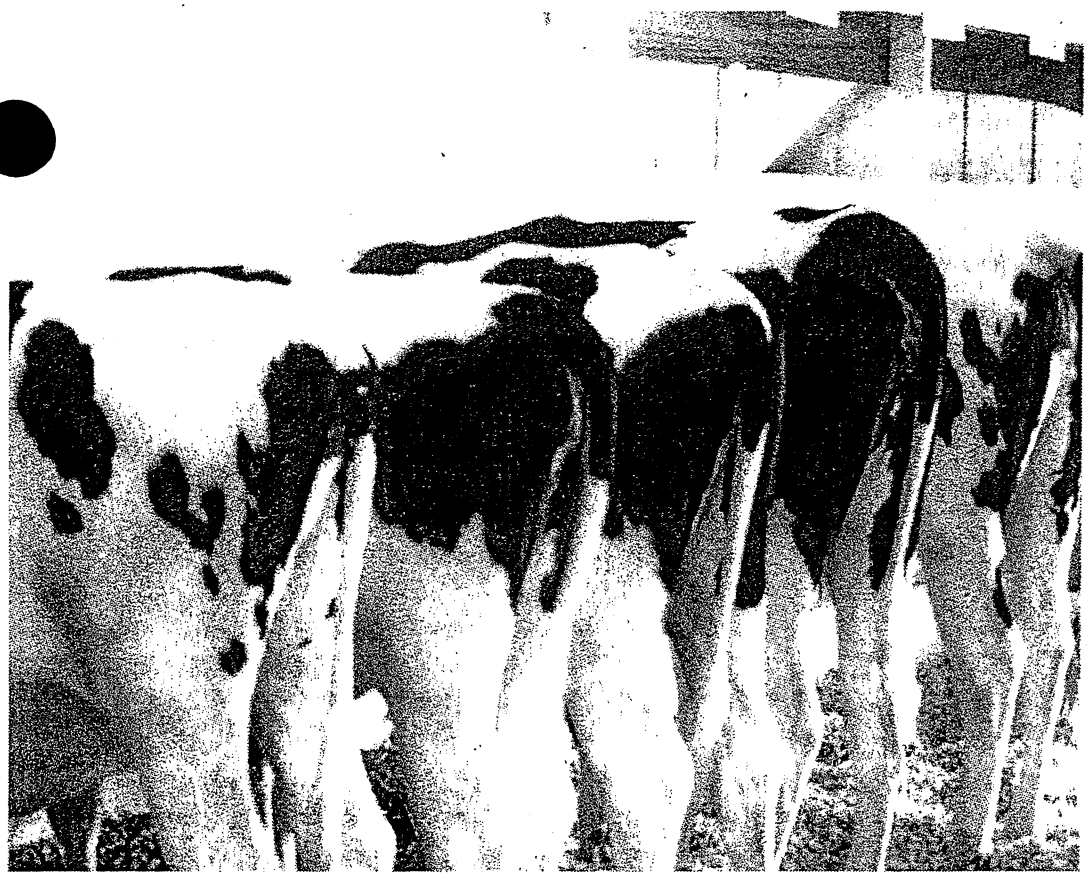
by Barbara Berst

When the dairy industry evolved from 19th century grass-fed local herds to centrally distributed dairy factories, the change crept in slowly at first. But postwar industrial agriculture appeared promising, and sped the desire for change. Old-time pastures of yesterday seemed something to easily toss aside for bigger and better.

But the dairy industry is evolving still, and there are new trends to look for as the 21st century replaces the 20th. Perhaps surprisingly, the new successful dairies appear to resemble—in many ways—those of the 19th century, as though the industrial era is something to now leap-frog over as we return home. But there is a difference. The new, often small and local dairy of a coming new society is based not on simply not knowing another way, but now on scientific facts that prove which is best among many choices. The new dairy's customers—the driving force of any farm—no longer buy dairy products in any form they are handed. Today's customers know they have a choice, and they are purposely choosing a new form of dairy, even if it means higher prices for them to pay. Following are trends and niches in which more and more successful dairies are turning to in this new era. Each one that resembles those of the past has a new 21st century twist attached to it.

Allowing visitors

Long ago, humans may have taken for granted the kinship between themselves and the animals they partnered with to create agriculture 10,000 years ago. Yet even though fads have led humans from farms to cities many times, humans always return to the land again. Today, scientific evidence shows that pastoral scenes and the sight of grazing animals is healthful for humans. And savvy farmers are aware that these scenes draw customers in. Some new century dairies are adding visitors' elements to their farms to inspire a customer following and to add an enjoyable experience to their otherwise



lity dairy product. Citizens in high-tech century will be ng for technology's balancing parallel: nature-related experiences, and the dairy that allows them to get close to animals again will have a 'product' that no internet factory dairy delivery can compete with. This century may well offer more than just the occasional visitors' dairy.

Humane

The farmer of long ago may have hidden his sadness as he led his once prized cow, now too aged to contribute, off to the auction. He may have looked away as calves were hauled off for veal. But dairies of this new century must take note of a deep trend in humankind. Such feelings are now seen as form of human strength and superiority rather than weakness. Veal can be produced humanely, animals past their prime can be butchered anner that causes no fear n. This allows the farmer to both listen to his heart, and to add value to his product by letting his customers know how well his animals are treated, something not to be hidden anymore.

Small and Diversified

The old-time farms were once multi-faceted, with a dairy segment only part of the interwoven whole. The environmental movement that is sweeping the nation now sees the value in this type of system. The dairy farmer can reap benefits by diversifying, adding a strawberry field where a naturally fertile pasture is resting from grazing, adding a sweet corn field where the cows will graze the stocks in fall. U-picks of corn and strawberries draw in customers who see the well-treated cows, and this form of experience begins to create the type of customer appeal that distant corporations cannot compete with. And as far as size, the Trends Research Institute, founded by Gerald Celente who correctly predicted the 1987 stock market crash, the fall of the Soviet Union and corporate downsizing, has predicted this new century will be fed by a network of environmentally friendly small farms of 10 acres or less.

Specialty, locally flavored, or gourmet dairy products

Factory produced generic flavors found everywhere may always be a staple with customers. But people now also want the rare and the one-of-a-kind, the taste of regional or historical cuisine.

Diana McCown runs her five-acre goat dairy near Martell, NE. In a nation of dairy surplus, she sells everything she makes direct to local customers, and has even turned down offers by supermarkets to carry her product. Making feta cheese was part of her grandmother's Greek heritage, and Diana perfected her own version of Greek feta, touring cheese plants in Greece to compare tastes. She even grows the herbs for her cheeses

on her farm. As another example, boutique cheeses of the Pacific Northwest may be flavored with smoked salmon and other west coast flavors. Every region and every ethnic background can produce its own one-of-a-kind recipe. Wineries, farmers' markets, and gourmet shops are just some of the outlets specially flavored dairy products are successfully sold.

Offering dairy animal products besides milk

Besides adding other crops, dairies of the new century can cash in on the booming home gardening industry, which is currently forecast by Gerald Celente as being only in its adolescent stage, predicted to grow tremendously into the future. Composted manure bagged for gardeners creates a popular product that can be sold direct from the farm, at farmers' markets, and road-side stands. Surplus milk from any dairy animal, or 'weedy' milk from goats can be created into non-perishable products sold as a sideline, if not the main source of income. Karen Cross and Ardena Lonien of Oregon experimented with goat milk soap recipes until they created a perfect bar, which began the "Caprine Essence" soap business that now supplies 10 states. Milk has been a valuable cosmetic ingredient for centuries, and now the natural cosmetic trend has boosted its popularity even further.

Naturally and specially fed herds, including pasture, organic feed, flaxseed and herbs.

Customers are now choosing the taste of, and the knowledge that, the animal products they are eating come from sunshine, sweet grasses and herbs. More and more customers are demanding products produced without hormones, routine antibiotics, and pesticides. Further, new studies, such as research from the University of Manitoba, show that both grass fed and flaxseed fed dairy products contain a higher amount of healthy Omega-3 fatty acids, the oil found most often in cold water fish. Dairies are now touting this research for their Omega-3 enriched products.

Raw and fermented

When a high school science teacher compared store-bought milk with milk purchased straight from a barn-milked udder, he and his students found quite a surprise under the microscope. The store-bought milk was swarming with bacteria, and that fresh from the udder was clean. Now, a new book entitled Nourishing Traditions, by Sally Fallon, explains the enormous research that shows both the cleanliness potential and the health virtues of consuming milk raw or fermented, and direct from the farm as humankind has done up until the last couple of hundred years. In most states, raw milk is illegal. But Sunland Farm of Loveland, Colorado, operates a community supported agriculture farm with a dairy element, and found a legal way to offer raw milk by allowing their customers to buy 'shares' in the dairy herd. As with all community supported agriculture, subscribers essentially buy 'shares' in the farm. In the case of the dairy segment, share holders signed a contract to a share in the dairy herd, paying a boarding fee to cover feed, staffing, and herd health. This entitles the customer to one gallon of milk a week.

According to Fallon, when milk wasn't consumed raw, it was always fermented in some form, making its nutrients even more readily available to humans. Fermented products from yogurt to kefir, freshly fermented on the farm, are catching on in favor of commercial yogurts that have sometimes been repasteurized after fermenting, killing the beneficial bacteria.

Milk from animals other than cows

According to the Minnesota Extension Service, as the last century was coming to a close, Americans imported close to 20 million pounds of sheep cheese annually, yet sheep dairies in America are rare. As well, more people drink the milk of goats worldwide than from any other animal, and goat milk is catching on more in America. Modern studies show that goat milk protein is closer in chemical composition to human milk than that in cow's milk. Further, it's been found by cattle ranchers that goats can pasture quite well right along with cows. The forage they eat tends to be the weeds disliked by the cows, therefore actually providing more grass for the cows. Networking among dairy goatsmen is providing more and more ways to keep goat milk tasting sweet, in spite of nibblings from weeds and cedar trees. One goat dairy woman found that the taste was off only after a sudden change in diet, then the sweetness returned in spite of the diversity of bark and brambles the goats were eating.

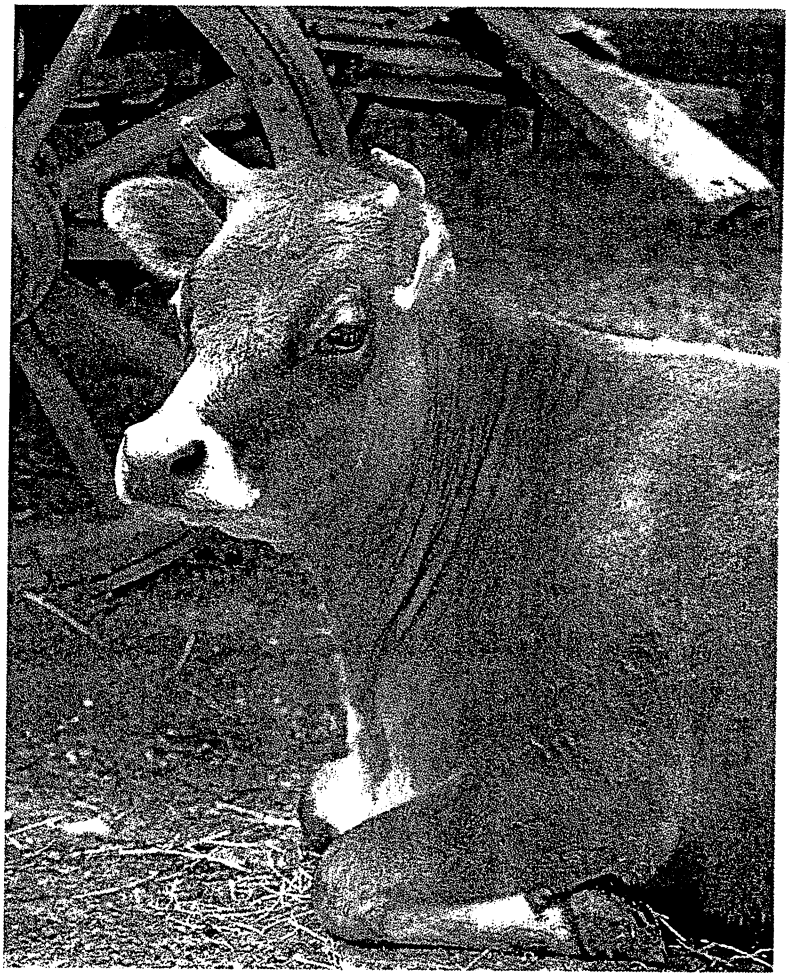
Direct delivery/glass bottles

Home milk delivery in glass appears to be making a comeback. A 21st century trend for humans to get everything from their laundry to their weekly groceries home delivered feeds this trend somewhat. But so does the trend to protect the environment and to get a higher quality product than the factory fed

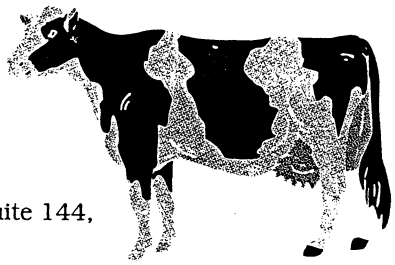
20th century citizen had to put up with. In that era, glass milk bottles almost disappeared in the 1970s. But when Elmhurst Dairy of Jamaica, NY, reintroduced glass bottles 1990, more than 3000 customers signed up for service. Harriet Cullen, general manager of Elmhurst home-delivery division, feels nostalgia plays a part in customer preference, with people remembering the fresh taste of milk in glass. But nostalgia, environmental benefits and fresh taste are just part of the appeal. Munroe Dairy of East Providence, RI, has been delivering milk to homes since 1881. Surveys from this farm found that the convenience of home delivery was the top reason for buying milk from this dairy.

Serving only those who sincerely desire dairy products.

The 20th century war continues between the group who insists all humans should consume dairy products daily, and its opposition which says dairy causes allergies and cannot be tolerated by adults. When the dust settles in this new century, it will become more widely known that many groups of people, including those of Northern European decent, developed a survival mutation years ago to adapt to their herds' milk as a source of food. Further, when dairy is organic, fresh and fermented, its digestibility improves for all who consume it. This will certainly leave a large number (even though not all) of humans who will demand dairy products. The ones who serve this group the best, by invitation with superior products rather than force-fed ad campaigns, will surely be the ones to come out successful in the end.



Resources:



Nourishing Traditions
by Sally Fallon
Copyright 1995
ProMotion Publishing,
3368 F. Governor Drive, Suite 144,
San Diego, CA 92122

Trends 2000
How to Prepare for and Profit from the Changes in the 21st Century
by Gerald Celente
Copyright 1997
Warner Books, Inc.,
1271 Avenue of the Americas,
New York, NY 10020

Free Farmed Certification
Beef and dairy products labeling program for farms that treat their farm animals in accordance with the American Humane Association standards.
www.freefarmed.org

Robinson Defines the New Paradigm for Meat and Milk Research

›taff Report

ATLANTA Georgia Jo Robinson ıutrition maven and author of **The Omega Diet** told attendees of ›GF's Grassfed Meat and Milk onference that most animal scien istists don t seem to think there is ı connection between what they eed animals and human health

She said Land Grant Universities were researching the feeding of ırban garbage and stale chewing ›um (still in the wrapper) to dairy ows She said the USDA Meat Animal Research Center has researched the feeding of poultry manure and chicken feathers to eedlot beef animals

I am here to propose a new paradigm for animal researchers One f it s in their feed it s in our food Two if it s in our food it s affecting ›ur health. The new paradigm is we what our animals eat she said She said Americans currently a gross imbalance of Omega 6 o Omega 3 fatty acids This was largely due to the feeding of wilted orages and grain to dairy cows and to the wide spread practice of grain finishing beef

She said research on people who had at least one heart attack and were put on a high Omega 3 diet showed a 70 percent decline in mortality These same people also showed a 61 percent reduction in cancer deaths

She said Omega 3 is the most important brain fat High Omega 3 diets have also been found to be effective in treating depression

She said grass feeding increased the Omega 3 level in ruminants and in the eggs of pastured poultry and in the meat of pastured hogs as well

In ruminants you also get CLA in addition to the Omega 3 fatty acids She said research in France found a 76 percent reduction in breast can cer from women who ate a diet high in CLA

Currently the USA has the least amount of CLA in its diet of any country in the world However this is a relatively recent phenomenon

Robinson said that in 1947 when she was born 70 percent of all the beef eaten in the United States was from grassfed animals "We don t need artificial designer food We just need to get it back to where it was We want to eat what is normal and natural

She said the Omega 3 fatty acid was extremely volatile and rapidly dissipated if exposed to air This is why hay and wilted silages are low in Omega 3 fatty acids and cannot replicate the healthy meats and milk of direct grazed pasture

She said in addition to lower Omega 3 and CLA levels confine ment-fed animals also show lower levels of Beta-carotene and Vitamin E as well

TVA IS THE LATEST HEALTH DISCOVERY

Robinson said recently a new fat was discovered in ruminant animals called TVA. TVA is a precursor of CLA and while the human cannot make CLA it can convert TVA into CLA internally She said TVA like CLA was much higher in grassfed ruminants as well

The bottom line is that we are getting more CLA from grassfed products than the laboratory has been showing she said

Currently there are 25 patents on how to increase the CLA per centage in confinement fed cows She said it was going to take a pretty educated public to understand the CLA story because soon every one is going to be touting that their product has it As a result she said grassfed producers needed to talk about the "whole of natural production rather than just about CLA

She said grassfed producers need to continually hammer home the natural aspect of what they are doing She said graziers needed to emphasize that the whole process was beneficial to the envi ronment and produced the optimum health in the animal In turn, humans are perfectly adapted to all the good things in pastured prod ucts

She said confinement researchers never test their prod ucts over time and always concen trate on just one aspect of the health story and ignore the others "You will never have feedlot beef that is high in Omega 3 and CLA and Vitamin A and Beta Carotene.

She said co-option was currently a big problem for grassfed beef producers For example she said she thought a product called Prairie Fresh and Natural Beef would be grassfed but subsequently found out it was grainfed

Oregon Country Beef is another healthy designer food product that many consumers think is grassfed but actually tested for Beta Carotene no better than IBP com modity beef

"These guys want to produce the illusion of what you are producing but it is really just feedlot beef. To whole story

She listed the following five points as the "whole story

1 The grassfed product is natural and wholesome with no artificial hormones antibiotics or pesticides

2 The grassfed product provides superior human nutrition It is low in bad fat high in Omega 3 CLA and vitamins

3 Grassfed animals are healthy and happy

4 Grassfeeding not only is good for the environment but can actually improve the environment

5 Grassfeeding is good for the survival of small farmers

While she said she is convinced more and more everyday that grass feeding is the next big new thing there are problems

A few grassfed producers have what she termed a feedlot mentali ty" and are cutting corners She said one grazier who was on a program with her in Hawaii claimed that grassfed animals were so healthy he could feed all types of byproduct feedstuffs to them with no ill affects

I just stood there with my mouth open I mean this guy just totally blew me away

She said there are bison produc ers who kill their animals in the winter off of hay because the hides are better then Is an animal slaughtered off of hay grassfed?

She said there are others feeding grain on grass and calling their products grassfed. Is this grass fed? she asked.

Robinson said the only way she knew to stop such compromises was to have a third party verifica tion program Someone is going to have to come up with a definition of what grassfed is the minimum quality standards for the product and have some kind of external veri fication program

Another major problem is that buying grassfed products is currently very inconvenient for consumers She said she currently has to drive several hundred miles to buy her pastured poultry eggs and meat products

"We can t go very far in creating any serious consumer demand with such a marketing model We are going to have to make grassfed prod cts more convenient for the urban consumer ■

An audio tape of Jo Robinson s pre sentation is available *see page 26*

More Horse Than You Can Handle?

Farm[illegible]ead Stewardship: [illegible]idelines for

Several breeds and types of horses are used in a wide variety of activities throughout Pennsylvania and surrounding states. Regardless of whether you own one horse or many horses, the decisions you make on your property, can have a significant impact on water quality. The following information is intended to aid you in your management decision making, in furthering the protection of natural resources.

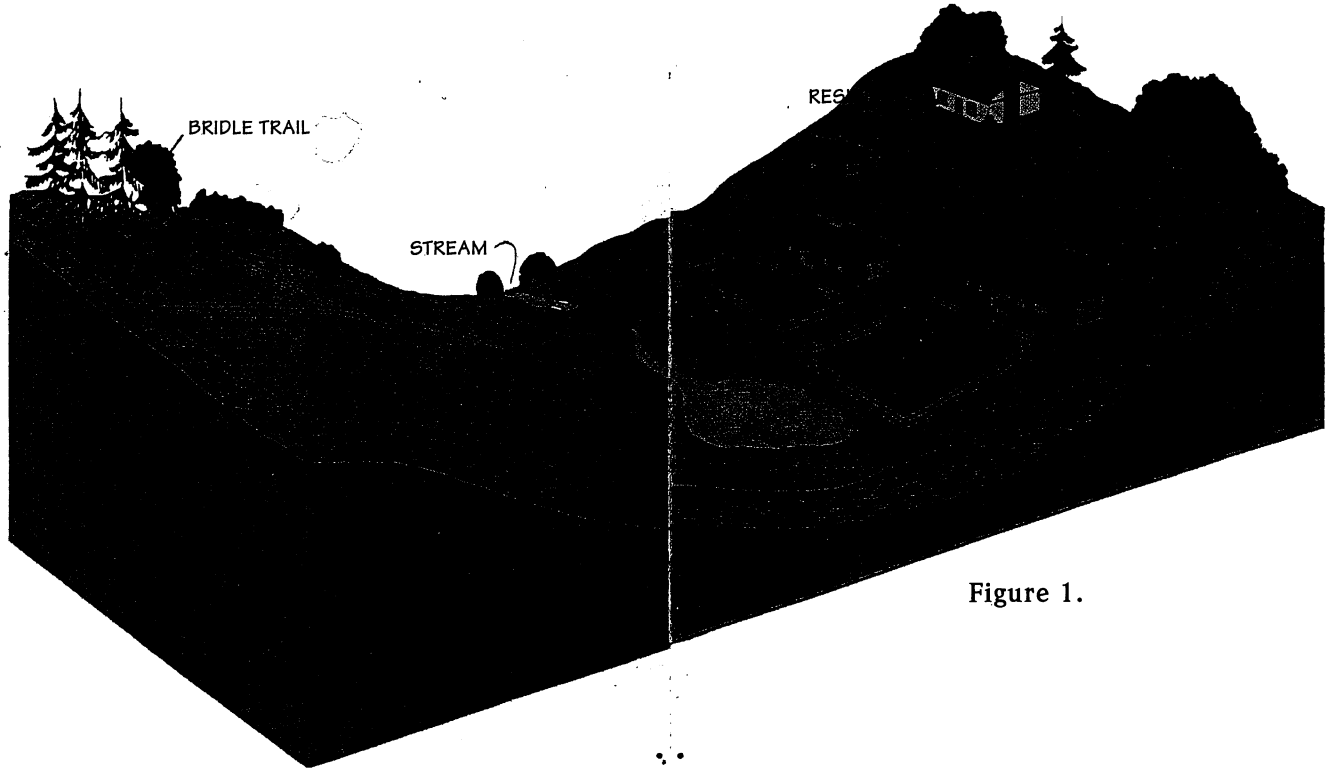


Figure 1.

WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN

The goal of a water quality management plan is to reduce runoff and protect groundwater. Runoff from horse farms can carry soil and waste contaminants into waterways, creating a nonpoint source of pollution. Start your water quality management plan by mapping out your watershed (see figure 1).

CRITICAL FACTORS:

THE BENEFITS of FARMSTEAD STEWARDSHIP

- improve animal health
- maximize pasture grazing value
- improve aesthetics
- protection of local water quality
- improve pasture sustainability
- prevent additional regulation

2. **Social and Legal Conditions**–reaction to adjacent property owners, building codes, zoning regulations, and water pollution restrictions, etc.
3. **Drainage**–ponding or surface runoff can create serious problems.
4. **Roof Water**–outletting spouting water away from traffic areas and exercise lots.
5. **Nutrient Management**–handling the waste created by the animals.
6. **Image**–the facility should satisfy the [illegible]wner and create a favorable impression on neighbo[illegible]

Reducing runoff and contamination can be accomplished

NUTRIENT MANAGEMENT

The objective of nutrient management is to use nutrients wisely for crop benefit while minimizing impact on the environment. Manure removal, storage and disposal techniques affect water quality. Locate the storage site at least 100 ft. from waterways and drinking water wells. The storage area floor should be cemented or constructed of compacted soil.

The storage site can be roofed or covered with a heavy tarpaulin to decrease the chance of runoff.

Manure should be applied at proper times of the year, when favorable field conditions exist (not frozen or wet). One other avenue to explore, in the allocation of manure, would be to contact local gardeners; they may have interest in the manure for needed nutrients and organic matter.

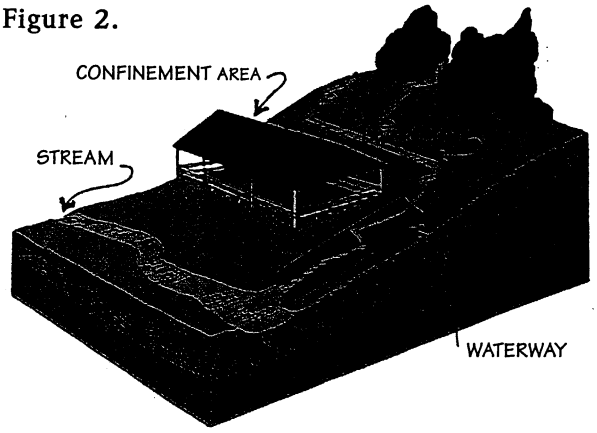
SURFACE WATER RUNOFF CONTROLS

When you develop your watershed map (see figure 1), it should reveal areas of potential soil erosion and nutrient runoff.

The primary cause of runoff on horse farms is overstocking. By overloading a pasture with excessive traffic and grazing a situation is created where surface water has the opportunity to gain velocity and carry soil and manure to nearby streams. In exercise areas, where grass cannot be maintained, surface water controls must be implemented. The following techniques can be used to drastically reduce nutrient laden runoff.

- Divert clean water away from barns, paddocks, manure storage areas and exercise areas (see figure 2).
- Reduce the length of slopes on pastures with the use of terraces and diversions.
- Plant grass in drainage ways to slow down runoff water.

Figure 2.



- Plant a vegetative buffer strip between steep slopes and waterways. The buffer strip filters animal waste and soil out of runoff and slows it down for absorption.
- Filter/Settling channels can be constructed below paddocks that have a great deal of animal traffic. These channels will catch runoff and filter out sediment before entering streams.

PASTURE MANAGEMENT

A high quality, properly-fenced pasture represents one of the least expensive sources of feed for a horse. In addition, a well kept pasture can provide the most natural and healthy environment for exercise and rest. If you already have good stands of desirable grass and legume species, proper soil fertility combined with good management, will be sufficient to assure good horse pasture.

If you plan to renovate an old pasture you should consider the following points:

1. Soil test for lime and fertilizer requirements.
2. Apply required lime several months before seeding.
3. Select a seed mixture that complements the pasture drainage characteristics.
4. Destroy or suppress the old pasture.
5. Use the appropriate method of seeding based on extent of tillage.
6. Protect the seeded area until the new plants are well established.

Whether you improve your pastures by the use of lime and fertilizer or by reseeding, sound management is essential to keep the desired species persistent and productive.

Horses are notorious spot grazers. They will seriously damage desired species in some areas unless they are moved into new pastures frequently. Overstocking or overgrazing results in reduced or, in extreme cases, no ground cover; which is vital in controlling soil erosion and nutrient runoff. Therefore, some form of rotational grazing is desirable. The correct acreage per horse changes with the season as well as with other factors. However, a good rule is to provide at least one acre of good quality pasture per horse. Grazing should be restricted during winter and when soils are wet in helping to prevent any unwanted runoff, plant damage, and damage to the soil structure.

With limited pasture acreage, rotational grazing systems are the most effective method to maximize forage production, consumption, and preventing soil erosion. In this system, a group of compatible horses can graze a paddock (area of divided pasture) for approximately 3 to 5 days and then be moved (rotated) to a fresh paddock (see figure 3).

10 acre undivided pasture

Two 5 acre paddocks

Four 2.5 acre paddocks

Figure 3. The relationship between paddock numbers and amount of rest per acre.

There is no "best" number of paddocks. Any number of paddocks is better than grazing a single pasture continuously.

(In addition, by rotating the horses from pasture to pasture, you can break the life cycle of some parasites.)

Dragging pastures with a chain link harrow, at least once per year, will help in spreading manure droppings; which reduces the parasite populations by exposing them to air and sunlight. Dragging is also beneficial in spreading the manure nutrients over a wider area.

STREAMBANK PROTECTION

Protect stream banks from trampling, destruction of vegetation and contamination. Inexpensive electric fencing may be adequate to control access to streams. Water can be provided by constructing ramps or by using gravity flow or pumped water to fill remote watering tanks. Since animals tend to congregate at water sources, nutrients from their wastes become concentrated in one area of the pasture. Providing more than one source of water and shade helps distribute nutrients more widely across the pasture and improves the quality of water the horses drink.

CONCLUSION

Federal and state laws on nonpoint sources of water pollution will become more restrictive with increased concern about the environment. Farm managers and owners need to be informed of local regulations and should participate in local forums concerning zoning and water quality.

ASSISTANCE

Each county has developed solutions to water quality issues. To learn more about the specific guidelines or for technical assistance in your local area, contact your Conservation District office, Cooperative Extension, Natural Resources Conservation Service or local Equine Associations.

This brochure was put together by the York County Conservation District in cooperation with the Natural Resources Conservation Service and Penn State Cooperative Extension.

Funding for this brochure was provided by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency through Section 319 of the Federal Clean Water Act.

Farmer's Guide to Processing and Selling Meat or Poultry

What are the rules?

Where are the contacts?

Who are the regulators?

Food safety standards for beef, pork, sheep, goat, poultry, rabbit, game and exotic meats

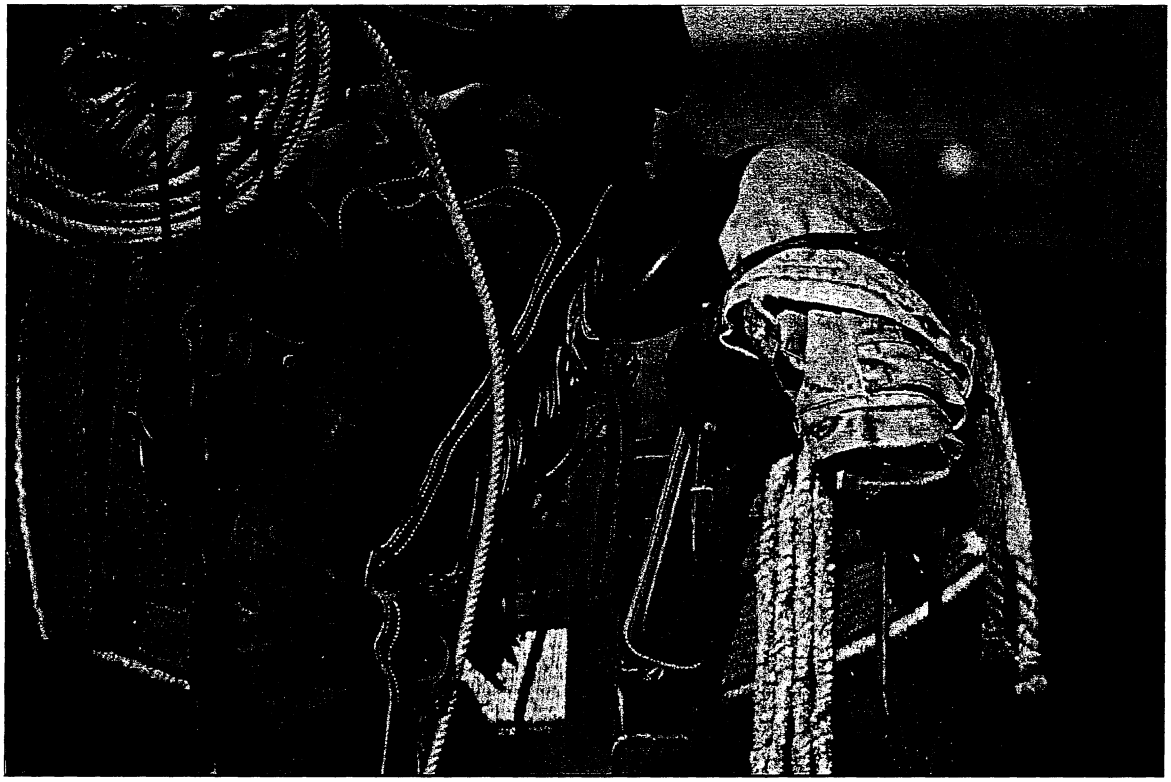
The "Farmer's Guide to Processing and Selling Meat or Poultry" was funded through the Extension Program Priority Initiative.

Several people and organizations contributed in the effort to produce this guide. Some asked a question that required research, some provided the research and some assisted with updates and edits. All comments, ideas, references, contacts, interpretations and reviews were valuable. Most were used in some way during the evolution of this publication.

Dr. Cutter, Food Science, College of Agricultural Sciences, PSU; Dr. Becker, Agricultural Economics and Rural Sociology, College of Agricultural Sciences, PSU; Jeff Feirick, Graduate Research Assistant, Dickinson School of Law, PSU; Pennsylvania Department of Agriculture, Food Safety and Laboratory Services; and especially, John Snyder, USDA, Food Safety Inspection Service, Philadelphia District, are recognized as significantly contributing their time and talent to this project.

I thank Diane, Sheri, Jonas, Ed, Barb, Earl and Karen for their interest and enthusiasm.

John Berry
Agricultural Marketing Educator
Lehigh County Cooperative Extension
4184 Dorney Park Road
Allentown, PA 18104-5798
610.391.9840
www.lehigh.extension.psu.edu
jwb15@psu.edu



Ranch Diversification Workshop

Bridgeport, California — May 17, 2001

Sponsored by

Sonoran Institute & Sierra Business Council

In cooperation with California Cattleman's Association, California Rangeland Trust, U.C. Cooperative Extension—Inyo/Mono Counties

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Agenda

Introduction

1. Economic Survival of Western Ranching
2. Making a Living in the Age of Walmart
3. Are You an Entrepreneur?
4. Adding Value for Profit
5. Mono County Net Farm & Ranch Income, 1970 to 1997

Niche Marketing

1. Holder Outline: How to Direct Market Your Beef
2. Niche Marketing Considerations
3. Conscience, With a Price Tag

Ranch Recreation

1. Flynn Outline: A Journey in Time – From Pioneers to the Internet
2. Getting Started in the Farm/Ranch Hospitality Business
3. Rural Development Policy Strategies for Farm and Ranch Recreation
4. Travel and Tourism: Home and Away

Solar Profits

1. Orchard Outline: Solar Profits
2. Land EKG Resource Materials
3. Business Planning – A Road Map for Success
4. Understanding Key Financial Ratios and Benchmarks
5. Preparing Agricultural Financial Statements

Sponsoring Organizations

Panelist Biographies

Contact Information

E. Poultry

E. Poultry

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research, Educatation,
and Extension Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Poultry

The low investment and small area required to raise a flock of domestic poultry makes this an ideal venture for the beginning small or part-time farmer. Domestic poultry can supplement family food supplies, and small specialized poultry producers can sell to several niche markets. For example, producers can consider selling organic meat and eggs, brown eggs, range-reared meat and eggs, live birds for ethnic markets, and birds for hobby, leisure, and purebred exhibition purposes. Most small specialty poultry enterprises raise chickens or waterfowl.

To ensure profitability, the small specialty poultry producer must do careful research on market opportunities. Successful producers for niche markets usually have unique products, good customer loyalty, limited competition, and the ability to maintain a profit margin when in competition with larger businesses.

Egg Production

Breed Selection

The best chicken breeds include commercial White Leghorn-type hybrids, which produce white-shelled eggs and are the most economical feed-to-eggs converters. Commercial production Reds (e.g., Rhode Island Reds, New Hampshire) or sex-linked hybrids produce large, brown-shelled eggs and are usually preferred for small range flocks. These birds have meaty carcasses and produce a good supply of eggs. The hybrids that lay brown eggs tend to be more docile than those that lay white eggs. All poultry breeds lay eggs, but they are not equally efficient.

Production Tips

To raise chicks, start the flock in late spring to reduce the cost of heating; however, buying started, ready-to-lay pullets is easier and more economical. Chicks should be brooded at 92-95°F for the first week, followed by a reduction of 5 degrees per week until a steady 70°F is reached.

Birds raised in a floor pen should have at least 2 square feet of space per adult bird. Windows or a fan will provide adequate ventilation to keep the pen dry. Keep 3 to 6 inches of litter on the floor and remove it as it becomes wet. Pine shavings provide the best litter for adult birds. To avoid leg problems, do not start chicks on slippery newspapers or pine shavings.

Feed a completely balanced ration. Void table scraps and whole grain, which dilute nutrient intake and decrease production. Use an 18- to 20-percent protein feed starter for the first 6 to 8 weeks, followed by a 14- to 15-percent protein grower or developer until 20 weeks of age. After 20 weeks, feed a 15- to 18-percent protein layer ration, and feed grit and oyster shells in separate feeders.

Provide 3 inches of feeder space per adult bird. To minimize wasted feed, the lip of the feeder should be level with the birds' back height, and trough feeders should be kept less than half full. Waterers must provide at least 5 to 6 gallons daily for every 100 birds. Provide 1 inch of water space per bird. Clean waterers three or four times each week, and provide fresh water daily.

Laying birds require at least 14 to 16 hours of light each day for maximum year-round production. Decreasing the light will stop egg production. Light must be added before sunrise and after sunset during the fall and winter, but be sure to provide several hours of darkness so the birds can roost. Use an inexpensive automatic timer to turn lights on and off. For each 40 square feet of pen space, install one 25-watt bulb at ceiling height above the food and water area.

For floor-reared layers, provide at least 6 inches of roost space per bird, using 2- by 2-inch wooden strips spaced 12 inches apart. Place roosts 24 inches above the floor and provide one 10- by 10-inch nest for every 4 or 5 hens. Nests should be 24 inches above the floor, away from the roosts. Keep nesting materials clean and dry. Collect eggs at least twice daily. Outside runs are not necessary; if used, they should provide 5 to 10 square feet of space per bird.

Meat Chicken Production

Breed Selection

The most efficient meat-producing chickens are the meat-type crosses (Rock-Cornish). Purebred poultry types most commonly raised for white meat are Cornish, Plymouth Rocks, and White Jersey Giants, but these breeds are less efficient than the crosses and take up to 14 weeks to develop a desirable carcass. There are niche markets for red-plumage birds and for the Silkie chicken, which has dark purple skin and is very popular in various ethnic live-bird markets.

Production Tips

Meat chickens can be raised much like laying chickens, except that wet and compacted litter is of even more concern with meat-type birds than with egg producers. These conditions cause breast blisters and leg weaknesses and give the carcasses an undesirable appearance. Never brood chicks on slippery surfaces. Pine shavings or straw are the best materials for giving meat birds the traction and leg support they need.

Feed a totally balanced ration. For fryers and broilers, use a starter mash or crumble pellets containing 20-23 percent protein. Roasters require a 20-percent protein starter for the first 6 weeks and can then be fed a 16-percent protein grower feed. At least 23 hours of light per day is recommended for meat birds. Use one 25-watt bulb per 100 square feet.

Do not use nests and roosts for meat-type chickens. Roosting causes breast blisters, crooked keels, bruises, and lameness in heavy meat birds. Meat-type birds make poor layers, so slaughter them before they reach egg production age. If you raise dual-purpose birds, put nests in place after slaughtering the culls and males. Outside runs are not recommended for meat chickens unless you sell range-reared birds.

Slaughter 2- to 3-pound fryers at 3 to 4 weeks of age; 4- to 5-pound broilers at 7 to 9 weeks; and roasters at 12 to 14 weeks. Remember, as birds get older and larger, they become less efficient and eat more feed for each pound of weight gained. Because older birds produce more meat, allow them to come as close to the desired weight as possible before slaughter.

Waterfowl

Breed Selection

The best breed of waterfowl to raise depends on several factors, including the reason for raising them and the amount of space available.

Ducks are small and require less space than geese. However, they need a year-round grain supplement and are more prone to predators. Geese require twice as much space as ducks, but do well on limited grain when they have plenty of grazing space. They are seldom bothered by predators.

Some waterfowl are raised for meat. They can be purchased from a commercial hatchery or local feed store. Duck breeds

avored for meat production include Muscovy, Peking, and Commercial (Barnyard) Rouens. The most common geese raised for meat are Emden, African, and Pilgrim.

Chinese geese are commonly raised as ve[illegible]geese. Because of their loud, harsh ca[illegible] startled, they are also used as wa[illegible]r guard geese.

Waterfowl raised for pets or as a hobby can be selected from among 14 breeds of domestic ducks and 11 breeds of domestic geese, covering a variety of shapes, sizes, and colors. A variety of wild, exotic waterfowl are also raised in captivity; however, wild waterfowl usually require special facilities and attention and special permits.

Production Tips

Young waterfowl usually are available only from April through July, while adult birds can be purchased from breeders throughout the year.

Young waterfowl—Waterfowl can be started much like chickens, but some special precautions are necessary.

Do not brood waterfowl on slippery surfaces (like newspapers)—this can cause spraddled legs. Paper towels, cloth, or burlap give the best traction.

Do not raise small breeds of waterfowl on mesh wire; their hocks (leg joints) may get stuck in the wire when they sit down. Mesh wire (approximately 3/8 inch) is acceptable for larger breeds.

Do not let young waterfowl swim or become excessively wet for the first 4 w[illegible] When wet, they chill easily, tend to c[illegible]nd flip onto their backs, causing death.

Do not use litters that mold or compact when wet.

Do not use fine litter until the birds learn to distinguish it from feed. Excessive litter consumption causes death. Instead, use absorbent material like chopped peanut hulls, pine shavings, or straw.

Do not feed medicated poultry feeds to young waterfowl; they may have adverse reactions to some poultry medications. Use starter mash formulated for waterfowl.

Feeding and watering—Crumble and pelleted feeds are usually best, because waterfowl waste feed, especially when it is ground into mash. During the first 3 weeks, feed a 22-percent protein starter ration; then change to a 16-percent protein grower feed. Avoid digestive problems by feeding some grit 1 week before allowing access to green fibrous plants. After 8 to 12 weeks of age, geese and ducks will eat very limited supplemental grain. Most breeders feed a mixture of about 40 percent corn and 60 percent oats until breeding season. Breeding waterfowl require only a 15-percent protein diet. Allow 6 linear inches of feeder space per bird and place feeders away from waterers. [illegible]ide plenty of fresh water at all times. W[illegible] essential for healthy growth. To keep the pen dry, place the lip of the waterer at the birds' back height. Adult birds require a waterer deep enough to get their head under water beyond their eyes. To ensure successful mating, especially in larger breeds, make water available for swimming. An old water heater tank cut in half works well.

Specialty Poultry

Many unique markets exist. Quail, pheasants, turkeys, and guinea fowl are raised for meat markets. Some birds are raised for exhibition. Mallard ducks, quail, and pheasant are raised for hunting preserves and for dog training. Markets are also available for racing pigeons, feathers for fly fishing, guinea hens for tick control, and pickled eggs.

Disease Prevention

Disease prevention—biosecurity—is an important aspect of any domestic poultry operation. Never allow poultry and other fowl to run loose. House them or keep them in a fenced area. Wild or tame waterfowl, cage or pet birds, ratites, and any other exotic birds should be on separate premises from chickens, turkeys, and game birds. If this is not possible, maintain them in separated, nonconnecting pens. It is important to raise all species separately to minimize disease. Wild waterfowl are reservoirs of avian influenza and other diseases; mixed-species poultry operations can serve as a catalyst for virus mutation and increase the risk for disease outbreaks.

A feather or one speck of fecal matter can carry billions of infectious germs. Avoid unnecessary human traffic, and prevent contact with unsanitary crates, equipment, or vehicles. **Always** wear clean clothes and footwear each time you return to your poultry production area. Allow visitors only after they have put on properly sanitized footwear, clothing, and hats. Insist that all poultry buyers bring only clean, disinfected crates, equipment, and vehicles into your farm with no visible fecal material or feathers. Better yet, transfer your birds to buyers at another location and clean your hauling equipment before returning home.

Practice "all-in, all-out" when raising poultry. Get rid of the entire flock before replacements arrive. Wash and disinfect the poultry house and leave it empty for 2 weeks. Replace the flock with healthy chicks from a single source, and do not add any new stock until the next clean-out. Limit the number of age groups on your farm. When all-in, all-out is not possible, bring new stock onto your farm only by hatching fertile eggs you have purchased or by buying Pullorum-Typhoid Clean chicks. Even though they appear healthy, adult birds are often disease carriers.

Buy only adult birds that have been vaccinated against Marek's disease. All chickens, turkeys, game fowl, or waterfowl you buy should be officially classified as U.S. Pullorum-Typhoid Clean. Participate in avian influenza testing programs where available.

Other Information Sources

Contact your local Cooperative Extension Office or State University through local telephone directory listings. If possible, obtain a management guide from a breeder or hatchery.

Growing expertise, innovative technologies, and production supplies can be found through publications such as:

Chicken Tractor: The Entrepreneur's Guide to Happy Hens and Healthy Soil by Andy Lee (250 pages), from Good Earth Publications, P.O. Box 160, Columbus, NC 28722. Telephone 1-800-499-3201.

Chicken Health Handbook by Gail Damerow (344 pages), from Storey Communications, P.O. Box 445, Pownal, VT 05261. Telephone 1-800-441-5700.

Pastured Poultry Profits by Joel Salatin (340 pages), Polyface, Inc., Rural Route 1, P.O. Box 281, Swoope, VA 24479. Telephone 540-885-3590.

Raising Poultry Successfully by Will Graves (186 pages), from Williamson Publishing, P.O. Box 185, Charlotte, VT 05455. Telephone 1-800-234-8791.

Good Neighbors. This free leaflet provides information on a health program for small and specialty poultry flocks. Contact T. Milton Nelson, Cooperative Extension Service, 0126 Symons Hall, College Park, MD 20742. Telephone 301-405-4596.

For general information on all aspects of poultry, contact: Lance Gegner, Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA), P.O. Box 3657, Fayetteville, AR 72702. Telephone 1-800-346-9140.

National Poultry Improvement Plan (NPIP) Directory of Hatcheries and Testing. To locate individual State contact sources, write to Andy Rhorer, USDA/APHIS, VS, ~~Room 850 Federal Building, Hyattsville, MD 20782~~. Telephone ~~301-436-7768~~. 404-922-3496

By Phillip J. Clauer, Poultry Extension Specialist, Animal and Poultry Sciences Department, 3300 Litton Reaves Hall, VA Tech, Blacksburg, VA 24061-0306, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone 202-720-5245; Fax 202-205-2448.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotapes, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720- 5881 (voice) or 202-720-7808 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

October 1995

CONTENTS

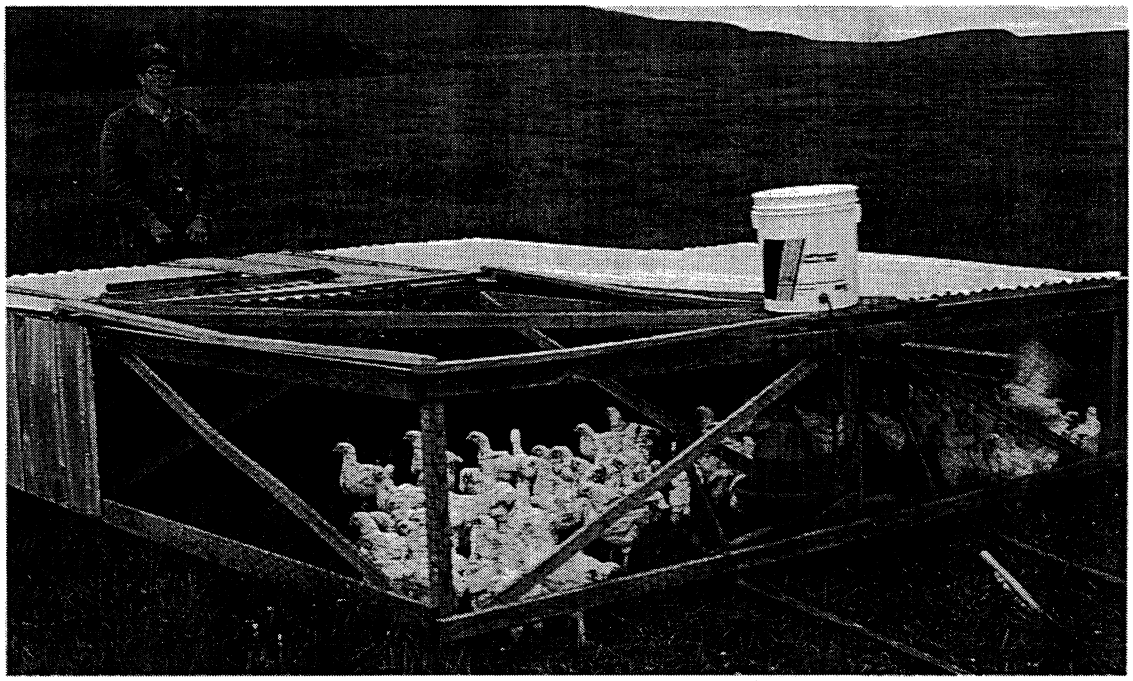
Determining the Right System 2
Poultry System Options 3
Production Basics 5
Feed 7
Breeds 7
Mortality and Predation 8
On-Farm Processing 9
Cooperative Mobile Processors 10
Environmental Benefits 11
Family and Lifestyle Benefits 12
Community Benefits 13
Marketing Options 14
Resources 16

Published by the Sustainable Agriculture Network (SAN), the national outreach arm of the Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program, with funding by USDA's Cooperative State Research, Education and Extension Service.

Also available at: www.sare.org/bulletin/poultry

SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE NETWORK
NATIONAL OUTREACH ARM OF USDA-SARE

Profitable Poultry: Raising Birds on Pasture



Virginia's Joel Salatin, a leader in the movement to expand poultry production outdoors, demonstrates a movable pen, one alternative system detailed in this bulletin. – *Photo by Tom Gettings/Rodale Institute*

LIKE MANY FAMILY FARMERS, CHUCK AND MARY SMITH integrate several diverse enterprises to ensure their continued ability to earn a living on 200 acres in north central Kentucky. "We look for things we can do as a family," Chuck said, including his three daughters. "We want something that'll keep us and them here for a long time."

To the Smiths, that means diversifying into new enterprises and establishing sustainable practices quite unlike the traditional corn and soybean rotations that had nearly stripped the farm's hillsides of topsoil before they bought it. They want to boost their income and increase, not further diminish, the farm's fertility.

At least one enterprise they've adopted in recent years helps them accomplish those goals: pastured poultry. Each year, the Smiths raise 3,000 broilers and 100 turkeys in a pasture-based system, then sell them directly to customers from Louisville, 45 miles away. The enterprise ensures a respectable income for their effort, involves the whole family and blends well with other aspects of their operation, from raising organic beef to growing grapes for a new winery. They graze their 50 cattle on the same pastures used by the chickens and are exploring the idea of turkeys grazing among their grapevines.

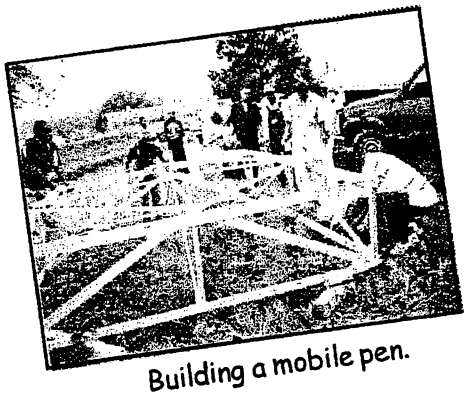
The Smiths also grow organic produce to sell at two local farmers markets and harvest five or six acres of tobacco each year. Of all those efforts, they point to their poultry operation as a remarkably dependable source of income. The family nets 50 percent of the sale price of each bird, with the chickens selling for $1.75 per pound at an average weight of 3.5 pounds, and the turkeys selling for $3 per pound at an average dressed weight of 18 pounds. Compared to the average payments for conventional growers raising chickens under contract – about 22 cents per 3.5 pound bird –

Mobile pens of chickens on the pasture.

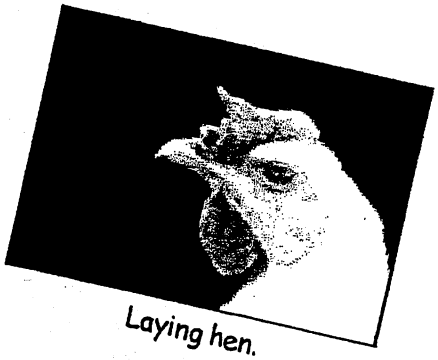
Ready to eviscerate!

Pastured Poultry

A Heifer Project International case study booklet



Building a mobile pen.



Laying hen.

Home-grown's <u>the</u> best!

The mechanical plucker.

Sponsored by Southern Region USDA Sustainable Agriculture Research & Education (SARE)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword & Acknowledgements // page iv

Introduction

A niche market you can tap // Page 1
Advantages of a pastured poultry system // Page 2
Major activities of the project // Page 3
Future & collaborative work // Page 5

Featured Farmers

Laura and Ralph Rogers // Page 6
Alvin and Rosa Shareef // Page 9
Ben Gamble // Page 13
Plen Yep // Page 16

Round-Ups

Summarizing the experiences of 19 Southern farmers // Page 18
Brooding set-ups // Page 19
Pen construction // Page 19-20
Weather issues // Page 20
Pasture management // Page 21
Feeding // Page 22
Mortality // Page 23-24
Processing // Page 24-26
Marketing // Page 27
Labor and earnings // Page 28-29
Quality of life // Page 29-30
Follow-up // Page 31

Appendices

1—Estimated income/expense analysis per 100 broilers // Page 32
2—Average production figures // Page 33
3—Summary of 1996 production figures // Page 34
4—Summary of 1997 production figures // Page 35
5—Summary of 1998 production figures // Page 36
6—Resource Section // Page 37
7—List of project coordinators, university cooperators; involved Extension agents, others // Pages 38-39

All New Straw Bale Edition

CHICKEN TRACTOR

The Permaculture Guide to Happy Hens and Healthy Soil

by
Andy Lee
Pat Foreman

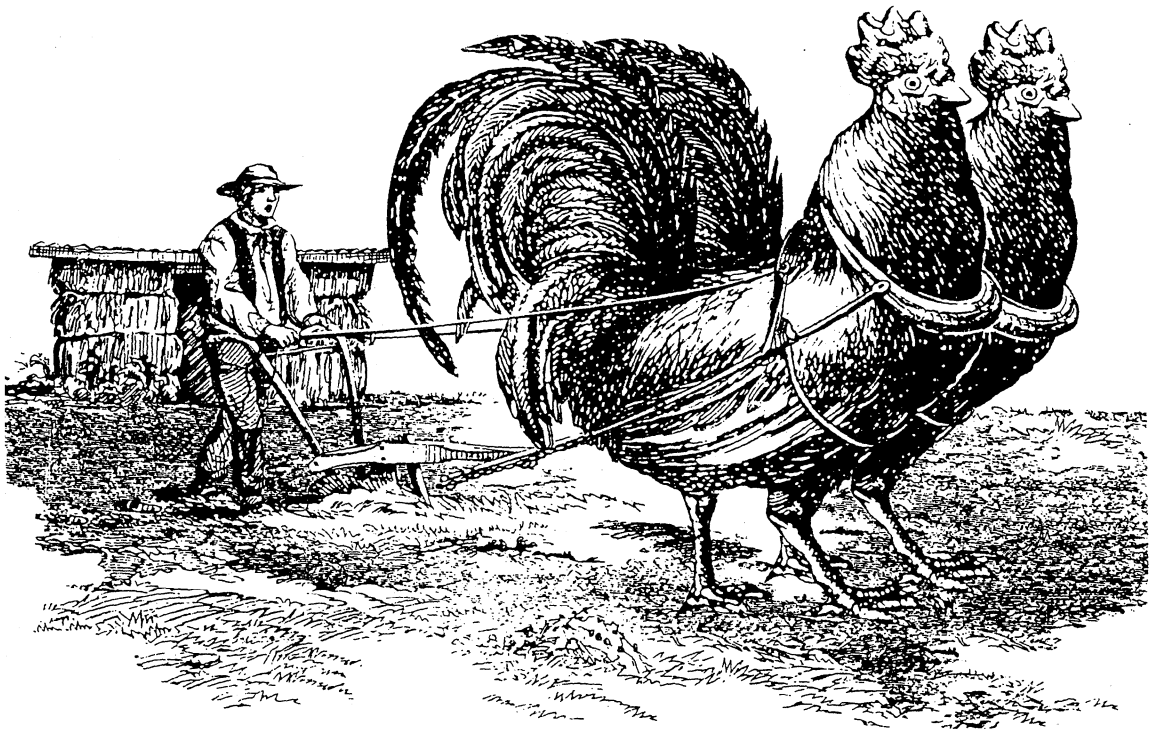


Table of Contents

Acknowledgments 6
Recipe for a Chicken Tractor 14
Foreword 16
Introduction 18
Chapter 1: What is a Chicken Tractor Anyway? .. 31
Should You Have Roosters in Suburbia? 33
Ten Good Reasons to Go Mobile 34
Advantages of Chicken Tractors 35
Chapter 2: Why Chicken Tractors Belong in Your Garden 37
Animal Tractors in Permaculture Design 37
Some Permaculture Concepts* 37
Functional Analysis of the Chicken 39
Get Super-Fertile Soil Fast 48
Earthworms as Indicators 51
Chapter 3: Chicken Tractor Systems 52
1. Rotational Garden System 53
2. Deep Mulch System 54
3. Sheet Mulch System - Halfway Between Grazing and Deep Mulch 68
4. Intensive Grazing in Paddocks 75
5. Polyface Model - Poultry with Beef Cattle. 83
6. Hens on Wheels. 86
7. The Greenhouse System 87
Chapter 4: Straw Bale Chicken House 94
Benefits of Bale Construction 95
Straw vs Hay: What's the Difference? 95
I'll Blow Your House Down: Common Concerns About Bale Construction. 97
Wet Hay or Straw Bales 99
Here's How to Build a Simple Bale Henhouse 101
Roof Construction 106
Co-Housing: The TurGuChi Condo for Interracial and Intercultural Housing 110
Hay-Bale Suburban Hobbit Model 111
Bale Construction For Livestock — Problems and How to Solve Them 113
Chapter 5: Soil Building with Chicken Tractors 116
Twice As Much Food on Half as Much Land 120
How Can Chicken Tractors Help Soil Improve? .. 121
How Does Soil Fertility Happen? 123
How Much Organic Matter in the Soil? 124
Use Compost to Increase Organic Matter in Soil 126
Chickens Add Fertilizer and Organic Matterl 129
Using Rotational Pens to Build Soil Fertility 131
Why Not Rotary Till? 132
Sheet Mulching to Aid Soil Fertility 134
Wild and Wonderful Earthworms 135
Nitrogen Needs of Various Vegetables 136
Seaweed Meal and Seaweed Extract 138
Permaculture Gardening 141
Chapter 6: Keeping Hens in Chicken Tractors .. 144
Light, Egg Laying and Chicken Health 144
Roosts and Perches 145
Chapter 7: Marketing 154
Making an Income by Gardening with Happy Hens and Healthy Soil 154
Practice Ensures Success 156
Here's How to Sell Your Chickens Before They Hatch 165
Buy Local Because 169
Who Is Your Market? 171
Sell Them Other Products, Too 171
Raising Pullets for Resale 172
Using Brochures to Educate Your Customers and Promote Your Products 172
Chapter 8: Here's How to Build Your Custom Chicken Tractor 177
1. Size, Configuration, Space Per Bird 183
2. Construction Materials 183
3. Moving Your Chicken Tractor 195

Chapter 9: Processing Poultry 198
Do-It-Yourself Poultry Processing 202
Design and Build a Small-Scale Poultry Processing Facility 204
Processing Equipment 214
Chapter 10: Selecting Chickens for Your Tractor 221
Breeds to Choose From and Best Choices 221
Chapter 11: Give Me That Old-Time Chicken 230
Preserving Heirloom Poultry Breeds 233
Chapter 12: Raising Chicks From Scratch 238
Where to Buy Chicks 238
Roosters, Hatching Eggs and Broody Hens 240
Equipment and Supplies You'll Need for Chicks 245
Chapter 13: Predators 250
Rats and Mice 250
Domestic Cats and Dogs 251
Foxes, Coyotes, Raccoons, Weasels and Other Critters. 252
Predatory Birds. 254
Chapter 14: Chicken Diet (Theirs, Not Ours) 255
Organic Feeds 257
They Will Work for Chicken Feed 261
You Can Grow Your Own Organic Feed 261
Comfrey 270
Kelp 276
Diatomaceous Earth 282
Duckweed 282
Chapter 15: Diseases and Afflictions 284
Leg Problems and Curly Toe Paralysis 284
Breast Blisters 285
Antibiotics In Feeds 286
Pecking and Cannibalism 286
Debeaking. 287
Chapter 16: Raising Poultry Humanely 289
The Truth Behind "A Hen's Life" 290
Chapter 17: Other Animal Tractors 294
Turkey Tractors 294
The Gabby Guineas 298
Epilogue: 303
World Wide Web and Internet Resources 306
Glossary (Chicken Talk) 308
Chick Producers and Equipment Dealers 309
Associations to Join 311
Bibliography 312
Index 313

Ode to a Chicken Tractor

"Chicken Tractors, Chicken Tractors! I want them Everywhere!"
says Andy Lee, "I want them spreading coast to coast—LA. to Delaware.
What this country really needs — a chicken in every pot;
and with this handy method, well, gosh, that's just what you've got!"

Stick all your chickens in a pen that you can move around;
Take them out into your fields and let them peck the ground.
It may seem silly, but it's not; the benefits abound.

They fertilize, they spread manure, they dig up all the weeds,
and they won't need as much to eat to satisfy their needs.
They're open range, but in a pen so they can't eat your seeds.

You'll make a profit, simple too, it's elegant and neat;
A positive and easy way to help you grow your meat.
As a system, guaranteed, the method can't be beat.

So if you want this great technique, then this is what you do:
Buy the book by Andy Lee; it just came out - it's new.
Chicken Tractor is its name. It's good, and useful too!

by Ron Macher and Paul Berg,
Small Farm Today magazine

Raising Emus and Ostriches

Special Reference Briefs Series no. SRB 97-06

Compiled By:
Rebecca Thompson
Information Centers Branch
National Agricultural Library
Agricultural Research Service
U.S. Department of Agriculture

Alternative
Farming
Systems

USDA, ARS, National Agricultural Library
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2351

August 1997

Contents

Introduction v

Contacts 1

Electronic Resources

- Database 3
- Internet Sites 3
- Mailing Lists 9
- Message Forums 9
- Newsgroup 9

Software 10

Videocassettes 11

Audiocassettes 12

Bibliography 15

Author Index (Bibliography only) 53

Subject Index (Bibliography only) 57

NAL Document Delivery Services 69

F. Aqua Culture

F. AquaCulture

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Aquaculture

An ancient science practiced by many major civilizations, aquaculture today produces more than 2,000 different species of plants and animals in fresh and salt waters around the world.

U.S. aquaculture production has dramatically expanded in the past 10 years with pond-raised catfish in the Southeast, cage-raised coho salmon in the Pacific Northwest, pen-raised Atlantic salmon in the Northeast, and farm-raised crawfish in Louisiana and Texas. Freshwater trout dominate the aquatic production of several States, while ornamental fish, plants, and algae abound in others. Emerging species with commercial potential include hybrid striped bass, redfish, yellow perch, and hybrids of trout and salmon.

During the last few years, harvests from capture-fisheries have reached a stable level. At the same time, however, consumer demand for both seafood and freshwater products has continued to increase. Per capita consumption has increased over 25 percent in the past 6 years.

Low-fat product

U.S. consumers are becoming increasingly aware of the advantages of aquaculture products. Trends in seafood consumption, fueled by concern for a contamination-free, low-fat product, suggest a steady annual increase in demand for several years to come.

Imports, many utilizing expensive air freight transportation, represent 46 percent of the U.S. seafood consumption in pounds and 82 percent in U.S. consumer dollars. Recent successful introductions of South American shrimp and Norwegian salmon prove the profitability of good-quality seafood.

Like traditional farming, aquaculture requires hard work, pride in the best product possible, and marketing knowhow to generate an acceptable return. Products are sold whole, processed, and value-added. Markets may be found locally, regionally, and internationally. Growers can market aquaculture crops as bait, ornamentals, pets, or stockers; specimen water plants; environmental grasses, and by-products: feed, fish oils, and fertilizers.

Water experience needed

Small-scale aquaculture is limited less by a lack of information than by farmers with experience working with water crops. There are many parallels with more traditional farming products. For example, problems of quality, shelf-life, and market development are similar to those for any perishable farm product.

Inspection of seafood processing is not yet federally mandated but Congress has seriously considered enabling legislation. Legislation, if approved, would have a direct impact on marketing processed aquaculture products.

One factor complicating aquacultural development is that mandated authorities of numerous State and Federal agencies may overlap and cause conflicts.

Information sources

Aquaculture specialist James W. Avault, Jr. (Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, LA 70803), emphasizes that getting answers to problem questions is essential for successful aquaculture. His December 1989 article in *Aquaculture Magazine* lists many information sources.

There are a number of multispecies book sources, a list of which is available from the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) National Agricultural Library, with its AGRICOLA computer database and Aquaculture Information Center (NAL, Beltsville, MD 20705).

Federal sources

The USDA, lead agency in coordinating aquaculture development, also has these information sources: the Extension Service (Washington, DC 20250), the Cooperative State Research Service (CSRS) Office of Aquaculture (Aerospace Building, Suite 342, Washington, DC 20250-2200), the Soil Conservation Service (SCS, Washington, DC 20250) and federally supported Extension and research projects at 1890 and 1862 State land-grant colleges and universities.

Specific information about these and many more contacts also can be found in the "Directory of Small-Scale Agriculture" (Superintendent of Documents, United States Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402/$5.50 per copy).

Several other Federal agencies also are involved in aquaculture. The U.S. Department of the Interior's Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) may help with questions on hatchery management, fish biology, disease control, and reservoir management.

The U.S. Department of Commerce's National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS, 1335 East-West Highway, Silver Spring, MD 20910) focuses on saltwater fish, shrimp, oyster, and other shellfish species.

Also within the Department of Commerce is the Office of Sea Grants, administered by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA, Rockville, MD 20805) to support research.

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA, Waterside Mall, Washington, DC 20460) monitors the impact of aquaculture practices on surface and ground water.

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA, 5600 Fishers Land, Rockville, MD 20852) regulates pest control materials, food additives, and processing practices.

Regional sources

Other sources include USDA's five Regional Aquaculture Centers: (1) the North Central Regional Aquaculture Center (NCRAC, Room 13 Natural Resources Building, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI 48824); (2) Southern Regional Aquaculture Center (SRAC, Delta Branch Experiment Station, Stoneville, MS 38776); (3) Tropical and Subtropical Regional Aquaculture Center (TSRAC, The Oceanic Institute, Makapuu Point, Waimanalo, HI 96795); (4) Northeast Regional Aquaculture Center (NRAC, University of Rhode Island, Kingston, RI 02881); and (5) Western Regional Aquaculture Center (WRAC, School of Fisheries, WH-10, University of Washington, Seattle, WA 98195).

State sources

State governments may also provide numerous kinds of information, materials, and experience. Many growers are surprised to discover the great diversity of products their State can culture. State marketing programs often promote local products, such as Mississippi catfish, Maine lobster, Louisiana crawfish, and Idaho trout.

Most States have a department of natural resources (or fish and wildlife or similar title) that regulates and manages the natural stocks of fish. These departments, particularly in States supporting large fish stocking programs, provide an excellent opportunity for new fish farmers to consult experienced aquaculturists. Information on facilities and research projects often can be obtained through county Cooperative Agricultural Extension (CES), SCS, or other government offices listed in the local telephone book. Land-grant universities, supporting local CES offices, often provide valuable local information.

Aquaculture associations

Associations and trade shows provide current production information and materials. Information on specific groups can be found through growers, manufacturing representatives, NAL, CES, or *Aquaculture Magazine's* "Annual Buyers Guide."

The names and addresses of pertinent publications from private trade sources may be obtained from the NAL, as noted above.

Elsewhere, the "1989 Yearbook of Agriculture" (Superintendent of Documents, United States Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402/$10.00 a copy) discusses the management problems on small-scale farm operations.

Tony Mazzaccaro, former Aquaculture Specialist in the CSRS Office of Aquaculture, says aquaculture places "high demands on a farmer for both time and technical ability."

He adds, "The new fish farmer is advised to begin small and make a modest investment. If a trial is successful, larger commitments can be made with a higher level of understanding."

Many aquaculture production systems require large capital investments. However, some areas have begun to diversify with unique products made on a smaller scale.

For example, at the Kirkwood Community College, Curtis Stutzman at the Rural Development Center (P.O. Box 2068, Cedar Rapids, IA 52406) makes use of refurbished swine containment buildings with indoor tanks, using recirculating water. Curtis says, "At the farm of Todd and Darrel Kleppe of Clinton, IA, tanks are producing tilapia whose fillets sell for $7 per pound at local restaurants."

Use of small-scale indoor tanks is also being encouraged by Paul Battistoni, president of AquaMar Industries, Inc. (1945 Pocomoke Beltway, Pocomoke City, MD 21851), who has experience operating a pilot-plant operation at the University of Maryland-Eastern Shore. He also has built a tilapia hatchery and production plant as a demonstration facility for potential "grow-out farmers" interested in producing fish under contract. He also is producing hybrid striped bass.

"We're looking at the successful economic model of the integrated poultry industry," he says. "We could provide fingerlings, feed, technical assistance, and a harvest crew to handle fish produced in indoor tanks."

Use existing resources

"It is important for small-scale producers to utilize existing resources," says Ronald Macher (Ridge Top Ranch, Rt. 1, Box 237 Clark, MO 65243). With a show-me attitude, Macher several years ago saw the Midwest, with 350,000 ponds, including almost a quarter million acres of water, as a potential farm resource. "We demonstrated over a 5-year period that we could economically raise catfish in cages," Macher explains. "Our growing season from May to November could consistently produce 1.5-pound catfish in 21 weeks." His publication, *Missouri Farm* (6 issues per year/$18.00), gives details on such alternative crops.

One overview of the seafood marketing industry is presented by Ian Chaston, "Marketing in Fisheries and Aquaculture," 1984 (State Mutual Book and Periodical Service, 521 Fifth Ave., 17th Floor, New York, NY 10175/$19.95). Specific reports on trout, crawfish, and aquaculture enterprises are in the 189-page book, "ADAPT2,) published by *Successful Farming* magazine (P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50336). This publication is available in some libraries.

In farming, raising capital is always a major obstacle. However, one source of financing may be the USDA's Farmers Home Administration (FmHA). FmHA officials accept loan applications for proposed small-scale aquaculture enterprises. Applicants with experience in small production systems, involvement with existing business, and demonstrated familiarity with new technology provide strength to any such proposal.

Prepared by Thomas S. Handwerker, Small-Scale Agriculture Research at the University of Maryland-Eastern Shore, and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service, ~~Aerospace D, Aerospace Building~~, USDA, Washington, DC 20250-22~~00~~ (Telephone: 202/~~481-4640~~) 401-1805

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

November 1990

* U.S. G.P.O:1990-282=933:40013/CSRS

Agriculture Handbook 590

Ponds — Planning, Design, Construction

Contents

Introduction **1**

Water needs **2**
- Livestock ... 2
- Irrigation ... 3
- Fish production ... 3
- Field and orchard spraying ... 4
- Fire protection ... 4
- Recreation ... 6
- Waterfowl and other wildlife ... 6
- Landscape quality ... 6
- Multiple purposes ... 8

Preliminary investigations **9**
- General considerations ... 9
- Area adequacy of the drainage ... 9
- Minimum pond depth ... 10
- Drainage area protection ... 11
- Pond capacity ... 12
- Landscape evaluation ... 12

Estimating storm runoff **13**
- Hydrologic groupings of soils ... 13
- Runoff curve numbers ... 13
- Volume of storm runoff ... 18
- Rainfall amounts and expected frequency ... 19
- Rainfall distribution ... 19
- Peak discharge rate ... 20
- Time of concentration ... 20
- Average watershed slope ... 21
- Flow length ... 21
- I_a /P ratio ... 21
- Estimating peak discharge rates ... 22

Site surveys **24**

Embankment ponds **24**
Detailed soils investigation 24
Spillway requirements 26
Pipes through the dam 36
Planning an earthfill dam 45
Staking for construction 53
Building the pond 53

Excavated ponds **57**
Soils 57
Spillway and inlet requirements 58
Planning the pond 58
Building the pond 61

Sealing the pond **62**
Compaction 62
Clay blankets 63
Bentonite 63
Chemical additives 64
Waterproof linings 65

Establishing vegetation **66**
Protecting the pond 66
Wave action 66
Livestock 67

Operating and maintaining the pond **68**

Pond safety **69**
Before construction 69
During construction 69
After completion 69

References **70**

Glossary **71**

Appendixes **75**
Appendix A: Estimating the Volume of an Excavated Pond 75
Appendix B: Flood-Tolerant Native Trees and Shrubs 79

Missouri Pond Handbook

Written by Ken Perry
Illustrated by Diana Jarrell
Edited by Frank Ryck and Joan McKee

Missouri Department of Conservation

Table of contents

From the water's edge 4

Developing a new fishing pond 5
Pond drainage area 6
Dam 11
Construction 12
Post construction 17
Landscaping and habitat development 19
Maintaining your pond 19

Managing fish in a new pond 21
How to stock 27
Sources of fish 29
Producing fish in your pond 30
Carrying capacity 32
Managing for good fishing 33
Harvesting fish 34
Why ponds fail to provide good fishing 36

Managing an old pond 37
Evaluating your pond 37
Evaluating your fish populations 40
Improving and maintaining your fish populations 41
Pond renovation 45
Nonfishing ponds 45

Common pond problems and recommendations 46
Small pond management 46
Aquatic plant management 46
Muddy water 50
Leaking ponds 53
Fish diseases and parasites 54
Wildlife and your pond 55

Appendix A – Government Offices 58

Appendix B – Fish stocking policy 60

Index 62

FISH FRIENDLY FARMING
FARM CONSERVATION PLAN WORKBOOK
INTRODUCTION

The Sotoyome Resource Conservation District (SRCD) has organized the Fish Friendly Farming Certification Program to improve water quality and habitat restoration and management for the recovery efforts for the federally-listed threatened coho salmon and steelhead trout in the Russian River watershed. The Russian River watershed is 95% private land and creating a landowner directed restoration program could produce many more positive actions for the fish than a regulatory and punitive program. The Sotoyome RCD is a non-regulatory local agency that assists landowners with soil, water and resource conservation projects. RCDs were started in the 1930's during the Dust Bowl to provide assistance to landowners. The Board of Directors of an RCD is made up of landowners from the watershed. Although the Sotoyome RCD is taking the lead on this project, we work in coordination with the two other RCDs in the watershed - Mendocino RCD and Gold Ridge RCD.

The Fish Friendly Farming (FFF) program is a voluntary certification program for grapegrowers who implement land management practices that restore and sustain fish habitat on their property. The Fish Friendly Farming program is incentive based. This program will attempt to reward these fish friendly agricultural practices with an increase in the value of grapes. The wines made from these grapes will be labeled or advertised as environmentally friendly and may cost slightly more, allowing for a financial benefit to the certified grapegrower. This increased value would be achieved through marketing programs that focus on consumers' willingness to pay more for wines that carry this designation. There are opportunities to apply this concept to other agricultural interests and products as well.

A number of agencies have participating including the North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board, the California Department of Fish and Game, the National Marine Fisheries Service, the Natural Resources Conservation Service and others. The SRCD is currently working with the National Marine Fisheries Service and the Regional Water Quality Control Board to develop a mechanism to receive regulatory approval for the program and its Beneficial Management Practices (BMPs) as consistent with the Russian River Basin Plan, the Clean Water Act and the Endangered Species Act.

This program uses a workbook for the landowner or manager to evaluate the property, the current practices, and create a farm conservation plan for the property focusing on resource concerns including fish habitat. The SRCD will be providing a series of workshops for farmers to help them complete the assessment, the farm plan, and implementation timeline. The farmer will keep the workbook and the farm conservation plan and use it and revise it as necessary. The workbook includes a format to allow for the farmer to use one notebook to include all of the information and maps. These methods recognize that improved land stewardship is best accomplished through a cooperative and positive working relationship with landowners and farmers. Landowners make numerous

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

decisions regarding land management and will use improved methods, if encouraged, and technical and sometimes financial assistance is available.

The overall concept is that once the assessment and farm conservation plan are complete and the landowner will apply for certification, potentially including regulatory approvals. A certification team made up of resource agencies, technical experts, and farmers will evaluate the farm plan and perform a site visit. The certification will be based on the completeness and accuracy of the assessment and farm plan. The completeness and accuracy of the farm plan in documenting the current practices and uses of BMPs and the commitment to implement additional program BMPs as needed. The certification process is meant to provide assistance to the farmer and result in a collaborative effort to improve land stewardship. Continued monitoring will allow for the landowner to document their practices and fish friendly land stewardship. Re-certification will occur on a 3-5 year cycle for most sites. Vineyards located on steep slopes (in excess of 30% slope) and highly altered creeks will require more frequent re-certification, particularly for the first few years.

The following objectives were approved by the SRCD to guide the Fish Friendly Farming Certification Program:

- Cooperative efforts between landowners and interest groups in the watershed will increase the level and success of restoration and recovery efforts for salmon and steelhead.

- An incentive program that rewards grape growers for practicing beneficial management practices (BMPs) will protect fish habitat over the long term.

- Restoration and recovery of threatened fish populations is an immediate concern. The certification program, by providing incentives, will encourage rapid improvements. But some phasing of improvements needs to be built into the program to recognize the economic effects on the landowner.

- Beneficial management practices must be based on a credible scientific approach to watershed restoration and focus on the needs of the fish and its habitat. The certification and incentive program will incorporate these scientific principles.

- Recovery of the salmon and steelhead is a long-term endeavor. Changes to support and sustain these fish populations must be integrated into all land uses in the watershed. There are many problems not associated with agriculture which have had significant effects on the fish. This program focuses on one land use, grape growing, and recognizes that changes must be made in other activities and land uses as well if the fish are to recover.

- The program involves regulatory agencies, interest groups, farmers and landowners so that the program may be found in compliance with the Endangered Species Act and the farmers achieve relief from regulatory problems.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

- The program will include a marketing program that addresses increasing the value of wine grapes from growers who become certified and integrate economic issues with environmental issues.

- This program is entirely voluntary. Landowners chose to participate.

The FFF Program was funded through a grant from the State Water Resources Control Board, with funds from the Environmental Protection Agency. The program was carried out from May 1997 through June 1997. A Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) was formed to assist with the program development. The TAC adopted two goals for the project:

- "Farmers certified as Fish Friendly will use beneficial management practices to reduce erosion and sedimentation in order to maintain and improve water quality and water quantity

and

- Farmers certified as Fish Friendly will manage their agricultural lands for creek corridor integrity to ensure a sustainable, native fishery in the context of a productive farm."

Through a series of monthly meetings, the TAC discussed, reviewed and oversaw the preparation of the farm conservation plan workbook and all of the BMPs. In addition, the BMPs were sent out to TAC members who could not attend the meeting. Written comments on these draft documents were incorporated in this final workbook. The project manager, Laurel Marcus, gave over 25 presentations to agricultural groups, environmental groups, government agencies, and general interest groups, as well as having hundreds of meetings with TAC members and interested parties. The TAC field-tested the workbook and BMPs on the farm site of one of the TAC members and field certified the farm plan.

The SRCD Board of Directors in their regular public monthly meetings also discussed the progress of the program and invited additional public comment.

The workbook consists of three parts:

- A set of instructions, templates and BMPs to use in preparing a farm conservation plan under the FFF program. The BMPs are relatively detailed but individual analyses, calculations and designs are required to apply the BMPs to each farm.
- A set of Appendices of additional technical information related to the inventory/assessment methods and BMPs in the program. Also included is information from several other programs. Information on funding for implementing farm conservation plans in included as well.
- Fish Facts a publication chronicling the life cycle and habitat requirements of the salmon and steelhead trout ad how human actions can impact the watershed processes

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

and fish habitats. Fish Facts sets out the needs and requirements of these endangered species. The FFF program encompasses the methods and BMPs to reduce impacts and restore habitat and sustainable watershed processes.

The potential benefits of the FFF program for the farmer include:

- improved land stewardship with soil and water conservation,
- better roads
- lower maintenance creek corridors
- increased income from special marketing
- regulatory approvals
- implementation funds for riparian corridor restoration
- road and erosion site repair
- public recognition as an environmentally conscious farmer
- personal satisfaction for assisting in the recovery of the salmon and steelhead trout for your children and grandchildren

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Sea Grant

Aquaculture
FACT SHEET
September 1991

Cornell Cooperative Extension • State University of New York

FOR-FEE POND FISHING: DECISION-MAKING FACTORS

Douglas H. Ververs
Cornell Cooperative Extension Agent

Under the right circumstances a for-fee fishing enterprise can be successful. Like other forms of agriculture or alternative recreation, fee fishing involves capital investment risks, adequate land and water resources, and daily attention. If you're considering fee fishing on your property, the following checklist can help you determine whether a fish-for-fee enterprise is feasible for your particular situation.

This checklist, of course, doesn't cover all situations or possibilities. The issues raised by these questions will take considerable knowledge and research to answer. Prior to entering this venture, you need to be committed to acquiring the knowledge and conducting the ongoing needed research. To have a good probability of success, most of your answers should be in the yes column.

Information on for-fee fishing is limited. A concise bibliography of information concerning fishing for fee is included in this fact sheet.

Economic Factors

Management

	Yes	No
1. Do you already have suitable ponds or a site suitable for constructing ponds?	____	____
2. Do you have suitable facilities and road access?	____	____
3. Do you have the necessary financial resources?	____	____
4. Is the profit potential equal to or higher than that of other possible investments?	____	____
5. Will investment and operating costs permit a reasonable profit?	____	____
6. Will the expected profit be adequate compensation for your labor, management, and liability risk?	____	____
7. Is fee fishing the best economic alternative for the land you intend to use?	____	____
8. Can you afford to forego income until you develop a clientele?	____	____
9. Could you absorb a season of lost revenue?	____	____
10. Is this a stand-alone enterprise?	____	____
11. Are you able to devote the time and effort required?	____	____

Market

1. Do you have angler acceptance for the species and size of your fish?	____	____
2. Is there a demand for fishing access at the time of year you can provide it?	____	____
3. Do you have suitable arrangements for replenishing your stocks with fish acceptable to clientele?	____	____
4. Can your for-fee enterprise accommodate your clientele's desire to harvest fish and gain some solitude or relaxation?	____	____
5. Do you have an alternative marketing strategy or target market to fall back on?	____	____
6. Will you offer "catch and release only" or "pay-by-the-pound harvesting"?	____	____
7. Can you achieve and maintain quality catches, high volume, and catch rates?	____	____

Environmental Factors

	Yes	No
1. Does the topography of the land lend itself to pond construction?	____	____
2. Are the soil types and groundwater level capable of maintaining pond water levels?	____	____
3. Can you obtain the necessary permits and licenses? (See page 3.)	____	____
4. Is your water of the proper quality for selected fish species' survival and growth?	____	____
5. Can adequate water temperatures and levels be maintained?	____	____
6. Is enough water available to fill the pond and replace losses?	____	____
7. Do compatible types and quantities of aquatic plants, algae, and fish species currently exist?	____	____
8. Is the pond area protected from flooding?	____	____
9. Can undesirable and exotic fish be prevented from entering the pond?	____	____
10. Is there year-round access to the pond for fishing, feeding, and maintenance?	____	____
11. Is there a cleared access area to the pond to allow efficient and safe angling by a variety of anglers, whose abilities and techniques may differ?	____	____
12. Is your residence close enough to the pond to allow frequent and timely observations and the necessary management adjustments?	____	____

Production Factors

1. Can you constantly evaluate the status (abundance and size) of the fish population?	____	____
2. Do you have a management plan for maintaining fish size and population densities?	____	____
3. Is a source of replacement fish stocks (fingerling or harvest size) available?	____	____
4. Can you raise your own replacement stock?	____	____
5. Are replacement size fish available at an affordable price?	____	____
6. Are dependable contracted services available for testing water, fish health, and population density?	____	____
7. Can you make or purchase aeration equipment?	____	____
8. Do you have facilities for storing feed and equipment?	____	____
9. Are good-quality feeds readily available at a competitive price?	____	____
10. Is dependable labor affordable and available?	____	____
11. Are you aware of the government agencies and aquaculture associations that can provide you educational and technical services?	____	____

Common Risks and Concerns

Are you equipped to handle the following issues:

1. Poor water quality?	____	____
2. Low water and oxygen depletion?	____	____
3. Disease and parasites?	____	____
4. Poachers and vandals?	____	____
5. Personal stress resulting from daily management?	____	____
6. Bird and wildlife predators?	____	____
7. Angler complaints and requests?	____	____

Conclusion

For-fee fishing can provide a unique opportunity for those individuals interested in working with a natural resource as a hobby to generate limited levels of income, or as a more substantial enterprise focusing on filling particular target or "niche" markets with planned returns on investments. There are numerous factors which control and impact the success or failure of this type of enterprise, including economic factors, environmental determinants, biological factors, production variables, and business planning decisions. Additional information is available from the New York State Aquaculture Association, the United States Fish and Wildlife Service, the United States Soil Conservation Service or the soil and water conservation district in your county, the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, the New York Sea Grant Extension Program, and the Cornell Cooperative Extension program in your county.

A Bibliography of Information Concerning Fishing for Fee

Entrepreneurs considering for-fee fishing would be well advised to read and study some, if not all, of the following references prior to any large commitment of resources to fee fishing.

Beem, M. 1990. Fee Fishing. Oklahoma State University Extension Facts No. 9200. Oklahoma State Cooperative Extension Service. Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK. 4 pp.

Cichra, C. E. and L. T. Carpenter. 1989. Fee Fishing as an Economic Alternative for Small Farms. Southern Rural Development Center. Pub. No. 116. Mississippi State University, Mississippi State, MS. 72 pp.

Cremer, M. C., S. D. Mims, and G. M. Sullivan. 1984. Pay Lakes as a Marketing Alternative for Kentucky Fish Producers. Research Bulletin No. 8. Aquaculture & Natural Resources. Kentucky State University, Frankfort, KY. 19 pp.

Eipper, A. W., H. A. Regier, and D. M. Green. Revised 1988. Fish Management in New York Ponds. Information Bulletin No. 116. Cooperative Extension Publication, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY. 20 pp.

Garling, D. L. 1989. Fee Fishing Pond Management. Fisheries and Wildlife Cooperative Extension Program. Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI. 6 pp.

Helfrich, L. A., R. J. Sheehan and J. S. Odenkirk. 1986. Fishing for Sale: Fee-Fishing Opportunities in Virginia. Dept. of Fisheries and Wildlife Sciences. Virginia Cooperative Extension Service. Virginia Polytechnic Institute, Blacksburg, VA. 8 pp.

Higginbotham, B. 1987. Current Fee Fishing Trends and Techniques in Texas. Reprint No. A 1803. Reprinted from 1987 Texas Fish Farming Conference. Cooperative Extension Program. Prairie View A & M University, Prairie View, TX. 4 pp.

Higginbotham, B. 1988. Facility and Equipment Needs for Texas Fee Fishing Operations. Reprint No. A1804. Reprinted from 1988 Texas Fish Farming Conference. Cooperative Extension Program. Prairie View A & M University, Prairie View, TX. 2 pp.

Huffstodt, J. 1985. Fishing for a Fee. *Farm Pond Harvest*. Vol. No. 19, No. 4. Momence, IL. 2 pp.

Hutchins, B. W. and J. R. VanMeter. 1970. Guidelines for Developing a Fee Fishing Area. Bulletin No. GRPR-10. Office of Recreation and Park Resources. University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, Urbana, IL. 6 pp.

Kiely, J. 1989. Fee Fishing: Income Opportunities for Rural Areas. Reprinted from Resource Management Packet from 1st Eastern Conference on Rural Income Opportunities — April 1989. West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV. 4 pp.

United States Department of Agriculture. 1982. Ponds — Planning Design and Construction. Agriculture Workbook No. 590. Soil Conservation Service, Washington, DC. 51 pp.

New York State Department of Environmental Conservation — Permit Applications & Assistance

The following licenses and permits are required in New York State:

Application for Fishing Preserve License No. FW-171. Farm Fish Pond License No. FW-50 (must be upgraded to FW-171 prior to allowing fee fishing). Fish Tags Permit No. DEC 19 (tags must be attached to all fish prior to leaving property). Permits to Raise Fish for Breeding, Stocking or Resale: Private Bass Hatchery Permit No. DEC 11, and/or Permit to Raise and Sell Trout No. DFG-197. Permit, licensing, and technical assistance is available from the State Department of Environmental Conservation offices listed below.

Region 1 — Stony Brook
Building 40, SUNY
Stony Brook NY 11794
(516) 751–7900

Region 3 — New Paltz
21 South Putt Corners Rd.
New Paltz NY 12561
(914) 255–5453

Region 4 — Stamford
Route 10
Stamford NY 12167
(607) 652–7364

Region 5 — Ray Brook
Route 86
Ray Brook NY 12977
(518) 891–1370

Warrensburg Suboffice
Hudson St., Box 220
Warrensburg NY
12885–0220
(518) 623–3671

Region 6 — Watertown
State Office Building
317 Washington St.
Watertown NY 13601
(315) 785–2262

Utica Suboffice
207 Genesee St.
State Office Building
Utica NY 13501–2885
(315) 793–2554

Central Office — Albany
Bureau of Fisheries
Rm. 518
50 Wolf Rd.
Albany NY 12233–4753
(518) 457–5420

Region 7 — Cortland
P.O. Box 5170
Fisher Ave.
Cortland NY 13045
(607) 753–3095

Region 8 — Avon
6274 E. Avon-Lima Rd.
Avon NY 14414
(716) 226–2466

Region 9 — Olean
128 South St.
Olean NY 14760
(716) 372–8676

Additional sources of information and technical assistance

United States Fish and Wildlife Service
3815 Luker Rd.
Cortland NY 13045
(607) 753–9334

New York Sea Grant
Swetman Hall
SUNY College at Oswego
Oswego NY 13126–3599
(315) 341–3042

New York State Aquaculture Association
c/o New York State Department of Agriculture and Markets
Capital Plaza
1 Winners Circle
Albany NY 12235
(518) 457–4383

Acknowledgments

The author would like to thank the following individuals and acknowledge their contribution in providing editorial comment and input to this publication:

David White, Diane Kuehn, and Michael Voiland, Sea Grant Extension Program; Chad Dawson, SUNY College of Environmental Science and Forestry; Dave Green, Cornell University Biological Research Station; Francis Dellamano, Cooperative Extension of Oswego County; Tommy Brown, Cornell University Department of Natural Resources; Les Wedge and Cliff Creech, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation.

Copies of this publication are available from:

New York Sea Grant
Swetman Hall
SUNY College at Oswego
Oswego NY 13126–3599

New York Sea Grant Extension is a state and federal program designed to help people solve coastal problems along New York's Great Lakes, St. Lawrence, Niagara, and Lower Hudson Rivers, the New York City waterfront, Long Island Sound, and the State's Atlantic Ocean coast. It is administered through the State University of New York and Cornell University. Sea Grant funds research projects and conducts educational programs on issues ranging from off-shore mining and erosion control to commercial fisheries, coastal tourism, and aquaculture.

This publication is issued to further Cooperative Extension work mandated by acts of Congress. It was produced by the New York Sea Grant Extension Program with the cooperation of the U.S. Department of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Cornell Cooperative Extension, New York State College of Agriculture and Life Sciences, New York State College of Human Ecology, and New York State College of Veterinary Medicine, at Cornell University, and the State University of New York. New York Sea Grant Extension offers equal employment and program opportunities.

Sea Grant
New York

• NOAA, Department of Commerce
• Cornell University
• State University of New York

Coastal Recreation
FACT SHEET
May 1997

LAKE ONTARIO ANGLER SATISFACTION

by
Nancy A. Connelly
Research Specialist
Cornell University Department of Natural Resources

Diane Kuehn
Coastal Tourism Specialist
New York Sea Grant

and
Tommy L. Brown
Senior Research Associate
Cornell University Department of Natural Resources

INTRODUCTION

The ecosystem of Lake Ontario has changed greatly over the past two decades. A reduction of nearly 40% in total phosphorus in the lake in the 1980s (data from the Canadian Center of Inland Waters), followed by the introduction of the zebra mussel, led to a large decline in zooplankton density. This, in turn, led to substantial declines in smelt and alewife populations by 1991 (Lake Ontario Committee of the Great Lakes Fishery Commission, 1992). As a result, the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (DEC) decided in 1992 to reduce predatory demand on the declining forage fish stock by 50% through a stepwise reduction in the stocking of salmonines, starting in 1993 (Brandt et al., 1996).The potential impacts of these ecosystem and stocking changes on catch rates and, consequently, angler satisfaction and activity are a concern of fishing-related businesses and tourism promotion agencies.

This study was implemented by Cornell University researchers with funding from the New York Sea Grant Institute in order to determine current levels of angler satisfaction and whether other fishing-related recreation opportunities could compensate for potential changes in catch rates.

METHODS

To target Lake Ontario anglers, a systematic sample of 1,500 names was drawn from 1993-1994 fishing licenses purchased in five New York counties bordering Lake Ontario (i.e., Oswego, Wayne, Monroe, Orleans, and Niagara). These counties, which had the highest percentages of license buyers fishing Lake Ontario in 1988 of all New York counties (Connelly, Brown & Knuth, 1990), provided the most efficient way to obtain a sample of Lake Ontario anglers. The sample included resident, nonresident, seasonal, and short-term fishing licenses.

A questionnaire was mailed to the sample in early September 1995. Respondents who had fished Lake Ontario or one of its tributaries in 1994 or 1995 were asked to recall specific information about their two most recent trips. Respondents were asked specific details about each trip, including the number, species, and size of fish caught, and if they were fishing from a charter boat. Respondents also rated, on a 10-point scale (1 = very dissatisfied to 10 = very satisfied), their satisfaction with nine different aspects of their fishing trip (Table 1) and their overall satisfaction with their trip. Respondents were then asked how their overall satisfaction would have changed if, in addition, they could have

taken advantage of three different fishing-related recreation opportunities (i.e., a booth for fishing information, a regional fishing museum, and a retail outlet store specializing in fishing equipment) during their last trip.

A statistical analysis (regression analysis) was used to identify which aspects or components of an angler's trip were the most important to his/her satisfaction. Each additional recreation opportunity was then examined to determine if it would compensate for a decreased satisfaction with catch and catch rate.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Survey respondents

Of the 1,500 questionnaires mailed, 78 were undeliverable and 838 completed questionnaires were returned. This resulted in an adjusted response rate of 59%.

Approximately 56% of the sample of license buyers fished Lake Ontario or one of its tributaries in 1994 or 1995. Most of them (81%) fished for salmon or trout during that time; 40% fished for species other than salmon and trout.

In an effort to begin tracking the use of the internet by anglers, those who had fished Lake Ontario in 1994 or 1995 were asked if they had access to the internet either at work or at home. More than one-third (37%) of respondents indicated they had access in September 1995, when this study was conducted. Access did not differ for anglers fishing only for salmon and trout.

Angler satisfaction with fishing trips

The remainder of this fact sheet deals only with trips anglers took to Lake Ontario or its tributaries to fish primarily for salmon or trout. These results are based on 456 trips, 96 (21%) of which were charter boat fishing trips.

On a 10-point scale (1 = very dissatisfied, 5 = neutral, and 10 = very satisfied), the average overall trip satisfaction for anglers was 7.1. Although this means that the average angler was satisfied with his/her trip to Lake Ontario, individual responses ranged from 1 to 10 (very unsatisfied to very satisfied).

Survey respondents were also asked to rate their satisfaction with nine different aspects or components of their fishing trip (Table 1). While the average angler was satisfied with each of these components, individual responses once again ranged from 1 to 10. Anglers were the least satisfied with catching fish (the average rating was 5.4), and most satisfied with the companionship of family or friends (the average rating was 8.8).

The aspects or components of angler trips that were most important in explaining overall trip satisfaction were also identified (Figure 1). The numbers listed next to each component in Figure 1 identify the relative importance of the component to overall trip satisfaction. While "catching fish" and "being aware of the presence

Table 1. Trip-related components and average levels of angler satisfaction with each. Satisfaction was measured on a 10-point scale, where 1 = very dissatisfied and 10 = very satisfied.

Components of Trip	Average Angler Satisfaction
Enjoying the companionship of family or friend(s)	8.8
Relaxing; getting away from it all	8.3
Getting access to where you wanted to fish	8.0
Finding any retail services you needed	7.4
Practicing fishing and/or boating skills	7.3
Having enough room to fish; not being too crowded	7.2
Learning something new about fishing or the aquatic environment	7.0
Being aware of the presence of fish	6.9
Catching fish	5.4

Figure 1. A model developed to explain the major components that contribute to overall trip satisfaction for **all trips** to Lake Ontario or its tributaries, primarily for trout or salmon fishing. The numbers (standardized regression coefficients) indicate the relative importance of each component to overall trip satisfaction (i.e., the higher the number, the higher the importance of the component).

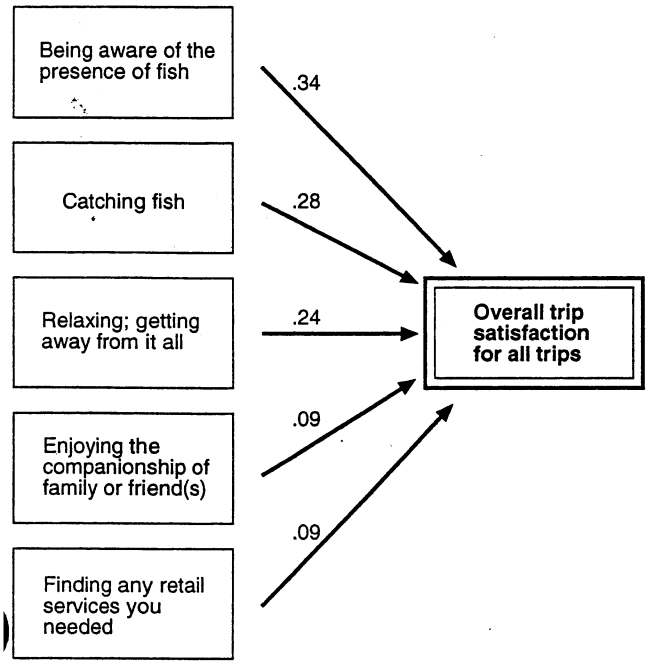
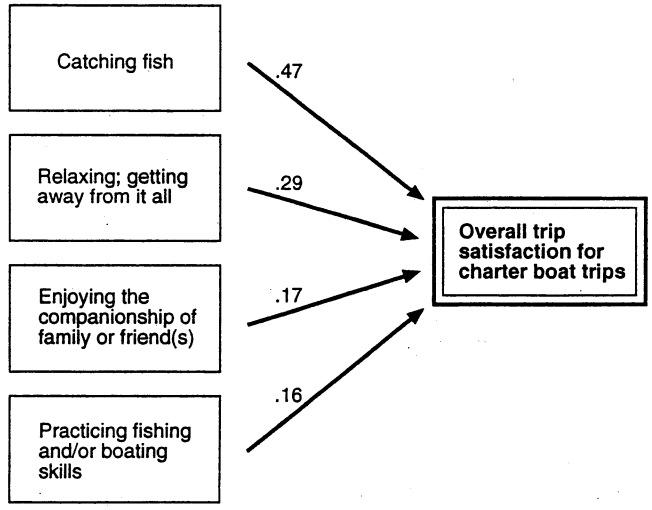


Figure 2. A model developed to explain the major components that contribute to overall trip satisfaction for **charter boat trips** to Lake Ontario or its tributaries, primarily for trout or salmon fishing. The numbers (standardized regression coefficients) indicate the relative importance of each component to overall charter boat trip satisfaction (i.e., the higher the number, the higher the importance of the component).



of fish" had two of the highest numbers (indicating they were among the most important factors), "relaxing; getting away from it all" was also important. "Finding any retail service you needed" and "enjoying the companionship of family and friends" had smaller numbers and thus were not as important as the other three components. Components of fishing trip satisfaction that were not statistically significant are not included in Figure 1.

Half of the anglers (51%) who fished for salmon or trout felt that the ban on snagging in Lake Ontario tributaries had no effect on their fishing satisfaction. One-third (32%) felt the ban had increased their fishing satisfaction, whereas 17% felt it had decreased their satisfaction. The majority of anglers (58%) who fished for salmon or trout supported the ban; 21% opposed it and 21% had no opinion.

For anglers reporting trips on charter boats, the key satisfaction components were similar to trips for all anglers (Figure 2). "Catching fish" was the most important component affecting overall satisfaction, while "relaxing and getting away from it all" was second; "enjoying the companionship of family or friends" and "practicing fishing skills" were somewhat less important.

Importance of catch to overall trip satisfaction

Results indicate that the size of the fish caught by anglers was more closely related to trip satisfaction than the number of fish caught. The average weight of the largest trout or salmon caught on each trip was 14 pounds. A decline of 6 pounds in this average weight would result in a slight decline in overall trip satisfaction. For anglers on charter boat trips (where catching fish was more important than for anglers on all trips), a decline in the size of the catch would result in only slightly more of a decline in satisfaction. On 28% of the trips, no trout or salmon were caught.

Importance of fishing-related options to satisfaction

Anglers were asked how their overall satisfaction would have changed if one of three fishing-related recreation options (i.e., a booth for fishing information, a regional fishing museum, or a retail outlet store specializing in fishing equipment; Table 2) was available. For 40% to 50% of trips, respondents felt these options would not increase their overall satisfaction. These respondents were more likely to have caught a fish on their trip and

Table 2. Potential fishing-related recreation options.

Option A	Visit a booth or kiosk and get free, updated information on the status of Lake Ontario's fisheries and the fishing outlook for the next month.
Option B	For a modest price visit a regional fishing museum that describes and illustrates the history of commercial fishing and sportfishing for that section of Lake Ontario, and how fishing has affected local culture, both historically and today.
Option C	Visit a major nationally-known retail outlet store that specializes in fishing equipment and outdoor clothing.

were generally more satisfied with their overall trip experience than anglers who felt the options would increase their satisfaction.

For 50% to 60% of the trips, anglers said they would experience an increase in satisfaction if one of the options was developed. On average, an increase in overall trip satisfaction of 2.2 to 2.3 points (on a scale of 1 to 10) was expected for each of the three options. For example, an angler having a trip satisfaction of 6.0 **without** the existence of any of the three options, would have a trip satisfaction of 8.2 to 8.3 **with** the existence of one of the options. For anglers on charter boat trips, overall trip satisfaction would increase on average by 2.6 points if they were visiting a regional fishing museum. For both overall trips and charter boat trips, the increase in satisfaction from implementing any of the three options may compensate for the loss in satisfaction resulting from realistic reductions in the average weight of trout and salmon caught. This does not mean that more anglers would come to Lake Ontario for fishing if these options were implemented, only that the trip satisfaction of anglers who did come could increase.

CONCLUSION

The average angler was generally satisfied with his/her Lake Ontario fishing experiences. While "catching fish" and "being aware of the presence of fish" were two of the most important factors for overall trip satisfaction, "relaxing; getting away from it all" was equally as important. "Catching fish" was more important to anglers on charter boat trips, indicating that the importance of catch varies by trip type.

Developing fishing-related recreation opportunities such as fishing museums and retail fishing equipment stores may help increase angler satisfaction. For most trips (50% to 60%), anglers said they would experience an increase in satisfaction if one of these options was developed. However, the results from this study do not indicate that more anglers will come to the Lake Ontario region to fish if these options were implemented, only that the trip satisfaction of anglers who did come would increase. The development of a regional fishing museum may be the best option to pursue to provide additional satisfaction to anglers, since results indicate that this option would increase trip satisfaction for anglers on all trips (including charter boat trips).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank the following people for their review comments and assistance with this fact sheet: Doug Ervers, Cornell Cooperative Extension of Oswego County; and Dave White and Dave MacNeill, NY Sea Grant.

LITERATURE CITED

Brandt, S., et al. 1996. *A review of the current status of Lake Ontario's pelagic fish community.* Report of the 1996 Lake Ontario Technical Panel. Great Lakes Research Review. 2(2):4-10.

Connelly, N. A., T. L. Brown, and B. A. Knuth. 1990. *New York statewide angler survey 1988.* NYSDEC: Albany, NY. 158 pp.

Lake Ontario Committee of the Great Lakes Fishery Commission. 1992. *Status of the Lake Ontario offshore pelagic fish community and related ecosystem in 1992.* NYSDEC: Albany, NY. 34 pp.

Copies of this publication are available from:

NY Sea Grant
101 Rich Hall
SUNY College at Oswego
Oswego, NY 13126
(315) 341-3042

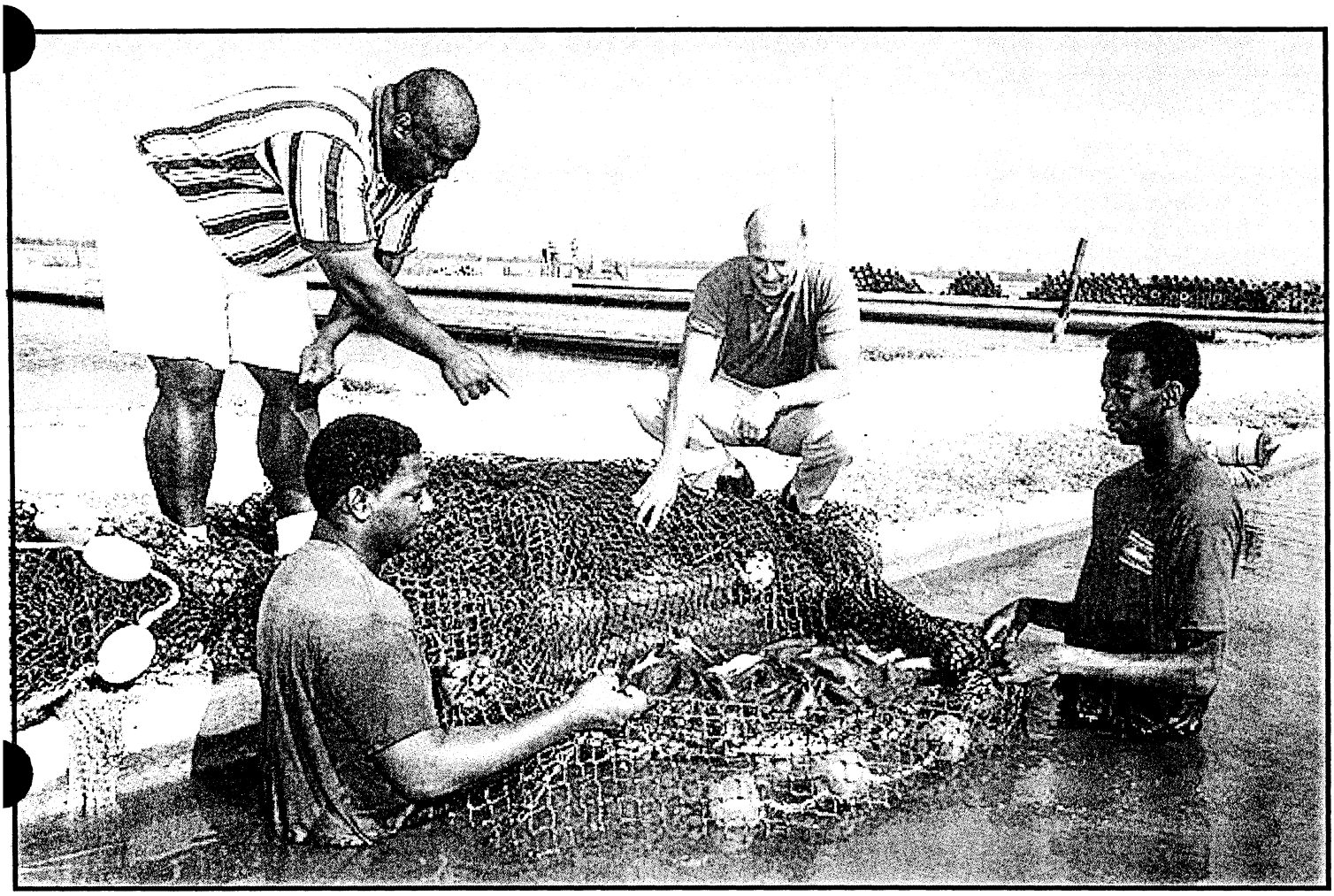
This paper is a result of research funded by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Award #NA46RG-0090 to the Research Foundation of the State University of New York of the New York Sea Grant Institute. The U. S. Government is authorized to produce and distribute reprints for governmental purposes notwithstanding any copyright notation that may appear hereon. The views expressed herein are those of the authors and do not necessarily reflect the views of NOAA or any of its sub-agencies.

Purrfecting the Catfish

by Tara Weaver-Missick,
Agricultural Research Service
Information Staff

Whether blackened or fried, baked or broiled, catfish is a favorite catch, particularly in the South. Now, eaters and producers alike should have no problems finding the "purrfect" fillet.

Research to develop meatier, tastier, and faster growing catfish is paying off. Agricultural Research Service scientists at the Catfish Genetics Research Unit (CGRU) in Stoneville, Mississippi, have bred a new catfish variety—USDA 103—scheduled to be made available to catfish producers in



February 2001. ARS will release the new catfish jointly from the Thad Cochran National Warmwater Aquaculture Center with the Mississippi State University Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station, Mississippi State, Mississippi.

It's one of the few times genetic research has improved catfish since the industry started in the United States during the late 1950s. Since then, catfish has become one of the most successful aquacultural enterprises. Genetic research on channel catfishthe most commonly used species—began in the mid-1960s. But producers have been waiting for development of a new higher performing catfish variety. Since the industry's inception, genetic improvement has not had a significant effect on commercial production in the major catfish-producing states—Alabama, Arkansas, Louisiana, and Mississippi.

The release of USDA 103 should change that. "It usually takes catfish 18 to 24 months to go from birth to market. This new catfish variety grows 10 to 20 percent faster in the pond, and it's ready for market sooner than other varieties—an advantage for producers," says geneticist William R. Wolters, who heads the CGRU.

USDA 103 consumes 10 to 20 percent more feed than other catfish. But since the feed costs only 10 cents per pound, producers are gaining a return on their investment because they can often get 70 to 80 cents per pound for the fish.

"This new fish also has good reproductive characteristics," notes Wolters. "Some USDA 103 catfish can reach sexual maturity at 2 years of age—a year faster than current catfish. The new variety starts producing eggs sooner and produces more eggs than some fish now raised commercially."

"I think this new variety is great," says catfish farmer H. Austin Jones, who raises about 35 million catfish fingerlings (small fish) and 3 million food fish on 1,045 acres of water in Moorehead, Mississippi. "I only have one growing season to get my fish ready, so I'm excited about USDA 103 because it will mean I can get a larger fish to the market faster," Jones says.

This new fish is the cat's meow. In taste tests comparing it with other catfish lines, a quality panel selected cooked USDA 103 fillets as one of their favorites. Wolters says the quality of fresh, frozen, and cooked fillets is comparable to that of other popular catfish strains.

New Tools Spawn Better Fish

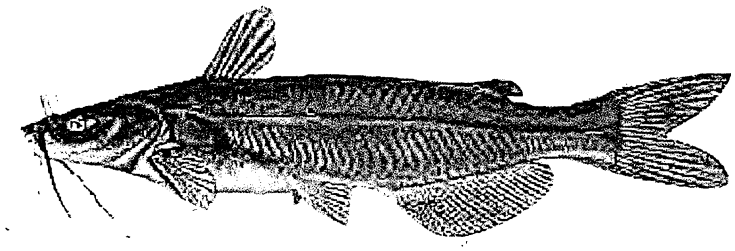
Aside from genetics, high-tech instruments are helping to boost catfish production. ARS geneticist Brian G. Bosworth is using ultrasound to see the internal anatomy of catfish. It's the same technology that allows an expectant mother to see her baby—and even possibly predict the child's health. Ultrasound uses reflected sound waves

to produce a gray-scale image of the catfish's internal anatomy. Different tissues have different reflective properties.

"Using an ultrasound machine, we can measure the size of the muscle," Bosworth says. "From that measurement we can estimate the fillet yield of a live catfish." Fillet yield is the meat from the whole fish. The cattle and swine industries use this technology to measure carcass traits, like backfat and loin area, but no one has ever used it to measure fish muscle mass.

"Ultrasound measurements are a good indication of which fish have higher fillet yield. Now we're breeding those fish to see if they produce offspring with higher fillet yields," Bosworth says.

Bosworth is adapting another procedure from human medicine to predict the fat content in catfish. Typically used to quantify lean muscle mass, total body moisture, and body fat,



bioimpedance measures resistance to a harmless, low-level electrical current passed through electrodes in live, tranquilized fish. Resistance is related to the amount of water and fat in the fish. The more fat, the more resistance. Using this method, Bosworth says he can measure fat levels in live fish and determine which fish would make the best genetic contribution to developing a low-fat catfish.

Another phase of the research involves evaluating fillet yield in different catfish families. "Members of a family have some genes in common, so by determining how similar the yield is in family members, we can get an idea of which fish have the best genes for increased fillet yield," Bosworth says. "Measuring and evaluating traits in families has been used in other livestock species, but we are just starting with this approach in catfish."

G. Crops/Horticulture

Jnited States
)epartment of
ıgriculture

operative State
esearch Service

)ffice for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Blueberries

'he blueberry is delicious as a fresh fruit snack ır in a variety of foods such as blueberry pies ır muffins. Although most large-scale comnercial blueberry operations are in either Aichigan or New Jersey, highbush blueberries ;an be cultivated throughout much of the Jnited States—with careful site selection and ›roper cultural practices.

Highbush blueberries fit nicely into small-;cale farming. In the Midwest, by selecting ›arly or late varieties, harvesting can begin in ›arly June and last into August. Local marketng by pick-your-own (PYO) customers, at 'armer's markets, or ready-picked sales to ıearby stores is particularly feasible for small-;cale operators in close proximity to metropoltan areas. Blueberry sales can supplement ncome from primary sources.

Growing highbush blueberries is labor and nanagement intensive. Most work can be ›erformed by hand, but specialized equipment nay be beneficial. Blueberry production 'equires a substantial investment in time and oney. Plantings require 2 to 3 years to ablish and are not harvested until the third fourth growing season. Many things can go wrong during the first years and a knowledge of blueberry biology and pest management is essential.

Without good cultural practices—including insect, weed, and disease control—plantings may be doomed even before first harvest. Ideas on pest control practices should be available through the local Cooperative Extension Service (CES).

Per-acre returns can be high. A mature planting can gross $5,000 per acre and return $3,000 or more with correct marketing, management, and growing.

Site and Pre-Planting Considerations

Blueberries should ideally be planted on a gently rolling slope to provide good air and water drainage. Good air drainage reduces likelihood of blossom damage from late spring frosts. Blueberry roots are very sensitive to standing water so they need good surface and internal water drainage. Although a sandy soil is best for drainage, heavier soils may be used if internal drainage is adequate. This may require either planting on ridges or placing tiles to improve drainage.

In choosing a site, give consideration to a water source for irrigation. If the crop is to be vested by PYO customers, the location ould be easily accessible to parking nearby.

Blueberry plants are very sensitive to soil pH and require acidic soils for success. Optimum soil pH is 4.8 to 5.2, although levels as high as 5.5 are acceptable. The soil pH can gradually be reduced through use of acid-reaction fertilizers. Soils with pH levels of 5.5 to 6.0 can be used if the soil pH is lowered using an agricultural sulfur 1 year or more prior to planting. The sulfur required to lower soil pH varies with soil type. It may be economically unfeasible to adjust the pH of some soils. Therefore, prior to planting, another soil pH test should be conducted to learn whether the soil pH has attained a satisfactory acidic reaction.

Planning should begin at least 1 year prior to planting blueberries. This time schedule allows for adjusting soil pH (if needed), tiling, ditching, and digging a pond or drilling a well. During this time, it may be possible to control perennial weeds which may be difficult to stop with herbicides registered for use on blueberries after planting. A green manure crop of rye or wheat may be grown and then turned under to improve soil tilth. Any cultivated crop grown during this preparatory year may help reduce insect and weed problems. If herbicides are used to manage weeds during the preparation of the site for blueberry production, then be aware of the time limits for degradation of the herbicide residues in the soil.

Plant Selection

Cultivars (cultivated varieties) are the keys to success and are selected a year ahead. They should be booked with a reputable nursery. The CES (Extension agent) should have information on which cultivars are best adapted for local use. A potential grower may also learn about cultivar selection by visiting other growers and from nursery professionals. Most nurseries offer rooted cuttings, 2-year-old bare-rooted fieldgrown plants, and 2-year-old containerized nursery stock.

Many small-scale operations buy containerized planting stock because of the increased survival and earlier production they may offer. If containerized stock is used, it is wise to pick up the plants at the nursery and eliminate shipping expenses.

Field Layout

Blueberries benefit from cross pollination so growers should alternate cultivars with similar flowering seasons in alternating blocks of 2 to 4 rows. Rows ideally run north to south to allow for uniform sunlight. However, any orientation is acceptable. Blueberries are normally grown with wide row spacings, with the area between rows seeded down to a perennial cover crop such as Kentucky bluegrass or fescue.

Row spacings of 10 to 14 or more feet ensure that mowing and spraying can be done by tractor, although narrower spacings will allow for equipment use during the first few years of planting. However, without at least 10-foot spacing the plants will grow large enough that a tractor can no longer be driven between the rows. Spacing within the row is commonly 4′or 6′.

Planting for PYO operations should allow for customer convenience and handling. Rows should be interrupted with cross-walks or drive alleys about every 200′. It is also helpful to arrange cultivars with similar ripening seasons together so that harvest can progress in an orderly fashion.

Planting

Planting of containerized nursery stock may occur in either early fall or early spring. Bare root nursery stock is normally planted in the spring. Fall planting should occur between late September and early October. The roots of these fall-set plants will continue to grow until soil temperatures fall below 45 °F. Spring plantings are often delayed because of wet weather. Fall-set plants are already in place and have the advantage of early spring growth, which is often missed in spring plantings due to wet weather delays. Fall-planted blueberries must be mulched prior to winter in areas in danger of frost heaving. Spring planting should begin as soon as the danger of severe frost has passed.

Blueberries are shallow rooted so the planting hole needs to be wide. Holes may be dug by hand or with an oversized tractor-mounted posthole digger. Some growers prefer to plant in a plow furrow. After the hole is dug, the plants should be planted as deep as they were in the nursery. Usually about 1 pound of moist acidic sphagnum peat moss is used per plant during planting. It is mixed with soil during backfilling of the planting hole and should be thoroughly wet prior to using. Failure to wet the sphagnum peat moss can result in it drawing moisture out of the soil and causing the newly set plants to dry out.

After planting, bare-root plants should have 1/3 to 2/3 of the branches removed. This allows the plant root system to be in balance with the shoot system and increases survival by reducing transpirational demand. Planting containerized stock reduces the need for pruning branches at planting time. Flower buds should be rubbed off to ensure that plant energy is channeled into vegetative growth.

Mulch and Irrigation
In most regions where highbush blueberries can be grown, both mulch and irrigation are essential for successful production. Mulch goes on newly set plants soon after planting and irrigation should be ready before newly set plants dry out. Many materials are suitable for mulching blueberries, but sawdust is most common. Mulch keeps soil temperatures cooler during summer, reduces weeds, and maintains soil moisture more uniformly.

Although mulch helps save moisture, it does not eliminate the need for irrigation. Blueberries are very sensitive to drought and irrigation is essential in most areas. Trickle irrigation offers the advantage of being more efficient, but it does not allow for the frost protection that overhead systems can provide. In areas where late spring frosts are of little concern, trickle irrigation is normally chosen because of its increased efficiency. Irrigation then occurs without interrupting spraying or harvesting.

Crop Management
Bird depredation can be the biggest problem of small-scale producers, sometimes causing crop losses of over 70 percent. Scare devices and exclusion by netting are commonly used to reduce losses.

Insect and disease problems may be small in areas of few blueberry plantings. The CES can provide information on weed, insect, and disease control.

Marketing the Crop
The principal small-scale market may be consumers in local communities. A high percentage of blueberries are direct marketed locally. The potential trade area for blueberries tends to be larger than for strawberries. Blueberries also offer other advantages over strawberries for PYO operations. Blueberries require little stooping. Customers find them easy to freeze, requiring little preparation other than washing, and easy to use. PYO surverys have found a trend towards an increased average age of PYO consumers.

Sales of ready-picked blueberries at the farm or local markets bring higher prices to producers from consumers who desire farm fresh produce, but do not wish to PYO.

The blueberry crop is usually sold within 60 days, depending upon weather and varieties. Weekends are usually the busiest. Coordinating sales advertising and promotion with peak harvests challenges even experienced growers.

PYO growers must be market oriented, plan far ahead, seek alternative market possibilities, train employees, and develop successful advertising, especially a good farm logo. Before starting any small-scale enterprise, a farmer should study the potential markets, trade areas, competitors, and the advertising media.

About 450 PYO customers can harvest 1 acre of blueberries (6,000 pounds). PYO blueberries are usually sold by weight in pounds and/or ounces. The scales used for sales should be inspected by the Weights and Measures Division of the State Department of Agriculture or Commerce.

A direct market business requires time to develop. Blueberries lend themselves nicely to market development because they require 6 years or more to reach maximum yields. Careful attention to a business image, including the logo, quality of fruit, and how fields are maintained, is essential. A direct marketer should exceed customer expectations. Merely raising high-quality blueberries is not enough.

Often customers enjoy the recreational aspect of a trip to a country farm as much as obtaining high-quality produce at reasonable prices. They want well marked roads; adequate parking; and friendly courteous service.

Since accidents do occur, growers must have adequate insurance. A regular farm insurance policy may not cover liability to PYO customers.

For More Information
State university and county CES personnel can often provide information from local Ag Experiment Stations which is geared to local production and marketing. For example, the University of Illinois conducts an annual "Small Fruit School" and publishes a Proceedings, which includes information on blueberries as well as other small fruit. For information write to J.D. Kindhart, University of Illinois, Dixon Springs Agricultural Center, R-1, Box 256, Simpson, IL 62985. Similar extension schools are held in Michigan, New York, Wisconsin, Ohio, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Missouri, and other States.

Other Information Sources
Highbush Blueberry Production Guide (200 pp, color), Northeast Regional Agricultural Engineering Service, 152 Riley-Robb Hall, Cooperative Extension, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853.

Small Fruit Crop Management (608 pp), Prentice Hall. Mail Order Billing Dept.,200 Old Tappan Road, Old Tappan, NJ 07657.

Growing Blueberries in Missouri (26 pp), State Fruit Experiment Station of SMSU, Mountain Grove, MO 65711.

Hints on Growing Blueberries (8 pp), Bulletin Office, 10B Agriculture Hall, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI 42824.

Fruit and Vegetable Clip Art for Direct Marketers University of Illinois, Department of Horticulture, Dixon Springs Agricultural Center, Simpson, IL 62985.

Small Fruit Production and Pest Management Guide (111 pp), Publications Distribution Center, 112 Agricultural Administration Building, The Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA 16802.

The Highbush Blueberry and Its Management (270 pp), The Haworth Press Inc., 10 Alice Street, Binghamton, NY 13904.

By J.D. Kindhart, University of Illinois, and George B. Holcomb, Office of Communication, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at (202) 720-5881 (voice) or (202) 720-7808 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

All uses of fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides must be registered by appropriate State and/or Federal agencies before they can be recommended.

CAUTION: Fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides can be injurious to humans, domestic animals, desirable plants, and fish or other wildlife if they are not handled or applied properly. Use all products selectively and carefully. Follow recommended practices for the disposal of surplus products and their containers.

May 1994

nited States
epartment of
griculture

ooperative State
esearch Service

ffice for
mall-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Brambles

ew crops are as well suited for small-scale griculture as the brambles—raspberries and lackberries. Significant production can be chieved on just a few acres and berries are in reat demand, not only for fresh eating but for esserts, jams and jellies, and wine.

Raspberries and blackberries are very high n fiber, vitamin C, phosphorus, potassium, nd magnesium and have more calcium than ny other temperate fruit.

Exquisite flavor, high nutritive value, and an xotic image push brambleberry prices to $1 er half pint in rural areas and $5 in urban enters. With yields of about 5,000 lbs. per cre, a gross return of more than $13,000 per cre can be realized even with the lower price.

A wide variety of brambles includes ummer-bearing red raspberries (fruiting ccurs on second year canes), first to narket—usually in late June or early July. Next e black and then purple raspberries. ckberries (including Loganberries and oysenberries) and blackberry-raspberry ybrids (e.g., Tayberries) ripen from late July hrough August.

Finally, from late August through frost, red aspberries are again available from varieties hat produce on the tops of first year canes. A ew raspberry cultivars have yellow fruit.

In all but the most severe climates, a grower can select bramble types that continuously supply the market from late June hrough frost.

The challenges are many. Brambles need nuch labor. Canes must be annually pruned and trellised; this cannot be done well nechanically.

Fresh market fruit must be hand-harvested and sold soon after picking. Raspberries and blackberries have the shortest shelf life of any temperate fruit; only special care can maintain quality.

Few commercial growers have more than 5 acres in production; and even this requires excellent management.

Assess resources first

Potential growers should assess natural, capital, and human resources and likely rkets before considering brambles. Climate ely determines which types can be grown. old winters limit northern ranges; lack of adequate chilling during dormancy limits southern ranges. In general, blackberries are more adapted to southern and raspberries to northern climates.

The coastal Pacific Northwest offers an ideal climate—with winters and summers that are usually mild. Brambles can be severely injured when temperatures drop rapidly between late fall and early spring.

In most areas, special sites and cultivars are required. But the many cultivars will allow growers to produce at least one variety of bramble fruit. Local county cooperative extension agents can recommend varieties for a particular area.

Important for brambles is a well-drained soil. Many varieties are extremely susceptible to diseases in cool, wet soils. Artificial drainage is usually a sound investment.

Although raspberries and blackberries do not tolerate wet soils, neither do their relatively shallow root systems bear drought. Drip irrigation, with a good water source, is generally needed. See "Trickle Irrigation in the Eastern United States" ($3.25), NRAES-4, Northeast Region Agricultural Engineering Service, 152 Riley-Robb Hall, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, 14853, and "The Basis of Trickle Irrigation," VC-23-82, Univ. of Illinois Cooperative Extension Service, Urbana, IL 61801.

The site should allow cold air to drain; in northern areas, northeast slopes minimize temperature fluctuations until spring.

Prior cropping history is important; weeds and vegetable crops can harbor verticillium wilt disease to which many brambles are susceptible. Growers should identify land for rotation before replanting old fields.

If the crop is to be marketed on a pick-your-own basis, parking space must be available nearby.

Regarding capital needs, it usually takes more than $6,000 an acre to establish brambles. Total investment may be recovered within 6 years, according to Mark Castaldi's "The Cost of Establishing and Producing Small Fruits for Pick-Your-Own and Commercial Harvest" ($3), Department of Fruit and Vegetable Science, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853.

University of New Hampshire economists have developed a bramble crop budgeting template for Lotus software and a manual (NC5-30, $30), NRAES, 152 Riley-Robb Hall, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853.

"Farming Alternatives: A Guide to Evaluating the Feasibility of New Farm-Based Enterprises" ($5.50), NRAE5-32, Riley-Robb Hall, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853, a workbook, can help small-scale growers decide whether to invest.

Labor needs, very inconstant, are a major factor. In full production, each acre may need 10 pickers. State and Federal labor laws must be adhered to. See "Agricultural Employers Notebook," ($14) from Cornell Cooperative Extension, P.O. Box 217, Alton, NY 14413.

Market assessment

Fruit growers should explore potential markets before investing. Prices can vary considerably with supply, location, demographics, and time of year. Eastern prices are generally higher than those in the West; the large Washington-Oregon processing industry can depress prices. In the South, many consumers won't pay prices listed for exotic produce.

Dale Stokes, former president of the North American Bramble Growers Association, says **market identification is the most important component of success.**

Pick-your-own (PYO) is popular for marketing because it reduces harvest labor costs. Successful PYO operators link entertainment with harvest; many customers view picking as recreation.

Westmoreland Berry Farm, outside Washington, DC, markets blackberries both PYO and retail. The typical customer buys $18 to $20 worth of fruit. The farm is within 2 hours' drive of three marketing outlets--Washington, Richmond, and Baltimore, ideal for PYO. Owners Charles and Anne Geyer say their first 2 acres of blackberries grossed over $30,000 in their third year.

Supermarkets often buy fruit from a grower to bypass a warehouse. Such growers must pay much attention to quality and consistency, packing and cooling fruit soon after picking to extend shelf life.

Some restaurants pay top dollar for fresh raspberries and blackberries but each restaurant uses only a relatively small quantity and deliveries cost time and gasoline. Roadside stands can be popular but a diverse selection of items may be needed to justify a stand. Many growers sell to others' stands.

Besides fresh fruit, a small-scale grower can produce value-added jelly, juice, wine,

/rup, or candy. In St. Louis, Bissinger's, a nall candy store, chocolate-coats raspberries summer, hardly keeping up with demand at 32 a pound.

Sand Hill Berry Farm in Pennsylvania ıarkets a gourmet raspberry vinegar—ıspberries, apple cider vinegar, and sugar. he Tomasello Winery in New Jersey finds its ıspberry wine popular.

Liquor Store magazine reports raspberry /ill be the next flavor rage. Raspberry-flavored roducts are leading sellers at many outlets. Vhistling Wing Farms in Maine sells raspberry roducts, such as jelly and syrup, all over the /orld by mail order. Its bakery does well elling raspberry pies, muffins, and turnovers.)pportunities are limited only by imagination.

ıite preparation.

Vith adequate resources and an identified narket, a grower needs a year to prepare a ıanting site. Certain changes are difficult if ıot impossible to make once a planting is ıstablished.

'irst comes an adequate drainage and rrigation system. USDA's Soil Conservation Service (SCS) may help.

Second, perennial weeds should be ɜliminated through repeated cultivation (as vith an organic-enhancing cover crop), erbicides, or soil sterilization.

Third, potential nematode populations ould be assessed and controlled. Nema-odes not only can damage plants directly but carry viruses that can decimate plantings. They are more of a problem in warmer climates and in lighter soils.

Fourth, adjust the soil chemistry for adequate nutrients and a 6.5 pH--best for brambles. Soil testing varies among laborato-ies; each has its recommendations for phosphorus, potassium, magnesium, and calcium. Tests may point to peculiar soil conditions. Lime or sulfur can adjust the pH value; a year or more may be required for amendments to effectively change soil chemistry.

Obtaining plants

In the early 1900's, viruses destroyed a thriving U.S. bramble industry in the East. Uninfected plant materials were unavailable for propaga-tion. But in the 1970's, nurseries, applying tissue-culture techniques, produced brambles without harmful viruses or exposure to diseases.

Nurseries offering tissue-cultured brambles include Ahren's Strawberry Nursery, RR 1, Huntingburg, IN 47542; Congdon & ller, Mile Block Rd., North Collins, NY 11; North Star Gardens, 19060 Manning ail North, Marine, MN 55047; Nourse Farms, Inc., Box 485 RFD, 5. Deerfield, MA 01373; and Champlain Isle Agro Associates, Isle La Motte, VT 05463.

Never propagate brambles from a neighbor's patch; infection with viruses from nearby wild brambles is likely.

The performance of cultivars varies considerably with location.

A high demand exists for yellow (golden) raspberries, but plants seem more susceptible to diseases than traditional red raspberries.

Cultural practices

The most complete reference is "Bramble Production Guide," $35, NRAE5-35, Riley-Robb Hall, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853. It notes how each type must be treated differently.

Federal and State researchers recently have learned that:

- Plants propagated from tissue-culture, although vigorous and virus-indexed, are sensitive to herbicides normally applied at planting. A straw mulch during the planting year or planting through black plastic may be better than conventional herbicide weed control.

- Spreading fruiting canes apart in the row in a V-configuration significantly improves fruit yield and hastens drying within the plant canopy and makes spraying and harvesting easier.

- New trellising systems for mechanical harvesting include use of monofilament nylon wire as strong as metal but not conductive of lightning. (Amberg's Nursery, 3164 Whitney Road, Stanley, NY 14561, is a distributor.)

- Although raspberries are not widely grown in the South, displaced northerners will demand fresh fruit. Some recently developed southern blackberries include several erect types—no trellises needed—such as Arkan-sas' recently released thornless Navaho.

- A combination of first year cane suppres-sion, plus mowing half the planting every other year, can bring yields equal to conventional annual intensive pruning and fruiting. This also reduces labor and spray costs—half the cost of planting fruits in any one year.

- Using a floating row cover in early spring over fall-bearing raspberries, such as Heritage, accelerates cane growth and yields. Covers in the north can minimize damage from frosts.

- Inoculating brambles at planting with new strains of particular soil fungi and bacteria may prevent subsequent harmful infection.

- A combination of rapid cooling after harvest, storage of fruit near 30 °F, and maintaining high humidity and carbon dioxide in the storage room prolongs shelf life.

Pests problems

Among pests, of most concern are viruses that can be transmitted by aphids, leafhoppers, nematodes, or even bees carrying pollen from wild brambles. See "Virus Diseases of Small Fruits " ($20), Ag Handbook #631, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

Water or high humidity is essential for infection by most disease organisms, so proper pruning and trellising for good air drainage cuts disease pressure. Since most root diseases require standing water to complete their life cycle, good soil drainage minimizes these problems.

Several insects attack bramble canes, flowers, fruit, and leaves. Responsible growers scout plantings regularly, applying insecticides only when pests reach damaging levels. Avoiding locations near insect habitats helps.

The American Phytopathological Society has a "Compendium of Raspberry and Blackberry Diseases and Insects," describing with colored photographs many bramble problems—such as herbicide injury and nutritional deficiencies. ($25, APS, 3340 Pilot Knob Road, St. Paul, MN 55121)

Organizations and Newsletters

The North American Bramble Growers Association provides helpful information. Membership is $45 plus $5 per acre up to maximum of 7 acres. (Richard Fagan, Executive Secretary, Rt. 2 Box 539, Cumberland, MD 21502)

Other sources of newsletters on small fruit crops: Bernadine Strick, Department of Horticulture, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR 97331; Paul Otten, 19060 Manning Trail North, Marine on St. Croix, MN 55047-9723; Fruit Extension Secretary, Department of Fruit and Vegetable Science, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14853.

Prepared by Marvin P. Pritts of the Department of Fruit and Vegetable Science, Cornell University, and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Program Director). OSSA's address: Cooperative State Research Service, USDA, Room 342-D, Aerospace Building, Washington, DC 20250-2200. (Telephone: 202-401-4640 or Fax: 202-401-5179)

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

August 1991

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1991 O—866-721

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE
NATIONAL AGRICULTURAL LIBRARY
RECEIVED
JUL 20 1997
ORDER UNIT
ACQUISITIONS BRANCH

United States
Department of
Agriculture
Cooperative State
Research Education and
Extension Service
Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Bees

More than 211,000 beekeepers maintain about 3.2 million honey bee colonies in the United States. Thousands of beekeepers are small-scale entrepreneurs. Aside from the pleasures of the hobby, they keep honey bees for the production of honey, pollen, beeswax, propolis, and royal jelly.

Only in the last century have people begun to recognize the value of bees as pollinators. Pollinators include not only honey bees, but also more than 3,500 species of pollen bees in North America. The contribution of bees as pollinators of cultivated crops far outweighs the value of hive products. Although most beekeepers specialize in honey bees, some raise pollen bees for their pollination services.

Beekeeping's profitability depends on many factors, and the decision to enter this occupation should be made carefully. Beekeepers should know about bee biology, flora, and management, and should also possess business ability. They should understand that beekeeping is subject to factors beyond their control — such as market prices that fluctuate and weather elements that range from drought to floods and temperature extremes.

Entrepreneurs intent on commercializing should decide whether to be migratory or nonmigratory and select locations that offer opportunities for pollination rentals; production of honey, beeswax, or pollen; and selling of packaged bees and queens.

Although some local governments restrict placement of beehives, many beekeepers can keep their honey bee colonies in almost any urban, suburban, or rural location. Beehives can be found on rooftops and balconies in many cities. Observation beehives are sometimes seen in homes, classrooms, offices, and museums. The Insect Zoo at the Smithsonian Natural History Museum in Washington, DC, features an observation beehive. Specific publications may help in selecting a location. (See "Beekeeping and Their Neighbors" by Dewey M. Caron, Eastern Apiculture Society of North America, Inc., and "Beekeeping" from the Beekeeping Education Service, Wicwas Press, Cheshire, CT 06410/$1.50 to nonmembers.)

A potential beekeeper may find helpful information in many places. Most States have county agents and Extension entomologists whose responsibilities include beekeeping. Some State universities even offer college credits for beekeepers either as residents or by correspondence. All 50 States and Puerto Rico have beekeeping organizations that meet regularly to exchange the latest information. Many groups also put on workshops for potential beekeepers. National and regional beekeepers' groups meet annually. "Who's Who in Apiculture," published yearly in the April issue of Bee Culture, (referenced below under "Beekeeping Publications"), lists organizations, dealers, and government information sources.

A would-be beekeeper should learn as much as possible about beekeeping before purchasing bees and bee equipment. Observing honey bees close up with an experienced beekeeper is an excellent way to learn about beekeeping.

Those First Honey Bees

A beekeeper can get started by:

- Purchasing an established beehive.
- Buying new bee equipment and packaged bees with queens from bee supply companies. (See "Who's Who in Apiculture.")
- Obtaining bee equipment and capturing a swarm.

Beekeepers can collect swarms by making their interest known to apiary inspectors, Extension agents, police departments, beekeepers, and others who might receive swarm calls.

Information on availability of bees and bee equipment also can be obtained from beekeeping groups and trade journals.

Honey Bee Management

Cardinal points to keep in mind when managing bees:

- Bees need food to survive: honey or sugar syrup as a carbohydrate source, pollen or pollen substitutes for protein, and water as the universal solvent.
- The bee colony will need lots of comb space for storing food and rearing brood. Lack of adequate space could lead to swarming, which could reduce honey production.
- For successful wintering, a colony should have a young queen, a large cluster of adult bees, 40 to 60 pounds of honey, and several combs of pollen. Each colony should have a two-story standard hive that includes a brood chamber and a honey super — the removable section where the bees store their honey.
- Starvation is a principal cause of colony losses. If bees are short of honey, they should be fed a syrup of two parts granulated sugar to one part water. Lack of pollen can be compensated for by purchasing pollen substitutes from bee supply dealers.

Insecticides

The occasional pesticide spraying of isolated plants or gardens may kill only a few bees; but when entire fields and orchards are sprayed or dusted, the resultant bee loss could be devastating. In such cases, beekeepers will usually see a large accumulation of dead and dying bees at hive entrances.

Beekeepers who place hives on growers' property should mark each beehive with their name, address, and telephone number so they can be notified in advance about spraying. Beekeepers who maintain bees on their own property need to communicate closely with neighboring agricultural operations where the bees are likely to be foraging. With a few days' warning, several things can be done to minimize the effects of a spray. First, decide whether the pesticides would harm honey bees. If so, here are some alternatives:

- The beehive may be moved to a temporary location at least 2 miles from the spray area.
- The hive entrance can be draped with damp burlap. This protects the beehive from effects of a direct "hit." The burlap cover should stay on only for the duration of the application.

The hive may be left in place and some loss of bees accepted.

The best way is to work with the farmer and the pesticide applicator in developing programs that safeguard pollinating insects. Some general guidelines are:

- Insecticides should not be applied to blossoms; honey bees visit not only blossoms on cultivated crops, but also those of orchard ground-cover and noncultivated plants.
- The safest time to apply insecticides is late afternoon after bees stop foraging. Early morning applications are also less dangerous to bees than those in mid-day.
- An insecticide may be selected that has the least impact on nontarget insects and animals.

Diseases and Pests

Bees, like all creatures, are subject to infectious diseases. To lessen the spread of disease and minimize harm, beekeepers should learn as much as possible about healthy, normal colonies so they can recognize signs of diseases.

The most common brood diseases of honey bees are American foulbrood, European foulbrood, and chalkbrood. Among adult bees, Nosema disease is one of the most serious. Two parasitic mites, *Acarapis woodi* and *Varroa jacobsoni*, recently replaced more traditional adult and brood diseases as the most serious ailments.

If disease is suspected, the county Extension agent, a more experienced beekeeper, or the State apiary inspector can help. "Who's Who in Apiculture" (mentioned above) lists State apiary inspectors.

Here are a few simple rules for avoiding diseases in honey bees:

- Do not feed honey from an unknown source; it may carry organisms that cause American foulbrood disease.
- Buy packaged bees and queens only from reputable dealers.
- Buy used bee equipment only after consulting with the State apiary inspector.
- Look for signs of diseases each time the beehive is opened. Early detection can avoid costly replacements.

Beekeepers also have been keeping an eye on the range expansion of Africanized honey bees. As of November 1994, Africanized honey bees are established in Texas, Arizona, New Mexico, Puerto Rico, and California. Subject of many scary media stories, these bees are more likely to sting in defense of their nests than are the domestic European honey bees. However, a chance encounter with an Africanized bee foraging on blossoms is no more likely to result in a sting than is an encounter with a domestic honey bee.

In 4 years, Texas has recorded only one fatality from stings of Africanized honey bees. All the stinging incidents attributed to Africanized honey bees originated from feral colonies — those not managed by a beekeeper. Destroying feral colonies of honey bees in areas where Africanized honey bees are known to exist appears to be a good strategy for reducing the impact of Africanized honey bees.

Keeping European honey bees by requeening is strongly recommended in areas where Africanized honey bees are known to exist. Only queens from non-Africanized areas or certified European queens should be used for requeening. Printed materials, slides, and videotapes on Africanized honey bees are available in many languages from State and Federal Extension agents.

Products of the Hive

Honey, the most popular beehive product, can be marketed in many ways. The simplest is merely to cut out pieces of the comb containing honey. This "cut comb" may be wrapped with plastic or enclosed in a plastic sandwich box. Liquid honey is extracted from combs by centrifugal force with specially built extractors. The equipment needs make extraction impractical for many beginners.

Pollen and propolis — the resinous substance bees use to fill holes and gaps — are additional sources of income. However, small-scale entrepreneurs should make sure they have a market. Beeswax is a useful byproduct, but not for beekeepers with just a few colonies. Production of royal jelly is labor-intensive, and markets are limited.

Beekeeping Publications

Beekeeping periodicals and books abound. Many county Extension agents or State universities have publications dealing with beekeeping and bee supply companies. See "Who's Who in Apiculture" (mentioned above) for State universities with beekeeping specialists.

U.S. periodicals with the largest circulation are:

- American Bee Journal, 51 South Second St., Hamilton, IL 62341/$16.20 a year.
- Bee Culture, 623 W. Liberty Street, Medina, OH 44258/$16.50 a year.
- The Speedy Bee, P.O. Box 998, Jesup, GA 31545-0998/$17.25 a year.

Because there are so many beekeeping books, a newcomer may want to borrow books from a library or another beekeeper before deciding which to buy. Two books in most beekeepers' libraries are:

- "ABC and XYZ of Bee Culture," A.I. Root Co., P.O. Box 706, Medina, OH 44258/$25.
- "The Hive and the Honey Bee," Dadant & Sons, 51 South Second St., Hamilton, IL 62341/$36.00.

Prepared by H. Shimanuki and S.W.T. Batra of the Bee Research Laboratory, Agricultural Research Service, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, D.C. 20250-2244. Telephone 202-401-1805, Fax 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc., should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720-5881 (voice) or 202-720-7808 (TDD).

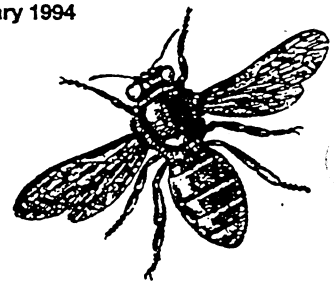
To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

All uses of fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides must be registered by appropriate State and/or Federal agencies before they can be recommended.

CAUTION: Fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides can be injurious to humans, domestic animals, desirable plants, and fish or other wildlife if they are not handled or applied properly. Use all products selectively and carefully. Follow recommended practices for the disposal of surplus products and their containers.

January 1994



ıited States
ɜpartment of
ɪriculture

perative State
earch Service

fice for
nall-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

American Ginseng

ıots of cultivated American ginseng (Panax inquefolium L.) sold for $40 to $43 per · und in 1992, but this high-value crop is ficult to grow and requires a great deal of ıe, labor and money. Nearly a dozen fungi n attack the plants and roots, damaging or ping out an entire crop worth $75,000 per re, which may have taken 3 or 4 years to ɜch harvest maturity.

Meanwhile, China has been purchasing ed from American growers to produce ıinese-grown American ginseng. Insiders eculate that the combination could saturate ɜ future ginseng market.

Ginseng has become a significant cash ɔp export since the discovery of a wild riety nearly 280 years ago in Canada. A suit missionary, traveling with a group of ɔhawks north of Montreal, stumbled upon ɜ plant in the early 1700's. Realizing its ɪtential trade value, the Canadian Jesuits arched for more. In 1718, a cargo of wild ıseng roots was shipped to southern China sold for $5 a pound. Today the price is een $150 to $280 a pound.

he China trade remained secret until nerican colonists learned of the herb's high ice. "Sang" hunters searched the forests of ɜstern Pennsylvania, West Virginia, Kentucky ıd Tennessee. Ginseng quickly became a luable trade export to the Orient, until over-ırvesting threatened the native crops. Today, ıseng still grows wild, mainly in the cooler ɔpalachian Mountain areas, but over-har-ɪsting causes serious scarcity.

Unlike the early 1900's, today's harvests e closely regulated through the Convention ı International Trade in Endangered Species Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). Under the TES, import and export permits help prevent ternational trade from threatening survival of ld species. Some countries also levy ad llorem import taxes.

Cultivated roots and underground rhizomes ɔ not need export permits in the United ates, but all shipments must have an "Artifi-ally Propagated Plant Certificate" issued by e U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service of the U.S. ɜpartment of the Interior. Federal law quires States to issue regulations on the ırvesting and sale of ginseng, and to keep cords of exports. On Federal property, ıseng hunters must apply for permits and nly in designated areas.

OR PRODUCERS

ternationally, the United States produces the ost cultivated American ginseng, followed by Canada. There are nearly 1,300 growers in Wisconsin — the major growing state — 300 in Ontario and 100 in British Columbia. Growers are also scattered throughout New York, Kentucky, North Carolina, Tennessee, Oregon and Washington.

Wisconsin was actively involved in the harvest and export of wild ginseng in the mid nineteenth century. By the 1860's, the threat of extinction forced State governments to devise protective measures and Wisconsin growers began cultivating American ginseng under artificial shade. Today, these growers annually produce more than 1 million pounds, nearly 90 percent of the total cultivated U.S. crop.

In 1993, Wisconsin growers harvested nearly 1.7 million pounds of ginseng roots, valued at close to $70 million. Prices are based on market conditions and root quality, weight, size and color.

Currently, expanding Canadian production is reported to be nearing 1 million pounds annually. Ontario produces the largest percentage in fields formerly used to grow tobacco.

The "American Ginseng Trends" newsletter (Future Concepts, Inc., P.O. Box 1982, Wausau, WI 54402-1982) covers all aspects of the international industry, including harvest overviews, political issues, research updates and market reports.

HIGH-RISK INVESTMENT

According to Jennifer Parke, University of Wisconsin professor of plant pathology, the high risk comes mainly from disease. Parke coordinates disease studies at Wisconsin's Ginseng Research Gardens, which encompasses nearly 2 acres of plants ranging from seedlings to three-year-olds. Parke and her team focus on three main research areas: chemical controls for Phytophthora root rot, Alternaria leaf and stem blight and seedling diseases. In addition to publishing findings annually, the researchers offer summer tours of the Gardens and plan disease workshops for growers. (For more information, contact Jennifer Parke, Department of Pathology, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI 53706; telephone 608-262-6531.)

James A. Duke, a botanist and author on herbs, and a long-time expert on medicinal plants at the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Agricultural Research Service (ARS), Beltsville, MD, suggests planting goldenseal, a bitter medicinal herb, among ginseng roots to reduce rodent damage.

New crops require a great deal of human labor. Even as growers are protecting their ginseng crops from disease, insects, and thieving field mice, they must also hand-weed continuously to kill weeds. The fall season is even busier when ripe berries are handpicked for new seeding from each mature plant.

Conservative estimates place monetary investments at as much as $200,000 during the 3 or 4 years before a real profit is earned. Duke warns would-be ginseng growers that starting ginseng from expensive seed can be frustrating. The seeds need 18 months to germinate and if they become too dry, they may never grow. Duke's article on ginseng in the 1978 "Yearbook of Agriculture" provides additional information for prospective growers. USDA published Farmers Bulletin No. 2201 on "Growing Ginseng" (1973) is out of print, but may be found in a few libraries around the country.

Growers must also deal with security and protect their fields from shovel-wielding thieves in the night. Some States have made it a felony to steal ginseng from another's property.

Occasionally, geographic location is a problem. Ginseng requires winter chilling to break dormancy of the overwintering bud produced at the peak of the rhizome at the beginning of each growing season. The most favorable temperature and soil moisture conditions are on north- or east-facing slopes. A sloped site helps provide needed drainage, while wet conditions cause root rot. Ideal soils are loams with much organic matter. As ginseng tolerates only short periods of exposure to sun, light intensity should be no more than 15-25 percent of full sunlight.

In the wild, deeply rooted deciduous trees are welcome neighbors; coniferous or shallow-rooted trees, like maple, offer serious competition for water. Depending on such factors, wild roots may need 7 to 20 years to reach a desirable size.

Secrets to successful ginseng production are protected carefully between growing regions or even growers, but conferences open up communication. One new gathering is the International Ginseng Conference, sponsored by the Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada V5A 1F6; telephone: 604-291-4910. "The Challenges of the 21st Century" was chosen as the theme for the 1994 conference in Vancouver, B.C., July 17-20.

The Illinois Specialty Growers (ISGA) Convention and Trade Show is an annual event for growers of fruits, vegetables, ginseng and other herbs. (Contact ISGA at 309-5572107.)

Every August, Ginseng Day attracts growers, equipment manufacturers and other international industry members to Marathon

unty, WI. The trade show offers information, v products and demonstrations on the est technologies and equipment. (For information contact Jack Cramer, Rib River Ballin, 3237 Hwy. 29, Marathon County, WI 448; telephone 715-443-2060.)

NSENG VARIETIES

rieties of American ginseng fall into three egories. Cultivated ginseng requires the st human labor and disease and pest con-l. Wild plants thrive solely with the help of ther Nature, while woods-grown categories somewhere in between.

W. Scott Persons, author of "American nseng: Green Gold" (Bright Mountain Books, 3 Springside Road, Asheville, NC 28803), rs "Woods-grown ginseng is for growers o want to avoid the costs, time estments, disease, and supplydemand ctuations associated with cultivated gin-ng. While woods-grown roots may reap a h reward, risks include theft and disease."

Woods-grown ginseng can be divided into ods-cultivated and wild-simulated. The mer is the more labor intensive, but can ng as much as 1,200 to 1,500 pounds an e. The woods-cultivated method may use v plantings of seedlings, seeds, or berries, ificial shade, mulching, drainage ditches, sticides, rodent-trapping and fertilizers. With wild- simulated methods, seeds or berries thinly scattered by hand in an undisturbed odland environment with favorable growing itions.

ild roots are darker in color than cultivat-ones, appear more gnarled, and usually w more of the concentric annual growth gs that indicate age. Cultivated roots are nerally a light cream color, smooth, and ker. Generally, they taste about the same, are larger, heavier and more uniform in e than wild ginseng roots. Yet the latter sell a much higher price, often more than dou-the others.

Some Asians consider older, well-formed d roots of higher value because they resem-wild Oriental ginseng. They believe wild ts, which grow more slowly and are har-ted older (20 years or more) than cultivated es, absorb more nutrients from the soil. In 8, dried wild ginseng roots sold for as ch as $280 per pound, while quite a few wers of cultivated ginseng received less n $30 per pound.

UTHEAST ASIAN MARKET

1991, nearly 1.3 million pounds of American seng were consumed in China, mainly in southeast regions. Over the past several rs, Chinese consumption of American seng increased by 20 percent. Consump-in other southeast Asian countries could and at this same pace.

seng has gained a strong following as people become concerned about pre-ive health measures and add supplements heir diets. For centuries, Southeast Asians have claimed ginseng as a source of good health. Due to its availability and lack of side effects, American ginseng is becoming increasingly popular in Asia. Its products are sold as dried root, powder, slices, extract, teas, and sodas. Ginseng is added as a food ingredient to many other products.

Buyers from as far away as Malaysia, Singapore, Hong Kong, and Taiwan travel to Wisconsin every October to compare roots and negotiate prices. If growers are not visited individually, they have the option of displaying their roots at area showrooms, including Ginseng USA, 315 South 4th, Wausau, WI 54401; the Ginseng Board of Wisconsin, 16H Menard Plaza, Wausau, WI 54401; and Marathon Feed, 409 Pine, Marathon, WI 54448.

Local businesses buy and export American ginseng year round through several major Wisconsin companies, including the Progenix Corporation, 1013 North Third Avenue, Wausau, WI, and Hsu's Ginseng Enterprises, T6819 Hwy. W, Wausau, WI. Roots from both firms are sold in bulk or processed into graded roots, powder, extracts, and capsules. They also are sold to U.S. retailers.

In his eight-page booklet "American Ginseng" (American Botanical Council, P.O. Box 201660, Austin, TX 70720, 512-331-8868), Steven Foster looks at the discovery, distribution history and research on American ginseng.

AMERICAN MARKET

Ginseng product sales are increasing in the United States as more American consumers become health conscious and look for "natural" foods and methods to supplement diets. American ginseng is among herbal supplements included on the GRAS (Generally Recognized As Safe) "list."

Health food stores and many Asian stores in the U.S. offer an array of ginseng products: capsules, extracts, teas, sodas and facial creams. "North American Cooking with Ginseng" (available from the Progenix Corporation) features ginseng in more than 150 traditional Western recipes.

Future American ginseng research by Western scientists encourages the American market. Some researchers link the active ingredient in American ginseng, a ginsenoside called Rh2, to reversal of some cancer-forming processes. If additional research confirms the medicinal value of ginseng, the market certainly would expand. According to some authors, global additional markets need to be identified if American ginseng is to remain a lucrative industry.

Ginseng is a member of the Araliaceae botanical family. American ginseng's scientific name, Panax, derives from the Greek words "pana" (meaning "all") and "axos" (for "cure"). The word ginseng (or Jen-shen) originally stemmed from two Chinese characters meaning man and body. The Chinese name is often translated in Western publications as "man-shaped root" or "manroot." However, Professor S.Y. Hu, a botanist at the Arnold Arboretum at Harvard University, prefers the term "man-essence." According to Hu, it was derived from "the fanciful resemblance of the root to the human body," and from "the belief that this root represents the essence or elixir of the earth crystallized in a human form" (Joseph Hou, 1978; S. A. Graham, 1966).

Asian species include Japanese ginseng (Panax japonicus), sanchi or tienchi ginseng (Panax notoginseng). While Siberian ginseng (Eleutherococcus senticosus) is a member of the Aralia family, it is not in the genus Panax. Folklore about Asian ginseng maintains that it has internal warming properties (Yang) while American ginseng is believed to be a cooling tonic (Yin).

Information Sources

Sources of information about ginseng can be found in some libraries, while the following books and articles either devote a chapter to ginseng or focus on it as their main topic:

"Facts About Ginseng: The Elixir of Life," Florence C. Lee. Copyright 1992, Korea Ginseng Research Institute. Available from Future Concepts, Inc., P.O. Box 1982, Wausau, WI 54402-1982.

"Ginseng: A Concise Handbook," James A. Duke. Copyright 1989, Reference Publication.

"Ginseng: the Magical Herb of the East," Stephen Fulder. Copyright 1988, Thorsons Publishers, Inc.

"An End To Ageing?" Stephen Fulder. Copyright 1983, Destiny Books.

"Ginseng, What It Is ... What It Can Do For You," Ben Charles Harris. Copyright 1978, Keats Publishing, Inc.

"Ginseng: The Myth & The Truth," Joseph P. Hou. Copyright 1978, Wilshire Book Company.

By Rebecca Zunker, Assistant Editor, "American Ginseng Trends" newsletter, and George B. Holcomb, Office of Communications, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familiar status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotapes, etc.) should contact USDA Office of Communications at (202) 720-5881 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C., 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U. S. Department of Agriculture.

July 1994

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Dessert Vines

Improvements in disease resistance of watermelons open up new possibilities for small-scale entrepreneurs who want to produce them for local markets. It could mean a comeback for watermelons, which were consumed at the rate of about 17.9 pounds per capita in the 1950's. The rate dropped to only 12.8 pounds in the 1970's.

Among those with more hardiness to disease are the miniatures—icebox size melons of 5 to 10 pounds. Meanwhile, hybrid triploid varieties are being produced without seeds. Some triploids average 15 pounds. Consequently, small and seedless melons may show up in many markets.

As to the minimelons, Lawrence A. Risse, a marketing specialist with the Agricultural Research Service (ARS) of the U.S. Department of Agriculture, says new varieties, Mickylee (averaging 10 pounds) and Minilee (weighing 7.5 pounds) could become big sellers here and abroad. Risse is with the ARS Export and Quality Improvement Research unit, Orlando, FL 32803. (Telephone: 407-897-7326)

Growers say that besides their resistance to the common diseases of anthracnose and Fusarium wilt, minimelons are firmer, crisper, and sweeter than other watermelons. Whether size gives them a marketing advantage over their 20- to 25-pound cousins is a question. Supermarket dealers can make more money per melon by selling slices of large melons. The small ones average more rind per pound than the big ones. But the new minimelons reportedly hold up well in shipping, even without refrigeration. They were developed in Florida under James M. Crall, University of Florida faculty member at the Central Florida Research and Education Center (CFREC) 5336 University Ave., Leesburg, FL 32748. (Telephone: 904-787-3423.)

Dr. Crall says that while small-scale entrepreneurs may not be able to compete with big commercial melon growers in supermarkets, they can retail direct at highway or shopping mall spaces or sell to smaller stores.

Yield of the smaller melon usually equals that of larger size melons—anywhere from 1 to 3 tons an acre, depending on available moisture and soil quality. They bear in about 82 days.

Mickylee and Minilee seeds are available at prices ranging from $2.50 to about $4 per ounce from some seed dealers. If not available locally, and while supplies last, they may be obtained by mailorder (with mailing costs varying from 50¢ to $1.25 per ounce) from seed retailers, including the Kilgore Seed Company, 1400 West First Street, Sanford, FL 32771 (telephone: 407-323-6630); H.G. Hastings Company, P.O. Box 115535, Atlanta, GA 30310 (telephone: 1-800-334-1771); Willhite Seed Company, P.O. Box 23, Poolville, TX 76076 (telephone: 817-599-8656), or Otis S. Twilley Seed Company, P.O. Box 65, Trevose, PA 19047 (Telephone for a minimum of $25 orders only: 1-800-622-7333 outside Pennsylvania or 1-800-232-7333 inside the State. For other calls, telephone 215-639-8800). Twilley also has a 65-day miniature with yellow flesh. Some dealers will give or sell a useful catalog to prospective customers.

Retailers not yet having these varieties may be able to get them from either Petoseed Company, Inc., 1905 Lirio Street, Saticoy, CA 93004, or Hollar and Company, Inc., of P.O. Box 106, Rocky Ford, CO 81067, the two major distributors handling the miniatures originating in Florida.

As for the seedless or hybrid triploid watermelons, the Twilley Seed Company handles two varieties called Fummy and Quality. They bear fruit in about 90 days. Seed cost is $49 per ounce—about 500 seeds—plus the needed pollinators. Seeds from nonseedless or diploid varieties have to be planted as pollinators with the triploid seeds in order to produce melons.

The Hastings Company has had one variety of seedless hybrid, Tri-X 313. Seed for this variety sells for $9.95 per ounce. One melon grower reportedly has bought rights to this product, and will market melons only on an exclusive basis.

The Petoseed company has developed three seedless varieties: Jack of Hearts, King of Hearts, and Queen of Hearts. One retail seed company handling the Jack of Hearts is Earl May Seed & Nursery Company, 208 N. Elm Street, Shenandoah, IA 51603. Only limited quantities are available at $1.75 per packet of 10 seeds.

Two Japanese seed companies are also reportedly offering seedless varieties. Takii & Company of Kyoto, Japan, has Jupiter (like the Sugar Baby) and Laurel (a Crimson Sweet type). Sakata Seed Company of Yokahama, Japan, has one named Nova.

Northrup King Seed Company of P.O. Box 1827, Gilroy, CA 95021 (telephone: 408 – 847-4242) may have a new variety of seedless available in 1989.

Some growers advise that for good germination, seeds from hybrids should not be stored outside a refrigerator for more than 3 months before planting.

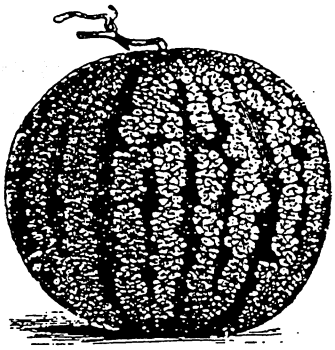
Germinating triploids requires special care. That's one reason, along with cultural and climatic factors, why companies may make no guarantee that fruit will be produced in a "seedless" condition. Unless a grower can find a local experienced person to consult, each grower may have to test out the varieties to learn which suits his or her conditions. County Extension agents often have useful knowledge to share.

Experts recommend that the triploids be started in pots or pellets of peat in greenhouses or with some other temperature control method. The pots or pellets should first be soaked in water thoroughly, then allowed to drain for 24 hours before planting. The seeds should first be treated with Captan to prevent their getting damping off disease and dying.

Two seeds should be planted ½ inch deep in each pellet or pot, with pointed ends toward the sky. Sometimes the seed coats hang tough around an emerging seedling; they should be removed from the cotyledon or seed leaf with care whenever spotted.

When about 10 percent of the seedlings have sprouted, the plastic covering should be removed, and they should be watered as needed to keep them moist. The greenhouse temperature should be lowered to 75 degrees.

Sprouts should be thinned by cutting off the weaker ones or possibly transplanting them to another pot or pellet. The plants should be ready for field culture in about 3 weeks or when they show two or three leaves. They should not be left inside the green-



house after three leaves appear. The cooler temperatures and good light of outdoors should keep them from becoming spindly; that is, elongated and weak. Even then, the early fruit of most triploids may have a tendency to form "hard" seeds, according to some advisers.

Some hybrids have a production period averaging 90 days, somewhat longer than many other varieties, but, according to experts, they can be grown anywhere in the United States so long as the temperature precautions described above are followed.

Both the miniatures and the diploids ship well; but the miniatures have a shorter growing period, usually about 82 days, and need somewhat less care.

Cantaloupe and Others

Another vine-producing dessert fruit is the cantaloupe, of which there are many varieties in various parts of the country. Hybrids are recommended for disease tolerance and quality. The nearest Extension agent is likely to be able to recommend good varieties for his or her area, and will give instructions on growing them. Production time varies from 70 to 90 days.

Three varieties of national worth that are cited by Gary W. Elmstrom, director of the Leesburg, Florida, center mentioned above are Mission, Magnum .45, and Easy Rider. Northrup King has a new variety that is sutureless; that is, it has no seams and thus is better shipping. Twilley also retails a sutureless variety called Ambrosia.

There are also hybrid Crenshaw and honeydew melons available. Dr. Elmstrom recommends a cross between the Crenshaw and the honeydew that originated in Central America. Called Mayan Sweet, its flesh is whitish rather than green.

Another melon worth investigating is MaryGold, a casaba developed by Dr. T.J. Ng of the University of Maryland (Department of Crop Physiology, MD 20742). With a canary yellow rind, it has white flesh and is described as having an excellent sweet taste. It is said to do well in Maryland and surrounding States, hence, it may have a broad range. Its shape is round to oval; the rind has no netting and is slightly wrinkled. It is not a hybrid; hence, it reproduces from its seeds. Seeds are available from Hollar and Company (mentioned above), and possibly other distributors.

County Extension agents may give tips on marketing, but they can't provide the extra labor that may be needed if a grower plants more than his family and available laborers can harvest, haul, and sell.

One way to help with the labor problem is to use plastic row covers and mulch systems so as to stagger planting dates, thus getting some melons developed and harvested ahead of the regular season. Spreading labor needs may also help in market competition. Booker T. Whatley's "How to Make $100,000 Farming 25 Acres," describes how. The book is sold by the Rodale Institute ($17.95, softcover; $24.05, hardcover), 222 Main Street, Emmaus, PA 18049.

Dr. Whatley also tells how producers can build their own buyers' club by selling memberships. He suggests this for combinations of crops, but it could be done solely with dessert vines. A producer might also build a delivery route. Participation in a club requires consumers to use leisure time; many people want to shop at one supermarket once a week.

Pleasant and harmonious customer relations may be the most important part of succeeding with dessert melons, as with any high-value crops. It may take as much time and energy selling as growing and harvesting combined.

Direct marketing, as Whatley recommends, means doing as well with people as with crops. "Socializing with customers" was a primary reason for direct marketing at farmers' markets, as given by more than 90 percent of 21,000 marketers in a study by USDA's Economic Research Service.

The question, "Is Your Farm Suited to Pick-Your-Own?," is taken up by J.W. "Bill" Courter in "Adapt 2," the publication growing out of Successful Farming magazine's 1987 conference on ag diversification at Kansas City, MO. The publication contains the proceedings of the two-day meeting and is available for $12.95, postpaid (at P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50336).

An Extension specialist at the University of Illinois, Dixon Springs Agricultural Center, Simpson, IL 62985, Court suggests it may be better for the grower to harvest melons and display them at a stand, noting that customers may damage crops or cause excessive losses when not supervised.

Ranson Blakely, a marketing consultant (P.O. Box 449, Dryden NY 13053), has two companion reports in "Adapt 2" on "Direct and Roadside Marketing," noting 14 "cautions for direct marketers," and on "Farmers' Markets: Steps to Success." He emphasizes the need to keep track of competitors' prices and quality, and says that before doing any price cutting, a seller must advertise to be effective. He prefers the accent on serving quality-conscious shoppers rather than trying to catch fickle bargain hunters.

Also in "Adapt 2," Curtis Stutzman, economist and program developer for Rural Diversified Enterprise Center (Kirkwood College, P.O. Box 2068, Cedar Rapids, IA 52406), has recommendations in an article called "Determining Your 30-Mile Markets."

For those select producers at some distance away from big cities, but who want to wholesale through specialty marketers, much knowhow is required about packing and shipping requirements.

In response to such needs to know, the Export Services Branch of USDA's Office of Transportation (410 McGregor Building, Washington, DC 20250-4500. Telephone: 206-653-6317) has a "Tropical Products Transport Handbook" available at no charge. It discusses maintaining fruit and vegetable quality during transportation, especially emphasizing cooling practices needed. It provides growers, shippers, carriers, and receivers of fruits, vegetables, plants, and flowers facts about standards and ways to reduce postharvest losses. A Spanish version is called "Manual de Transporte de Productos Tropicales." A summary of recommendations is given for 120 fruits and vegetables. Import regulations are described briefly.

A warning about insurance needs is also found in "Adapt 2" in a chapter on "Insurance and the Diversified Farmer," by Don R. Cook, an Indiana insurance merchant. And Roy Ferguson, a farmer (10726 S. 68th East Avenue, Tulsa, OK 74133), describes "Developing a Multiyear Business Plan" and "Obtaining Lender/Investor Capital." The local USDA Farmers Home Administration office, found in most counties, can give information on whether there is a need for a USDA loan and if so, how to obtain a USDA loan to help get started in the melon business. Another source of information, supported by USDA as an aid to help farmers, Extension agents, and rural community developers, is the organization, Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas (ATTRA), Agricenter International, 7777 Walnut Grove Road, Box 17, Memphis, TN 38119 (Telephone: 1-800-346-9140).

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: OSSA, Cooperative State Research Service/~~Office of Organized Program Systems~~, Room 328, Aerospace Building, USDA, Washington, DC 20250-2200 (Telephone: Area Code 202-~~447-3640~~ 401-1805

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture

January 1989

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Exotic Fruits

Certain potentially high-demand tropical or other exotic fruits growing in Florida or California also have varieties that will bear fruit farther north. But potential small-scale northern enterprisers should not buy seeds or seedlings from anyone until checking them out carefully with a horticulturist at their county or State Extension office.

Even in Florida, which produces many kinds of exotic fruits, there are a few unscrupulous promoters who try to market unsuitable tropical fruit trees. "Enthusiastic amateurs," says Dr. Robert J. Knight, Jr., of a Florida branch of the Agricultural Research Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), may unwittingly buy cultivars of fruits such as rambutan (*Nephelium lapaceum*), durian (*Durio zibethinus*), and others with no chances of success producing fruit commercially in that State.

The growing demand for specialty fruits in most large cities means skilled small-scale entrepreneurs may compete with strong competitors from New Zealand and Central and South America if they select varieties carefully and master their marketing homework. The fruits discussed here may come from many parts of the world. Most aren't commercially feasible in the United States other than parts of Florida, California, or Texas and sometimes in Hawaii and Puerto Rico.

However, there is a move along a southern belt of South Carolina and on west to risk planting some hardier varieties of fruits such as the kiwi. But the kiwi situation is "very iffy, commercially," according to L.D. Holmes, whose 16 acres may be the biggest kiwi orchard in the east that is north of Florida. He has at least $160,000 invested in trellises and irrigation equipment for the Hayward variety. So far, too many freezes have cost him too many crops to consider his acreage a success.

He markets through Seald Sweet Growers, Inc., with headquarters in Tampa, Florida. Kirk McCreary of Seald Sweet says marketing is not easy because the firm is not able to get enough volume to supply most chain stores. And the competition from California is formidable.

Dr. Judith Caldwell (Department of Horticulture, Clemson University, Clemson SC 29631) and Janice McGuinn, Extension agent in Charleston County, are still wary about recommending investments in kiwi vines in their State. They also note that prospects for controlled atmosphere storage are in the offing, which could make California producers even more competitive.

Frieda Caplan, U.S. pioneer in marketing the kiwifruit (also once known as Chinese gooseberry) in the early 1960's notes that kiwi was not an overnight success. Caplan, founder of the Los Angeles family specialty produce firm known as Frieda's Finest, said it took 14 years for her and other marketers and growers to acquaint food journalists and consumers with the fruit and another 6 years to reach the point where California kiwi growers have 11,000-plus acres.

Despite the fact that U.S. per capita fruit consumption has been rising, the experts caution any small-scale entrepreneur who might want to emulate kiwi success and launch some other little known fruit, such as the feijoa.

"For other specialties to develop like kiwi fruit has," Kaplan told a trade publication writer, "growers must know how to manage their crops so that they can achieve a reasonable profit even at lower prices."

While some fruits do well in one State and not in another, a few, like the feijoa, a native of South America, have also been adopted successfully by New Zealanders, Floridians, and Californians. With some protection, it too can be cultivated farther to the north; but according to latest reports it hasn't, possibly because damaging fruit flies love it so.

U.S. growers have an advantage over overseas producers in that many fresh fruits are barred from entry into the United States because of the fruit fly problem. Many fruits may be imported from some countries or the State of Hawaii only if frozen or processed, as in puree. If frozen, they are given an initial quick-freezing at subzero temperatures, with subsequent storage and transport at no higher than 20 degrees F.

Market experts emphasize that growers must understand how to harvest, pack, store, and transport their crop so the consumer will receive a product of high quality 7 to 10 days after harvest. Retailers must not experience excessive spoilage or moisture loss while displaying new items. All know customer satisfaction is the key to repeat sales.

Talk With Marketers

Potential growers of any fruit are advised to talk with retailers and intermediate marketers before starting to produce.

Entrepreneurs actually growing quality fruit can contact marketers such as the mail-order house known as Bear Creek Operations, Inc. (P.O. Box 9000, Medford, OR 97501); Caplan (P.O. Box 58488, Los Angeles, CA 90058), or Roland Chicas, Chicas and Associates (P.O. Box 788, New York, NY 10035), a New York specialty-produce distributor looking for a few good exotic fruit producers.

For other marketing ideas, growers might also check information from Dr. Booker T. Whatley, or Nancy Lee Bentley. Whatley produced the book, "How to Make $100,000 Farming 25 Acres." (Rodale Institute, 222 Main St., Emmaus, PA 18049. $17.95 softcover, $24.95 hardcover.) And Bentley authored "Windows of Opportunity: The Market for Specialties and Organics." (The Food Circle, P.O. Box 62, Cabery, IL 60919. $25.) A useful book, possibly found in some libraries, is "Handbook of Tropical and Subtropical Horticulture," published by the Department of State in 1970.

In selecting marketable fruits, potential producers should check with their local Extension agents on what to grow. Floridians, for example, will know that some Asian fruits with "no possibility of serious cultivation in Florida," as Knight noted, are breadfruit (*Artocarpus communis*), mangosteen (*Garcinia mangostana* L.), pulasan (*Nephelium mutabile*), and probably rambai (*Baccaurea dulcis*), duku, tampoi, and champedak (*Artocarpus interger*).

In Puerto Rico, on the other hand, breadfruit may well have great commercial potential, and mangosteen and rambutan can also thrive, according to Ismael Reyes Soto of the University of Puerto Rico. Other tropical fruits in order of potential in Puerto Rico, he says, are guanabana or soursop (*Annona muricata* L.); Jobo de la India (*Spondias dulcis*-Parkinson); quenepa, also known as quenep, kenep, mamon, mamoncillo, limoncillo, and, in English, Spanish lime (*Melicoccus bijugalus* - Jacq. or *Melicocca bijuga*, L.); nispero, also known as sapote, chicozapote, chicle, sapotillo, zapote colorado, and, in English, sapodilla, dilly, and naseberry (*Manilkara sapotilla* Gilly); and tamarindo. He also has a list of others

of possible potential importance.

To compete with big Florida and California growers now dominating tropical fruit production, growers elsewhere must study matters other than market potential. They may also have to form, or at least join, a marketing cooperative for the advantage of being able to market enough to interest chain stores, which buy in large lots.

Tropical Reference

Potentially saleable fruits of the tropics number in the hundreds. One major reference, the 247-page *Perennial Edible Fruits of the Tropics: An Inventory*, by Franklin W. Martin, Carl W. Campbell, and Ruth M. Ruberte, describes many. (The handbook, available at some libraries, may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, for $12 plus 94 cents for fourth class postage.)

Timely sources of information include the rare fruit councils. The Rare Fruit Council International, Inc., of Florida publishes an 8-page monthly newsletter from 13609 Old Cuttler Road, Miami, FL 33158.

The California Rare Fruit Growers, Inc., at Fullerton Arboretum, California State University, Fullerton CA 92634, has about a dozen chapters and 2,600 members.

Another data source is the specialty crop program of Claude Sweet of the Horticulture Department of MiraCosta College, One Barnard Drive, Oceanside, CA 92056. Sweet authored the 96-page *All About Citrus & Subtropical Fruits*, published in 1985 by Ortho Books, 6001 Bollinger Canyon Road, Bldg. TB120, San Ramon, CA 94583. (It costs $7.95, including postage, plus State tax if any.) It tells how to grow more than a dozen subtropical fruits, and includes a chapter on container plantings for northern growers.

Sweet also is building a national computer data base on plants, especially the tropicals. He has considerable data stored, and hopes to collect marketing data so growers can compare profit and risk potentials of various crops.

Exotics of Potential

Alphabetical according to scientific name so as to reduce confusion, below are tropical or 'exotic' fruits that certain distributors might handle.

Annona cherimola Mill. ("Cherimoya" in English; "anon" and "chirimoya" in Spanish.) A high-value crop, it demands great management skill to produce the uniformly shaped, high quality fruit the market demands. Grading and packing requires full attention. It must be handled gently and properly stored to reach the consumer in good shape. Production is likely to be confined to California.

Annona squamosa x A. cherimola. ("Atemoya" in English and Spanish.) Atemoya is a hybrid cross developed by Floridians as an alternative to the Cherimoya. Just coming into production in Florida, it may have good potential, according to Dr. Campbell, tropical fruits specialist for the Florida Extension Service with the University of Florida. It is one of few exotic fruits sold by mail order.

Annona squamosa. ("Sugar apple" or "sweetsop" in English; "anon," "rinon," or "anona blanca" in Spanish.) Sugar apple may have only local commercial production potential but may be useful for home gardens in hot tropical lowlands. It will survive a light frost.

Averrhoa carambola L. ("Carambola" in English and Spanish, and also "starfruit" in English.) Carambola acreage is growing in Florida, according to USDA Scientist Knight. A tree will bear fruit two or three times a year. Some see it as the next kiwi.

Calocarpum sapota Merr. ("Mamey sapote" in English or Spanish.) The Campbell book says this is one of the most notable and talked about fruits, with a rich and distinctive flavor. Its popularity grows in Florida.

Casimiroa edulis La Llav. et Lex. (White sapote" in English and "zapote, matasano, sapote blanco" in Spanish.) While very perishable, the taste and flavor of white sapote compares well with the cherimoya. It is more adaptable to California than to Florida, tolerates a variety of soil conditions, seasonal dry periods, and frost.

Feijoa sellowiana Berg. This pineapple guava, Caplan says, has potential "much smaller" than that of the kiwi.

Litchi chinensis Sonn. ("Lychee' or "litchi" in English and "lichi" in Spanish.) Although this fruit is very perishable, it can command a premium price. Domestic varieties bear irregularly in Florida; new ones brought from Australia and Hawaii by Miami researcher Ed Johnston of the Fairchild Tropical Garden's Tropical Fruit Program may be better.

Passiflora adulis Sims or *Pasiflora edulis Sims f. flavicarpa Deg.* (The first is "purple passion fruit" and the second is "yellow passion fruit." In Spanish, both are named "maracuya," "granadilla," or "parcha.") Demand rises; purple passion fruit promises much to California but not to Florida, where the mean temperature is too high. Disease-resistant varieties are needed.

Psidium guajava L. ("Guava" or "common guava" in English and "guayaba" in Spanish.) Guava is highly perishable. Growers need varieties that are tastier and can be marketed with proper promotion.

Tamarillo. Grown in a limited way in California, tamarillo does poorly in humid, hot areas like Florida. It merits consumer education.

Health, Labor Problems

All fruits, of course, require much work to keep vines or trees healthy. Then, there is the problem of harvesting hands. They are not easily found, but migrant labor can sometimes be available through a larger organization that a grower can join, such as a marketing cooperative.

To keep up with fruit prices, operators may want to check with USDA's Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS). Its Fruit and Vegetable Division has a Market News Branch, headed by W.H. Crocker, Room 2503-S, AMS, USDA, Washington, D.C. 20250. AMS may be able to provide a recent listing from Los Angeles, San Francisco, or New York of latest prices for certain fruits regularly supplied. To calculate what the farmer's price will be, deduct about 30 percent from the quoted price, Caplan advises.

USDA's National Agricultural Library (NAL, Beltsville, MD 20705) has a Reference Division that can provide a bibliography of information about fruits.

Another source for a bibliography is the Produce Marketing Association (PMA, 1500 Casho Mill Road, Newark, DE 19714-6036).

To help growers, shippers, carriers, and receivers learn the standards and to reduce postharvest losses and expand the markets for highly perishable, high-value fruits (and vegetables), the Export Services Branch of USDA's Office of Transportation (410 McGregor Building, Washington, DC 20250-4500) has a Tropical Products Transport Handbook available at no charge. A Spanish version also is available.

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: OSSA, Cooperative State Research Service/~~Office of Grants and Program Systems~~, Room ~~3428~~, Aerospace Building, USDA, Washington, DC 20250-2200 (Telephone: Area Code 202 + ~~447-3640.)~~ 401-1805

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

January 1989

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Foliage Plants

Foliage plants come in all shapes—rounded, spread, upright, cascading or weeping, oval, and mounded. They can be maintained in dishes, terrariums, hanging baskets, totem poles, large individual pots, troughs, or boxes. They can range in height from a few inches to 20 feet or more in large patios or entries. They cover a wide color range and may or may not have flowers.

Ten States dominate sales in the highly competitive indoor foliage plant industry. Florida leads. Acreage in production in Illinois soared some 2,500 percent over 10 years. The other significant producing States are California, Texas, Ohio, Pennsylvania, Michigan, New York, New Jersey, and Massachusetts.

Acreages and values of foliage plants, generally tropical, have grown over recent decades. From 1970 to 1980, foliage sales increased 834 percent.

A small-scale entrepreneur who is a good marketer might make substantial profits every spring on a part-time basis by growing certain foliage plants in a 3,000-square-foot greenhouse, according to Dr. Davis S. Koranski, floriculture specialist at Iowa State University. The least costly greenhouse could be used, he said, and plant sales could gross from $9,000 to $18,000. Seeds or cuttings, labor, and other costs should not total more than 40 to 50 percent of gross, he said. His estimates apply to the northern tier of States; farther south, lower heating costs could boost returns.

An enterprising marketer could emphasize individualized personal service and fresh ideas. Talented growers sometimes branch out into interiorscaping, the newest service in the nursery business. Competitors include many large grower-firms, some of which do their own retailing with mail-order sales.

Key book sources of data on foliage plants include *Interior Plantscapes: Installation, Maintenance and Management,* by George H. Manaker, and the highly technical *Foliage Plant Production,* edited by Jasper N. Joiner. Both were published by Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632 in 1981.

Many Sources

Other sources of information on foliage plants, their production and marketing, include county Extension agents; wholesale florists; State nurserymen's associations; experts at State universities; U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) National Agricultural Library (NAL) with its AGRICOLA computer data base (Horticulutre Information Center, NAL, Beltsville, MD 20705); the Society of American Florists (1601 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314), which has a growers' division; the information center of the Producer Marketing Association (PMA); and major private commercial magazines, such as *GrowerTalks.* The latter's publisher is George J. Ball, Inc. (250 Town Road, West Chicago, IL 60185). A year's subscription costs $19. A colorful cyclopedia, *Tropica,* by Dr. Alfred Byrd Graff, sells for $125 at Roehrs Company (19 Prospect Terrace, P.O. Box 125, East Rutherford, NJ 07073). It has about 7,000 color photos.

PMA's information specialist, Julie E. Stewart (1500 Casho Mill Road, Newark, DE 19714-6036) can provide a bibliography on foliage plants at a minimum charge for nonmembers of $20 per search plus $10 for up to 10 printed pages and $1 per page for anything over 10 pages. Her latest foliage plant bibliography is 5 pages long. It includes items dealing with prices, consumer buying trends, shipping temperatures, and marketing ideas.

PMA also has a Floral Marketing Division which annually produces *Floral Marketing Directory & Buyer's Guide* ($20). Foliage plant producers are part of the floral industry. Besides listing floral growers and suppliers, the guide notes supermarkets that buy floral items and may provide consumer interest survey information. It also may describe the latest boxing or shipping standards and list floral holidays.

Other published information sources include the *Produce Marketing Almanac,* issued every year by PMA; the *Packer* newspaper; *Produce News; Florists' Review; Produce and Floral Retailing; Nursery Business-Retailer;* and *Florida Foliage.*

Many local libraries can supply addresses and sometimes copies of the above or other publications that discuss foliage plants. Local newspapers and general magazines often provide indications of trends in foliage plant decoration.

The NAL's Horticulture Information Center can provide potential entrepreneurs with a bibliography. It lists articles and books, such as *Practical Horticulture: A Guide to Growing Indoor and Outdoor Plants,* by L. W. Rice and R. P. Rice; and *The Greenhouses,* an annual.

Quarantine Laws

If plant growers make interstate shipments of plants and soil, they must remember State and Federal plant quarantine laws. Penalties apply to violators. Growers should seek information from their State plant regulatory official at the State department of agriculture or USDA officials with the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS, Plant Protection and Quarantine, Regulatory Services Staff, Federal Building, Hyattsville, MD 20782).

Marketing foliage and foliage plants is basic to success, as indicated by Koranski. If beginning entrepreneurs can find a large floral retailer or jobber with whom to become associated as a supplier of plants, they will have solved some marketing problems. Sometimes growers also can find retail florists who have a need for seasonal plants such as forsythia, forced peach blossoms, spirea, and pussywillows, to mention a few, as well as plants such as ferns that are used the year round.

A grower also might work out a sales arrangement with the owner of a local store with a large parking lot where plants can be displayed.

For those who would like 11 pages of ideas for use in marketing, Allen C. Bjergo, community development specialist with the Montana State University Cooperative Extension Service (1018 Burlington, Room 200, Missoula, MT 59801), has developed "Your Marketing Plan Outline," available free on request. (He also has "Earn

Extra Money From Your Farm or Ranch" and "Financing Your Ideas.")

Meanwhile, in Florida, where one grower said 95 percent of foliage plants are grown on speculation, some marketers are trying to beat the competition and interest new customers, either retailers or final consumers, by moving away from the "bread-and-butter mainstays" among foliage plants. These include *Schefflera Aboricolas* ("Hawaiian elf"), *Dracaenas marginata* and *D. fragrans massangeana* (corn plant), *Ficus benjamina,* (rubber trees), and *Chrysalidocarpus lutescens* (Areca or "butterfly" palms). Such growers look for harder-to-grow but attractive plants, or new ones. With fresh items, they also may avoid the problem of selling plants at 1970 prices.

A couple of the more colorful plants such growers are introducing are the hibiscus and the croton. Other, harder-to-grow varities include the *Dracaenas detrmensis* 'Janet Craig' and 'Warneckii.' A few producers are developing new cultivars.

Competition Stimulates

Pressured by competition, growers also look for other ways to save, by:

- Selling directly to the public as well as to retail sales outlets and interiorscapers.
- Doing interiorscaping in addition to growing.
- Establishing inventory control.
- Scheduling production on the basis of past sales.
- Maintaining low sales overhead.
- Mechanizing to reduce labor.

Some nurseries join others to combine marketing, billing, shipping, and retailing.

For those interested in doing direct marketing to consumers, a 32-page 1981 publication, *Direct Marketing by Farmers to Consumers: Some Legal Implications,* is an information source. It discusses employment regulations and marketing liabilities such as warranties in direct marketing. By D. L. Uchtmann and J. T. Archer, it was published by the University of Illinois and may be obtained for $1.50 from the Agricultural Publications Office (54 Mumford Hall, 1301 W. Gregory Drive, University of Illinois, Urbana, IL 61801).

2 Acres Enough

Foliage plant nurseries range in size from backyards to 60 or 70 acres. One successful Florida grower said "you could make money" with 2 acres, with properly controlled overhead.

A North Carolina grower, self-described as a nonworkaholic, is surviving on a full-time basis with 30,000 square feet and nine greenhouses, a prefabricated portable hut, and a coldframe. In the Deep South some growers shade plants and don't build greenhouses. In Northern States, however, sturdy, well-insulated greenhouses are essential for full-time foliage operations.

Insulation and heating methods change. Coverings that hold in infrared light for use as a heat source are recommended in certain areas. Solar energy also is often used as a heat source.

Joiner's book, *Foliage Plant Production,* illustrates how to achieve greenhouse efficiency and set up a systems approach that allows expansion. Many growers recommend movable benches to make best use of space.

Costs for several types of greenhouses range anywhere from $10 to $40 per square foot.

In his book, Joiner says, "Polyethylene houses or steel frame and fiberglass covered houses would make best use of investment funds where a 10 percent minimum return on an investment is required." He cautions that "availability of investment funds is usually a major problem."

Joiner's book also analyzes yield per square foot of greenhouse space for various foliage plants such as philodendrons, pileas, dieffenbachia, aglaonema, ferns, hoyas, and Norfolk Island pine.

Many Problems

Pest challenges facing foliage producers are those of any greenhouse manager. *'GrowerTalks'* in June 1987 profiled 10 of the worst greenhouse problems, namely: Among insects, whiteflies, thrips, spider mites, mealybugs, and leafminers; and among diseases, powdery mildew, *Xanthomonas, Rhizoctonia, Fusarium,* and *Phytophthora.* The biological-controls approach to pests is usually recommended by USDA and State Extension and university specialists when possible, and *'GrowerTalks'* also calls for its study, calling it the "technology of tomorrow."

A feature of Joiner's book is a 10-page table listing symptoms and possible causes of foliage plant problems, ranging from nutrient deficiency to inadequate light and humidity, chilling, plant spacing, air pollution from gas, and many pests.

Besides various botanic gardens around the country, another location where potential growers might see some useful foliage plants is the U.S. Botanic Garden, administered through the Office of the Architect of the Capitol, just west of the U.S. Capitol at Independence and First Streets, SW, Washington, DC 20024.

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service/Office of Grants and Program Systems, Room 635, Hamilton Building, Washington, DC 20250.

September 1987

ıited States
ıpartment of
ıriculture

erative State
arch Education and
ension Service

fice for
nall-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Herbs

ıe term "herbs" has many meanings. The ost accepted one is "plants that are not used ılely as vegetables or ornaments." Herbs are ultiple-use plants useful for culinary, cosmet-, industrial, medicinal, landscaping, decora-ve, and fragrance purposes.

They include vegetables such as garlic, ıvoring items such as red peppers or mint, ecorative flowers such as roses, various lseed shrubs, ground-cover plants such as mon thyme or perennial chamomile, edible owers such as nasturtiums, trees such as the ıden or bay, and plants such as chrysanthe-ıums that may be intercropped and used as n alternative to pesticides.

Herbal processed products include fresh nd dried flowers; leaves, barks, roots, and eeds — dried, ground, or dissolved powders; ssential oils (as distinguished from petroleum ynthetic oils); and oleoresins, naturally rring mixtures of oil and resin. Some other oducts are condiments, spices, or food easonings; teas; dyes; cosmetic products; nd so-called health foods.

The competition is intense in producing nd marketing herbs, and producers range om giant corporations to small-scale entre-ıreneurs and hobbyists. Regardless, there are ıpportunities for new herb producers as the narket expands.

The world market is extremely volatile, with ırices ranging from less than $1 a pound for ome herbs to more than $100 a pound for ıthers. Political situations in third world coun-ries (where much of the world production is ound) causes shortages, and prices fluctuate videly. Increasing commercial herb production n the United States will help maintain some ıquilibrium in supplies and the stability of ellers' prices.

Consumer and producer interest in herbs is ncreasing. A decade ago it was difficult to find ooks on herbs. Today there are dozens of ooks published on all aspects of the subject. ncreasing consumer interest has created more ompetition in herb production by growers.

lational and regional herb trade associa-s provide information and support to their nembers. The Herb Growing and Marketing Network (P.O. Box 245, Silver Spring, PA 17575; 717-393-3295) publishes *The Herbal Connection*, a bimonthly trade journal, and *The Herbal Green Pages*, an annual resource guide with more than 5,000 herb-related listings; the International Herb Association (1202 Allanson Rd., Mundelein, IL 60060; 708-949-4372) holds an annual conference in various parts of the United States, and the American Herbal Products Association (P.O. Box 2410, Austin, TX 78768; 512-320-8555) represents manufacturers of herbal health food and over-the-counter products.

Regional groups are represented by herb organizations in several States. Often these groups are organized by the State Departments of Agriculture. States that have existing support groups are: North Carolina (North Carolina Herb Association, c/o Jeanine Davis, 2016 Fanning Bridge Rd., Fletcher, NC 28732), Delaware (DHGMA, c/o Dr. Art Tucker, Delaware State Univ., Dept. of Ag & Natural Resources, Dover, DE 19901-2275), Pennsylvania (PHBN, c/o Barb Will, RD 7, Box 1, Somerset, PA 15501), the Ozarks (OHGMA, c/o Pam Robinson, 3249 S. Erie, Tulsa, OK 74135), Texas (THGMA, c/o Deborah Cox, Rt. 8, Box 567, Brownsville, TX 87520), Illinois (IHA, c/o Lowell Lenschow, 1701 Towanda Ave., Bloomington, IN 61701), Michigan (MHBA, c/o Judy Larison, 135 E. 120th St., Grant, MI 49327), Kentucky (KHGMA, P.O. Box 123, Washington, KY 41096), West Virginia (WVHA, Rt. 1, Box 263-SS, Weston, WV 26452), Virginia (VHGMA, P.O. Box 1176, Chesterfield, VA 23832), Hawaii (HHA, P.O. Box 62150, Honolulu, HI 96839), Montana and the surrounding region (Great Northern Botanicals Association, P.O. Box 362, Helena, MT 59624).

A number of groups serve specific interests within the industry: medicinal (American Botanical Council, P.O. Box 201660, Austin, TX 78720; Northeast Herbal Association, P.O. Box 146, Marshfield, VT 05658-0146; American Herbalists Guild, Box 1683, Soquel, CA 95073), and ornamental (Association of Specialty Cut Flower Growers, MPO 268, Oberlin, OH 44074).

For the small-scale entrepreneur, the best chance of competing may be in plant sales. With interest in gardening at an all-time high and no diminishing of interest in sight, gardeners are searching for a wide variety of herbs for cooking, landscaping, and alternative health needs. A prospective producer might consider starting a mail order business. Many home gardeners and others market herbs that way. Herb plant sales are increasing every year, and the enterprising grower who combines knowledge and service along with plant sales is doing well.

Fresh-Cut Herbs

Culinary herbs are well suited to small-scale production because of unique growing conditions and intensive labor needs. Production can be on small acreage, marginal land, and without heavy machinery or with modified equipment. Potential markets are in selling fresh-cut herbs to restaurants, at local farmers' markets, and through some specialty grocers. Much about pricing and marketing fresh-cut herbs can be learned from the Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS) of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA).

AMS provides reports on prices and supplies of "miscellaneous herbs," which are fresh-cut and whose leaves are usually used for flavoring, such as arugula ("rocket salad"), basil, chives, cilantro (also known as coriander, parsley, and Spanish or Chinese parsley), chervil, dill, marjoram, mint, oregano, rosemary, sage, savory, sorrel, tarragon, thyme, lemon thyme, and watercress. Also listed as an herb is the confusingly named anise, which is a close relative of fennel, bulbous fennel, Florence fennel, or finocchio. Its bulbous lower section is generally boiled like a vegetable; its leaves are not used for flavoring, as is the case with anise hyssop, a kind of mint. (A third anise, sometimes classed as an umbelifera because of its relationship to dill, angelica, and celery, is Pimpinella anisum, a flavoring seed producer.) Some herbs used for their roots, such as ginger, are listed by AMS as oriental vegetables, but the horseradish (root) is sometimes listed as an herb. Herbs such as garlic, onions, parsley, and hot peppers also are priced but are listed as plain vegetables. The weekly National Wholesale Herb Market News Report is available from the Fruit and Vegetable Market News, Attn: Jacquelline Davis, Market Reporter for Herbs, USDA-AMS, 230 South Dearborn St., Rm. 512, Chicago, IL 60604;

312-353-0111. The annual price for the weekly report is $120, but a monthly update at $10 is also available. The report covers 18 terminal markets around the country and provides prices and shipment sizes of 20 or more different culinary herbs. Most of the commercial fresh-cut herbs in this country currently come from California, Texas, or Florida. Some items come from other States, and some are imported at very competitive prices.

A lack of knowledge of particular herb cultivation systems, difficulties with correct seed labeling, and lack of regulations concerning pesticides, herbicides, and fungicides are major production problems.

Seeds are another concern for herb growers. Although imported seeds and seeds supplied by bulk suppliers are the main sources for the industry, there is an urgent need for the production of high-quality, reliably identified seed sources.

Processed Herbs

Non-food herbs are another potential market. Outlets include pharmaceutical and industrial uses, the fragrance industry, and dried herbs/flowers for arrangements and craftwork. Marketing for the pharmaceutical/industrial segment is specialized, competitive, and can require a substantial investment. Considerable specialized knowledge of dehydrating, processing, and extracting, is often required, and specialized machinery may be needed. Keen foreign competition exists, as import prices are often low. Because of the instability of the world market, however, many companies are looking for reliable U.S. suppliers. Growers must establish close working relationships with buyers. Information on U.S. trade and the world situation for many processed products from herbs and spices may be obtained from circulars sold by USDA's Foreign Agricultural Service (FAS). For information on subscription prices, contact FAS, Information Division, Room 5074-S, Washington DC 20250-1000. Telephone 202-720-7115; Fax 202-720-3229. Dr. James A. (Jim) Duke, a botanist at USDA's Agricultural Research Service Germplasm Introduction and Evaluation Laboratory, Beltsville, MD 20705, suggests study of the *Chemical Marketing Reporter* (Schnell Publishing Company, 100 Church St., New York, NY 10007) for the latest continuing data on processed herb prices and dealers. Copies of the annual *Oil, Paint and Drug Chemical Buyers Directory*, which lists dealers, is also for sale from the publisher.

Varietal Selection

Among many challenges in the herb business is varietal selection. Some seeds do not produce the crop desired. For example, "oregano" seeds sold by some companies may not produce plants of culinary use quality. While many kinds of lavender may be grown from seeds, they will not produce quality oil. Dr. Duke and Thomas DeBaggio, an herb grower in Arlington, VA, and author of *Growing Herbs*, advise that many herbs should be started from cuttings.

Growing Methods

There is a limited amount of commercial growing information in print. The quarterly *Journal of Herbs, Spices & Medicinal Plants* emphasizes the latest research in production and quality control. Dr. Lyle E. Craker, a plant physiologist at the University of Massachusetts, is the editor. Individual annual subscriptions are $28 per volume ordered from The Haworth Press, Inc., 10 Alice St., Binghamton, NY 13904-1580. Other sources for information on production, marketing, and manufacturing are the proceedings from the National Herb Growing and Marketing Conferences. Copies of the proceedings from 1986-1988 are available from the Extension Office, Center for New Crops, 1165 Horticulture Building, Purdue University, West Lafayette, IN 47907. The 1989-1994 proceedings are available from the International Herb Association. Information on Purdue's International Training Program in Medicinal and Aromatic Plants is also available.

Although many herbs flourish outdoors, prospective producers should seriously consider a greenhouse for year-round production as well as early season propagation. Construction costs will vary depending on location and equipment. Seeking expert advice before construction is essential.

Other Information Sources

Other sources of herbal information include the Alternative Farming Systems Information Center at USDA's National Agricultural Library (NAL), Room 304, 10301 Baltimore Blvd., Beltsville, MD 20705-2351 (301-504-6559); the Cooperative Extension Service office in your county; and your State university horticulture specialists.

Persons wishing to view more than 100 varieties of living herbs should visit the USDA's National Arboretum at 3501 New York Avenue NE, Washington D.C. (202-245-2726). Janet Walker is curator of the Arboretum's National Herb Garden. It is one of the largest such formal gardens in the world and has been sponsored by the Herb Society of America's Potomack Unit since 1965.

There are hundreds of books on herbs, but most deal with growing herbs on a gardener's level. Selections that include more detailed material for both the growing and business aspects are: *Growing Herbs* by Thomas DeBaggio from Interweave Press; *Herbal Renaissance* by Steven Foster from Gibbs-Smith; *Park's Success with Herbs* by Gertrude Foster and Rosemary Louden from Park Seed Comp[illegible] *Growing Your Herb Business* by Bertha R[illegible]t from Storey Communications; *Herbs for Sale* and *Profits from Your Backyard Herb Garden* by Lee Sturdivant from San Juan Naturals (Box 642S, Friday Harbor, WA 98250). Two trade journals that deal with commercial enterprises are *The Business of Herbs* (Rt. 2, Box 245, Shevlin, MN 56676) and The Herbal Connection.

By Maureen A. Rogers, P. O. Box 245, Silver Spring, PA 17575, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr, Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone 202-401-1805; Fax 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communic[illegible] at 202-720-5881 (voice) or 202-720-7808 (TD[illegible]

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

January 1995

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research, Education,
and Extension Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Northern Nut Growing

Northern Nut Growing

It is not generally known that delicious nuts of many varieties may be grown in the most Northern areas of the United States. Butternut and hazel have always grown wild in Minnesota and Wisconsin. The exotic almond and northern pecan thrive in Michigan and New York. Northerners can be very successful with nut trees and this article will get you started in the right direction.

Butternuts, hazels, heartnuts, and Korean and Siberian nut pines are some of the hardiest nut trees. Almond and sweet chestnut require the more favored sites in the Northern States.

Growers have had occasional disappointments transplanting nut trees due to the long tap root. All of the tap root must be secured to assure successful transplanting. Spring transplanting, rather than fall transplanting, usually gives the best results. However, heartnut, chestnut, and hazel are some of the best choices for fall transplanting. Most nut trees are suitable for a wide range of soils although chestnut and almond require sandy loans.

Good water drainage is essential for many nut trees. Areas with poor air drainage become frost pockets in both spring and fall and should be avoided. Sites prone to extreme drought should not be considered. The addition of peat moss may make all the difference in difficult instances.

Young trees are always easier to establish in the presence of nearby, but not overshadowing, windbreaks. Generally, nut trees require full sun. The Persian (Carpathian, English) walnut prefers north-facing slopes, whereas the northern pecan prefers a south-facing slope.

Although average planting is 20 feet apart, small bush types (hazel) are planted 10 feet apart. Full-sized trees (northern pecan) are often thinned to as much as 40 feet apart in their senior years. The optimum height for transplanting is 2-4 feet.

Contrary to popular belief, several trees (hazel and chestnut), may produce nuts in as few as 3 years from transplanting. They respond to fertilizing, irrigation and other good growing techniques. On favorable sites, the trees will reach ages of 50-200 years and will grow on rough lands unsuitable to annual crops.

Fortunately, many nut trees are substantially free of insects and diseases, and may not require chemical protectants.

Most nuts are harvested by allowing the crop to fall to the ground. Then they are collected, cleaned and dried to about 6 percent moisture for common storage of 1 to 2 years.

Nut tree plantings may be started from nursery stock or nuts may be seeded directly on the sites selected. Usually seed nuts are sown 2-3 inches deep in the fall. Specialty nurseries offer improved types of trees which are known as cultivars.

Sweet Chestnut

The "sweet" in the title is used to distinguish edible chestnuts from the ornamental horse chestnut (Aescalus hippocastanum), which produces similar appearing, but bitter, nuts unsafe for human consumption. The four sweet chestnut varieties are: the American chestnut (*Castanea dentata*); the European chestnut (*Castanea sativa*); the Japanese chestnut (*Castanea crenata*); and the Chinese chestnut (*Castanea mollissima*).

Among these four species there are some differences in nut size and leaf format. One of the most significant differences is blight resistance. The American is the most susceptible, while the Chinese is the most resistant.

Chestnuts have been a staple food in Europe and Asia for centuries. Now that blight resistant oriental types are available and have sufficient cold hardiness, chestnuts can be reintroduced into North America on a commercial scale. There is also ample opportunity to hybridize the four major sweet chestnuts to achieve combinations of size, consumption quality, and high production.

The general characteristics and requirements for the several sweet chestnuts are:

- A season length of 100-140 frost-free days, requiring 2500 plus heat units (base F) to fill the kernels. Winter hardiness may extend to -15°F to -30°F.
- Nut sizes range from 10-200 nuts to the pound. Kernel percentages range around 85 percent, unusually high compared to most northern nuts. Chestnuts are starchy rather than oily and the nuts are stored at 100 percent moisture until consumed. If allowed to dry, they may become moldy, hard, and inedible.
- Chestnuts prefer rich sandy loams, but may also do well on coarse sands. Near perfect drainage is necessary. They respond well to fertilizers, mulches, trickle irrigation and full sunlight. In areas troubled by chestnut weevil, worms will be present in the nuts. Check with your state agriculture department for acceptable control applications.
- Well sited chestnuts grow quickly and are healthy. A vigorous seedling may grow from seed to 20 feet in 10 years. Trees achieve mature size after 40-80 years and range from 30-90 feet tall, often with spreading crowns. Some may live to over 150 years.
- Chestnuts on marginal soils are susceptible to manganese deficiencies, apparent in excessively yellow leaves and slow, spindly growth. This problem is usually corrected with foliar sprays of manganese.
- Chestnuts generally bloom in July. In most years, this relatively late bloom season protects them from spring frosts. A minimum of 3-5 trees are required for good cross pollination. Both grafted and seedling chestnuts will bear nuts in the third year from planting. If 1 or 2 year old chestnut grafts develop nuts, they should be cut off as excessive early bearing weakens trees and makes them susceptible to winter damage.
- Protection should be provided from both deer browsing on young chestnuts and rodents girdling around the base of trees in winter.
- Harvest is from mid-September to early October and chestnuts may be used as lawn ornaments if the fall drop of burrs is not troublesome.
- Chestnut is one of the highest yielding of all nut trees bearing 1,000-4,000 pounds per acre or 50-100 pounds per tree. At current prices of up to $3 per pound (wholesale/retail), profits are possible.
- Cultivars of chestnut include many old favorites such as Orrin, Layeroka Paragon, Abundance, Colossal, and Nanking. Newer cultivars are available from specialty nurseries and have shorter season requirements and larger nuts. *(Greg Miller, Empire Chestnut Co., 3276 Empire Rd., SW, Carrollton, OH 44615)*

Eastern Black Walnut

Black walnut is grown commercially in the United States for timber and nuts. The rich, dark-grained wood is one of the most valuable in North America. The pungent tasty kernels are especially favored for baking. The trees are vigorous, fast growing and spread over large tracts from southern California to the Carolinas, and west of the Mississippi River in Iowa, Nebraska and Kansas.

The characteristics and requirements of black walnut include:

- A season length of 100-140 frost-free days. The trees require 2600 plus heat units (base 50 F) to fill the kernels. Winter hardiness may extend to -30 °F to -40 °F. Nut sizes range from 10-100 nuts per pound. Kernel percentage of nuts varies from 15-35 percent. Black walnut shells are very tough to crack.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720-5881 (voice) or 202-720-7909 (TDD).
To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC, 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

- Although black walnuts prefer open-textured bottom lands, they will grow on many upland locations and in clay loam. Medium to good water drainage will give best results. Usually 3-5 different cultivars or seedlings are required to provide adequate cross pollination. The trees require 4-8 years from planting to produce commercial crops. Harvest is from mid-September to late October.
- Black walnuts are slightly less attractive to deer and rodents than other trees, but they also require winter protection.
- If nothing else is grown nearby, black walnuts make a good lawn tree. It is a competitive species, requiring space and full sun.
- The trees respond well to special fertilizers, mulches and irrigation. They will probably do better than most trees when planted on a "wild" basis with very little seasonal care.

Some of the better cultivars for northern climates are Emma K, Sparrow, Ohio, Stabler, and Sparks 127. (*Archie Sparks, Box 98, Beaver, IA 50031)*

Persian Walnut

The Persian walnut (*Juglans regia*) is similar to and closely related to the eastern black walnut, with one very important difference: the shells are thin. The kernels are mild and delicious and easily extracted. Some of the notable characteristics of this valuable tree include:

- Nuts which ripen from mid-September through early October in the Northern States. Winter hardiness extends to -40° F. Caution: Winter frosts may be a serious problem.
  Nut sizes range from 20-60 nuts per pound. Kernel percentages are from 35-65 percent.
- Persian walnuts grow on a wide range of sites if the soil is reasonably rich, open-textured and well drained. A vigorous seedling may grow from a nut to a tree 25 feet high in 10 years. Mature trees reach 60-80 feet and may live for 150 years.
- The trees bloom in early May and are often at risk from spring frosts. Several trees of different types are needed for cross pollination. Grafted trees may bear nuts in as little as 3-5 years from planting.
- Persian walnuts must be protected from all rodents and predators.

Many growers in the North have worked with Persian walnuts, so a wide range of cultivars are available. They will produce nuts just like the ones purchased from a grocery store. *(Ernie Grimo, Grimo Nut Nursery, RR3, Lakeshore Rd., Niagara-on-the-Lake, Ontario LOS 1J0,* Canada)

Shagbark Hickory

Those who collect hickory nuts from the wild are aware that they have the most deliciously delicate flavors of all the nuts. Currently, only those who are familiar with collecting in the wild have access to these wonderful nuts as they are not available commercially. In spite of not being well known, hickories are widely grown in North America. Their crops ripen toward the end of September from southern Canada to the Carolinas and from Connecticut to Missouri. Some of their pertinent characteristics include:

- Winter hardiness may range as low as -40° F. The hickory is one of the few nuts which prefers clay soils, although occasionally they are found in sandy soils.
- Nut size varies from 50-150 per pound and the kernel percentage ranges from 30-50 percent.
- The trees are remarkable for their straight, central leader growing habits. The wood is strong, tough and hard. A hickory can be grown from seed to 25 feet high in 10 years. Mature trees may reach 90 feet high and live 200 or more years. First bearing may occur at 6-12 years from planting and several trees are needed for cross pollination.

Shagbark cultivars recommended for planting include: Yoder No. 1, Porter, Weschecke, Grainger, and Walters. The shellbark or kingnut hickory trees are closely related to the shagbarks, but are somewhat bigger and faster growing. Recommended shellbark cultivars are: Fayette, Henry, and Totten. (*Charlie Thatcher, 1267 Gill Hall Rd., Clairton, PA 15025)*

Filberts

The filbert *(Corylus avellana)* and the closely related hazels (*C. Americana and C. comuta*) are known as the little nuts which grow everywhere in North America. The familiar round nut is a favorite with all kernel eaters. It is also a nut of commerce in the United States and millions of pounds are produced every year. Some of its more salient points include:

- Winter hardiness may drop to -50 F. Some of the *C. comuta* grow within sight of the Artic Circle. The hazel or filbert will grow in a wide range of soils, even with imperfect drainage. Most hazel/filbert types grow in bush form. A notable exception is the Turkish tree hazel, which can grow higher than a 2 1/2 story house. Vigorous seedlings may grow from a seed to bushes 6-20 feet high in 10 years.
- The bushes are very precocious and start bearing nuts 3-4 years after planting. Nut size ranges from 100-200 to the pound.
- Kernel percentage varies from 20-55 percent. Hazel nuts are a favorite food of birds and rodents.
- Bush life may be limited to 30-40 years or even less where the filbert blight is a problem. Blight may be a limiting factor in growing the species and should be cut out of the bushes at the early stages of infection.
- Hazel/filberts bloom from December to April in North America, and they have a rather odd reproduction style. Several different types should be planted together to ensure cross pollination.

Cultivars proven for satisfactory nut production include: Barcelona, Duchilly, Reed, Potomac, Buchanan, Willamette, Casina, Winkler and Graham. (*Harry Lagerstedt, The Peace Place, 34151 Electric Rd., Corvallis, OR 97333)*

Northern Pecan

Pecans (*Carya illinoensis*) are generally regarded as a southern nut. However, wild native pecans have been growing along the banks of the Mississippi River as far north as the Illinois/Wisconsin border. Recent explorations in these areas have discovered a new line of nuts which can truly be called Northern pecans. They grow successfully in most of northern America and more favorable parts of southern Canada. The characteristics of the Northern pecan include:

- Winter hardiness may extend to -30° 40° F. A season of 130-150 frost-free days is required at 2900 plus heat units (base 50° F) to fill kernels. Nut size ranges from 60-200 nuts per pound. Kernel percentage of the nuts varies from 35-55 percent. Harvest is from mid-September to late October.
- Pecans prefer a deep, high organic soil, but may perform well in a wide range of soil types, including clay. A vigorous seedling may grow from a seed to 30 feet high in 10 years; achieve full size of 60-90 feet high by 30-50 feet wide after 60-80 years; and may live over 200 years.
- Northern pecans flower/pollinate in May/June and several trees are required for cross pollination. Grafted trees will bear in as little as 5 years from planting, whereas seedlings may require 7-12 years.
- The trees are healthy, vigorous, productive and have fewer pest problems than many of the other nut trees in the North. Wildlife may browse on young pecans, so some protection may be required. The trees need a high level of nutrients and may show zinc deficiency in more alkaline soils. Pecans which set many narrow, weak crotches should be given formative pruning. They make excellent shade/lawn trees, as well as orchard trees.

Some of the pecan cultivars grown throughout the South (Georgia-Texas) include: Stuart, Schley, Success, Desirable, Mahan and Wichita.

Cultivars for the middle latitudes (Kentucky-Missouri) include: Major, Colby, Peruque, Posey, Green River and Hirschi.

Some of the best choices for the most northern tier of American states and southern Canada include: Cornfield, Carlson #3, Snaps Early, Snag, Best's Early, Theresa Foster, and Lucas.

Many of the most Northern cultivars will be difficult to find outside of the cottage industry nurseries. The nut size of the northern pecan is about half that of the familiar southern pecan. However, the flavor of the true northern pecan is unbeatable. (Doug Campbell, Campberry Farm, RR1, Niagara-on-the-Lake, Ontario LOS 1JO, Canada)

Further nut tree information is available from the Northern Nut Growers Association (NNGA). Write: Tucker Hill, Secretary, 654 Beinhower Rd., Etters, PA 17319-9774. Telephone: 717-938-6090. Annual membership in NNGA is $15.00 and may be obtained through: Kenneth Bauman, Treasurer, NNGA, 9870 South Palmer Rd, New Carlisle, OH 45344.

Under the guidance of Doug Campbell, this publication was prepared for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-720-5245; Fax: 202-205-2448.
Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U. S. Department of Agriculture

United States Department of Agriculture

Cooperative State Research, Educatation, and Extension Service

Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

PEPPERS

Peppers (*Capsicum* sp.) exhibit a wide variety of shapes, sizes, colors, and tastes. These sweet and pungent peppers should not be confused with the "black pepper" (*Piper nigrum*) that is produced from the dried unripe fruit of a vine grown in India and Ceylon. Confusion over the term dates back to Christopher Columbus, who discovered *Capsicum* plants in the New World in 1493. The hot varieties that Columbus introduced to Europe were soon widely grown, dried, powdered, and used as a substitute for black pepper.

Peppers are an excellent source of vitamins A and C. Low in calories, peppers are used widely as both a vegetable and a spice. Peppers are also used as ornamental house plants. Mature pods can be dried and used in flower arrangements. Pungent pods have been used for medicinal purposes and in repellent sprays to deter dogs and people.

Pepper Classification

Peppers can be classified botanically or by pungency characteristics. The genus *Capsicum* (family Solanaceae), which includes both sweet and pungent peppers, has approximately 20 separate species. The five domes ticated species include hundreds of cultivars. Four of the five species (*C. baccatum*, *C. frutescens*, *C. chinense*, and *C. pubescens*) were domesticated in South America, while *C. annuum* was primarily cultivated in Central America. The latter includes most of the common sweet and pungent peppers grown in the United States.

The pungency of a pepper depends on the amount of capsaicinoids it contains. The dominant and hottest capsaicinoids are capsaicin and dihydrocapsaicin. These alkaloids are produced primarily by glands in the placenta tissue along the pod wall. Seeds are not sourcesof heat, but can absorb the capsaicinoids during processing. Environmental factors that can affect pungency include water stress (increases pungency) and cool growing conditions (decreases pungency).

Pungency in peppers is generally measured with the Scoville Organoleptic Test. Developed by Wilber L. Scoville in 1912, this test uses a panel of five human heat samplers to taste and evaluate extracts of pungent peppers in alcohol and sugar water. Pungency readings are recorded in multiples of 100 "Scoville Units"; at least three tasters must agree on the ratings between 0 and 10. Recently, human tasters have been replaced by high-pressure liquid chromatography (HPLC). A spectrofluorometer is used to measure capsaicin levels (parts per million) in samples of powdered pepper combined with ethanol and sodium acetate.

Pungent peppers are generally called "chile," which refers to both plants and pods. Chile is a Spanish form of "chilli"—the Aztec word for these plants. The term " chili," on the other hand, is generally used to describe a prepared food, "chili con carne" (chili withmeat). Chile-based "salsas" have replaced ketchup as America's number-one condiment. The State of New Mexico is the leading producer of chile (34,500 acres in 1992).

Pepper Types And Uses

(Capsicum annuum var. *annuum)* Most commercial pepper cultivars—including sweet bell peppers and long, green chile cultivars—occur in this species of pepper. Although pungent peppers are predominant in Latin America, Asia, and the southwestern United States, sweet bell peppers are by far the most popular pepper in the United States. Sweetness is controlled by a single recessive gene that eliminates the capsaicin.

Sweet Peppers

Bell—Fruit 3"-4" wide, 4"-5" long; sweet, large, blocky-shaped; hollow with thick flesh and 3 or 4 lobes; normally harvested at mature, green stage, although some may turn yellow, red, or brown when mature; pungency rating #0; can be stuffed or used in salads, relishes, or cooked vegetable dishes; most popular pepper in temperate countries; popular varieties include Bell Boy, Gypsy Hybrid, and California Wonder.

Pimento—Fruit 2" wide, 3" long; sweet, slightly pointed, conical-shaped with thick walls; pungency rating #0; red when ripe; used as olive-stuffer, in fresh salads, pimento cheese, and sandwich spreads; popular varieties include Early Pimento, Pimento Select, and Perfection.

Sweet Wax—Fruit 1" wide, 2"-6" long; conical; yellow when immature, with waxy gloss, turning orange to red when mature; pungency rating #0 (may be more pungent); maybe pickled, made into relishes, or used fresh in salads; popular varieties include Sweet Banana and Hungarian Sweet Wax.

Cherry—Fruit 2" in diameter, produced on upright stems; cherry- or globe-shaped with three cells; orange to deep-red color; pungency rating #1 (may be more pungent); mature green or colored pods used as pickled garnish; also used as ornamental plant; popular varieties include Sweet Cherry, Red Cherry Small, and Red Cherry Large.

Pungent Peppers

New Mexican (previously called "Anaheim")—Long, green/red chile type; fruit 1"-2" wide, 4"-10" long; relatively thin flesh; harvested either in mature green stage or mature red stage, although some varieties may turn yellow, orange, or brown; pungency may range from sweet to hot; red pods can be ground into powder; both red and green pods can be used in sauces and salsas; green (peeled) may be eaten fresh or may be canned or frozen; used in all types of Mexican-style dishes from casseroles to candies; colored pods can also be used in "ristras" (ornamental strings of dried pods) or combined with dried flowers in harvest wreaths; popular varieties include NuMex R-Naky (pungency rating #1), N.M. 6-4 (pungency rating #2), NuMex Big Jim (pungency rating #2), Española Improved (pungency rating #3), and Sandia (pungency rating #4).

Ancho (wide)—Fruit 3"-4" wide, 3"-6" long; heart-shaped with marked depression at base of pod; immature dark-green pod turns red to almost black in mature dry stage; fresh green pods called Poblano (people); pungency rating #3; very popular in Mexico; fresh pod peeled and stuffed with meat or cheese (relleno) or used in casseroles; dried form used insalsas, sauces, and "moles" (special sauce mixed with other ingredients such as chocolate, garlic, and coconut); popular varieties include Ancho 101, Poblano, and Mulato.

Cayenne—Fruit 1/2"-1" wide, 5"-10" long; mature dry red pods become very wrinkled; very pungent (rating #8); grown mostly in India and Asia, although some is grown in Louisiana and New Mexico; dried pods ground into powder for use in hot sauces; fresh green and red pods used in salsas and salads; popular varieties include Hot Portugal, Ring of Fire, and Hades Hot.

Jalapeño—Fruit 1"-1½" wide, 3" long; conical with tapered blunt tips and thick flesh; immature dark green fruit turn red at

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs, and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotapes, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at 202-720- 5881 (voice) or 202-720-7808 (TDD).
To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250, or call 202-720-7327 (voice) or 202-720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

turity; most varieties highly pungent ing #5); used fresh, in salsas, canned, kled, or on nacho (corn) chips; smoked t called "chipotle"; popular varieties ude Jalapeño, Jalapeño M, and TAM apeño (mild).

Serrano—Fruit ½" wide, 1"-4" long; erect (pendant); slightly curved or ical; immature dark-green fruit turn wn, yellow, or orange when mature; y pungent (rating #6-7); mostly grown in xico; fresh green pods used in various getable dishes and salsas; most popular S. variety is Hidalgo (multi-virus istance).

Pasilla (little raisin)—Fruit 1" wide, 6"- ' long; cylindrical with undulating ape; immature dark-green fruit mature to k brown; pungency rating #3; very fla- ful; used in powdered forms in moles pecially chocolate mixtures) and ces.

de Arbol— Fruit 3/8" wide, 2"-3" long; ngate, pointed; mature pods dark red nslucent); pungency rating #7; grown stly in Mexico for soups, stews, sauces, le oils, and vinegars.

Chiltepin *(Capsicum annuum* var. *avic-ire)*—Fruit ¼"-½" in diameter; round, nerally pea-shaped; borne erect; (wild m); domesticated Piquin has somewhat ger fruit (bullet-shaped); pungency rat- #8-9; not grown much commercially in ited States; used as spice for soups, as, lentils, beans, and stews; fresh fruit opped and used in salsas; popular mesticated variety is NuMex Bailey in; available from Enchanted Seed 233-3033).

Tabasco (Capsicum frutescens)—Fruit 3" wide, 1½" long; immature yellow pods n orange to red when mature; pungency ing #8; pods borne erect; most widely own for use in Louisiana Tabasco Sauce ods crushed, salted, fermented in casks 2 1/2 to 3 years, strained, and vinegar ded); fresh pods also used in salsas, ed pods used in stir-fry dishes (Sauce urce: McIlhenny Co., Dept. 94-4, Avery and, LA, 70513).

Habanero (Capsicum chinense)— uit 1"-2" wide, 1"-2½" long; sets 2 to 6 it per axil; oblong with undulating shape; me varieties pointed at end, while others e flattened; immature green pods turn d, orange, yellow, or white when mature; ange is preferred color; most pungent ile known (pungency rating #10); has a ique flavor; also called "Scotch Bonnet" "Scot's Bonnet"; used in salsas, bottled uces, and barbecue seasonings; one of e hottest known Habaneros is a red (Red avina) developed by Frank Garcia, Jr. of NS Spices in Walnut, California (909- 4-9505).

Aji(Capsicum baccatum)—Fruit 3"-5" ng (great diversity of size and shape); gate; mature pod turns orange-red, or brown; generally quite pungent ng #8); pod is erect when immature d becomes pendant with increased size d weight; pods become yellow at some stage in their development (common name is "aji amarillo"); grown mostly in South America; unique flavor; used in salsas and as spicing for potatoes, chicken, and fish.

Rocoto (Capsicum pubescens)—Fruit round, similar to cherry type; vary in size; mature color is yellow, orange, or red; seeds are black; pungency rating #8-9; difficult to grow in United States; used in salsas.

Paprika Peppers

Other peppers of importance include those grown for "paprika," which is not considered a variety of pepper (in United States), but a food product. Paprika is a sweet to mildly pungent red seasoning used primarily for red food coloring. Peppers developed for paprika are bred for dark red color, little to no pungency, and ease of dehydration. Peppers grown for paprika in the United States should not be confused with the more pungent Hungarian Rose paprika used in Hungarian cuisine.

Pepper Culture

Peppers are a warm-season crop and require growing conditions similar to tomato and eggplant. Because peppers are highly susceptible to frost, transplanting should be delayeduntil after the last frost in spring. Cool soil temperatures will delay emergence and retard growth, so direct seeding and transplanting peppers in the field should be delayed until soils warm.

Plant growth and fruit set are maximized when daytime temperatures range between 65 and 85 °F, with nighttime temperatures of 60-70 °F. Blossoms may not set if temperatures drop below 60 °F or rise above 90 °F. Under ideal conditions, mature green peppers will be ready for harvest 45 to 55 days after pollination. Cool weather will delay maturity.

Peppers prefer a well-drained loam or sandy loam soil with a pH of 7.0 to 8.5. Green manure crops such as winter rye, planted in the fall and soil-incorporated a month before planting peppers, will help increase the water-holding capacity and nutrient retention of sandy soils and the aeration and drainage of clay soils. The amount and types of fertilizer to apply for maximum pepper production should be based on a soil analysis and recommendations from your county Extension agent.

In colder climates, peppers are best established from transplants. Purchase stocky, healthy transplants for best results. Peppers grown in the greenhouse for transplanting require 6 to 8 weeks from seeding to transplanting size. Space plants in the field 8"-14" apart in rows 30"-36" wide. Transplanting is best done in the early evening to reduce shock. Water immediately after transplanting.

In warmer areas with longer growing seasons, peppers can be direct-seeded. Plant seeds 1" apart and ¼" deep. Plants can be thinned when seedlings have four or more true leaves. Planting technique and plant spacing will vary from region to region.

Especially in northern climates, peppers may benefit from the use of black plastic mulch to help warm the soil early in the season. The black plastic can be replaced with organic mulches when the weather warms. Organic mulches such as straw, dry grass clippings, and leaves help cool the soil during hot weather.

Use of floating row covers in the early spring can help get seedlings off to a strong start. Row covers allow light in while warming the atmosphere around the plants. To prevent damage from wind, support row covers with wire braces that arch over the plants. Outside edges can be anchored with soil. Although most modern row covers allow air circulation, it is best to remove the cover in warm weather. Row covers also help screenout many insect pests, such as the beet leafh-opper, which spreads curly top disease.

Harvest green bell peppers before they change color (except those harvested specially as colored peppers). Fruit should be fully developed, crisp, and firm when squeezed. Long, green, pungent varieties harvested for green chile should have a similar feel. Most pods can be broken off the plant easily if pods are mature. Chile peppers harvested for red color can be climates) or harvested when fully ripe and hung up by their stems to dry. In more humid areas, mechanical dehydration may be necessary.

Where To Learn More

Peppers are becoming more and more popular. If you want to learn more technical information about peppers, you may wish to attend either the International Pepper Conference or the Annual New Mexico Chile Conference (contact Javier Vargas, 505-525-6649). Or you can write to the Chile Institute (Box 30003, Dept. 3Q, NMSU, Las Cruces, NM 88003).Suggested reading on chile: T*he Whole Chile Pepper Book* and *The Whole Chile Pepper* magazine (contact Dave DeWitt, P.O. Box 4278, Albuquerque, NM 87196).

Other seed sources for peppes include: Plants of the Southwest (800-788-SEED), Nichols Garden Nursery (503-928-9280), The Pepper Gal (305-537-5540), Twilley Seeds (800-622-SEED), Shepherds (408-335-6910), and Petoseed (805-647-1188).

By George W. Dickerson, Extension Horticulture Specialist, New Mexico Cooperative Extension Service, New Mexico State University, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director, Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone 202-720-5245; Fax 202-205-2448.

October 1995

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Pumpkins

The pumpkin reigns as king of the vegetables. The pumpkin was already a staple in the American diet long before the first Thanksgiving feast at Plymouth Rock, Massachusetts, in 1621. Pumpkins were cultivated by native American tribes long before Europeans ever set foot on American shores. Archaeologists have found pieces of pumpkin stems, seeds, and rind in the ancient ruins of the cliff dwellers in the Southwestern United States. For native Americans, pumpkins were a vital part of an existing multiple cropping system of corn, beans, and squash. Those seeds were usually planted together in the same hill, sometimes accompanied with a fish for fertilizer. The combination of these vegetables was the staple of many of the native diets and still is today in certain areas of Latin America. Pumpkins were eaten roasted, boiled, and stewed by native American tribes. Not only was the pumpkin grown for its food and feed value, but also served as a living mulch, helped keep maize fields free of weeds, and discouraged raccoons from eating the corn.

Since that first Thanksgiving feast, pumpkins have become a tradition on American Thanksgiving tables, served primarily in the form of pumpkin pie. The native Americans showed the Pilgrims how to dry pumpkin meat and grind it into meal for year-round use. Colonists used this new vegetable, not only for pie, but as feed for animals (roasted seeds) and as a prime ingredient in other foods. For example, stewed pumpkin was mixed with corn meal for bread, and a simple pumpkin pudding was made by slicing off the top of the pumpkin, scooping out the seed and fibers, and filling the cavity with milk. The whole pumpkin was then baked until the milk was absorbed. The pumpkin and its relative, the winter squash, were very easy to store for winter use.

The irony is that today the American pumpkin is not known for its nutritional value, but as a decorative jack-o-lantern synonymous with Halloween. One can only speculate that the first jack-o-lantern was created as a result of efforts to prepare pumpkin pudding.

Washington Irving wrote about the pumpkin in "The Legend of Sleepy Hollow," and more recently, Charles Schultz has rekindled American folklore with the Great Pumpkin in "It's the Great Pumpkin, Charlie Brown."

The medieval French name "pampion" means sun-baked squash and is derived from the Greek word "pepon," or a large melon. The English modified "pampion" to "pompkin," which was finally changed to "pumpkin" by the American colonists.

The pumpkin's scientific names are Cucurbita maxima, represented by such varieties as "Atlantic Giant," "Big Max," "Mammoth," and "Boston Marrow," and *Cucurbita pepo*, represented by "Connecticut Field," "Howden's," and similar varieties.

NUTRITIONAL VALUE

The pumpkin is very high in fiber and vitamin A and contains plenty of beta carotene, which has recently received credit for cancer-preventing qualities. Also, high-fiber diets may prevent overeating, a great concern in American diets. One cup of mashed pumpkin contains approximately 50 calories, yet it ranks among the most nutritious of domestic produce. It contains over 2,500 units of vitamin A, considerable quantities of B complex and C vitamins, along with generous amounts of phosphorus, potassium, calcium, and iron. The smaller pie-sized pumpkins, including "Connecticut Field," can be substituted in virtually any recipe calling for winter squash.

PLANTING CONSIDERATIONS

To grow healthy pumpkins, the soil should be well drained with a pH of 6.0 to 6.5. It is best to get a soil test done first. Check with your local Extension Service office. Otherwise, if commercial fertilizers are used, broadcast 500 to 1,000 pounds of 5-10-10 per acre before planting. This equates to approximately 5 quarts per 100 feet of row, spread out 3 feet wide over the row. Sidedress at 3 and 6 weeks after seeding with 20 to 30 pounds of nitrogen and 60 to 100 pounds of potassium (approximately 1 pint of 13-0-44 per 100 feet of row). Sidedress fertilizer 6 to 8 inches from the plants on both sides of the row. Equivalent nutrients can also be provided from organic materials.

Pumpkins require ample amounts of potassium for good dry-matter production. If misshaped pumpkins develop, check the boron level or add 1 pound of actual boron (5 pounds of Solubor) per acre to your fertility program. Boron deficiency is likely to occur on sandy soils.

According to Robert J. Rouse, Wye Research and Education Center, University of Maryland, Queenstown, pumpkins can be seeded too early if one is not careful. Pumpkins should not be seeded in the mid-Atlantic region in May. They will make it, but will need to be sprayed over a longer period of time. June is more appropriate. During summer, the days to maturity can vary from 90 to 120, depending on the variety of pumpkins planted and the temperature. According to your marketing strategy, 90-day pumpkins can be planted as late as the first week in July and still make a crop by October. However, pumpkins planted late in the season are more subject to disease and do not yield as well as those planted earlier. Mid-June is the normal planting time. Spacing pumpkins depends on varieties and vine size. If you are planting on a hill system — the easiest for organic growers since the compost and animal manure only needs to be worked into the hills — plant three to four seeds per hill and then thin to one plant per hill. For larger acreages, 2 to 3 pounds of seed per acre should be sufficient for achieving 3,000 to 4,000 plants per acre. Higher rates of up to 4 to 5 pounds/acre may be required for bush varieties. Plants should be spaced 3 feet apart and at least 6 feet between rows.

Cover crops can really help, particularly hairy vetch. Kill the cover crop and then seed or plant in the residue. By killing or mowing the vetch before it forms seeds, which is the end of May in the mid-Atlantic region, in June one can then use no-till seed or, on a small scale, transplant through the mulch by using a bulb planter or spade. Vetch mulch gives a nice carpet and minimizes soil contact on fruit.

Variations to this monocrop planting system are used by some growers. Ed and Kathy Schaefer, who operate Bellevue Berry and Pumpkin Ranch near Omaha, Nebraska, utilize oats or rye as a cover crop in the spring, and then plant 2 pounds of pumpkin seed per acre in the grain with some ornamental corn. Some

heir 35 acres of pumpkins are planted ough 4-foot-wide plastic mulch with 10-t-wide strips of rye or oats in-between the ic. This is done because the same fields e been continuously cropped in pumpkins the last 10 years. Care needs to be taken t to plant a row of pumpkins in the same ation each year. A combination of sorghum d sudangrass is strip-cropped for frost tection, especially in those fields in which mpkins are cut and left for pick-your-own rvesting in late October.

To reduce disease problems, most search data suggests rotational cropping, if ssible, by planting pumpkins once every 3 7 years. For those growers who do not ve this amount of acreage flexibility, it is portant to clean the field thoroughly after rvest and to fall plow as deeply as possi-e. If this is done, choose land that is not ghly erosive and, weather permitting, plant winter or early spring cover crop to protect e soil and help minimize crop pest build-up oblems. Growers must be aware that cer-in crops can carry over diseases (e.g., ppers are subject to phytophthora and so e pumpkins), so they should not be planted the rotations. Nor should other cucurbits ch as watermelon, cantaloupes, cucum-ers, and squash. Pollinating bees are also tical for successful pumpkin production. In crops, the recommendations are one to honey bee colonies per acre.

Popular pumpkin varieties include: Small zes: "Munchkin," "Jack-Be-Little," "Sugar ie," "Spookie," and "Oz." Medium sizes: Spirit Hybrid," "Jack O'Lantern," "Autumn old," and "Happy Jack." Large sizes: Aspen," "Connecticut Field," "Pankow," Howden," "Jackpot Hybrid," "Wizard," and Big Autumn." Very large sizes: "Prize Winner," Atlantic Giant," "Big Moon," and "Big Max."

ARKETING STRATEGY

marketing strategy is critical for those con-emplating growing pumpkins so they can sell hat they sow. One needs to assess whether wholesale pumpkins or direct market them. arm location, zoning, insurance, labor supply, nd willingness to work with the public are just few of the factors that should be considered. or those who want to market direct to con-umers, one can choose from roadside mar-ets, farmer's markets, on-farm markets, J-pick activities, and community-sponsored gricultural farms. In addition, there is a grow-ng practice to couple some of the market ctivities with entertainment agriculture, which ompasses hayrides, harvest festivals, and p farm tours.

A farm that markets direct to the consumer needs to project a positive and safe farm image (including overall farm neatness); offer a variety of quality pumpkins; and have adequate equipment, signing, advertising, and access roads. Customers will also require restroom facilities and adequate parking.

Bellevue Berry and Pumpkin Ranch customers enjoy free hayrides to the pumpkin fields, western cookouts, a Haunted Barn, and a kids' "How the West Was Fun" play area. Other pumpkin growers throughout the United States have various marketing strategies, including fall festivals, food-fests and other farm-focus themes. Some growers, like Skip Jackson at the Iron Kettle Farm in upstate New York, construct elaborate pumpkin scarecrow exhibits and sell pumpkins next to their farm market. Butler's Orchards, located in the Maryland suburbs near Washington, DC, allows customers to drive their cars to the pumpkin fields and offers a festival environment in the center of the farm with decorated pumpkin figures, apple butter preparation, food provided by local churches, and live entertainment. The most successful retail farm marketers are innovators. Farmers who build entertainment into their pumpkin sales can draw customers to their farm markets. Some farms, like the Berry Farm in Mathews, Virginia, focus almost exclusively on educational farm experiences for school groups. During their visits, students learn about farm animals, how pumpkins grow, and other crops. Doug Carrigan of Carrigan Farms in Mooresville, North Carolina, offers fall school tours focusing on either pumpkins or apples.

ORGANIZATIONS AND NEWSLETTERS

According to several vegetable and fruit specialists, there are no national organizations or associations focusing specifically on pumpkin growing. Pumpkin work at the University of Maryland, Wye Research and Education Center, is highlighted in "Agent Update" by Robert J. Rouse, WREC, P.O. Box 169, Queenstown, MD 21658. Much of the information on mid-Atlantic pumpkin work is also featured annually in the Proceedings of the Mid-Atlantic Vegetable Workers Conference.

Farmers contemplating growing and marketing their own pumpkins should check with their local Extension Service offices. An annual pumpkin meeting is hosted by Ray Samulis, Burlington County Cooperative Extension Agent, 49 Rancocas Road, Mt. Holly, NJ 08060-1317 (telephone 609-265-5050). Most States have fruit and vegetable grower associations, which may also have important grower information. The North American Farmers' Direct Marketing Association hosts an annual conference. In 1995, it will be held in Knoxville, Tennessee. Audiotapes of presentations are sold, and in past years there have been presentations on pumpkins and entertainment farming. For more information, contact Richa Reese, Audio Productions, 8806 South Lake Stevens Road, Everett, WA 98205 (telephone 1-800-356-2834).

Prepared by Ed and Kathy Schaefer, Bellevue Berry and Pumpkin Ranch, South 48th & Cornhusker Road, Omaha, NE 68133, and George B. Holcomb (Retired), Office of Communications, U. S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotapes, etc.) should contact USDA's Office of Communications at (202) 720-5881 (voice) or (202) 720-7808 (TDD).

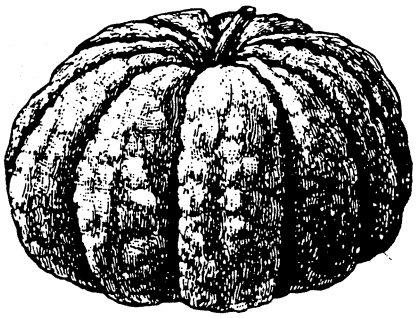
To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U. S. Department of Agriculture.

All uses of fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides must be registered by appropriate State and/or Federal agencies before they can be recommended.

CAUTION: Fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides can be injurious to humans, domestic animals, desirable plants, and fish or other wildlife if they are not handled or applied properly. Use all products selectively and carefully. Follow recommended practices for the disposal of surplus products and their containers.

October 1994



☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1994 386-116/00327

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Specialty Corns

Five hundred years ago, Columbus was one of the first Europeans to set eyes on maize—foundation of most great Western Hemisphere civilizations, including those of the Incas, Mayans, and Aztecs. In the April 1992 Organic Gardening magazine, Shepherd Ogden says, "sweet corn is the most American of vegetables." His article has tips for growers.

In 1540, Coronado noted maize or corn growing under irrigation among Native Americans of the southwestern part of what is now the United States. Corn largely kept the Pilgrims alive during the harsh winter of 1620 on the East Coast. The oldest known remains of corn cobs may be in Tehuacan, Mexico, dating back 7,000 years. Most corn historians consider a wild grass called Teosinte one of modern corn's primary ancestors.

Corn is one of the most diverse grain crops. Nature by itself and man working with it have produced many types of corn. Corn is generally classed as to kernel endosperm characteristics. Endosperm refers to a seed's nutritive tissue, surrounding and absorbed by the embryo. The six most common corn types include flint, flour, dent, pop, waxy, and sweet. A seventh is called pod or tunicate corn, which may have endosperms like the other six. Pod corns differ from the others in that each individual kernel is enclosed in a glume or husk.

Popcorns are basically small-kerneled flint types. Waxy corn carries a gene which results in the production of 100 percent amylopectin, i.e., starchy pectin.

Sweet Corn

Standard sweet corn at the immature, milky stage contains about 10 percent sucrose, while field corn in the same stage has about 4 percent. After harvest or if left on the stalk too long, sucrose in standard sweet corn is rapidly converted to starch.

Unlike dent corn, sweet corn is not grown for feed or flour, although USDA researchers have developed a technique to produce a high-fiber, no-calorie flour from pericarps that surround kernels, holding them on the cob.

Sweet corn kernels often have a wrinkled, glassy appearance resulting from a sugary gene which retards the normal conversion of sugar to starch during endosperm development. Kernel colors vary, sometimes being mixed both white and yellow.

William "Bill" Watson, president and owner of the Liberty Seed Company (P.O. Box 806, New Philadelphia, Ohio 44663; 1-800-541-6022 or 216-364-1611), is doing a write-up of the many sweetcorn developments of the past decade. He says there has been more change in the past decade than in the preceding 25 years.

To compete and find a nearby niche (like a restaurant or roadside stand) for their sweet corn, entrepreneurs should explore the potentials for moving high-sugar varieties of corn to consumers within a day after harvest. The need for speed is because kernels at room temperature can lose as much as 50 percent of their sucrose by 24 hours after harvest.

Development of sweeter varieties of standard sweet corn was done by selections within homozygous "SU1" genotypes. One selection—Silver Queen—became the standard against which other standard sweet corn varieties were compared. Later supersweet SH2 varieties, i.e., "sugary enhanced (SE)" or supersweet "shrunken (SH2)," have 2 to 3 times as much sucrose as standard sweet corn at harvest! What's more, sucrose levels stay relatively high 48 hours after harvest.

Growers of the SH2 gene sweet corn must be careful not to plant it within 250 feet or more—depending on prevailing winds—of any other kinds of corn because pollen may be picked up from neighboring corn, which will dilute the sweetness, making kernels undesirably tough and starchy.

One exception to the distant planting rule is Kandy Korn, whose sugar-enhanced SE gene produces a variety for farmers that, like other SE varieties, requires no isolation. (Abbott and Cobb, Inc.; 1-800-345-SEED. Asgrow; 616-323-4000)

Growers for the roadside trade usually sell high-sugar corn of the SE variety because it's easier to grow; those who ship to the more distant markets lean toward the supersweet varieties to meet the competition.

The seed count is about 2,500 to 3,500 a pound for regular sweet corn. The count of the shrunken gene types is considerably higher.

Andy and Tannie Daniels are successful sweet corn growers at Route 4, Box 73, Columbus, NE 68601. Their story is reported in the Successful Farming magazine's publication, ADAPT 3, 1991. (P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50309-3023, at $12.50. 515-284-2852)

The Daniels note that roadside stand work is hard, the season is not long, and the returns may grow slowly. To pick corn at the peak time, they usually pay high schoolers or others the minimum wage.

Roadside prices for sweet corn vary widely. Discounts for quantity are urged. The freshness increases the value (price) over grocery store pricing. Don't undercut grocery stores. The Daniels also advise adding other vegetables, such as tomatoes and cantaloup, after establishing a customer base.

They recommend SE varieties over the others for reasons noted above, plus disease control. The sweeter the variety, the more susceptible it is to disease, usually. The Daniels say plant early, with not too many varieties so as to avoid confusing customers.

Growers should check with the county agriculture Extension agent to learn the best planting dates, varieties recommended locally, and disease and pest control methods that reduce or eliminate chemicals.

The supersweets are just as good for freezing as the others. There are many varieties. Every catalog will have some.

Other marketing details have been emphasized in previous factsheets and are in the ADAPT books and not repeated here. It needs repeating, however, that entrepreneurs not wishing to waste money should determine an exact and committed market before they buy or plant any seed.

Popcorn

Popcorns are generally either pearl or rice types. Pearls have smooth, rounded crowns, while rice types are pointed. Color varies. Heating the kernel turns the moisture inside the soft starch in the center into explosive steam that can turn the kernel inside out. The greater the expansion, the higher the quality. Moisture content should be 13.5 to 14 percent for best results. Varieties differ as to quality, which also includes flavor, tenderness, absence of hulls, color, and shape.

Shape can vary from mushroom-spherical to butterfly. The confection industry usually prefers the spherical—easier to coat with flavors or syrups. The butterfly-shaped popcorn has a better "mouth feel" and is preferred for on-premises sales, as in theaters.

For more information, contact the Popcorn Institute, 401 N. Michigan Ave., Chicago, IL 60611. (312-644-6610)

Hi-Lysine Corn

Corn is a major staple in many underdeveloped countries. As dent corn is a relatively poor source of protein, many consumers have to supplement their diets with other protein sources like beans.

Most of the protein in corn is zein, which cannot be efficiently digested by humans and other nonruminant (single stomached) animals like pigs and chickens. Zein exists at the expense of lysine and tryptophan, which tend to be very low in dent corn. Lysine and tryptophan, two of eight essential amino acids that nonruminants can't synthesize on their own, must be obtained from food they eat.

In 1963, scientists at Purdue University found that the corn strains containing opaque-2 (O2) genes contained lesser amounts of zein and greater amounts of lysine and tryptophan in their endosperms than dent corn. Opaque-2 kernels, however, appear dull and tend to have soft textures and very little hard endosperm. It makes them difficult to harvest and subject to attack by various pests. Opaque-2 varieties also tend to have lower yields and must be isolated from other corns to retain protein quality. For more information, contact Crow's Hybrid Corn Co., P.O. Box 306, Milford, IL 60953. (815-889-4151)

High-Oil Corn

The highly polyunsaturated and high linoleic acid content of corn oil makes it an excellent energy and essential fatty acid source for both humans and livestock. Livestock feeders may be interested in varieties with greater oil contents. Such varieties have more calories, bringing greater gains per feed unit.

Most hybrid dent corns will average between 3.5 and 6.0 percent oil. Varieties with oil contents greater than 6.0 percent tend to have lower yields.

Oil quality is dependent on the amounts of unsaturated and saturated fatty acids it contains. Oils high in linoleic acid and low in oleic, palmitic, and stearic acids are preferred for human diets. For information on breeding high-oil corn, contact John Dudley, Agronomy Department, S-112 Turner Hall, 1102 South Goodwin Avenue, University of Illinois, Urbana, IL 61801. (217-333-9640)

Waxy Endosperm Corns

Waxy endosperm hybrids contain 100 percent amylopectin starch; the normal dent corn ratio is 72 percent amylopectin and 28 percent amylose. The waxy (wx) mutant was found in China in 1909 but was not fully developed until 1936 when researchers from Iowa State University noted its unique properties and started developing hybrids.

Steers make better gains when fed waxy endosperm corn rather than dent corn. The stability and clarity of amylopectin starch make it highly suitable as a food thickener. For more information on food processing aspects, contact Edith Munro, Corn Refiners Association, 1100 Connecticut Avenue NW., Suite 1120, Washington, DC 20036. (202-331-1634)

Blue Corn

Atole, tortillas, corn chips, and other corn products have been the backbone of most traditional and present-day Native American and Mexican American cuisines. Blue corn and other flour corns historically represented the major kernel type of corn ground into "harinas" (flour and meals) in the American Southwest. But dent corns, both white and yellow, now dominate the market. However, the blue corns are finding new market outlets.

Although Pueblo tribes have historically grown many different colored corns, blue corn is one of the most important, both as food and for religious purposes.

Unlike most commercial yellow hybrid dent corns that can yield 8,000 to 10,000 pounds of grain per acre, blue corn is open-pollinated and characterized by relatively low yields of 1,000 to 4,000 pounds per acre. It also tends to lodge, making machine harvest somewhat difficult.

Blue corn has a coarser, sweeter, and nuttier taste than other corns grown for flour or meal. Its grainier consistency results in a somewhat denser tortilla than those made from white or yellow corn flour.

Research of the New Mexico Cooperative Extension Service found blue corn, like Opaque-2 corn, higher in lysine than either white or yellow dent corn varieties used in tortillas. Most blue corn varieties were also found to be high in iron and zinc.

Blue corn flours and meals have traditionally been used in making tortillas and corn chips. Native American products less well known include piki or paper bread, chaqueque (similar to corn meal mush), atole (corn meal drink), and nixtamal or lime hominy used in making stews.

Newer products include pancake and muffin mixes and corn flakes. For more information, contact George Dickerson, New Mexico Cooperative Extension Service, address below. (505-275-2576) Seed source: Rose Seed Company, San Jon, NM 88434. (505-576-2241)

Corn Cob Corns

Although most corn grown in the United States is for grain or silage, at least one hybrid variety is grown for making corn cob pipes. Cobs should be at best 1 1/2 inch in diameter and long enough to make at least two bowls (2 inches each). The diameter of the cob should be relatively uniform.

Cobs should be woody and sufficiently hard to keep smoking tobacco from burning through the bowl. For more information, contact Harry Minor, the Agronomy Department, Extension Service, Waters Hall, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO 65211. (314-882-2001)

Prepared by George Dickerson, Extension Horticulture Specialist, New Mexico Cooperative Extension Service, 9301 Indian School Rd. NE, Suite 201, Albuquerque, NM 87112, and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Cooperative State Research Service, USDA, Room 328-A, Aerospace Building, Washington, DC 20250-2200. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

June 1992

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Specialty Flowers

Flowers provide an allure that has been used by man to transcend the seasons and evoke emotion. Dried or fresh, certain specialty flowers can stimulate not only the eyes but also the sense of taste or smell, empowering new marketing opportunities for small-scale enterprisers.

Such flowers can be marketed fresh, dried, sugarcoated, in bulk, as singles, or by the pound, ounce, or sometimes gram. This exciting market, although subject to whims of designers, chefs, or fashion, continues to grow to meet demands.

For small-scale operators, recognizing unique marketing opportunities provides an entry into this competitive marketplace. Once there, an ability to provide consistent, dependable service with high-quality products can provide sustainable income. Growers of specialty flowers service specific needs in the floral industry. These spinoffs include rare cut flowers, edible flowers for garnishes or salads, potpourri mixes, and medicinals.

All must meet consumer expectations that are often reflected in production, packaging, and presentation. Examples of new products can be suggested by articles in national magazines such as *Gourmet, Bon Appetit,* or *Food and Wine.* Small-scale entrepreneurs should become acquainted with members of the local chefs' association or state restaurant association.

Read Trade Journals

One management tool taught at the Small-Scale Agriculture Program at the University of Maryland Eastern Shore (Princess Anne, MD 21853) is that the grower must become aware of the customers' competitive environment. Products may be anticipated by reading the customers' trade journals. Specialty products, such as flower garnishes, mixes, or specialty packaging, focus attention on customers' operations and expand and strengthen a market base. Stan and Susan Devoto of Sebastopol, California, learned at a local farmers' market how specialty flowers could be a marketing aid. In *The Furrow* (John Deere, 1400 13th Street, East Moline, IL 61244-1493), they explain how 15 different varieties of edible flowers were mixed in ready-to-eat salads. "You need something different to get noticed," Susan said.

Susan used the edible flowers to catch eyes and open the way for their other produce at the local farmers' market.

Gourmet Chefs Pay Heed

The many flowers that can be packaged for gourmet chefs and discerning grocery shoppers include old favorites like calendula, chrysanthemum, dianthus, dandelion, geranium, hibiscus, lily, nasturtium, pansy, rose, and blue violets. Others include certain herb flowers like mint, sage, basil, and bergamot and even vegetable flowers such as pumpkin, okra, and squash. Many are outlined in Claire Clifton's "Edible Flowers," 1984. (McGraw-Hill Publishing Co., P.O. Box 400, Highstown, NJ 08520/$10.95) Flowers are harvested early in the day and kept moist at refrigeration temperatures.

Wholesale packs of pansy blossoms protected with shrink-wrap plastics retailed for $17 per hundred at the 1988 Mid-Atlantic Food Exhibition. Other presentations are discussed in "Specialty Food Packaging Design," Association for the Specialty Food Trade, 1989. (PBC International Inc., 1 School St., Glen Cove, NY 11542/$59)

Production techniques found in James Crockett's "Crockett's Flower Garden," 1981 (out of print but may be found in some libraries), are restricted to organic practices, without pesticides. Production and variety selection are affected by planting schedules, species selection, and chefs' tastes.

Farmer David Aydelotte of Salisbury, Maryland, explains, "Chefs using my field-grown mint flowers and herb flowers are constantly looking for new garnishes. That is the real challenge, to keep them interested in what I'm producing.

"Many chefs are looking for a social event, a story that goes with the food," Aydelotte says. "Sequence plantings every two to four weeks are used to maintain production of annual flowers. Many are affected by day length and temperature but growers use fertilization and watering to lengthen the flowering periods."

Presentations can be developed from books such as:

- "Cooking with Flowers," by Jenny Leggatt, 1987. (Out of print; consult your local library.)
- "Cooking from the Garden," by Rosalind Creasy, 1988. (Sierra Club Books, 730 Polk St., San Francisco, CA 94109/$35)
- "The Forgotten Art of Flower Cookery," by Leona Smith, 1985. (Pelican Publishing Co., Inc., 1101 Monroe St., Gretna, LA 70053/$14.95)
- "Gourmet Bouquet," by Julia Weinberg, 1977. (New Win Publishing, Inc., P.O. Box 5159, Clinton, NJ 08809/$10.95)

Candied Flowers

Reviving the Victorian technique of candying flowers generated a marketing opportunity for Jo and Rob Pendergraph of Midlothian, Virginia. As Jo explained in the *Delmarva Farmer* newspaper, each petal is painted with egg white and sprinkled with granulated sugar. After the sugar has crystalized, flowers are stored in air-tight containers. The candied flowers sell for $45 per hundred at a major department store in New York City.

Edible flowers to brighten up custom salad mixes include chives, nasturtiums, pansies, and bergamot. "Most chefs are

paying $9 per dozen for edible flowers flown in from California," Pendergraph adds.

Competition Fierce

The competition is even fiercer in the dried flower market. This is where volume growers can stockpile quantities and provide a stiff marketing challenge. Producers listed in the "1990 Organic Wholesalers Directory/ Yearbook," published by California Action Network (P.O. Box 464, Davis, CA 95617; $25), can often suggest trends for your area.

Carol Kopolow, reference librarian at the U.S. Department of Agriculture's National Agricultural Library (NAL), has prepared listings of journal articles, books, and associations providing information on "Marketing of Floricultural Products in the United States," "Agri-Topics on Dried Flowers," and "Agri-Topics on Cut Flowers: Production and Marketing."
To request copies, write to USDA/NAL, Reference Branch, Room 111, Beltsville, MD 20705 and enclose a self-addressed gummed label.

Current production practices of both wild-gathered and commercially grown flowers are discussed in the 207-page proceedings of the "Commercial Field Production of Cut and Dried Flowers Symposium," hosted by the American Society for Horticultural Science and the Center for Alternative Crops and Products. Presentations covered marketing, economics, production, and handling of dried and fresh cut flowers and decorative plants. (The book costs $20 per copy, from Nancy Breneman, Extension Special Programs, 405 Coffey Hall, 1420 Eckles Avenue, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN 55108.)

In *The Business of Herbs,* Paula Oliver (Ed.) focuses on the potpourri market blends and supplies. Including both herbs and flowers, this publication provides classified ads for both buyers and sellers. (Northwind Farm Publications, Route 2, Box 246, Shevlin, MN 56676/ six issues per year/$20) Sample ingredients are outlined in Clarence Meyer's "Potpourri and Incense Recipes," 1986. (Meyerbooks, P.O. Box 427, Glenwood, IL 60425/ $3.95)

Information on producing dried flowers can be found in Hiller, Malcolm, and Hilton's "The Complete Book of Dried Flowers," 1987 (Simon and Schuster, Inc., 200 Old Tappan Road, Old Tappan, NJ 07675/$22.95 plus State sales tax); and similar books found in regional libraries.

"Spend about a year doing research. I think that is very important for anyone getting into any type of business, including specialty cut flowers and bedding plants," grower Brian McCreight explained at a Delaware horticultural exposition. "Experimentation is part of the learning process, and we usually try 10 to 15 new varieties of flowers every year.There are two 'musts' if you grow flowers outdoors. Facilities for cooling are essential, and so is irrigation."

The Association of Specialty Cut Flower Growers (ASCFG, 155 Elm St., Oberlin, OH 44074; annual membership: $55) was recently established by growers and educators across the country to improve the industry through conferences, information, research, and education. Judy Laushman, executive director, distributes "Gatherings-The Cut Flower Quarterly," the association's newsletter. Regional directors, such as Leonard Perry for the Northeast Region (University of Vermont, Plant And Soil Science Department, Hills Building, Burlington, VT 05405-0082), help coordinate Extension and research information.

Another Major Problem

One major problem domestic growers face is importation of floral products. Despite such intense competition, some established growers, such as Kitayama Brothers (Watsonville, California), have not only survived but thrived. Kitayama Brothers expanded over 50 percent with new production greenhouses from 1986 to 1989.

Demand is good for mainstream cut-flower species such as snapdragons, lilies, alstroemeria, irises, and delphiniums. But any new production volume can depress prices.

In *The Furrow* magazine (June 1989), Kee Kitayama adds, "A few acres of any cut-flower crop can flood the market. We try to grow not only ones that we hope will be in short supply but ones that also will be profitable."

Recognizing trends and gaining production experience become necessary tools in this industry. Information appears in marketing publications, such as:

- "Floral Marketing Directory and Buyer's Guide," Floral Marketing Division, Produce Marketing Association, P.O. Box 6036, Newark, DE 19714-6036 ($25 a copy for members, $50 for nonmembers).
- *Florist* (12 issues a year/$24), *Trends* (once a year/$7.50), and "Florist Buyer's Directory" ($4 a copy), Florist Transworld Delivery Association, P.O. Box 2227, Southfield, MI 48037."
- *Flowers &,* Teleflora Inc, Teleflora Plaza, Suite 260, 12233 West Olympic Blvd., Los Angeles, CA 90064 (12 issues per year/ $28).

Growing expertise, innovative technologies, and production supplies can be found in industry publications such as:

- *The Flower Market,* going to 20,000 floral-related businesses (growers, grocery chains, wholesalers, retailers, and trade suppliers), 780 North Fourth St., San Jose, CA 95112 (12 issues a year/$15).
- *Nursery Manager* or *Greenhouse Manager*, Branch-Smith Publishing, 120 St. Louis Avenue, Fort Worth, TX 76104 (each: 12 issues per year/$24).
- *Greenhouse Grower,* Meister Publishing Co., 37733 Euclid Ave., Willoughby, OH 44094 (14 issues per year/$25).

Other information sources can also be found in the "Directory of Small-Scale Agriculture." (Order No. 001-000-04539-3, Superintendent of Documents, United States Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402/$5.50 per copy)

Prepared by Thomas S. Handwerker, Small Farms Research Leader at the University of Maryland-Eastern Shore, and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service, Room 342-D, Aerospace Building, USDA, Washington, DC 20250-2200. (Telephone: 202-447-3640 or Fax: 202-475-3179)

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Specialty Mushrooms

If you enjoy cultivating the unusual, specialty mushrooms offer many possibilities. The term "specialty" refers to any mushroom, except the white button mushroom commonly found in supermarkets. Specialty mushrooms include shiitake, oyster, enoki, wine cap, maitake, and pompom among many others. Selling large quantities of any of these mushrooms may be a challenge unless you are near a large ethnic population (e.g., Asian American) that has enjoyed these delicacies for centuries. Smaller quantities can be sold locally in farmer's markets as part of a pick-your-own fruit and vegetable operation, to gourmet restaurants, to health food stores and to local grocery stores. While production of the common button mushroom is a possibility, it is already widely available in grocery stores, and new growers will be competing with large-scale producers in established markets. However, small-scale cultivation of specialty mushrooms could be a profitable addition to a farming enterprise.

About Mushrooms

A mushroom is neither a plant nor an animal, but has properties of each. Modern taxonomists give the fungi, including all mushrooms, a kingdom all their own. Most mushrooms have a "common" name and a "scientific" name. The latter identifies the genus, species, and sometimes the variety of mushroom for the experts. This eliminates confusion since one common name can apply to several different species. Scientific names usually appear in italics with the genus capitalized.

Like plants, mushrooms begin with a "seed," which is actually a microscopic spore. The gills or pores beneath the cap of a parent mushroom produce spores and a single mushroom produces thousands. The wind can easily transport a spore until it comes to rest in a suitable environment and then germinates and grows into a mat of root-like filaments called hyphae. The mat of hyphae is called the mushroom's mycelia. Unlike plants, this outgrowth of a single spore cannot produce a mushroom. Instead, like animals, a sexual union is necessary. In mushrooms, that union occurs when a hyphae from one spore contacts a hyphae of a compatible spore. After joining, the mycelia is capable of producing mushrooms, the fruit of the fungi.

Mushroom cultivators typically use already-growing mycelia called spawn, rather than growing their mushrooms from spores. The spawn can be purchased from several sources or produced in-house on grain. When the spawn is ready to use, each grain kernel has enough living mycelia to begin mushroom growth when introduced to the growing medium or "substrate."

Environmental conditions are the key to cultivating mushrooms. The hyphae may not grow if the substrate is not correct. If nutrients are not sufficient or the weather is not appropriate, healthy mycelia may not bear fruit. Some mushrooms will produce fruit under a wide range of conditions while others are very specific in their needs. Some even require a symbiotic relationship with specific tree species before they will fruit. Mushroom cultivators must understand the requirements of the species they want to grow. After identifying environmental needs, the grower determines whether to grow a particular species outdoors or in a controlled environment. Typically, investments in climate- controlled rooms will be much greater than investments in outdoor growing space. Mycologists are regularly discovering ways to cultivate new species. Let's look at the attributes of a few specialty mushrooms and their requirements.

Shiitake *(Lentinula edodes)*

Shiitake mushrooms are very popular in Japan. American production of shiitake has increased faster than any other specialty mushroom. Until recently, worldwide production of shiitake was second only to the common button mushroom. Shiitake grow best with certain hardwood species, especially ironwood and oak. Other substrates with a corncob or straw base and several additives can produce shiitake, but have not proven as good a substrate as the hardwood species. Depending upon the climate, shiitake may grow on logs outdoors. Indoor growers typically use a substrate composed of sawdust and several additives. Current wholesale market prices for shiitake range from $3.50 to $8 per pound, depending upon quality and size. Growers typically get from $4 to $6 per pound for their best mushrooms.

Oyster *(Pleuratus spp.)*

There are several species of oyster mushrooms that are widely cultivated internationally. Major production increases in China recently moved the oyster mushroom to second place in terms of worldwide production. Some of the more common species include the Indian oyster, tree oyster, golden oyster, pink oyster, and the abalone mushroom.

Unlike the shiitake mushroom, oyster mushrooms grow prolifically on a variety of substrates including most hardwoods, paper, cereal straws, coffee grounds, corncobs and sugarcane bagasse, among many others. If you have an agricultural or wood waste product in your area, you can probably find a variety of oyster mushrooms that will grow on it.

Oysters are most commonly grown indoors in specially constructed growing rooms, which sustain the necessary climatic conditions. They need high humidity and warm, not hot, temperatures. Many growers convert existing barns, stables or sheds, or buy an inexpensive greenhouse that can be insulated. Humidity is provided via misters or commercial-scale humidifiers. Heating comes from whatever inexpensive source is readily available. Most mushrooms, including oysters, require light during their life cycle and daylight fluorescent bulbs seem to work well.

Other mushrooms require a sterilized substrate. A boiler and an autoclave large enough to sterilize commercial quantities of substrate are quite expensive. Oyster mushrooms are so prolific that the mycelia outgrows most contaminants. Thus, pasteurization is generally sufficient. For a chopped straw substrate, pasteurization can be accomplished in a hot (160o F) water bath for a couple of hours. After cooling, the spawn is mixed with

aw. One technique for growing oysters lastic bags from a roll of tubing usually 8 ıches in diameter. The grower cuts a of tubing, ties a knot in one end and he inoculated straw into the bag. When s nearly full, a knot is tied in the other d the bag is hung in the growing room. are punched in the bag to allow the a to breathe and to provide a place for ıshrooms to pop out.

ster mushrooms have several advan- and only a few drawbacks. They are easy v using agricultural waste as a substrate. v is used as a substrate, the remaining osted material can be used as a feed for or hogs or as a soil amendment after the ooms are harvested. On the cautionary ıysters produce numerous spores which allergies in many people. Usually a ıtor is required for lengthy stays in the ıg room. Marketing opportunities may be l since oysters have a relatively short fe of approximately 1 week. Finally, they t mushroom gnats more than most other ıs. Current wholesale prices range from $4 per pound.

Stropharia or Wine Cap
ıharia rugoso-annulata)

ıushroom is good for outdoor growing. It asily cultivated in a shady bed of d chips and/or straw. Some garden- e beds in cold frames to produce crops summer to fall. These mushrooms grow ormous size, weighing 5 pounds or more. tunately, these huge specimens are y filled with fly larvae and unsuitable for n consumption. However, the larvae- ed mushrooms do make great fishfood! ıusly, the younger mushrooms are the d edible for people.

ıce these mushrooms have not been commercialized, there is no established t. However, there is the opportunity to ine stropharia with other products of a farm for sale at a farmer's market or able stand. Expect prices in the $5 per d range. They also have the advantage of ıg your waste woodchips or sawdust into compost while providing mushrooms for al years.

gy Mane *(Coprinus comatus)*

haggy mane is not typically produced on ımercial basis as it becomes an undesir- s of black ink within a few hours of g if it is not cooked immediately. Inclusion in a pick-your-own operation may be profitable if customers are carefully taught how to handle this species.

The main advantage is that it is easy to grow and you may already have some growing wild on your farm. It even shows up as a contaminant for growers of other mushrooms, like the oysters. To encourage its growth, you need only inoculate a bed made up of a soil/sawdust, manure/sawdust, or straw/manure mixture and keep it wet. Research from China indicates that this mushroom may suppress the growth of certain types of cancers.

Maitake *(Grifola frondosa)*

The maitake—or hen-of-the-wood—is different. It comes from a group called the polypores. Rather than distinct individuals, this mushroom produces a large clump of interwoven "leaves." It grows wild on dead or dying hardwood trees or stumps in the Northeastern and Mid-Atlantic States. Growth can be induced by inoculating a suitable log or stump with its mycelia. An advantage is that the Maitake can recycle old stumps into forest soil. The major disadvantage is the 3 years it may take to produce any fruit.

More Information

This factsheet only hints at the possibilities of growing specialty mushrooms. You may already have delicious species, like some of those mentioned above or common meadow mushrooms or even giant horse mushrooms, already growing on your farm. The details needed for cultivation have not previously been well understood or easily available to the public. Continuing experimentation has led to more accessible information. In addition to the publications that specifically address shiitake cultivation, as noted in the factsheet entitled Shiitake Mushrooms from the Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), the following selections may be helpful:

For a quick overview of several species:
Organic Gardening Magazine - November 1993

For a more detailed discussion on growing many mushroom species outdoors:
"Mushrooms in the Garden" by Hellmut Steineck. A 152-page book published by Mad River Press. ISBN: 3-8001-6122-2.

For details on both outdoor and indoor cultivation:
"The Mushroom Cultivator - A Practical Guide to Growing Mushrooms at Home," by Paul Stamets and J.S. Chilton. A 415-page book published by Agarikon Press.
ISBN: 0-9610798-0-0.

For more details on more species:
"Growing Gourmet and Medicinal Mushrooms," by Paul Stamets. A 552-page book published by Ten Speed Press.
ISBN: 089815-608-4.

For a comprehensive mushroom guide with over 1,000 color photographs:
"Mushrooms of North America," by Roger Phillips. A 319-page book published by Little, Brown and Company. ISBN: 0-316-70612-4.

For a monthly update on prices, marketing information, and production techniques:
The Mushroom Growers' Newsletter
P.O. Box 5065
Klamath Falls, OR 97601

Published monthly, 6 - 8 pages, $24 annually.

By Jerry Haugen, P.O. Box 5065, Klamath Falls, OR 97601; George B. Holcomb (Retired), Office of Communications, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at (202) 720-5881 (voice) or (202) 720-7808 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

July 1994

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1994 300-100/00161

ited States
partment of
culture

operative State
search Service

ice for
all-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Specialty Potatoes

e potato, one of the most important food ps, came under cultivation by South erican "Indians" more than 2,000 years . Potatoes, of which there are hundreds of ieties in every shape, size, and color, were ried to Europe around 1500. From Europe y were introduced into the British Colonies North America.

In 1992, the potato is one of several food ps featured in the Smithsonian Institution's tional Museum of Natural History's ibition "Seeds of Change," commemorat- the 500th anniversary of Columbus' first yage. For many years, the potato had its n Potato Museum, in Washington, D.C. so see *The Incredible Potato*, *National ographic Magazine*, May 1982.)

Interest is increasing in the yellow-fleshed d other uncommon varieties—specialty tatoes. Yellow-fleshed potatoes are the rule her than the exception in most countries. e specialty potatoes available in the d States for many years were long sidered of little commercial value. Now, wever, with increased consumer demand, mestic potato breeders have begun to ease some excellent yellow-fleshed rieties.

In Washington State, nearly 200 specialty tato varieties and clones have been tested; me varieties appear with pink or purple flesh d skin colors ranging from buff to red. Many ve given yields greater than 'Russet rbank.' Erik J. Sorensen, Washington State iversity Cooperative Extension, Franklin unty Courthouse, Pasco WA 99301, has sults from test trials.

With per capita fresh potato consumption atic or declining, the variety offered by ecialty potatoes can add to sales. Despite rdles, they have a bright future but will never mpletely replace the traditional white- shed, russet type.

imate, Soils, and Water

though classified as a cool-season crop, mmercial acreage can be found in all 50 ates, with Idaho, Washington, Oregon, aine, Wisconsin, California, and North akota leading. Soil temperatures should be etween 45 and 70 degrees F at planting time. ting into cold soils delays emergence and ases the risk of seed piece decay. Although rainfall often suffices, irrigation ay produce highest yields. Potatoes need 18 30 inches of water to mature. Potatoes are shallow rooted, with most roots being in the upper foot of soil.

Potatoes are sensitive to water stress. Well-drained, light textured soils, such as sandy loams or loamy sands, generally produce the highest quality potatoes.

Good-Quality Seed

Potatoes are vunerable to several diseases, including blackleg, bacterial ring rot, and viruses, which can be transmitted in infected seed. To avoid such problems, certified potato seed is recommended. Not guaranteed to be disease free, potatoes certified by State agencies have shown no more than an allowable tolerance level for disease symptoms. For certain diseases, such as ring rot, the tolerance level is zero. To be certified, seed lots must be inspected in the field during the growing season AND in storage or at shipment.

Addresses of State and Provincial certification offices which list certified growers may be obtained from the publisher of this factsheet.

A number of mail order companies also offer limited quantities of specialty potato seed. Among these are some run by innovative potato growers: Will Bonsall, Scatterseed Project, Box 1167, Farmington, ME 04938; David Ronninger, Ronninger's Seed Potatoes, Star Route 1, Moyie Springs, ID 83845 (both curators for Seed Savers).

Planting and Cultivation

In much of this country, potato seed pieces are planted 3 to 4 inches deep. But where soil moisture may be limited, seed pieces are planted an inch deeper. The amount of seed required varies according to seed piece size and plant spacing. A spacing of 9 to 12 inches between plants is common. Wider spacings often result in oversized tubers.

Cut seed is widely used, but whole seed is less sensitive to tuber decay. Cut seed pieces should be 2 to 2 1/2 ounces in weight, firm, and with at least one eye.

After planting, potatoes may be cultivated to help control weeds and to reshape beds. It is common to hill potato plants when they are 8 to 12 inches tall: Soil is mounded to a height of 2 to 3 inches around the plant base. Some varieties, such as 'Yukon Gold,' set tubers high in the bed. Hilling helps maintain suitable soil cover to prevent greening or sunburning of tubers.

Pest Control

The potato is vulnerable to pests. In addition to using certified seed, growers need many strategies to minimize insect and disease problems. Strategies include proper soil fertility and water management, crop rotation, sanitation, and the use of resistant varieties.

Harvesting and Storage

Time of harvest varies according to variety and intended market. Potatoes may be harvested with vines still green and tubers comparatively immature. Such potatoes are generally intended for immediate use as "new potatoes." Most potatoes, however, are harvested at full maturity. Indicators of maturity are tuber size, skin set, and death of the vine. Mature tubers store better than immature tubers and resist bruising better.

Many varieties of specialty potatoes, such as 'Michigold,' 'Donna,' and 'Yukon Gold,' produce a high percentage of A-size tubers—generally the most desirable size.

'Yellow Finn,' however, is an exception. The market prefers smaller sized tubers of this particular variety. With red-skinned varieties, the small C size demands the highest price. Many restaurants also prefer small potatoes.

Potatoes store best at 40 to 50 degrees F, with adequate ventilation and relative humidity at 90 percent. It is important to exclude light to prevent greening. Only sound potatoes should be put into storage.

Varieties

The dark-yellow flesh of 'Yellow Finn' has become something of a standard. By comparison, 'Yukon Gold' flesh is relatively light-yellow. Many European varieties also have light-yellow flesh.

'All Blue' is oblong with purple skin and purple flesh. Sometimes called 'Purple Marker,' its striking appearance led to its use as a marker for the ends of potato plots. It can be baked or boiled and retains the purple flesh color even after cooking. 'Purple Viking' has purple skin with red stripes.

Varieties with commercial potential: Yellow-fleshed with buff or yellow skin: 'Delta Gold,' 'Donna,' 'Michigold,' and 'Saginaw Gold.' Yellow-fleshed with red or pink skin: 'Desiree,' 'Iditared,' 'Red Gold,' and 'Rose Gold.' Yellow-fleshed with purple skin: 'Brigus.' And small-sized or fingerling potatoes: 'Banana' and 'Ruby Crescent.'

od descriptions of potato varieties are in
ıt-of-print books often found in
ity libraries: **"Description of and Key
rican Potato Varieties,"** C.F. Clark
M. Lombard, USDA Circular No. 741,
April 1946 (Revised November 1951)
lorth American Potato Varieties," H.M.
ɡ, 1959 Potato Handbook, Potato
es Issue, Potato Association of America

ting

ting presents a challenge but the potato
miliar crop and most consumers are
to try colorful varieties. To successfully
t specialty potatoes, farmers need to
vith those who sell and promote
ıbles.
ecialty potatoes have received national
on through articles in produce trade
ls and the popular press. Supermarket
have featured yellow- fleshed potatoes.
ry's Supermarket in Seattle, a 4th of July
ıtion featured red, white, and blue
ıes. Without such efforts it is difficult to
specialty items beyond local markets
to the produce mainstream.
ality is of paramount importance to
t acceptance. For the fresh market,
rance strongly influences sales. Color,
hape, and defects shape consumers'
ıpression of quality. Texture, flavor, and
value are less obvious, but still
t quality components, affecting first
le but greatly influencing subsequent

ıny restaurants feature specialty
ıes. Often customers who first tried
n a restaurant purchased them later in
narkets. Some brokers and others who
ınd ship fresh produce concentrate on
ılty potatoes.
ırketing specialty potatoes is compli-
by the fact that most potatoes are not
y variety name. Some specialty
ıes have characteristics that lend
elves to product differentiation. 'Yellow
ıas a characteristic flattened shape and
eyes. 'Yukon Gold' is distinguished by
ık coloration around its eyes. Packaging
so be important to market success.
hat display the variety name along with
ıg or nutritional information are useful.
llow-fleshed varieties have already been
hat can be used for either fresh market
cessing. 'Saginaw Gold' produces a
vith good color and taste. Purple or pink
chips and yellow french fries are among
ilities for processed specialty potatoes.
ıg beyond local markets, specialty
ıes and potato products may also have
ial for export.
market for specialty potatoes is limited
production is a real danger. Growers
ed to develop a market before trying
ops--and then only on a limited
ge.

Cooking Quality and Nutrition

Fresh potatoes contain about 80 percent water. Solids, or dry matter, is highly correlated with texture. A mealy texture is associated with high solids, a waxy texture with low solids. Although individual tastes vary, varieties such as 'Michigold' have a mealy texture usually considered best for baking or french-frying. Varieties such as 'Red Gold,' with a waxy texture, are more often used for boiling or in salads.

Potatoes are an excellent source of carbohydrates and contain valuable amounts of protein, minerals, and vitamins. Nutrient levels vary not only by variety but also according to the maturity of the crop and storage time. Nutritive content can be used to market specialty potatoes. It appears that the darker the yellow flesh color, the higher the level of vitamin A.

For More Information

In addition to the U.S. Department of Agriculture, State universities and county Cooperative Extension personnel can provide useful information on local production methods and marketing practices. PAA (Dr. David Curwen, Secretary, University of Wisconsin, Hancock Ag Research Station, Hancock WI 54943) publishes a Potato Extension Specialists Directory that lists University faculty members in 46 States and the District of Columbia. PAA also has an annual meeting and publishes "The American Potato Journal," a monthly. (Contact Linda Best, Membership Secretary, PAA, 8 Holmes Hall, University of Maine, Orono ME 04469-0163.)

Many potato production educational programs are sponsored by the Cooperative Extension System. In Washington, the Washington State Potato Conference and Trade Fair is held each year. Similar programs exist in Idaho, Maine, Michigan, Nebraska, and Oregon. Potatoes are included in numerous other conferences.

Other Information Sources

There are many excellent publications:

- *"Delta Golds...Consumer Response to Yellow Fleshed Potatoes*, Applied Market Research Report #2." Agriculture and Resource Economics, 206 Winslow Hall, Univerisity of Maine, Orono, ME 04469.
- *"Potato Handbook."* Agricultural Communications Center, 111 Ag Sciences Building, University of Idaho, Moscow, ID 83843.
- *"Potato Growers Handbook."* Washington State Potato Commission, 108 East Interlake Road, Moses Lake, WA 98823.
- *"Potato Varieties - An introduction to variety characteristics, management and performance in the Klamath Basin.".* University of California Tulelake Field Station, P.O. Box 447, Tulelake, CA 96134.
- *"North American Potato Varieties."* Potato Association of America, 8 Holmes Hall, University of Maine, Orono, ME 04469-0132.
- *"Selecting Potato Varieties for Michigan."* Michigan State University, Bulletin Office, P.O. Box 231, East Lansing, MI 48823-0231.
- *"Integrated Pest Management for Potatoes in the Western United States,"* Publication 3316. Agricultural Sciences Publications, Division of Agricultural Sciences, University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720.
- *"Compendium of Potato Diseases,"* American Phytopathological Society, 3340 Pilot Knob Road, St. Paul, MN 55121.
- *"A Guide to Monitoring Potato Pests in New York State, 102 IPM 107."* Cornell Cooperative Extension, Research Center, 7 Business and Technology Park, Ithaca, NY 14850.
- *"Potato Diseases, Agriculture Handbook No. 474,"* Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

A computer software program, *Potato Crop Management*, is available from the University of Wisconsin, WISPLAN Computing, 302 Hiram Smith Hall, 1545 Observatory Drive, Madison, WI 53706.

Prepared by Erik J. Sorensen of the Washington State University Cooperative Extension and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address:

Cooperative State Research Service, USDA,
Room 342-D, Aerospace Building,
Washington, DC 20250-2200.
Telephone: 202-401-4640
Fax: 202-401-5179

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

January 1992

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Specialty Vegetables

There is a growing demand for Latin and other 'ethnic' vegetables in most of the larger cities such as Chicago, Miami, and New York. To supply customers' needs for such specialty items, many major chain stores across the country are turning to specialist marketers, many of whose suppliers are small-scale growers.

Specialty vegetables being introduced or reintroduced by immigrants from the Pacific Basin, Africa, Latin America, the Caribbean, and even Europe include amaranth, arrowroot (Chinese potato), cipolines, daikon, donqua, elephant garlic, fava bean, fiddlehead green, gil choy, Japanese eggplant, jicama, manzano banana, moqua, napa, taro root, tomatillo, and yuca (also known as sweet cassava). Even the native watercress is enjoying newfound popularity. Many such vegetables are described in a book, *Windows of Opportunity: The Market for Specialties and Organics*, ($25), by Nancy Lee Bentley, marketing consultant at The Food Circle, P.O. Box 62, Cabery, IL 60919. (One fresh produce item likely to capture consumers' fancy is the miniature watermelon, to be discussed in more detail in a fact sheet on fruits.)

Things to Consider

Above all, a small-scale entrepreneur interested in growing specialty vegetables must be cautious, advises Frieda Caplan. She is an ace California-based national-chain marketer of specialty produce for nearly 30 years. Her successes include Jerusalem artichokes (marketed under the name she coined, "sunchokes") and many other specialty vegetables. She gets as many as 50 phone calls a week from potential vegetable or fruit growers asking how to get started.

Frieda, as she is known in the trade, tells callers first to check with an expert, such as a Cooperative Extension Agent or Soil Conservation Service soil specialist with the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), to learn what vegetables their soil can grow best. Next, from a seed company, "find out what's new and available." Then she suggests they contact her to learn whether she can market what they plan to grow. (Her address: Frieda's Finest Produce Specialties, Inc., P.O. Box 58488, Los Angeles, CA 90058).

Chances are, if an item is really new, she will advise them to grow only a few rows, just to try it out. She cautions growers about making certain before contracting that they have packing and shipping arrangements worked out. "It's up to the grower to arrange transportation," she points out.

Vegetables have to be packed according to standards; and growers must have arrangements to precool the vegetables for shipment. Failure to have all the links in the chain from soil to market can doom an enterprise.

To help growers, shippers, carriers, and receivers learn the standards and to reduce postharvest losses and expand the markets for highly perishable, high-value vegetables (and fruits), the Export Services Branch of USDA's Office of Transportation (410 McGregor Building, Washington, DC 20250-4500) has a *Tropical Products Transport Handbook* available at no charge. A Spanish version also will be available in 1988. It discusses maintaining quality of fruits, vegetables, plants, and flowers during transportation.

The booklet emphasizes proper planning, grading, packaging, and precooling practices as particularly important for crops shipped long distances from areas with tropical and subtropical climates. The information is presented in a brief manner with many illustrations. The handbook also discusses the choice of mode of transportation, checking the transport equipment before loading, loading practices, and recommended intransit and storage procedures. A summary of recommendations is given for 120 fruits and vegetables, most being tropical in origin. (Telephone 202-653-6317.)

One key need both before and just after harvesting is adequate labor to gather and pack crops quickly for market when they are ready. Most specialty crops can't be harvested by machine. A U-pick operation would solve the labor problem; but not all areas support pick-your-own operations. Each producer must evaluate his or her prospects for U-pick carefully.

Lawrence Rinkenberger, Indiana farmer who spoke at the 1986 "ADAPT 100" conference (sponsored by Meredith Corporation's *Successful Farming* magazine), said his pick-your-own acreage has been declining since 1981, despite his fast checkout lanes and a recreational atmosphere. Fewer customers are finding time for picking, and supermarkets have become more competitive with higher quality and lower prices.

The text of Rinkenberger's talk (along with discussions of many other alternative farming ideas) is in the book, *ADAPT 100*, available for $12.95 from *Successful Farming* at P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50336.

Miniatures in Demand

In deciding what to produce, entrepreneurs may pinpoint demand. In some markets and gourmet restaurants, demand is often high for miniature or "baby" sizes of conventional vegetables, such as squashes.

Some varieties of vegetables have been especially developed to grow small, or miniature size. Others are simply picked at an immature stage; it is important to know which ones. Many minivegetables are being grown in California, Florida, Texas, and Mexico year round. With good soil, they can be grown in many States in summer, or they can be grown in greenhouses. Growing and marketing minivegetables is tricky. Besides being produced from appropriate varieties, they must be harvested precisely when they are at a sweet rather than bitter stage. Not all immature vegetables qualify.

Some Market Outlets

Any vegetable can be labeled "gourmet" if marketed at peak condition, according to David Miskell, a speaker at the 1986 "ADAPT 100" conference.

For information, Miskell noted seed companies and market outlets such as Frieda Caplan's; "Fresh and Healthy" of Lehigh Valley Organic Growers, Inc. (125 West Seventh Street, Wind Gap, PA 18091); Green Leaf Produce (1980 Jerrold Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94124); and Flying Foods International (43-43 Ninth Street, Long Island City, NY 11101). Both Sibella Kraus, Green Leaf planner, and Walter Martin, founder and managing director of Flying Foods, say

their companies are always interested in hearing from growers with plans for novel produce—such as colorful lettuces.

Miskell mentioned some of the gourmet lettuces being marketed, including Merveille de Quatre Saisons, Rouge d'Hiver, Red Sails, Red Romaine, Red Salad Bowl, Oak Leaf, and Boston type. Miskell may be contacted at Shelburne, VT 05482, where he produces organic vegetables on 3 acres with four greenhouses.

The produce market—gourmet or otherwise—is extremely competitive. The specialists emphasize that when too many people begin growing a vegetable crop, it is no longer a specialty that commands a premium price. Above all, the experts emphasize that people should NOT plant first and try to sell later.

One way to beat the competition as well as take advantage of the U-pick solution to labor shortages, is described in Dr. Booker T. Whatley's book, *How To Make $100,000 Farming 25 Acres,* ($17.95, softcover; $24.95, hardcover, from Rodale Institute, 222 Main St., Emmaus, PA 18049). He explains how clever growers can build a 'guaranteed' or contract market by organizing a clientele membership club. Members buy rights to pick vegetables and/or fruits at rates adjusted regularly to be below supermarket prices. This kind of club, of course, takes as much servicing as any organization.

Price Information

To help make decisions, operators can seek price data from many sources. One is USDA's Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS). Its Fruit and Vegetable Division has a Market News Branch (headed by W. H. Crocker, Room 2503-S, AMS, USDA, Washington, D.C. 20250). AMS reports daily on prices and shipment sizes at 20 of the Nation's biggest metropolitan centers. AMS will send inquirers data on subscription fees for reports from various cities.

While all major markets detail wholesale prices on the most common produce, not all report gourmet vegetable prices. However, AMS reports from New York and San Francisco often have lists of vegetables or herbs designated "oriental" or "miscellaneous." Some sell by the pound, others by the dozen (bunches) or by the carton or lug.

Caplan says the farmer's price can be estimated by deducting 30 percent from the price that AMS shows for any particular item.

For data on local prices and competition, the best source of data is the produce manager of the nearest large gourmet grocery store. If there is no gourmet store, the owner of a gourmet restaurant might discuss prices and supplies.

Production Ideas

Many sources of vegetable production information include county offices of the Cooperative Extension Service (CES), supported by the States, State universities, and USDA. Most counties have CES offices.

The Produce Marketing Association (PMA, 1500 Casho Mill Road, Newark, DE 19714-6036) can provide a list of articles on specialty vegetables to nonmembers of PMA for $20 (the search cost) plus $10 for a set of computer page printouts of up to 10 pages plus $1 per additional page.

A recent PMA bibliographic printout on "exotic produce" (which includes fruits as well as vegetables) covered about 18 pages. Two other pages were on Hispanic produce operations and two on Oriental produce and marketing.

Typical articles are two in *Restaurant Business,* "Oriental market poised for explosive chain growth" and "Oriental: Fast food of the next generation," and one in *Supermarket Business,* "Oriental items can be bonanza for produce section." Items on the Hispanic list include: "Tips on capturing a piece of Hispanic grocery market," in *Packer* newspaper; "The emerging Hispanic market," in *Produce and Floral Retailing* magazine; and "Ethnic perishables bring Denver Hispanics to TJs," in the *Supermarket News* newspaper.

USDA, Purdue University, and the CES (at West Lafayette, IN 47907) have a publication (HO-194) available at no charge: *Guide to Production Information for Commercial Vegetable Growers.* It is aimed mainly at readers in Indiana and the Midwest, and it lists publications of wider use, such as *The Basics of Trickle Irrigation,* from the University of Illinois.

Purdue also has published the 70-page *Indiana Vegetable Production Guide for Commercial Growers.* Numbered ID-56, it is available from the Publications Mailing Room, 301 South Second Street, Lafayette, IN 47905-1092, at $4. It summarizes recommended varieties of common vegetables, seeding rates, fertilizer rates, insect and disease control measures, and safe use of agricultural chemicals. The guide, updated every 2 years, has supplements alternate years.

The Purdue list names several vegetable books issued by private publishers and the 1977 USDA publication, *Growing Your Own Vegetables,* Ag. Info. Bulletin No. 409. No longer available from the government, this 244-page "how to" book may be found in some libraries. Because of its age, readers will want to update its pesticide information through their Extension agents.

Purdue's list also notes many periodicals on vegetables. While many emphasize the chemical control of pests, some are oriented toward organic methods—using biological instead of chemical approaches to control pests.

Another useful USDA publication, *Growing Vegetables in the Home Garden,* 49 pages, is available from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office (GPO), for $2.25. Ask for HG 202, Stock No. SN 001-000-004454-1. USDA's 1977 Agricultural Yearbook was the 392-page *Gardening for Food and Fun,* available from GPO for $12. Its Stock No. is SN 001-000-036789-3.

USDA's National Agricultural Library (NAL, Room 111, Beltsville, MD 20705) also has a bibliography listing publications on vegetable gardening and another on marketing of horticultural crops.

* * *

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service/Office of Grants and Program Systems, Room 635, Hamilton Building, Washington, DC 20250.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Strawberries

Nearly everyone loves home-grown strawberries and many people will go out of their way to buy or pick fresh berries—often the first "taste of spring." Strawberries are the most widely grown small fruit in most States. The leading States in commercial production are California, Oregon, and Florida. However, strawberries can be grown in many soil types almost any place in the United States.

A strawberry crop can fit nicely into small-scale operations. The average farm in most States grows less than 10 acres. The strawberry harvest begins in spring or early summer and generates income when few other crops are available. Local marketing by pick-your-own (PYO) customers, at farmers' markets, or ready-pick sales to nearby stores is feasible for small farms. The income from strawberries can supplement farm income from other, primary sources.

Strawberry growing is labor and management intensive. Although much work can be performed by hand, growers soon learn that specialized equipment and crop knowledge go a long way toward ensuring success. Growing strawberries on any scale requires a significant investment in money and time. Knowledge about strawberry crop pests and proper timing is essential. Because weeds are often a pitfall, beginners must know about herbicides and weed control.

A job well done can gross $4,000 or more per acre. Strawberries can net $2,000 or more per acre with the right marketing, management, and growing conditions.

Planting Considerations

Strawberry plants are shallow rooted, low growing, and very sensitive to environmental conditions. Poor field and soil conditions cannot be overcome after the crop is planted. Select sites with enough slope to provide adequate air and water drainage, above lower land into which the cold air can drain, and well away from wooded areas and other frost pockets. Such a site allows for good air drainage. Cold air, which is heavier than warm air, drains down to lower elevations, thus increasing chances of frost damage during blossoming. The soil must also be well drained; strawberries will not survive "wet feet."

Irrigation is necessary for commercial production—at planting time, for frost protection of blossoms, at renovation, and in dry spells during the growing season or at harvest.

The preparation of strawberry fields should begin at least a year before planting. Fields previously in sod should be cultivated for 2 or more years. Starting then allows for soil testing and amending, as well as for eliminating perennial weeds. In addition, pre-planting preparation provides time to grow a cultivated crop for improved insect and weed control, or to grow one or two green manure crops for increased organic matter, nutrient availability, and improved soil texture. Green manure crops can smother out weeds and, when plowed under, augment their destruction. All efforts should be directed toward reducing weeds: Weeds should not be permitted to produce seeds during this time.

Strawberries should not be planted after eggplant, peppers, potatoes, or tomatoes because of common susceptibility to the Verticillium wilt fungus, which can infect and damage strawberries. Strawberries should not be planted in fields treated with high rates of herbicides (such as atrazine) that could carry over to injure strawberry roots.

The success of a strawberry planting, in large part, depends on the health and vigor of planting stock. A new planting should not be started with plants from an old strawberry bed because almost all established plantings are disease infested. In the long run it is far better and cheaper to obtain virus-free plants from a dependable nursery than to risk using plants of doubtful value.

Choose the Best Varieties

Strawberry growers should plant the varieties best suited to their growing sites, cultural methods, and eventual markets. Even the best cultural practices cannot overcome the handicap imposed by poor varieties. Risks involved in variety selection can be spread out by planting three or four different varieties. Such planting enables a grower to lengthen the harvest season and give customers a choice of fruit qualities. Since most fields are harvested for only 3 or 4 years, changing varieties to meet future demands is relatively easy. Names of the varieties recommended for commercial and trial plantings are available from your local universities and extension service.

The Junebearer is the most widely grown type of strawberry outside of California and Florida. One or more of these varieties will likely grow well in most areas. The plants are set in early spring to form matted rows, the flower buds are initiated in the fall, and the crop is harvested the following spring. The field will be renovated after harvest and picked again for 2 to 4 years or longer.

Leading varieties include Totem, Benton, Shuksan, Redcoat, Glooscap, Earliglow, Redchief, Honeoye, Cardinal, Kent, Bounty, and Allstar.

Everbearers, widely grown but rarely commercially, tend to cycle up and down in crop production, and yields during summer and fall seldom approach those of Junebearers in berry size, amount, or quality. Most everbearers have limited potential other than for home use. Examples of varieties are Ozark Beauty, Quinalt, Ft. Laramie, and OurOwn.

New Types of Strawberries

New dayneutral and short-day strawberry varieties produce both flowers and fruit at the same time during most of the growing season. Production exhibits some "peaks and valleys," depending on the climate where grown. The berries produced during midsummer heat in the Midwest lack some desirable characteristics needed for commercial harvest. They need optimum management in weed and runner control, water and nutritional maintenance, and harvesting. Given ideal conditions, these varieties do offer the potential for expanding the marketing season in many locations, especially where nights are relatively cool. Among leading varieties are Douglas, Chandler, Pajaro, Selva, and Irvine, grown primarily in California and Florida. Tribute and Tristar are new disease-resistant varieties well adapted to other areas.

New Production Systems

Research on growing dayneutral and other varieties under highly intensive cultural systems has been on-going in recent years in New York, North Carolina, and Iowa. These systems utilize techniques (fumigation, plastic mulch, trickle irrigation, hill planting) similar to those practiced in California and Florida. Costs and potential returns, as well as risks, are much higher than for conventional production. Reports on costs, yield potential, and cultural techniques are available from (1) "Dayneutral Strawberry Production Guide," Information Bulletin 215, for $2.30 (including postage), from Distribution Center, 7 Research Park, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY 14850; (2) Dr. E.B. Poling, Annual Hill System Strawberry Research, Department of Horticultural Science, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, NC 27695-7609; or (3) Dr. Gail Nonneke, Department of Horticulture, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011.

Marketing the Crop

The principal market for strawberries is formed by consumers in local communities surrounding the producing farm. A high percentage of all strawberries grown in the Midwest and Northeast are harvested "pick-your-own" (PYO). The PYO market is competitive and in some areas saturated. The trend, now, is toward more ready-picked berries, and growers find more sales when they have workers for picking.

Word-of-mouth is the primary method by which local consumers learn about PYO strawberries. Thus, marketing begins with choosing the best cultivars, growing top quality berries, and having clean, weed-free fields and courteous, friendly personnel on hand to supervise PYO customers.

The strawberry crop is usually sold within 30 days, depending upon weather and varieties. Weekends are usually the biggest picking days. Coordinating sales advertising and promotion with peak harvest is a challenge even for experienced growers.

PYO growers must be market oriented. They must plan far ahead, seek alternative market possibilities, train help, make a suitable farm logo, and develop an advertising program, as well as make contingency plans in case of rain, cold or hot weather, or increasing PYO competition and California berries in local supermarkets. California berries have improved in recent years, making it difficult to attract city customers to PYO farms.

Before starting a PYO strawberry enterprise, each farm should study its potential trade area. What is the market opportunity and where are advertising media? There must be a large customer base within 20 miles of the farm. A farm with 10 acres of strawberries requires a nearby population of about 30,000, with no other competition, to provide a suitable PYO market. Information on how to determine a PYO-customer trade area is available from the Department of Horticulture, University of Illinois, 1005 Plant Sciences Lab, 1201 South Dorner, Urbana, IL 61801. Ask for Fact Sheet HM-6.

PYO strawberries are usually sold by weight in pounds and/or ounces, in single-quart or 4-quart baskets. The scales are usually inspected by the Weights and Measures Division of a State department of agriculture or commerce.

A business that markets directly to the consumer, either by PYO or ready-pick, does not develop completely in a single season. The farm image—neatness, cleanliness, the logo, signs, personnel, quality of fruit, printed material, and access roads—is extremely important. City customers especially enjoy the farm outing and recreational aspects. However, they may be critical of muddy or dusty roads, inadequate parking, poor sign directions, weedy fields, or rude personnel.

Since accidents may occur when crowds come to the farm, the grower must be sure to obtain adequate insurance coverage. The normal farm insurance policy most likely will not cover accident liability or even the buildings used in the business.

Many PYO strawberry enterprises are successful because the entire family works in the operation. Often, one spouse hires, trains, and supervises the help, handles the money and keeps records, helps in planning the advertising, and meets customers on a daily basis, while the other spouse and other members of the family are involved in field operations. By meeting or exceeding customer expectations, the local marketing of strawberries can be a successful enterprise.

For More Information

State universities and county Cooperative Extension personnel can often provide helpful tips geared to local production methods and marketing information. For example, the University of Illinois conducts an annual "Strawberry School" and publishes a Proceedings, which also includes other small fruits. For information, write to Dr. J.W. Courter, University of Illinois, Dixon Springs Agricultural Center, Simpson, IL 62985. Similar extension schools are held in Wisconsin, Ohio, North Carolina, Michigan, New York, Pennsylvania, Missouri, and New England States.

At the national level, the North American Strawberry Growers Association (NASGA) offers newsletters, annual conventions, proceedings, research reports in their journal, "Advances in Strawberry Production," marketing information, and legislative support, and also makes financial contributions to research projects. The benefits from joining NASGA are invaluable for the professional grower. Contact Dr. Richard and Shirley Funt, Executive Secretaries, NASGA, P.O. Box 20268, Columbus, OH 43220.

Other Information Sources

For cost information and availability on one or more of the following useful publications, potential growers should write to the address given:

- *Compendium of Strawberry Diseases,* 138 pp, color. The American Phytopathological Society, 3340 Pilot Knob Road, St. Paul, MN 55121.
- *Strawberry Deformities*, 13 pp, color, Bulletin 683. University of Vermont, Agricultural Experiment Station, Burlington, VT 05401.
- *Strawberry Deficiency Symptoms: A Visual and Plant Analysis Guide to Fertilization,* 60 pp, color, Publication No. 4098. University of California, ANR Publications, 6701 San Pablo Avenue, Oakland CA 94608-1239.
- *Insect Pests of Strawberries in Ohio,* 19 pp, color, Extension Bul. 667. Ohio State University, Ohio Cooperative Extension Service, Kottman Hall, Coffey Road, Columbus,OH 43210.
- *Ohio Strawberry Manual*, 43 pp, color. Ohio State University, Ohio Cooperative Extension Service, Kottman Hall, Coffey Road, Columbus, OH 43210.
- *Fruit and Vegetable Clip Art for Direct Marketers,* Series 52. University of Illinois, Department of Horticulture, Dixon Springs Agricultural Center, Simpson, IL 62985.
- *The Strawberry Enterprise*, 5 pp, FR-10. University of Illinois, Department of Horticulture, 1005 Plant Sciences Lab, 1201 South Dorner Drive, Urbana, IL 61801.
- *Small Fruit Crop Management,* 608 pp. Prentice Hall. Mail Order Billing Department, 200 Old Tappan Road, Old Tappan, NJ 07657.

Prepared by J.W. Courter of the University of Illinois and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Integovernmental Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is OSSA, Cooperative State Research Service, Room 224 D, Aerospace Building,USDA, Washington, DC 20250-2200 (Telephone: 202-401-4640 or Fax: 202-401-5179) 410-1805

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

January 1991

* U.S. G.P.O.:1991- 282-933:40115/CSRS

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Wildflowers

The wildflower business may bloom as never before in coming years. Federal legislation adopted in September 1987 requires that 25 cents of every $100 in Federal highway landscaping funds be used to plant wildflowers. With few exceptions wildflowers are now part of any landscaping project on the Federal-aid highway system. Most States already have some sort of native plant growth program involving highways, following the lead of Texas, which began its highway beautification with wildflowers in 1927.

A resurgence of interest in the landscaping of the last century, with its emphasis on native plants, also is noted by Dr. E. "Pat" Carpenter, professor of plant science at the University of Connecticut. Houseowners who want to get the most yard beauty from the least work, he says, are turning to "naturalistic landscaping."

Reduced maintenance costs also are part of the benefits from wildflowers along roads. Many native plants are highly resistant to drought. Texas reported saving millions of dollars by substituting flowers for roadside weeds.

Texas activities helped inspire the National Council of State Garden Clubs, which launched its Operation Wildflower project in 1973. Under Mrs. La Verne R. Collard of Massachusetts, it has a national newsletter (*The Columbine,* P.O. Box 860, Pocasset, MA 02559) and encourages work with the U.S. Department of Transportation's Federal Highway Commission and State highway agencies to promote road plantings.

Such projects may not only open up new markets for producers of wildflower seed but also stimulate greater demand for wildflower plants around homes.

Wildflower Families

"Wildflowers" is the nickname for herbaceous flowering plants native to an area. They come in many shapes, sizes, and colors and grow everywhere.

Most are annuals, but many are biennials or perennials. Those along highways are usually perennials from the meadows, but they also are found in alpine, aquatic, bog, and timber settings.

Major wildflower families include legume (including the bluebonnet, State flower of Texas, and the locoweed), rose, violet, heath (such as crimson snowplant), phlox, snapdragon, mint, sunflower, lilly, arum (including the Jack-in-the-pulpit and the skunk cabbage), and orchid—including the lady's slipper. Others not commonly thought of as wildflowers are cat-tails, poppies, capers, mustards, geraniums, callas, amaranths, cacti, and even Spanish moss.

Although wildflowers grow in all States, most are extremely sensitive as to the locale in which they can be grown. Wild plants have adapted by nature to environmental factors such as climate, rainfall, altitude, exposure to sun or shade, and the predominant soil's pH (balance of acidity to alkalinity). Any attempt to reestablish wildflowers must begin by recognizing those field factors. Relatively few natives are like the perennial columbines (*Aquilegia canadensis,* etc.) of the buttercup family that thrive from border to border. Therefore, before anything else, potential entrepreneurs need to learn which flowers are native to their areas.

Some species of wildflowers have even become extinct. Conservationists actively campaign against wild collection except at a commercialized site where bulldozers already are wiping out plants. They urge consumers to buy plants or seeds from growers.

Propagation

Some wildflowers are propagated best from seeds, although seeds sometimes must be frozen to get them started. Other ways of starting flowers are from divisions, or stem or root cuttings. Some can be started from bulbs, corns, rhizomes, stolons, or tubers.

But many plants are difficult to propagate, says Dr. Henry M. Cathey, director of the National Arboretum of the Agricultural Research Service (ARS), U.S. Department of Agriculture (in Washington, DC 20002). Wildflowers brought into landscaping are in "strange" territory that works against their reproduction, Cathey says. Also, the nursery industry needs tough plants that survive transplanting, shipping, and other environmental changes. At the same time, the industry needs plants that can be produced on a commercial scale.

Although out of print at USDA, Cathey's ARS booklet, *Growing Flowering Perennials,* Home and Garden Bulletin No. 114, may be of interest to wildflower growers. Some libraries still have it.

Other publications about growing wildflowers are:

1. *Wild Flowers of the United States* by Harold William Rickett (multivolumed encyclopedia with colorful photographs).
2. *Growing and Propagating Wild Flowers* by Harry Phillips (University of North Carolina Press, P.O. Box 2288, Chapel Hill, NC 27514, $16.45 pamphlet, $26.45 hard cover).
3. *American Nurseryman Magazine.*
4. *Directory to Resources on Wildflowers' Propagation.* (National Council of State Garden Clubs, 4401 Magnolia Ave., St. Louis, MO 63110.)

A source of bibliographic information on wildflowers is USDA's National Agricultural Library, 10301 Baltimore Blvd., Room 111, Beltsville, MD 20705.

An information source on nursery industry research involving native plants is Dr. Richard E. Bir, Extension horticulture specialist at North Carolina State University. His address is Mountain Horticultural Crops Research Station, 2016 Fanning Bridge Road, Fletcher, NC 28732-9628.

Research Center

The National Wildflower Research Center (NWRC) in Texas is the heart of research and information about U.S. wildflowers. This nonprofit organization, financed entirely by contributions, has a membership of more than 8,000. It publishes a quarterly newsletter, *Wildflowers,* for members. NWRC's address is 2600 FM 973 North, Austin, TX 78725.

"There is a phenomenal public interest in wildflowers for ecological, esthetic, and economic reasons," according to Dr. David Northington, executive director. The Center receives thousands of inquiries annually, from every State.

Members for $25 a year receive the newsletter, priority mail handling, and free fact sheets. Nonmembers wishing information should include a legal-sized envelope with 56 cents' postage.

The Center has cooperative projects with several facilities, such as

Farmingdale University and Clark Garden in New York, Atlanta Botanic Gardens and Callaway Gardens in Georgia, Denver Botanic Gardens in Colorado, and the University of North Dakota.

Specialists at NWRC and some State Universities are always looking for easier ways to grow wildflowers. Some county Cooperative Extension Service (CES) agents have information.

USDA Assistance

A Plant Materials Program, which includes other conservation plants besides wildflowers, is conducted by the U.S. Department of Agriculture's (USDA) Soil Conservation Service (SCS).

This program is handled through 25 plant materials centers in 22 States. Wildflowers are among the cultivars (cultivated varieties) that the program has developed to improve erosion control on cropland, along highways and shorelines, and at minespoils. The program also aims to boost forage yields and the protein diets of grazing livestock.

The SCS program includes help to wildflower seed growers. Much labor is involved in harvesting and packaging seed. And there is a scarcity of equipment. However, in Oregon and Washington, some commercial seed growers use grain harvesting equipment adapted to gathering seed.

Any local SCS county office can handle inquiries. Experts there will have advice and can speed getting seed from a plant materials center.

SCS's publication, *Improved Plant Materials Cooperatively Released by SCS Through December 1986,* lists many useful conservation cultivars of plants, including wildflowers. Also known as forbs (herbaceous plants other than grasses that are common in meadows), all may be grown from field-planted seed. With their cultivar name inside quotation marks, they include:

'Golden Jubilee,' a black-eyed Susan (*Rudbeckia hirta*);

'Sabine,' an Illinois bundleflower (*Desmanthus illinoensis*);

'Eldorado,' an Engelmann daisy (*Engelmannia pinnatifida*);

'Midas,' a rough oxeye (*Heliopsis helianthoides*);

'Eureka,' a thickspike gayfeather (*Liatris pycnostachya*);

'Appar,' a Lewis flax (*Linum lewisii*);

'Bandera,' a Rocky Mountain penstemon (*Penstemon strictus*);

'Kaneb,' a purple prairieclover (*Petalostemon purpureum*);

'Sunglow,' a grayhead prairie-coneflower (*Ratibida pinnata*);

'Nekan,' a pitcher sage (*Salvia azurea va. grandiflora*);

'Aztec,' of the Maximilian sunflower (*Helianthus maximiliani*); and

'Prairie Gold,' of the same species.

The SCS publication notes States in which each plant grows best and which plant materials centers grow them for seed. The booklet is available at no charge from W. Curtis Sharp, SCS national plant materials specialist, P.O. Box 2890, Washington, DC 20013. He also has a list of the centers, which may be visited.

Accessing Markets

A 17-page report, "Accessing the Market," is available from Pat Carpenter at the Department of Plant Sciences, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT 06268. Carpenter discusses groups of plant buyers and how to reach them through paid or free promotions. He also lists 20 State native plant associations and the regional New England Wild Flower Society, Inc., Garden in the Woods, 180 Hemenway Road, Framingham, MA 01701.

Gardeners are one potential market. Garden clubs often have garden sales at meetings. Don Shadow, owner of Shadow Nursery, Inc. (Route 1, Box 37-A, Winchester, TE 37398), suggests growers also hunt for local markets at

(1) retail garden centers,

(2) organizations with botanic gardens, and

(3) larger established nurseries, which may use additional plants.

Other markets might include landscapers and interiorscapers or interior decorators for civic or other public areas, colleges, other institutions, and private apartments.

Another way to reach consumers is by displaying potted perennials at grocery stores or florist shops or from a temporary greenhouse in a shopping center parking lot or along a highway with ample parking space.

For seed sales, growers may wish to contact groups of wildlife and bird conservationists, some of whose members may have farmland lying fallow much of the year. They welcome ideas about wildflowers bearing seeds or fruit that stays on branches up above the usual snowfall. They might be reached through want ads in professional magazines.

Marketing Cautions

When selling seeds, conscientious marketers should label seed packets carefully. Garden club groups point out that some seed mixes are not labeled accurately and may contain unmentioned noxious weeds, such as loosestrife. They urge purchase only of carefully controlled seed mixes that contain high percentages of indigenous species. An entrepreneur should buy seeds only for one species at a time.

Also, shippers must be aware of State and Federal plant quarantine laws designed to prevent movement of diseases or other pests across State lines. Growers should seek information either from their State plant regulatory official at the State Department of Agriculture or officials with USDA's Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS, Plant Protection and Quarantine, Regulatory Services Staff, Federal Building, Hyattsville, MD 20782).

When entrepreneurs are making plans, they might want to note that net income may be about a fifth of gross sales. Without a high gross, an entrepreneur should not expect to make more than a supplemental income even with skilled, hard work and a coldframe or two, according to Dr. Sam Jones, professor of botany at the University of Georgia, Athens.

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Programs Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service/Office of Grants and Program Systems, Room 635, Hamilton Building, Washington, DC 20250.

December 1987

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Shiitake Mushrooms

Shiitake (pronounced "shee-tah-kay" and spelled the same whether singular or plural) are said to be the favorite mushroom in Japan. Worldwide production is second only to the common white button mushroom found in most grocery stores in the United States. Besides Japan, other large producers include China, Taiwan and Korea.

Since 1972, when the U. S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) first allowed shiitake spawn into the United States, production here has grown steadily. During the 1991-92 season, USDA's National Agricultural Statistics Service (NASS) estimated that over 2.7 million pounds of shiitake were grown in the United States. This compares to an estimated 738.8 million pounds of the common button mushroom. The current NASS statistics (published each August) can be purchased from ERS-NASS, P.O. Box 1608, Rockville, MD 20849-1608 for $6.

Jerry Larson, the International Trade Manager for the Oregon Department of Agriculture (121 SW Salmon St., Suite 240, Portland, OR 97204-2987) believes that the market potential for U.S.-grown shiitake has hardly been touched. He reports that the United States imports 14,000 metric tons of dried shiitake from Japan, Taiwan and Korea each year. If these were fresh mushrooms, this would amount to 126,000 metric tons (nearly 100 times the current U.S. fresh production level).

Growing Shiitake

Shiitake can be grown either on natural logs or on artificial logs made of a special combination of oak sawdust, bran, millet and other additives. Most small-scale farmers will want to start with natural logs because they require less environmental control. Further information on sawdust culture can be obtained from Professor Dan J. Royse, at Pennsylvania State University (211 Buckout Laboratory, Penn State University, University Park, PA 16802).

There are five basic steps in cultivating shiitake on logs:

•**Ordering good-quality culture, which is called spawn or inoculum, so that it will be on hand when needed.** The mushroom that will grow from the log is the fruiting body of the whole fungus. Most of the fungus is a mat of white strands (mycelia) that grow through the log to collect the nutrients necessary for fruiting. The spawn that you will purchase is nothing more than a pure strain of living mycelia, growing either in sawdust or in hardwood dowels. Contact your county extension agent for help in locating a spawn supplier near you.

•**Obtaining suitable hardwood logs.** Usually oak, maple, beech, ironwood, chestnut, or alder are used. The logs are cut green during the winter when the sap is down and are cut to 3- or 4-foot lengths for easy handling. Diameters from 2 to 6 inches seem to work well. Be careful to avoid damaging the bark. Torn bark can allow other organisms to enter the log and compete with the shiitake for nutrients.

•**Inoculating the logs.** Inoculate the logs with the spawn between 1 and 3 weeks after cutting to ensure optimal moisture content. Inoculate the log by drilling holes partway into the log. Then carefully pack these holes with the spawn and seal them with wax to retain moisture and keep out competing organisms.

•**Allowing shiitake to colonize the wood.** Once the mushroom has been introduced to the log via inoculation, it takes 4-9 months, depending upon climate, for the mycelia to spread throughout the log. During this "spawn run" period the logs are stacked and shaded to avoid moisture loss.

•**Inducing fruiting.** To induce fruiting the logs are soaked then shaded to keep the moisture level up until fruiting begins. Yields are quite variable. In some cases the spawn will not run through the log and no mushrooms will be produced. The highest yields are only attainable when all conditions are near ideal. The logs can be refruited several times without additional inoculation and can produce mushrooms for several years, depending upon how often they are fruited.

There are several additional steps that must be pursued by an entrepreneur to bring the shiitake crop to the market and ultimate sale. Crop harvesting, packaging, storing, transporting, and marketing are some of the vital and important steps that are necessary. However, there are a host of different procedures practiced because factors such as the grower's location, time limitations, financial considerations, etc. necessarily dictate the technique pursued.

Information Sources

Several books are available that can provide additional details on growing shiitake. Among them are:

- *Growing Shiitake Commercially*, by Bob Harris
- *The Mushroom Cultivator*, by Paul Stamets and J.S. Chilton
- *Growing Shiitake Mushrooms in a Continental Climate*, by M.E. Kozak and J. Krawcyzk
- *Shiitake Grower's Handbook: The Art and Science of Mushroom Cultivation*, by Paul Przybylowicz and John Donoghue

A 13 ¼ minute video on "Growing Shiitake Mushrooms" is available for $10 from the Cooperative Extension Programs of Georgia's Fort Valley State College and North Carolina A&T State University. It is part of a video library they produced on money-making ideas for small-scale farmers. (Checks should be payable to NC A&T University CEP and sent to Director, Extension/Research Communications, NC A&T University, P.O. Box 21928, Greensboro, NC 27420.)

Economics

The costs of producing the mushrooms vary considerably. Major items to consider are the cost of the wood, the cost of the spawn, and the cost of labor. Typically, labor will be the largest consideration.

Returns are also quite variable and depend heavily upon your growing climate. The Forest Resource Center reported results of field trials in the March 1992 edition of its newsletter, Shiitake News. Depending upon the species of log and the strain of shiitake used, it reports yields of 0.4% to 12.6% of the green weight of the logs. With a cord of oak which weighs 2,200-pounds and contains 300 logs and an average yield of 7%, one could expect to grow 154 pounds of shiitake over 3 growing seasons. At $4 per pound, this cord would gross $616 over 3 years. These are conservative estimates based upon the Minnesota experience. Higher yields, on the order of 20% of the weight of the logs, can be produced in warmer, more humid climates and with the proper choice of logs and spawn.

Production Scales

Kenneth F. Konsis of the Vermilion County Conservation District in Westville, IL, reported to the 1990 Illinois Specialty Growers Convention that for large profits a 3,000 log operation is needed. However, he also recommends starting in the 100-to 500-log range and adding more as desired. This advice is echoed by Ron Snyder, Coordinator for the Geode Resource Conservation and Development (RC&D) office in southeast Iowa.

NASS does not attempt to track production from growers with fewer than 200 logs. The agency reported 458,000 logs under production and 172 growers in the United States during the 1991-92 season. The average grower is thus using around 2,700 logs.

Market Prices

Wholesale market prices for fresh shiitake vary seasonally and according to the market serviced. During the fall and spring when most outdoor growers are picking their mushrooms, prices tend to be lower (say $4 per pound). In the winter and summer, prices tend to be higher (as high as $7.50 per pound) since only those with climate-controlled growing facilities will be producing the mushrooms.

The 1991-92 NASS report mentioned above showed the average price nationwide for shiitake at $4.11 per pound.

Jim Gwynn of the USDA's Agricultural Marketing Service's Fruit and Vegetable Division (Market News Branch, Room 2503-S, P.O. Box 96456, Washington, DC 20090-6456) reports that AMS has employees in most major markets obtaining market prices daily. Daily reports can be obtained by subscription at $15 per month per market city. Weekly reports are $8 per month. Markets currently reporting shiitake sales include San Francisco, New York, Chicago, Atlanta, Boston, and Los Angeles. The lack of reports from other markets indicates potential opportunities for growers in those areas.

Pluses for Small-Scale Farmers

Kenneth F. Konsis, in the report mentioned above, states that shiitake growing might fit well with other goals of small-scale farmers. He suggests thinnings from commercial woodlots can be used for shiitake logs. He also notes that in many cases trees can be cut at the 6- to 8-foot height and will resprout at that height without damage by animals. The trees can then be used as living fence posts and provide a continuous supply of shiitake logs.

The Forest Products Lab of the USDA Forest Service (One Gifford Pinchot Drive, Madison, WI 53705-2398) has a shiitake factsheet in its free *Techline-Microbial and Biochemical Technology* series. FPL suggests that smaller diameter hardwood trees and limbs and tops of larger trees are one of the most underutilized forest materials currently available and that shiitake growing is a viable use of those materials. The factsheet notes that shiitake cultivation is expected to be an excellent growth industry over the next several years.

Marketing Points

Shiitake have some strong selling points. Fresh, the caps, 2 to 5 inches in diameter, have a chewy texture and a full-bodied aromatic flavor. They are low in calories (125 per fresh pound) and low in fat.

Reports indicate that tree-grown mushrooms, like shiitake, have about twice the fiber content of the common white button mushroom (*agaricus bisporus*). The particular type of fiber found in these mushrooms feeds the beneficial bacteria in the colon and enhances colon health.

According to Dr. Shu-Ting Chang, Professor of Biology, Chinese University of Hong Kong, and Dr. Phillip G. Miles, Professor of Biology at the State University of New York in Buffalo (in their 1990 book *Edible Mushrooms and Their Cultivation)*, shiitake contain all of the 9 essential amino acids of protein required in the human diet.

More Information

The American Mushroom Institute (907 East Baltimore Pike, Kennett Square, PA 19348) publishes *Mushroom News* and *Mushroom News Flash* for their members on a monthly basis. Associate memberships are $300 per year and grower memberships start at $350 per year.

Successful Farming Magazine has published two articles on shiitake in its ADAPT series. One describes the initial experience of the Geode RC&D's shiitake project. The second shares the experience of a Virginia shiitake farm. Copies of these articles can be obtained from Betsy Freese at Successful Farming (ADAPT), 1716 Locust Street, Des Moines, IA 50309-3023.

Shiitake News is published three times a year by the nonprofit Forest Resource Center at Rt. 2, Box 156A, Lanesboro, MN 55949. The 16-page newsletter costs $25 for an initial subscription, which also includes three back issues. Renewals are $15 per year.

The Mushroom Growers' Newsletter (P.O. Box 5065, Klamath Falls, OR 97601) is published monthly and includes production and marketing information (including prices) on other cultivated mushrooms as well as shiitake in its 6 pages. The current issue is $3.50, back issues are $3 each and subscriptions are $24 per year.

By Jerry Haugen, P.O. Box 5065, Klamath Falls, OR 97601 and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Public Affairs, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA), Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

***

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

June 1993

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE
NATIONAL AGRICULTURAL LIBRARY
RECEIVED
JUN 20 1997
ORDER UNIT
ACQUISITIONS BRANCH

United States Department of Agriculture
Cooperative State Research Service
Office for Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Mushrooms

Shiitake (pronounced "shee-tah-kee" and spelled the same whether singular or plural) are said to be the favorite mushroom in Japan. As many as 200,000 Japanese cultivate these forest fungi as a seasonal cash crop from logs of the shii tree, closely related to the oak. Other Asian countries are following suit; the brownish shiitake are also called black Chinese or black forest mushrooms and are grown in increasing amounts in Taiwan, China, and Korea.

The number of U.S. shiitake farmers is rising, though most of them operate on a small scale. Still, some U.S. growers already use more than 10,000 3- or 4-foot-long hardwood logs (2 to 8 inches in diameter) to produce shiitake. Some even plan to expand to more than 100,000 logs—the size of some growers in Japan.

U.S. shiitake production soared from nearly zero in 1980 to a possible 3 million pounds in 1987. Leading States in production are Pennsylvania, California, Michigan, and Minnesota.

Shiitake could mean new jobs for at least 20,000 U.S. farmers, according to Dr. Gary F. Leatham, a U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) research chemist with the Forest Service in Wisconsin. But that idea depends on an annual consumption rate in this country of a pound per person. In comparison, our current annual average per capita consumption of ordinary white (*Agaricus bisporus, A. bitorquis,* or *A. brunnescens*) mushrooms is about 2-½ pounds. However, that's an increase of a pound in only 8 years. U.S. production of all mushrooms increased to about 615.4 million pounds in 1986-87.

The prospective producer must decide in connection with any product how much the market can handle and what prices will be competitive. If the demand can be generated, domestic producers can compete with foreign producers in local markets, according to Dr. Michael P. Levi, Extension specialist at North Carolina State University (Department of Forest Resources, Raleigh, NC 27650). Few if any fresh shiitake are being imported.

As with any product that has a small-market niche, care must be taken not to produce more than the market can absorb at a profitable price.

Andy Hankins, alternative agriculture specialist at Virginia State University (Petersburg, VA 23803), suggests a small-scale entrepreneur start off with 1,000 log chunks, 3 to 4 feet long and 2 to 6 inches in diameter, as a winter project. If all goes well, he said, 1,000 logs can produce 1,000 pounds of shiitake over a year's time. That could bring about $5,000 at a market. He estimates Virginia alone has about 180 small-scale growers using 500 to 5,000 producing logs apiece. One grower has approximately half a million logs.

Regional prospects for using forests to produce shiitake were discussed in a 1985 paper, "An Evaluation of the Potential for Shiitake (*Lentinus edodes*) Mushroom Cultivation in Appalachia," by Dr. James P. San Antonio, an Agricultural Research Servicer (ARS) scientist at the Agricultural Research Center, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Beltsville, MD, and Dr. Fred B. Abeles, a scientist with West Virginia University and the ARS Appalachian Fruit Research Station at Kearneysville, WV. Appalachia has an abundance of underutilized second-growth hardwoods, they noted, with climate and topography conducive to shiitake cultivation.

But before beginning shiitake production, a prospective entrepreneur needs to check many information sources, such as the Economics and Marketing Reference Branch of USDA's National Agricultural Library (NAL). NAL's Jerry Rafats, himself a shiitake grower, has developed a bibliography of information listing 65 sources which NAL will mail on request (from Beltsville, MD 20705). Also, prospective entrepreneurs may contact county Extension agents to learn whether their State universities have mushroom specialists. Hankins urges potential growers to consider joining a marketing cooperative.

Shiitake Selling Points

Shiitake have some strong selling points. Fresh, the caps, 2 to 5 inches in diameter, have a chewy texture and a full-bodied aromatic flavor. They are low in calories (125 per fresh pound) and low in fat. Possibly because they grow on wood, shiitake have more fiber than the commonly marketed white button mushroom, according to Dr. Bela Szepesi, a USDA research chemist with the ARS Human Nutrition Research Center in Beltsville. Unlike fruits, mushrooms do not have "small" carbohydrates, such as sucrose, he notes. They can be a source of B vitamins and minerals. Drying with sunshine or ultraviolet light increases their vitamin D content but they usually are eaten fresh. Protein content is in the range of typical vegetables, mycologists indicate.

Drying Advantage

Drying gives shiitake a shelf life of years when stored in sealed containers at room temperature. Most domestic growers prefer to market them fresh.

Fresh shiitake have a shelf life of 12 days, compared with about 8 days for the common whites, and they are more resistant to bruising and spoilage. They may be refrigerated up to 14 days. They should not be washed or peeled to market them. (Their umbrella tops can be cleaned with a soft cloth or paper towel.)

Some U.S. producers market by mail order, but most sell shiitake locally. Gourmet restaurants, farmers' markets, and supermarkets provide opportunities. Allen C. Bjergo, community development specialist with the Montana State University Cooperative Extension Service (1018 Burlington, Room 200, Missoula, MT 59715), has developed a booklet called "Your Marketing Plan Outline" which can provide added ideas about marketing. He also has booklets on "Financing Your Ideas" and "Earn Extra Money From Your Farm or Ranch."

Marketing Prices

Prices vary considerably. In Ohio, fresh shiitake are bringing $4 to $6.50 a pound wholesale, according to Steve Bratkovich of the Forestry Department at Ohio State University, Columbus.

Current mushroom prices and markets may be obtained regularly from USDA, through its Agricultural Marketing Service (AMS). The AMS Fruit and Vegetable Division's Market News Branch provides daily reports on major sales of mushrooms, listing prices and shipment sizes from major metropolitan areas. In early 1987, while many cities reported sales of "domestic whites," only a few reported sales of shiitake.

In San Francisco, shiitake were bringing $6.50 to $8 a pound. That

market also reported sales of "sponge" morels from Canada, at $12.50 a pound; chantrelles from Oregon, $9 a pound; angel trumpets from Idaho, $8.50 a pound; and pleurettes from Italy, $27.50 per 8-pound carton.

The scarcity of sales reports on shiitake may suggest undeveloped markets at several major cities. (Write to W.H. "Bill" Crocker, Room 2503- S, AMS, USDA, Washington, DC 20250, to obtain subscription prices and cities from which prices are reported. The cost generally is about $12 a month per city.)

Ohio Study

In 1985, Bratkovitch and Constance A. Jones of the Ohio Cooperative Extension Service, at Ohio State, in cooperation with the Ohio Department of Agriculture Cooperative Extension specialist in forestry, began testing several strains from commercial U.S. suppliers to see if shiitake could be produced economically in Ohio. They can. With certain shiitake spawn the researchers were able to get as many as 338 pounds of shiitake per cord of wood over a 20-month period. They used oak logs soaked twice and carefully stacked to maximize air circulation. This procedure is a must to prevent weed fungi contamination.

Bratkovitch (at 017 Standpipe Road, Jackson, OH 45640) can provide a report describing the Ohio Shiitake Project. His report was also published by the *Shiitake News,* which covers growing as well as marketing topics. The *Shiitake News* is produced every March, August, and November. First subscription costs $25 a year including back issues, and annual renewal is $15. Editor is Joe Deden, director of the Forest Resource Center (private, nonprofit educational organization at Route 2, Box 156 A, Lanesboro, MN 55949).

Deden estimates that a cord of wood (roughly 150 4-foot logs) can usually produce 150 pounds of shiitake a year. At $4 to $6.50 a pound, that's a gross of $600 to $975 a cord. He calculates production costs at about $500 a cord.

The 1983 book, *How to Grow Forest Mushrooms (Shiitake)*, by Daniel D. Kuo and Mau H. Kuo (Mushroom Technology Corporation, P.O. Box 2612, Naperville, IL 60565), estimates production more conservatively. Their book (originally selling for $8.95) provides details on production and harvesting methods.

Iowa Conference

Ric Zarwell, former coordinator of the Geode Wonderland Resource Conservation and Development Office (3002 A Winegard Drive, Burlington, IA 52601), provided details on shiitake in *Successful Farming* magazine's publication, *ADAPT100,* (100 ideas for farmers). This publication grew out of the magazine's 1986 Iowa conference on diversification in farming. It sells for $12.95, including postage, at P.O. Box 10652, Des Moines, IA 50336.

Costs and related data on results of a 4-year shiitake project using hardwood logs indoors and outdoors at the University of Minnesota are scheduled for release by 1988. A report on the project may be obtained from Kraig Kiger (1851 E. Highway 169, Grand Rapids, MN 55744).

Culture

There are six basic steps in cultivating shiitake:

- Ordering good-quality culture, which is called spawn or inoculum, 3 months prior to cutting logs;
- Obtaining suitable hardwood logs such as oak;
- Inoculating the logs between 1 to 3 weeks after cutting to ensure maximum moisture content;
- Allowing shiitake to colonize the wood through incubation (the spawn run);
- "Fruiting," and
- Crop harvesting, packaging, storing, transporting, and marketing.

Stable temperatures and high humidity are required. Besides logs, sawdust is available for use in some areas. Some information on sawdust culture may be obtained from Dr. Paul Wuest, mushroom Extension specialist, or Dr. Dan J. Royse, associate professor at Pennsylvania State University (211 Buckout Laboratory, Penn State University, University Park, PA 16802).

Other Information Sources

A reprint of Leatham's "Cultivation of shiitake, the Japanese forest mushroom, on logs: A potential industry for the United States," published in the *Forest Products Journal,* August 1982, as well as lists of spawn suppliers and consultants, U.S. research groups, and references, may be obtained by writing to the Forest Products Lab, P.O. Box 5130, Madison, WI 53705.

Another information source is the American Mushroom Institute (907 East Baltimore Pike, Kennett Square, PA 19348), national trade association for mushroom growers and marketers. The Institute publishes the monthly *Mushroom News* of 30 pages or more and occasionally devotes most of an issue to a major problem.

The Produce Marketing Association (1500 Casho Mill Road, Newark, DE 19714-6036) also can provide a bibliography on mushrooms to nonmembers of PMA for $20 (the search fee) plus $10 for computer-page printouts of up to 10 pages, plus $1 per page additional.

Those wishing to grow mushrooms faster and perhaps easier than shiitake may note the May-June, 1987, issue of *The Furrow,* a publication issued by Deere and Co. (John Deere Road, Moline, IL 61265.) It reports that Louisiana farmer John Meek produces oyster mushrooms in pasteurized bermudagrass bales. He harvests 5 to 6 pounds of mushrooms per bale weekly for 6 to 8 weeks, growing this species in a converted barn.

For those entrepreneurs able to produce the morel mushrooms commercially, the Neogen Corporation (620 Lesher Place, Lansing, MI 48912) has been granted a patent and will award licenses to experienced growers or companies to produce morels in recommended facilities. The research on morels was led by Dr. Gary Mills (Department of Natural Science and Agriculture and Natural Resources, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI 48824).

Prepared by George B. Holcomb of the Office of Information, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director). The address is: Office for Small-Scale Agriculture, Cooperative State Research Service/Office of Grants and Program Systems, Room 635, Hamilton Building, Washington, DC 20250.

September 1987

Reviewed and Approved for Reprinting November 1987

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Cooperative State
Research Service

Office for
Small-Scale Agriculture

A Small-Scale Agriculture Alternative

Asparagus

Easy to plant and care for, asparagus comes back every year—with minimal labor except for harvesting. Its high value brings early income to direct marketers before harvest of other vegetables or—as a good complementary crop—strawberries.

Asparagus, native of temperate regions, succeeds best where either low temperatures or drought stops plant growth for a 'rest.' Asparagus should not be considered for commercial production where warm conditions result in the plant's growth all year.

Asparagus grows and yields best in deep, well-drained sandy loam soil. However, it tolerates heavier soils as long as the water table does not come within 4 feet of the surface. The soil should be free of perennial weeds.

Planting Techniques

Planting can be done anytime in the spring after the soil warms to 50° F. Asparagus should not be planted in cold, wet soils which can harbor *Fusarium* crown rot disease.

To open furrows, a lister plow or middle-buster throws soil in opposite directions. Only a 6-inch deep trench is needed, and no deeper. The deeper the plant, the lower the yield.

Rows should be at least 5 feet apart. This permits good air circulation and helps stop onset of foliar fungal diseases.

Asparagus is generally planted using 1-year-old crowns. A crown is a root system of a year-old plant grown from seed.

At planting, 200 lbs. of 0-20-0 or 0-46-0 fertilizer per acre goes in the furrow. The crowns are tossed atop the fertilizer. They won't burn. If not added at first, phosphorous won't reach roots later.

Crowns go 1 to 1-1/2 feet apart in a row. This takes between 5,800 and 8,700 crowns per acre. Costs run about $130 per 1,000 crowns or from $780 to $1,170 per acre. Including fertilizer and lime (if needed), soil preparation, etc., total cost should be about $1,500 per acre.

Crowns placed in the trench should have the crown buds facing up with the root system spread out as much as possible. Cover the trench with soil up to the original soil level. However, do not compact the soil over the row, or spear growth will be seriously delayed. With good soil moisture, new spears emerge in about a week.

Harvesting Techniques

Asparagus is generally harvested by snapping versus cutting. Snapping has the advantage of harvesting an "all usable" product. The spear snaps at the point where fiber starts to develop. Cutting spears below the soil with a knife adds more weight to the spear but the lower 1/3 of the spear is tough and fibrous and has to be discarded. Also, cutting below the soil injures other potential buds that will send up new spears on the crown. A new spear comes up from another bud on the crown. Snapped asparagus should command a higher price than cut asparagus.

In California and certain other States, commercial asparagus growers still cut below the soil with a knife because the fibrous butt end of the spear helps to slow water loss in the tip of the spear so it can survive several days of transit.

Asparagus spears are harvested when they reach a height of between 5 to 9 inches, with a diameter of at least 3/8 inches or larger. The first harvest year is actually the year after crown planting. Harvesting lasts 2-4 weeks, depending on how long the mature fern stays green. In subsequent years, the harvest season can be extended for 6-8 weeks.

Contact a State Extension specialist to find out how long the harvest can last. In the east, in the cool spring, asparagus grows very slowly, and a 9-inch spear can be harvested with the spear tip being tight. When temperatures rise, a 5-inch spear may have to be harvested before the tip opens up or starts to "fern out." Spears allowed to fern out must be snapped and destroyed to deny insects a site to lay eggs and to prevent the delay of new emerging spears. Stop harvesting when 3/4 of the spear's diameter reaches less than 3/8 inch.

Fiber development (toughness) of the spear is related to the tightness of the spear tip. The tighter the tip, the more tender the spear is. Spear diameter has no bearing on toughness.

Asparagus can be harvested by hand into buckets. It is tiring work. Or a person can harvest an acre of asparagus in 2 hours riding a harvest-aid—easily home-made to straddle the rows—traveling between 1/2 to 3/4 mph.

Asparagus is very perishable and must be put into an ice water bath immediately after harvest. It can then be drained and placed in plastic bags, and stored under refrigeration between 32 and 40° F for 2 weeks without an appreciable loss of quality.

However, the grower shouldn't store for more than 2 days, thus giving the consumer the longest storage time possible. Wholesale growers will pack the spears into 30 lb. pyramid wood or corrugated cardboard containers.

Marketing Techniques

Many growers sell asparagus by direct marketing (roadside market, pick-your-own, or farmer's market). Many growers who have a roadside stand located on a well-traveled road do well. Others advertise through newspapers, telling the people to come to their farm to pick it themselves or to buy it already picked.

Pick-your-own marketing involves considerable consumer education on how and when to pick.

Wholesale marketing of asparagus for the small grower is not profitable due to the added production costs. Wholesale buyers usually want the asparagus packed in a certain container, or require the asparagus to be hydro-cooled, using equipment in a packing-house that showers ice cold water on top of the packed asparagus to remove the field heat. They will buy huge quantities of asparagus (tractor-trailer loads) over a certain period of time.

Also, when growers analyze the cost of packaging, cooling, transportation, etc., the price per pound they receive is usually very low compared with the price received by those growers who retail direct to consumers.

Wholesale marketers are forced to take whatever price is offered for their product, regardless of the quality.

Another way to wholesale asparagus, besides selling to produce wholesalers, chain stores, etc., is to sell to area hospitals, nursing homes, schools, etc. A small-scale grower may be able to receive a satisfactory price, and be able to "unload" some unanticipated asparagus during heavy growth.

Another sales option is to become familiar with chefs of fine restaurants in your area. Take them some asparagus and let them try it.

Other growers practice "value added"—changing the product and selling it in a different way other than in the raw product stage. For example, getting the necessary license to preserve green or white asparagus by pickling it and packing it in glass jars enables a grower to command a premium price and will bring off-season income if sold during the winter. Mail-order can be done.

White Asparagus

White (blanched) asparagus is traditionally grown in Europe by mounding up the adjacent soil over the asparagus rows in the spring before the spears emerge to a height of 10 to 12 inches. Once the tip of the spear emerges through the mounded soil, it is cut off at the base by digging into the mound. This is very

labor intensive but the product can bring a price of about $3 to $5 per pound.

[illegible]asier way to grow white asparagus is t[illegible]nd black plastic over wire hoops, bent o[illegible]d spaced 5 to 6 feet apart over the row. One side of the plastic is weighted down with soil and the other is anchored by placing 2 X 4's on the edge of the plastic. When the spears emerge, the 2 X 4's are put to one side and the edge of the plastic is lifted to snap the white spears.

The black plastic has to be at least 4 mils thick to block out the sunlight. Otherwise, the spears turn green.

Varieties

The old Mary and Martha Washington varieties are **dioecious**, meaning they produce male and female flowers on separate plants. Female plants produce seed which fall to the ground, germinate, and become an asparagus seedling weed problem. They also have to expend more energy to produce seed, so spear yield is less.

All-male hybrids have been developed by Rutgers University in New Jersey to have superior high-yielding characteristics with no seeds produced. Some of these popular all-male varieties include **Jersey Giant, Jersey Knight, Jersey Prince, and Jersey King. Jersey Centennial** is a variety consisting of 50 percent male and 50 percent female plants.

The all-male hybrids yield 3 to 4 times more than the older, open-pollinated varieties. G[illegible] following good cultural practices s[illegible]e able to expect the following yields:

- [illegible]bs. per acre the first year *after* planting
- 1,000-1,500 lbs. per acre the second year
- 2,000 lbs. per acre the third year
- 3,000 lbs. per acre the fourth year
- 4,000 lbs. per acre the fifth year

Other dioecious varieties for warmer climates include hybrids developed at the University of California. These include the F1 and F2 hybrids of UC 157, Ida Lea, and Apollo. They produce a high-quality 7- to 9-inch spear when daytime temperatures are warm. Yields are still less than those of New Jersey hybrids in warm climates.

Diseases and Disorders

Spears can be damaged by frost. If a frost is predicted, go out and harvest everything above ground. Spears should be mowed off at ground level after frost, being worthless.

Fungus diseases of importance include **asparagus rust**, *Phoma sp.*, and *Fusarium* **crown and root rot. Rust** will infect asparagus by attacking the fern growth. Orange rust pustules form on the fern and cause it to die back. *Phoma* forms elliptical (football shaped) spots on the fern stalks and also causes fern dieback. Approved fungicides must be applied after harvest when ferns reach 4 feet tall and th[illegible]plied every 14 days throughout the se[illegible]ntil late fall. *Fusarium* attacks the roots and the crown of the plant. It is present in the soil and plants will take it up through the root system when they are under stress.

Stresses can come from improper soil Ph; low fertility; excessive harvesting; and insect, disease, and weed infestations. Failure in any of these areas can lead to asparagus decline. The soil Ph should be between 6.5 and 7.5. Add limestone if soil Ph is below 6.0.

Insects

The **cutworm** feeds at night below the soil on one side of the spear tip. Spears are then unmarketable. Cutworms can be controlled using an approved insecticide.

Asparagus beetles lay eggs on spears, making them unmarketable. During fern growth after harvest, they chew on stalks, stripping off the green material, causing fern dieback. Asparagus beetles are controlled with an approved insecticide.

European asparagus aphids feed on fern growth, injecting a toxin. This results in dead crowns the following spring. So far, infestations have been sporadic throughout the Midwest.

Weed Control

Weeds are controlled mostly by hand hoeing and cultivation since no preemergence herbicides are labeled for use in asparagus during the planting year. The better the weed control during the planting year, the more fern growth for the next year's crop.

The following spring, about 3 weeks before asparagus emerges, mow dead ferns with a mower or bush hog. Delaying fern mowing until then will keep the soil temperature about 5 degrees colder than bare soil and discourage spears from emerging in an early warm spring.

Approved, preemergence herbicides may be applied right over the shredded fern because asparagus is a no-till crop. Cultivation will bury unwanted seeds from the female plants and run the risk of damaging crowns.

Asparagus Crown Sources

Jersey Asparagus Farms, Inc., RD 5,
Box 572 Newfield, NJ 08344.
Telephone: 609-358-2548; (NJ hybrids).

Daisy Farms,
91098 60th Street, Decatur, MI 49045.
Telephone: 616-782-7131; (NJ hybrids).

Nourse Farms, Inc.,
Box 485 RFD, South Deerfield, MA 01373.
Telephone: 413-665-2658; (NJ hybrids).

Cherokee Asparagus Farms,
1112 Valley Acre Lane, Tahlequah, OK 74464.
Telephone: 918-456-1993; (F2 of UC 157).

California Asparagus Seed and Transplants,
Inc., 2815 Anza Avenue, Davis, CA 95616.
Telephone: 916-753-2437; (F2 of UC 157, Atlas, Grande, and Apollo).

This list is intended only as a reference and does not imply endorsement; there undoubtedly are other suitable sources of crowns.

Information Source

For an illustrated publication on "Asparagus Production, Management, and Marketing," send $6 to Ohio State University, Piketon Research and Extension Center, 1864 Shyville Road, Piketon, OH 45661. Telephone: 614-289-2071.

By Carl J. Cantaluppi, Research and Extension Horticulturist, The Ohio State University, Piketon Research and Extension Center; and George B. Holcomb of the Office of Communication, U.S. Department of Agriculture, for USDA's Office for Small-Scale Agriculture (OSSA); Howard W. "Bud" Kerr, Jr., Program Director. OSSA's address: Ag Box 2244, Washington, DC 20250-2244. Telephone: 202-401-1805; Fax: 202-401-1804.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in its programs on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, religion, age, disability, political beliefs and marital or familial status. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs). Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact the USDA Office of Communications at (202) 720-5881 (voice) or (202) 720-7808 (TDD).

To file a complaint, write the Secretary of Agriculture. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C., 20250, or call (202) 720-7327 (voice) or (202) 720-1127 (TDD). USDA is an equal employment opportunity employer.

Mention of commercial enterprises or brand names does not constitute endorsement or imply preference by the U.S. Department of Agriculture.

All uses of fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides must be registered by appropriate State and/or Federal agencies before they can be recommended.

CAUTION: Fungicides, pesticides, and herbicides can be injurious to humans, domestic animals, desirable plants, and fish or other wildlife if they are not handled or applied properly. Use all products selectively and carefully. Follow recommended practices for the disposal of surplus products and their containers.

February 1994

We're Gonna Be Rich!

Growing Specialty Cut Flowers for Market

by Frank and Pamela Arnosky

Cover photo by Robb Kendrick

© 1999, Fairplain Publications, Inc.
All rights reserved.No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without the written permission of the publisher, Fairplain Publications, PO Box 3747, Lawrence, KS 66046; 785-748-0605; fax 785-748-0609; email:growing4market@earthlink.net

"We're Gonna Be Rich" contains articles previously published in ***Growing for Market,*** the monthly magazine for direct-market farmers. For information about subscriptions and other books about market farming, call toll-free: 1-800-307-8949.

Introduction

by Lynn Byczynski
editor and publisher, *Growing for Market*

Pamela and Frank Arnosky began writing the flower columns for *Growing for Market* in January 1995 and, so far, they have never missed a month. Here's the story of how they got the job: I met Pamela at an Association of Specialty Cut Flower Growers conference in 1994, and soon thereafter began to receive faxed letters from her telling me all about their 30-acre flower farm in the picturesque Hill Country south of Austin, Texas. The letters were packed with practical know-how, but they were also very funny. They had a wonderful conversational tone that made me feel like I had known the Arnoskys, and their flowers, and the great state of Texas, for years. In my mind, I thought of Pam and Frank as the Molly Ivins and Jim Hightower of the flower world. I knew I had spotted a talent, so I called them up and proposed that they write for *Growing for Market*. Pamela told me the letters were intended only as a lure to get me to come down and do a story about them. But they agreed to try their hand at writing regularly, and so they have.

With great enthusiasm and a wry sense of humor, they have regaled *Growing for Market* readers with advice, opinions, and anecdotes about flower farming. The title of this book, "We're Gonna Be Rich," is Frank's favorite refrain whenever success comes their way. Fortunately, Frank and Pam are often successful. They are out there on the cutting edge of the cut flower business. Every year, they search out the unusual - even the unheard of - and conduct their own research to learn all they can about every flower they grow. They are constantly tinkering with their farm, adding new plants, varying schedules, erecting more greenhouses, experimenting with different post-harvest treatments and so on. Every single month they say something *new* about growing cut flowers.

Growing for Market's readers have benefitted enormously from the

Arnoskys' generosity. With no effort to protect their "trade secrets", they have boldly told the flower-growing universe about the varieties they grow, where they get them, how they grow them, and where they sell them. They have undoubtedly given a leg up to some of the other growers selling in their markets, but Pamela and Frank have preferred not to think of other farmers as competition. Instead, they tell what they know, and sincerely encourage others to consider flower growing as a way to make a living on a small farm.

They come to flower growing from strong botany backgrounds, both having attended graduate school in plant-related fields. When they bought their farm in 1990, they started out growing poinsettias and bedding plants in a greenhouse. They differentiated themselves in that market by growing their plants organically. Within a year, they did a small planting of field-grown cut flowers, and were amazed at how well-received their flowers were by florists in Austin. Then came an upscale new supermarket that was looking for bouquets, and the Arnoskys decided to expand to fill the demand. Since then, the bedding plant part of the business has almost disappeared, with just a spring crop of vegetable transplants to help cash flow and only one greenhouse of poinsettias. The cut flowers, though, just keep expanding. As of this writing, they have 10 acres of field production and six greenhouses for winter production.

The columns in this book were written from 1995 to 1998. They are arranged loosely by season, with the January columns from each of the four years followed by all the February columns, then all the March columns and so on. As you read through the columns, you get a good sense of the issues facing the cut flower grower in each season.

The columns are also indexed in the back of the book, so you can look for specific topics as questions arise. Sources mentioned throughout the book are collected alphabetically in Appendix 1.

Whether you sit down and read these columns all at once, or peruse them in small bits and pieces, you're sure to learn a great deal about cut flowers. You'll probably get a few laughs, too, and feel as though you've made some new friends.

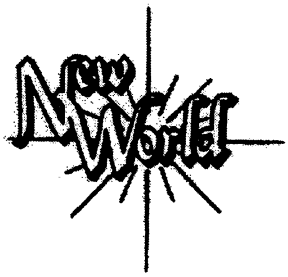
Then, we hope you'll join the Arnoskys every month by subscribing to *Growing for Market*. Call us toll-free at 800-307-8949 to order.

- August 1999

The New Farmers' Market

Farm-Fresh Ideas for Producers, Managers & Communities

Vance Corum, Marcie Rosenzweig and Eric Gibson



New World Publishing
Auburn, California

Contents

Part I Selling At The Market

Portrait of a Farmer 1

Getting Ready for Market 5

Do Farmers Markets Fit Into Your Marketing Plan? 5
Checking Out the Markets 9
Choosing Crops & Products for Farmers Markets 12
Business Incubator 21
The Quality Harvest 25
Preparing for Market 30

Running Your Farmers Market Business 33

Keeping Records 33
Staffing the Booth 35
Setting Prices 37
Pricing Techniques 40

Your Farmers Market Retail Storefront 43

Building the Store 43
Sales Floor 45
Logistics 47

Display 52

Vertical Displays 53
Display Fixtures 55

Merchandising 60

Appealing to the Senses 60
Abundance 64
Packaging 65
Say It With Signs 69

Sales & Promotion 76

It s a People Business 76
Improving Your Service 78
Promotion 88

Part II: Starting, Managing & Promoting The Market

Portrait of a Market 91

History of the Market 91
Becoming a Cornerstone of the Community 93
Challenges & Opportunities 96

Starting a Market 98

Why Start a Farmers' Market? 98
Attracting Farmers 101
Location 106
Timing 110
Organizer & Market Manager 114
Market Sponsorship 114
Budget 121

Managing the Market 126

Day-to-Day Concerns 126
Management Issues 132

Promoting the Market 150

Market Excellence 150
Market Demographics 153
Advertising 155
Publicity 163
Special Events 173
Tastings 174
Educational Events 181
Children's Events 182
Special Promotions 182
Fundraisers 188
Community Involvement 190

Part III: The New Farmers' Market

Embracing the Community 196

Educating the Public About Local Agriculture and Farmers' Markets 196
Social Concerns 208
Community Outreach 213

Expanding the Vision 216

Farmers' Market Websites 217
Friends of the Market 221
Network of Farmers' Markets 222
The Farmers' Market Forum: Issues for Internal Discussion 224
The Farmers' Market Forum: Issues for Public Discussion 228
New Relationships with Hope 234

Appendix I How Much Insurance Do You Need? 237

Appendix 2 An Oregon Farmers' Market Study 240

Appendix 3 Customer Surveys and Public Opinion 241

Appendix 4 Are Farmers' Markets Profitable? 244

Appendix 5 Benefits of Farmers Markets for Farmers, Consumers & Communities 246

Bibliography 250

Resources 251

BACKYARD MARKET GARDENING

The Entrepreneur's Guide to

Selling What You Grow

Foreword **12**
Introduction
CHAPTER 1 ..... **23**
Here's what I did to start a $36,000 business in my back yard 24
CHAPTER 2
Sites and Soils 35
Homemade Fertilizer 41
Green + Brown = Black Gold 43
Here's How I Make Compost in my Backyard Market Garden 43
Cover Cropping 48
A Cash and Cover Crop 49
Fitting The Farm To The Climate 50
by Ed Shamy 50
Should You Pay Rent for a Market Garden Site? 56
What To Look For If You Do Rent Land 58
CHAPTER 3
Tools Of The Trade **62**
Car or Truck? 62
Trellising 63
Sun screen 64
Walk-In Cooler 65
The Profit Is In The Picking 66
And After You Pick 70
15 Super Garden Tools Let You Whistle While You Work ... 71
1. Scoot-N-Doo 71
2. Multi-Dibble 72
3. Push Seeder 74
4. Wheelbarrow 76
5. Tool Shed 77
6. Washstand 78
7. Giant Cart 79
10. Maxidyne Speeder-Weeder 85
11. Rotary Tillers 86
12. When Your Garden Outgrows the Rotary Tiller 91
13-14. How To Install Plastic Mulch and Floating Row Covers 96
15. 'Flame Thrower' 98
CHAPTER 4
Marketing is the Fun Part – Do It First and Do It Right ... 102
Find Your Niche 103
Direct Marketing
Subscription or Retail? 108
Subscription Direct Marketing 109
Retail Direct Marketing 110
Membership Garden 110
Can a Community Supported Farm Work for You? .. 110
Intervale Community Farm 113
Benefits of Community Support Agriculture 119
Feed 20 Families on Half An Acre 124
Pay Now, Buy Later 126
Codman Community Farm 126
Home Delivery Membership Garden 135
Selling Convenience 135
Clientele Membership Club 139
(CMC), A 'Guaranteed Market' 139
Card Table in Your Front Yard 145
Farmers Markets 157
How Much Land is Needed to Grow Farm Stand Crops? ... 167
Sweet Corn Sure Is Popular, ... 169
Getting Ready for Your First Farmers Market Day 171
You Should Look As Good As Your Veggies 173
Pricing Plays a Key Role in Profitability 175
Ways to increase sales and have more fun 178
"What Else Can I Get for You?" 179
More Ways to Attract Attention and Increase Your Sales 180
Sell Yourself, Nobody Else Will 181
Learning Efficient Selling 186
Sales In The Bag 188
Be A Good Neighbor 190
Restaurants, Caterers, Specialty Stores 192
Profits By The Foot 193
Not Too Big, Not Too Small – But Just Right 194
Caterers and Institutions
A Different Mix of Vegetables 196

Pick Your Own Farming....198
Cash From Christmas Trees....201
Bad Weather – PYO's Achilles Heel....204
Producers Cooperatives....205
CHAPTER 5
The New Gold Rush....209
by T. L. Gettings....209
This grower goes the distance to satisfy customers..215
by Bob Hofstetter....215
The Corporate Connection....219
by George DeVault....219
How To Score BIG With Consumers....225
by T. L. Gettings....225
Subscription Farming....226
From The Orient, $1 A Square Foot....227
2-Acre Eden....228
Higher-Value High-Value Crops....229
by Craig Cramer....229
Grow Less, Make More....230
CHAPTER 6
This Game Called Business – The "Gambler's Paradigm"238
What is contained in a complete business plan?....239
What's the "Big Deal" about a Business Plan?....241
Conserving Capital, and the Wise Use of Credit....244
What About all that Boring Business Stuff?....245
Use Knowledge to Help You Achieve Your Goals....246
Ways to Increase Your Specialized Knowledge....249
CHAPTER 7
Small Is Beautiful....251
City Farm Grosses $238,000 On 1/2 Acre....255
by George DeVault....255
Do What No One Else Is Doing....260
by Craig Cramer....260
Are Raised Beds Worth The Effort?....266
Cages....268
Trellises....269
Irrigation
It's one thing you can't do without....270
Irrigation Made Easy....276
by George DeVault....276
Intensive Production In Your Greenhouse....279
A Homemade 'Greenhouse' For $100....284
The NEW FARM's Greenhouse Guide
By Bob Hofstetter....287
Three Growers Find Profit Under Cover....294
$22,000 and Growing....297
Tunnels Of Plenty....299
by Bob Hofstetter....299
CHAPTER 8
The Best Defense Is A Good Offense....306
For Weed, Disease and Pest Control....306
CHAPTER 9
A Plea for the Earth....311
Chapter 10
Eco Farming
The Obtainable, Sustainable Integrated Garden Farm System....320
Putting It Together In The Sustainable Food System....322
An Action Plan For The Integrated Garden Farming System....323
Natures Living Mulch – The Cover and Smother Crop For Natural "Green" Manure....327
A Challenge to Growers Everywhere....329
Afterword....331
Appendix 1....334
Appendix....338
Suppliers....338
Book Publishers....339
Periodicals and Newsletters....340
Bibliography and Suggested Reading List....344
Index

TITLE: Alternative Crops
PUBLICATION DATE: September 1996
ENTRY DATE: November 1996
EXPIRATION DATE:
UPDATE FREQUENCY:
CONTACT: Jane Gates

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
National Agricultural Library
Room 304, 10301 Baltimore Ave.
Beltsville, MD 20705-2351
Telephone: (301) 504-6559
FAX: (301) 504-6409
Internet: afsic@nal.usda.gov

DOCUMENT TYPE: text
DOCUMENT SIZE:

ISSN: 1052-5378

United States Department of Agriculture
National Agricultural Library
10301 Baltimore Ave.
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2351

Alternative Crops
July 1993 - June 1996

QB ~~99-11~~ 96-11

Quick Bibliography Series

Bibliographies in the Quick Bibliography Series of the National Agricultural Library, are intended primarily for current awareness, and as the title of the series implies, are not indepth exhaustive bibliographies on any given subject. However, the citations are a substantial resource for recent investigations on a given topic. They also serve the purpose of bringing the literature of agriculture to the interested user who, in many cases, could not access it by any other means. The bibliographies are derived from computerized on-line searches of the AGRICOLA data base. Timeliness of topic and evidence of extensive interest are the selection criteria.

The author/searcher determines the purpose, length, and search strategy of the Quick Bibliography. Information regarding these is available upon request from the author/searcher.

6TH EDITION, REVISED

Over Half a Million Copies in Print Worldwide

How to Grow

More Vegetables*

(and fruits, nuts, berries, grains, and other crops)

*than you ever thought possible on less land than you can imagine

A GROW BIOINTENSIVE® Publication

JOHN JEAVONS

Contents

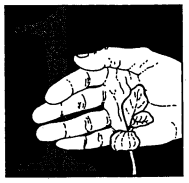
A Perspective for the Future / viii

***How to Grow* Made Simple / xiv**

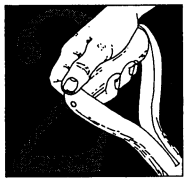
A General Preface / xvii

An Historical Introduction / xxii

History and Philosophy / 2

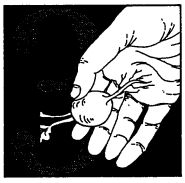


Bed Preparation / 6



Initial Preparation Process
Ongoing Preparation Process
Complete Texturizing Process
U-Bar Process

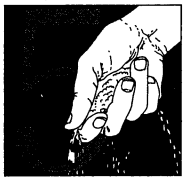
Sustainability / 22



The Loss of Soil Nutrients and Humus
Initially Adding Nutrients and Humus to the Soil
Losses = Gains?
100% Sustainability *Impossible*
The Need for Up to "99%" Sustainability
Ecology Action's Pursuit of Sustainability
Current Goals of Understanding and Achieving "99%" Sustainability
How to Better Sustain Your Soil's Fertility
The 60/30/10 Crop Area Model
Sustainability Worldwide

Compost / 34

A "Natural" System
Functions
The Process
Soil and Other Materials in the Compost Pile
Building the Pile
Key Organic Functions
Watering the Pile
Locating the Pile
Size and Timing
Compost Curing Maturation and Application Rates
Composting Methods Compared
Materials to Use Minimally or Not at All
Functions of Compost in the Soil
Building a Compost Pile Step by Step



Fertilization / 49

Soil Testing
Organic Soil Amendments
What a Home Soil Test Will Not Tell You
pH
Shaping the Bed
Adding Fertilizers and Compost
More-Sustainable Fertilization

Seed Propagation / 62

Seed Planting
Flats
Flat Soil
Some Causes of Poor Germination

Pricking Out
Transplanting
Spotting
Planting by the Phases of the Moon
Watering
Shade Netting
Mini-Greenhouses
Key Water Factors
Weeding
Planting in Season
Plant-Growing Temperature Ranges
Soil Temperatures for Seed Germination
MASTER CHARTS
(Use Column H for Spacings)
Vegetables and Garden Crops
Calorie, Grain, Protein Source, and Vegetable Oil Crops
Compost, Carbon, Organic Matter, Fodder, and Cover Crops
Energy, Fiber, Paper, and Other Crops
Tree and Cane Crops
Flower Spacing Chart
Herb Spacing Chart

Making the Garden Plan / 121
The Garden Year
Simple Mini-Garden
Four-Year Plans for One-Person Mini-Garden
Four-Person Family Food Garden

Companion Planting / 142
Health
Nutrition
Beneficial Herbs
Crop Rotation
Multi-Crop Planting
Physical Complementarity
Weed, Insect, and Animal Relationships
Companionate Vegetable Chart
Companionate Herb Chart

A Balanced Natural Backyard Ecosystem and Its Insect Life / 156
Natural Predators
Other Initiatives
Insect Pests and Plant Controls

Bibliography / 165

ın Chadwick
imals
propriate Technologies
ıd Regions/Dryland Farming
mboo
ɔdynamic
ɔintensive
(*see also* GROW BIOINTENSIVE)
ılorie/Diet Crops
ıildren's Books
imate
ɔmmunities
ɔmpanion Planting
ɔmpost/Carbon/Fodder/Organic Matter/Cover Crops
ɔmposting
ɔntainer Gardening
ɔokbooks
rafts
evelopment
ducation (*see* Learning/Teaching)
Energy
Farming
Fertilizer
Fiber Crops
Flowers
Food and Nutrition
(*see also* Solar Cooking)
Food Preservation and Storage
Fruits, Berries, and Nuts
Fukuoka Culture
Gardening (*see also* Container Gardening)
Global Perspective
Gourds
Grains
Grasses
Greenhouse Culture
GROW BIOINTENSIVE
(*see also* Biointensive)
Health
Hedges
Herbs
High-Altitude Food Raising
History
Homesteading
Housing
Human Waste
Hydroponics
Income
Insect Life and Balance/ Plant Health
Intensive Gardening
Language and Travel
Learning/Teaching
"Living Farm" Museums
Mushrooms
Native Americans
Out-of-Print Book Sources
Permaculture
Philosophy
Plant Names
Plant Nutrient Indicators
Pruning
Reference
Roots
Seed Catalogs
Seed Saving
Seeds/Diversity
Seeds/GMOs
Seeds/Green Revolution
Seeds/Plant Propagation
Soil
Solar Cooking
Supply Catalogs
Sustainable Agriculture
Terracing
Testing
Tools
Traditional Agriculture
Trees
Tropics
Vegetables
Water
Weeds

Who Is Ecology Action? / 219

Index / 235

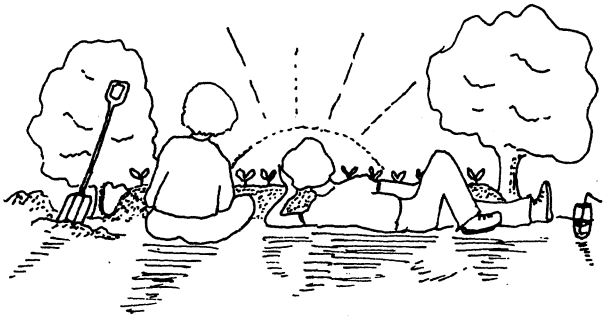
How to Grow Made Simple

The table of contents has special notations to make this book especially easy to use for the beginning gardener. One of the advantages of *How to Grow More Vegetables* is that *it describes a complete general approach to gardening.* As you learn the basics of soil preparation, the simple joys of gardening will gain depth. Bed preparation, fertilization, composting, seed propagation, transplanting, watering, and weeding are performed essentially the same way for *all* crops. Only the seedling flat and growing bed spacings are different from one crop to another (these are given in columns H, L1, and M2 of each section of the Master Charts beginning on page 87). *So, once you know how to grow lettuce, you know most of the basics for growing onions, tomatoes, wheat, apple trees, and even cotton!*

Remember to enjoy gardening while you are working—experience the warmth of the sun, the touch of a breeze, the scent of a flower, the smell of freshly turned soil, a bird's song, and the beauty of it all. Above all, have fun!

One way to harvest your fullest enjoyment is to garden with your family or friends. Light conversation makes the time pass quickly during even the most difficult tasks. Consider having a barbecue or picnic after double-digging, holding a neighborhood compost building party, or inviting your children to join in the harvesting! And preserving the year's harvest through drying, freezing, or canning vegetables and fruits is always a social occasion. Gardening together is half the fun of this practical experience of learning and sharing.

If you are a *beginning gardener or mini-farmer* reading *How to Grow More Vegetables,* you may want to skip most of the tables except for column H in the Master Charts for planning on pages 87–115, which lists plant spacings. You will probably start by growing vegetables and a few flowers and herbs, and many of these crops can be bought as seedlings from a local



nursery. Starting your own seedlings is a higher skill level that you may not want to try until your second or third year.

If you are an *intermediate gardener,* you will begin to use more of the tables and charts and to grow some compost crops, grains, and fruit trees. The bibliography (beginning on page 165) is a source of additional information on topics of interest that you may like to pursue as your skill as a mini-farmer grows.

Ten years in the garden will produce a *fully experienced food grower.* You can now draw on all of the information provided in this book as you work on growing most or all of your family's food at home, plant a mini-orchard in the front yard, begin an economic mini-farm, or teach others the skills you have already mastered.

As you begin to grow GROW BIOINTENSIVEly, be sure to grow *sustainable soil fertility crops*—which we are calling carbon-and-calorie crops (see pages 27–29)—as part of your garden. We need to grow crops that *feed the soil* as well as ourselves. There are many such soil fertility crops. Examples are corn, millet, wheat, oats, barley, cereal rye, and amaranth. These crops grow a lot of carbonaceous material for the compost pile, which in turn feeds the soil with humus, as well as provides a great deal of *nutritious food to eat.* Be sure to try a few soil fertility crops in your garden or mini-farm this year. Information about these *dual-purpose crops,* which provide both dietary calories *and* compost materials, is included in the Master Charts section beginning on page 87 of this book and in the compost crop sections of Ecology Action's Self-Teaching Mini-Series Booklets 10, 14, 15, 25, and 26.

It is important to grow calorie crops in your garden or mini-farm. About 90% of your diet-growing area should eventually be planted in these nutritious crops. There are two kinds—crops that are *area-efficient* in the production of calories, and crops that are *weight-efficient* for calories.

Area-efficient crops produce *a large number of calories in a given area* because of their high yields per unit of area. Examples of these farming-efficient crops are potatoes, sweet potatoes, garlic, parsnips, burdock, and salsify.

Weight-efficient crops contain *a large number of calories per pound of food*, but have lower yields per unit of area. Examples of these kitchen-efficient crops are wheat, millet, oats, cereal rye, barley, and corn. Each garden or mini-farm should optimally contain some of both kinds of these calorie crops.

For more information about these concepts, also see *One Circle*, published by Ecology Action, and *The Sustainable Vegetable Garden*, published by Ten Speed Press. Important information about calorie crops is included in the Master Charts as well as in Ecology Action's Self-Teaching Mini-Series Booklets 14, 15, 25, 26, and 28.

How to Grow More Vegetables provides you with everything you need to create a garden symphony—from the basic techniques to advanced planning skills for a beautifully planted backyard homestead. But the real excitement is that each of us will never know everything! Alan Chadwick, after he had been gardening for 50 years, said, "I am still learning!" And so are we all. We have a lifetime of growing before us, and the opportunity to continually improve our understanding of the living canvas we are painting.

More Gardening Books from Ten Speed Press

THE SUSTAINABLE VEGETABLE GARDEN

A Backyard Guide to Healthy Soil and Higher Yields

by John Jeavons and Carol Cox

This quick-and-dirty introduction to Ecology Action's gardening methods shows how easy it is to grow healthy, organic fruits and vegetables in almost any plot of land.

128 pages, $11.95, ISBN 1-58008-016-2

THE GARDENER'S TABLE

A Guide to Natural Vegetable Growing and Cooking

by Richard Merrill and Joe Ortiz

Noted horticulturist Richard Merrill and award-winning cookbook author Joe Ortiz team up to deliver the ultimate no-nonsense guide to cultivating and cooking from a kitchen garden, including 50 creative, healthful recipes.

464 pages, $24.95, ISBN 0-89815-876-1

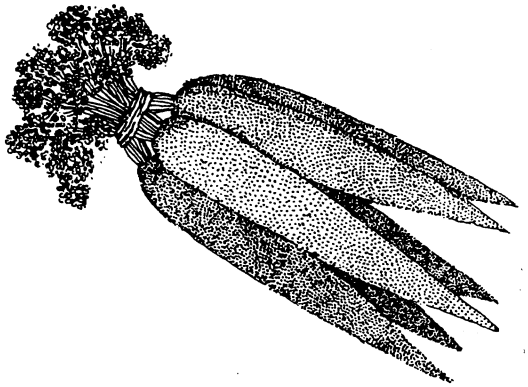
ALLERGY-FREE GARDENING

The Revolutionary Guide to Healthy Landscaping

by Thomas L. Ogren

After researching the role that urban landscaping plays in the allergy health crisis, horticulturist Tom Ogren compiled this extensive reference that will help gardeners and landscapers make landscaping choices to drastically reduce exposure to harmful allergens.

288 pages, $19.95, ISBN 1-58008-166-5



And, after you grow those vegetables . . .

ECO-CUISINE

An Ecological Approach to Vegan and Vegetarian Cooking

by Ron Pickarski

Using his flair for fresh ingredients, lovingly prepared and beautifully presented, Ron Pickarski, author of *Friendly Foods,* advocates healthful, nutritious food based on the simplest components and flavored with the juices of fruits and vegetables.

288 pages, $19.95, ISBN 0-89815-635-1

RECIPES FROM A KITCHEN GARDEN

by Renee Shepherd and Fran Raboff

Unique recipes to help you make the most of your garden's bounty.

176 pages, $11.95, ISBN 1-89815-540-1

MORE RECIPES FROM A KITCHEN GARDEN

176 pages, $11.95, ISBN 1-89815-730-7

TEN SPEED PRESS / CELESTIAL ARTS / TRICYCLE PRESS
P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707
Phone (800) 841-2665 / Fax (510) 559-1629
order@tenspeed.com / www.tenspeed.com

NEWS RELEASE

Contact: Rich Pirog, (515) 294-1854, or

Laura Miller , (515) 294-5272

FOR RELEASE AFTER April 17, 2000

LEOPOLD CENTER OFFERS NEW LOOK AT GRAPES, AN OLD IOWA CROP

AMES, Iowa – Once upon a time, Iowa farmers grew grapes that were prized for their quality and shipped to neighboring states. Today those vineyards have disappeared, and most of the fresh grapes sold or processed in Iowa come from California and Chile.

But the story doesn't have to end here. A report issued by the Leopold Center for Sustainable Agriculture at Iowa State University shows that grapes could be a promising value-added crop for Iowa farmers looking for specialty markets or agri-tourism opportunities.

The Leopold Center report coincides with formation of the Iowa Wine and Grape Advisory Council by Iowa Secretary of Agriculture Patty Judge, and announcement of a new Iowa Food Policy Council by Governor Tom Vilsack. The 30-page paper explores the sources of grapes, wine and juices available in Iowa grocery stores, and suggests ways to help redevelop the industry from a local food systems perspective.

"It's important to take an historical and current look at the system that supplies grapes for Iowa when you consider the potential to rebuild the state's grape industry," said Rich Pirog, the Leopold Center's education coordinator, author of the report. "Iowa has a history of grape production that dates to before the Civil War in the Council Bluffs area. Later, this area supported an active grape growers association representing owners of 400 acres of vineyards."

Pirog found that Iowa was sixth in grape production in the United States in 1919. By 1929, Iowa's production of grapes peaked with a yield of 15.8 million pounds. During that period, Iowa grapes had a reputation for good quality and were shipped to Colorado, Nebraska and South Dakota. Iowa-grown grapes brought association members 30 percent more revenue per ton than the national average, Pirog noted.

However, interest in grape production sagged in the 1930s and 1940s with the focus on corn and soybean production. Widespread use of the corn herbicide 2, 4-D resulted in chemical drift, which damaged vineyards throughout the Midwest. Many vineyards were not replaced and grape production dropped to only 56,000 pounds in 1997.

Interest in agricultural diversification and locally-grown produce are prompting state officials to take another look at Iowa's grape industry. Pirog estimated that Iowa would need an additional 330 acres of vineyards to supply five percent of the wine and table grapes, and one percent of the grape juice consumed in the state. Two of the state's largest wineries have indicated they also want to process more locally-grown grapes, rather than using imported varieties.

"Many of Iowa's neighboring states have developed grape and wine promotion programs to renew their grape industries," Pirog added. "In Missouri, for example, a program has helped increase the market share of wine produced and sold within the state, and built on the state's tourism industry."

For a copy of the report, contact the Center at (515) 294-3711, or download it from the Center's web site

800-346-9140

ATTRA
Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas

LAVENDER AS AN ALTERNATIVE FARMING ENTERPRISE

CURRENT TOPIC

ATTRA is the national sustainable agriculture information center funded by the USDA's Rural Business -- Cooperative Service.

By Katherine L. Adam
ATTRA Program Specialist
February 2001

Introduction

The lavender oil industry in the U.S. is located in the Dungeness River Valley of the state of Washington, where lavender can be grown perennially. It is marketed through agri-tourism and direct farm-to-market sales of products. Lavender may be grown as an annual in many parts of the U.S. for various niche markets.

In the appropriate climate lavender (*Lavandula* spp.) is a long-lived perennial with a typical productive life of about 10 years (for English lavender *L. angustifolia*). Since all types of lavender require a mean temperature range between 45°F and 75°F, it is not possible to raise lavender as a perennial field crop in most of the U.S. Lavender will not survive freezing. The Dungeness River Valley, near Sequim [skwim, rhymes with *swim*], WA, is the only part of the U.S where medium- to large-scale lavender oil production has proved economically feasible. In the box to the right is some basic information about growing lavender as a perennial for its essential oil (1).

The essential oil is used in some parts of the world in food manufacturing to flavor beverages, ice cream, candy, baked goods, and chewing gum. Non-food products manufactured with lavender oil include soaps, colognes, and other cosmetics. Very high quality essential oil of lavender is required for use in the alternative health practice of aromatherapy.

Lavender is most commonly grown in the U.S. as an **annual**—primarily as a bedding plant, herb specimen, tea plant, bee forage, or source of fragrance in landscaping designs. The greenhouse industry finds it a popular plant for home gardeners, and lavenders can fill some short-term public landscaping needs.

Lavender and Agri-tourism

Sequim, WA, has recently been proclaimed the "lavender capital" of the U.S. Sequim has a favorable geographic location for lavender, which grows best in a Mediterranean type of climate, with warm summers and cool, dry winters. Sequim (pop. 4,400), in the "rain shadow" of the Olympic Mountains—protected by the mountains from rain sweeping in from both east and west—draws thousands of visitors to view the purple haze of lavender fields during its annual mid-July "Celebrate Lavender Festival," which coincides with the lavender harvest season. Sequim also has a thriving bedding plants industry, which sponsors an herb festival each May. In fact, Sequim is a

- Lavender is best grown from cuttings from clones of standard types. For information on suppliers of lavender plugs, please request the ATTRA publication *Suppliers of Plugs for Medicinal Herb Crops*.
- Cultivars with erect flower stalks facilitate mechanical harvesting.
- An acre of true lavender (*L. angustifolia)* produces from 300 to 1800 pounds of dried flowers (12 to 15 pounds of essential oil—about 2 gal.)
- An acre of one of the lavandin cultivars (*L. x intermedia*) yields 3500 to 4500 pounds of dried flowers per acre (53 to 67 pounds of essential oil).
- More than 30 different types of lavender oils and blends are traded on world markets.

may be sold under deceptively similar names. For example, 'Hidcote' is *L. angustifolia*, while 'Giant Hidcote' is *L. x intermedia*. Cultivars used for landscaping usually differ from those appropriate for industrial applications. Many of the companies listed in ATTRA's *Suppliers of Plugs for Medicinal Herb Crops* specialize in lavender. (This publication may be viewed on the ATTRA website **www.attra.org**.)

For more complete information on the cultivars of lavender and lavandin, see Arthur Tucker's article in the scientific journal *Bailleya* (3).

More on essential oil production

Production of lavender for its essential oil ranges from large- to very small-scale. A distillery (still) that fits into a barn can be purchased for $2000 (4), producing a gal. of pure essential oil per batch. Larger-scale distilleries are typically located where they can conveniently process the output from a number of neighboring farms. There are many distilleries located in the Pacific Northwest, where until recently they were used to process the mint oil crop. Such a manufacturing plant costs upward of $500,000 to build (4). A few are located in the upper Midwest.

In manufactured lavender oil products the pure oil of lavender may be cut with cheap imported sweet almond oil because "customers find it pleasing" as a fragrance (4). Oil of lavandin (*L. x intermedia*) is used for inexpensive soaps & toiletries.

When 50% of the lavender buds have opened, the flowering tops are cut with a swather, then dried in a well-ventilated space with subdued light. Sometimes they are windrowed in the field, then thrown into a specially constructed wagon (a "buggy") with tubes that connect into pipes at the distillery to be hot water processed during the first run. The farmer retains ownership of the resulting essential oil and must have a marketing plan for it. The farmer is responsible for cost of processing the crop into essential oil of a quality standard and quantity acceptable to the fragrance industry (or his own clientele). The amount of oil distilled per acre can vary greatly. Quality depends on a wide range of variables—including stage of blossoming, harvesting at the right time of day, weather conditions, and methods of harvest and storage. Since the specific gravity of lavender oil is less than 1.0, there is no need for solvent extraction, as the oil will float on top and can be decanted easily. A schematic diagram of the steam distillation process used in France for lavender oil production is provided on p. 18 of Lavabre's *Aromatherapy Workbook.*

Essential oils crops may be grown "on contract" for manufacturers in the fragrance and flavoring sector, but it is not easy for a beginner to secure such a contract. More typically, the large farms that produce lavender as a raw material for the fragrance industry are vertically integrated (owned by the manufacturing corporation and run by a manager). There is no lavender oil industry in the U.S. at present, comparable to the export industries in France, New Zealand, and Australia's island of Tasmania.

I have talked to several people who make and sell very high-quality essential oils through mail-order for a private clientele. It is possible to distill essential oils using a device as small as a home pressure cooker, but only a few drops of oil are produced at a time.

The fact that there is a crucial difference between growing an alternative crop for bulk sales and doing on-farm value-added has been noted by herb consultant Richard A. Miller (5):

> Too many farmers, seeking to save their farms, tried to change over to the "hot" crops. In doing so, most missed the whole idea of this form of marketing. Those who made a finished product (like Frozen Pesto) found it easier to survive the financial demands of this [the herb] industry. Those who sought to grow raw materials found a more difficult row to hoe. (p. 43)

References: (cont.)

8) Hartung, Tammi. 2000. Growing 101 Herbs That Heal. Storey Books, Pownal, VT. 250 pages.

9) Grudens-Schuck, Nancy and Judy Green. 1991. Farming Alternatives: A Guide to Evaluating the Feasibility of New Farm-Based Enterprises. Northeast Regional Agricultural Engineering Service, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY. 88 p.

Further Reading:

Calvo, Maria Carmen and J. Segura. 1989. *In vitro* propagation of lavender [*Lavandula latifolia*]. HortScience. Vol. 24, No. 2. p. 375-376.

DeBaggio, T. 1989. Hardy lavenders. The Herb Companion. April-May. p. 10-15.

Lavabre, Marcel F. 1990. Aromatherapy Workbook. Healing Arts Press, Rochester, VT. 164 p.

Miller, R.A. 1985. The Potential of Herbs as a Cash Crop. Acres U.S.A., Metairie, LA. p. 51, 77, 111, 131, 148, 167. [Information on processing dried lavender.]

Miller, R.A. 1993. Cultivation and harvest of lavender. Herb Market Report. January. p. 4–8.

Sturdivant, Lee and Tim Blakley. 1999. Medicinal Herbs in Garden, Field, and Marketplace. San Juan Naturals, Friday Harbor, WA. p. 210–211.

Tucker, A.O. 1985. Lavender, spike, and lavandin. The Herbarist. No. 51. p. 44–50.

Tucker, A.O. and T. DeBaggio. 1984. 'Irene Doyle' lavender. HortScience. Vol. 19, No. 4. p. 595.

Tucker, A.O. and B.M. Lawrence. 1987. Botanical nomenclature of commercial sources of essential oils, concretes, and absolutes. p. 183–220. In: L.E. Craker and J.E. Simon (ed.). Herbs, Spices and Medicinal Plants: Recent Advance in Botany, Horticulture and Pharmacology. Oryx Press, Phoenix, AZ.

Verlet, N. 1988. History, production and marketing of lavender in France. p. 146–54. In: J.E. Simon and L.Z. Clavio (ed.). Proceedings: Third National Herb Growing Conference. Purdue Research Foundation, West Lafayette, IN.

Electronic Resources:

Frontier Herb Information on essential oils standards may be viewed at http://www.frontierherb.com

Celebrate Lavender Festival growing information **Seattlepi.nwsource.com/nwgardens/wins06.shtml.**

Statford Park Lavender. 2000. Lavender on-line: Oil distillation. www.lavender.au.com/distillation.htm.

The Herb growing and Marketing Network is on the Internet at http://www.herbnet.com.

Horizon Herbs
P.O. Box 69
Williams, OR, 97544
(541)846-6704
(541)846-6233 FAX
e-mail: herbseed@chatlink.com
URL:http://www.chatlink.com/~herbseed
Mediterranean herbs ($3.00)

Additional electronic resources and a bibliography icinal herbs are listed in ATTRA's *Herb Overview*, at: http:/www.attra.org/attra-pub/herb.html.

Katherine L. Adam
ATTRA Program Specialist
February 2001

THE ATTRA PROJECT IS OPERATED BY THE NATIONAL CENTER FOR APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY UNDER A GRANT FROM THE RURAL BUSINESS-COOPERATIVE SERVICE, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE. THESE ORGANIZATIONS DO NOT RECOMMEND OR ENDORSE PRODUCTS, COMPANIES, OR INDIVIDUALS. ATTRA IS LOCATED AT P.O. BOX 3657, FAYETTEVILLE, AR 72702. ATTRA STAFF MEMBERS PREFER TO RECEIVE REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION ABOUT SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE VIA THE TOLL-FREE NUMBER 800-346-9140.

Pine Straw: Money Growing on Trees

by Regina G. Burgess

Landscapers around the country are discovering that pine straw makes excellent landscaping material. Besides being colorful, it interlocks and doesn't wash away like bark or other ground covers. Since it is a natural mulch, it adds nutrients back to the soil as it decomposes. Landscapers also like it because it gives a raised bed look that adds qualities that other materials don't. Pine straw also protects from the effects of sun, wind, and temperature extremes.

Pine straw can also cut down on the need for mowing since contoured pine straw islands look attractive and can replace large areas of high maintenance lawn. With just a few plants or trees, these islands can transform an otherwise drab landscape into a work of art. Pine straw also cuts down on the amount of water needed by the plants. Three to five inches of pine straw mulch will conserve moisture and reduce watering requirements. Also, pine straw is a weed deterrent so plant beds don't require as much weeding.

Georgia State Senator Tommie Williams began Georgia Pine Straw fifteen years ago. "I was teaching high school and harvesting pine straw in the afternoon to supplement my teacher's salary," Williams says. The business grew enough during the first year to allow him to pursue it full time. At first, most of Georgia Pine Straw's customers were in Georgia and South Carolina. Currently, ninety percent of their market is in the southeast, but they sell all over the United States and Canada to golf courses, commercial landscaping companies, mass merchandisers, homeowners' associations, and small nurseries.

One of the benefits of pine straw harvesting is that it allows the producer to start out small. According to Lynn Hooven, Chief of Forestry management at the Georgia Forestry Commission, all one needs to harvest pine straw is, "a pick-up truck, a rake, a pitchfork, and a couple hundred dollars to build a box baler and you can generate a little income," he says. A box baler is about

y inches square and three feet long. The baler lays ng in the bottom, packs in the straw, and then hand-ties the bales. "All that's required to harvest pine straw is to rake the straw, clean it, and bale it," says Hooven. "Pine straw can be retailed door to door to homeowners," he says. Pine straw harvesting can be part-time weekend work or a full-time business.

The main requirement for harvesting pine straw is finding the trees. Williams leases about 15,000 acres that he manages, mows, sprays, and fertilizes. He brokers another 40,000 acres where other people produce the pine straw and he sells it for them. "Our pine straw bales are 28 to 30 inches by 14 inches square and weigh about twenty pounds," Williams says. One bale will cover fifty square feet at a depth of three inches. There is no current standard for bale size, however, but this will probably change according to consumer demands.

The most popular types of pine aw are longleaf (needles twelve-plus inches long), slash (needles eight inches long), and loblolly (needles six inches long). Longleaf straw is premium straw since it keeps its color the longest, and is followed by slash and loblolly. Pine needles stay on trees for two years providing food for the tree through photosynthesis. After two years, the needles turn brown and fall off. The greatest needle fall is from September through November, so the best time to rake needles is during the winter.

When trees are ten years old, a pine stand will yield between 125 to 200 bales per acre. The maximum yield is around age 15 when yields are about 200 to 300 bales per acre. Yields decrease slightly after age 15 to about 200 bales per acre. Pine trees can be harvested from the time they are ten years old until they are about twenty years old when the trees provide a final income in the form of timber. The needles can be harvested from the time they fall off the tree until about ten months later and still retain their value.

Types of Pine Straw

- Longleaf (needles twelve-plus inches long)
- Slash (needles eight inches long)
- Loblolly (needles six inches long)

Resources:

University of Florida
School of Forest Resources and Conservation
Gainesville, FL 32611
http://www.sfrc.ufl.edu/Extension/pubtxt/cir831.html

North Carolina State University
Cooperative Extension Service
http://www.ces.ncsu.edu/nreos/forest/woodland/won-18.html

University of Georgia
Warnell School of Forest Resources
http://www.forestry.uga.edu/warnell/research/html/forestry/pinestraw.html

Benefits of Pine Straw

- High in nitrogen
- Great fertilizer
- Attractive appearance
- Deters weeds
- Insect and rodent free
- Will not wash away during heavy rain
- Easy to work with
- Prevents some melons and vegetables from forming mildew or mold
- When pine straw loses its color, just add fresh on top

has sales of up to $10 million annually. Williams estimates that the pine straw industry in the southeast area of the U.S. is a $250 million wholesale industry. "The market's pretty saturated now," admits Williams. "You have to be very service and quality oriented to keep your business. Be aware of quality and service and treat people like you want to be treated," he advises. He says that pine straw harvesting is "as profitable as long as you can manage your overhead."

H. Food Safety

H. Food Safety

I. APIARY

J. Non-Farm/Farm Residents

K. Education

University of California
Sustainable Agriculture
Research and Education Program

Market Cooking for Kids: Facilitating Field Trips to Sustainable Agriculture Farms

Final Report - July 1998

Principal Investigators:
Sibella Kraus
Karin Rosman
Contact Sibella Kraus
1417 Josephine Street
Berkeley, CA 94703
Phone: (510) 526-1793
Fax: (510) 524-7153
E-mail: sibella@igc.org

A FARMER'S GUIDE TO HOSTING FARM VISITS FOR CHILDREN

by

Market Cooking for Kids

A project of the Center for Urban Education about Sustainable Agriculture (CUESA)

WHY A FARM FIELD TRIP GUIDE?

"What people do not understand, they do not value, what they do not value, they will not protect, and what they do not protect, they will lose. "-- Charles Jordan

In the San Francisco Bay Area, as in other urban areas, most children know little about where their food comes from and the relationship between their own health, healthy food, healthy regional agriculture, and an overall healthy environment. For many young people, farmers and farming have an almost mythical quality, people and places imagined but not directly experienced. Urban children still read books that include farm animals and sing about old MacDonald, but most have never been to a farm or met a farmer. If future generations are going to care about farms and farming they must be directly exposed to the people and places that produce their food.

Many farmers already host educational trips. The goals of this guide are to share the good educational ideas that are already in practice on farms and to encourage and facilitate farm field trips by providing workable, effective ideas for planning and hosting educationally powerful visits. We have focused suggested activities on elementary school students, though many activities are adaptable for other age groups. This guide can also serve as a resource and starting place for teachers who want to plan farm field trips.

LEARNING ON THE FARM

Hands-on experiences

Farm visits provide a perfect opportunity for students to use all of their senses to learn: the more they can touch, smell, and taste the things they are learning about, the more deeply they will understand and remember what they learn. Even the simplest aspects of farm work are worthwhile for students to experience. While harvesting produce or helping to milk cows or goats are time-honored activities, weeding, turning compost, digging, gleaning, and other tasks can be equally as engaging.

It is easiest to allow ample hands-on time to students when the size of the group is manageable. We recommend dividing a class into smaller groups (5-10, ideally) for many of the activities. Group size should be determined by how many adults are available to help lead and supervise activities, and the age and energy level of the group.

Offering students an explanation of what they are doing during hands-on activities, and how it fits into the "big picture," is essential. If students understand that digging prepares a bed to be planted, or that weeding by hand helps reduce the need for pesticides, they are able to see the purpose behind the work.

It is important to realize that hands-on experiences on the farm won't always equate to "getting the work done." The focus should be on the experience: process rather than end product. If some good work gets done along the way, so much the better. For guidance on specific hands-on activities, see the General Activities section.

Observing the seasons

Just as seasons influence the work of the farm, the specific work and crops that accompany each season can help organize a successful farm field trip.

Building lessons around the concept of seasonality is particularly meaningful for urban children whose direct experience of fresh fruits and vegetables is often limited. Canned, frozen and processed foods and the ready availability of imported produce in most supermarkets have lessened children's awareness of when crops are in season.

The simplest way to incorporate the concept of seasonality is to talk about what is happening during the current season, what happened before it, and what will be happening in the next season. Talking students through the whole cycle of the seasons and involving them in a hands-on way in the activities of the current season, is a useful lesson in the reality of food production.

PLANNING

When hosting a farm field trip, it is crucial to have a thorough conversation with the teacher who is bringing the group. Make certain teachers understand that you can act as host and teacher at the farm only if they (and the adult chaperones) take responsibility for the conduct of the group. Have the discussion well in advance of the visit so that both you and the teacher can prepare as necessary. It is useful to discuss the following issues:

When to Call

Teachers are hard to reach by phone (as hard to reach as many farmers!). When you call the school, find out what time teachers have lunch, when the school day ends, and if the teacher has a "prep period." These are the best times to call. Ask the teacher for a home phone number so that you can reach her during the evenings.

Number of students visiting

Determine the number of students your farm can accommodate. Teachers often want to visit with more than one classroom to share the expenses of a bus. You should decide how many classes (typically 16-30

students each) your farm can accommodate. Let teachers know clearly what your limits are. Ask if there are any students with special needs that should be discussed.

Age of students
In order to prepare appropriate activities, you need to know the age or grade level of the students. In order to determine what age levels you can best accommodate, think about what you want to teach and share at your farm and discuss this with the teacher. In general, shorter, simpler activities are best for younger students. Even a simple task like weeding can be adapted for different age levels -- one farmer noted that young children were great at clearing away big weeds in the orchard, whereas weeding in beds was more appropriate for older children.

Number of adult chaperones and teachers
If you want a minimum or maximum number of adults to accompany the students, let the teacher know. If you plan to divide the visitors into groups, it is a good idea to have one adult per small group. For example, if you have 24 students and plan on dividing them into three groups, you might tell the teacher they should bring at least three and no more than six adults.

Role of adult chaperones
Parents and other adult volunteers who accompany students on field trips do so to be helpful, and should be given a clear role or responsibility. If adult support is needed to manage the group, the teacher should make this expectation clear to all volunteers, prior to the group's arrival and again upon arrival.

Size of groups
Small groups of 5-10 students allow for more hands-on time, stay focused better, and are easier to move around the farm. Most teachers are familiar with working with students in smaller groups and will welcome this approach. If possible, try to involve several members of the farm staff in the visit.

Travel time and directions
Discuss the length of the visit and how long it will take to get from the school to your farm. Provide clear directions to be passed along to the bus driver, including where the bus can turn around and park. Make clear your time limitations and learn what those of the teacher are. Clarify what the group's needs are for lunch and snacks, and schedule breaks accordingly.

Lunch and snacks
clarify what the group's needs are for lunch and snacks, and schedule breaks accordingly. For an additional cost, or as part of your fees, you might offer snacks of fresh produce or farm products.

Special interests
Find out what the visiting group's specific interests are, and what they hope to get out of the visit. If possible, work with the teacher to synthesize those interests into a theme for the day. A theme can be a concept or questions that bring together the different experiences of the day. For example, you may wish to focus on "life cycles," including a discussion of plants, animals, soil, and compost. Themes can be very basic, such as "where do food and fiber come from," learning about farm animals, raising food crops, the medicinal and culinary value of flowers and herbs, or what happens in each season on the farm.

Preparation and follow-up activities
It is useful for you to know how students will prepare for their visit to your farm, and how they will follow-up on the experience. You may recommend that the group prepare questions to ask you when they visit. Or, students might read a book about a farm before visiting and discuss what they think they'll see and do. You may also want to suggest that the group observe things on their way from the school to the farm. What changes did they notice in the smells, sounds, and landscape? Will the students be completing

a writing or other activity after their visit? If you know what infonnation they are gathering for follow-up assignments, you can help provide access to what they need. The more students are asked to think about the visit before and after they go, the more they will learn and remember.

Costs for a visit

Most farms around the San Francisco Bay Area charge between $1 -5 per student for day visits. Some farms run occasional visits for schools at no cost, but farms that charge a small amount are typically able to host trips more often because the fee helps to cover time lost from other work or other expenses incurred in hosting the trip. Teachers need time to arrange the funding for a trip (either through school funds or student fundraisers), so it is a good idea to discuss this early.

GUIDELINES FOR GENERAL ACTIVITIES

Don't over plan

Dru Rivers of Full Belly Farm says that the biggest mistake she made in her first years of hosting educational visits was to plan each minute of the day. Inevitably things wouldn't go according to plan and the day could seem rushed or hectic. She also points out that kids need some unstructured time to "just play." It's a good idea to leave enough flexibility in your schedule to spend more time on activities that students really like and cut short activities that are less engaging.

Give Equal time

Those who are familiar with elementary school children will attest to fairness being a "big deal" at this age. Avoid hassles by ensuring that all students get a chance to participate in activities equally. If this is not possible, try rotating who gets a chance to do things, letting students know that over the course of the day, they'll each get to participate in something special. If students are engaged in an activity that requires tools and you don't have enough for each student to have one, make sure that one or more adults supervise the activity so each student gets a turn to work with the implement.

Set clear ground rules for children and adults

A visit will be much more successful for you and the group if everyone has a clear understanding of the rules. Specify any rules that are needed to make the visit safe for all, and comfortable for you and your staff. For example:

- The farm is a home where people live and should be respected as such.
- Certain places are off limits. You will need to define these clearly.
- When walking from place to place, the group must stay behind the farmer because you know where you are going and they don't.
- Garden beds and rows are fragile. Show where it is OK to walk and where it isn't.
- Students must keep any trash they create in their backpacks.
- Animals should be treated with respect. If you will be visiting animals, specify appropriate behavior for interacting with animals, such as not yelling, being gentle, not feeding animals anything except what you give them to eat.

Make it clear to parents and teachers that you need them to help supervise the children's learning throughout the day, and that you'll be asking them for help at certain points. They should concentrate on helping the group stay focused.

Meeting people who work on the farm

Sometimes this happens along the way as other activities happen. It can be a nice change of pace for you and your staff to talk to kids, answer their questions, and ask them some yourselves. If you have staff members who speak another language (Spanish, for example), many bilingual students will especially

welcome a chance to talk with them.

SUGGESTIONS FOR HANDS-ON ACTIVITIES

Planting /transplanting from seedling to pot
Ideal Group Size: Small groups. *Equipment:* Seeds, starts, or bulbs; plastic cups; trowels. *Adults Needed:* One per small group.
You can poke holes in the bottom of recyclable plastic cups and use these for students to plant a seed or seedling to take home, or to their classrooms or school garden. Most students don't realize that many plants are started in a greenhouse and later transplanted. It can be a great lesson to show students how transplanting is conducted. If students are very young they may not plant or transplant things as successfully as you would, so it's best to plant things with supervision. If they are planting/transplanting on the farm, you should choose a space where it won't be a problem if the plants don't germinate. If the students take seedlings back, tell them what kind of care to provide.

Harvesting
Ideal Group Size: Whole group. *Equipment:* Harvesting implements, if needed. (If implements are sharp they can be passed out to adults only.) Baskets or boxes to hold harvest. Adults Needed: One to each 5-10 students if you want roving adults to help oversee a careful harvest or supervise sharp harvesting tools. This is often the best loved activity for kids, in part because it may involve another great activity -- eating! Be cautious when taking students into production areas. Make sure students and chaperones clearly understand where to walk, so beds don't get trampled, and specify how much of a crop they can harvest. Have adults oversee the harvesting if you only want to harvest a small amount. For example, if you are harvesting flowers with kids, have them each stand near the one flower they want to harvest and have the adults come around with shears allowing each student to harvest her flower. It is preferable to have each student partake in harvesting rather than having a few students do so on behalf of everyone.

When harvesting a large quantity, James Cohea of the Our Farm CSA project reports that they've found it useful to identify which students are fastest at harvesting and put them in the front of a row to have them set the pace. This is a good way to make a game of things and make a work experience more productive.

Tasting
Ideal Group Size: Whole group. *Equipment:* Water to rinse produce or fruit; hose for kids to rinse their hands; a knife if needed; serving container. *Adults Needed:* None.
There is no better hands-on experience. Kids enjoy tasting crops even more when they've harvested them. This can be a great way to get kids to try things that they might not try at home. If the group is staying for a meal, try to incorporate farm produce. Making a salad, preparing fruit, or making herbal tea for a meal is educational and fun for students. If you grow several varieties of a crop, consider letting the kids taste and compare them.

Composting, Soil Exploration
Ideal Group Size: Whole group. *Equipment:* Digging implements. *Adults Needed:* None. With the increase in school gardens, some students may be familiar with small scale composting. It is great to have students see different stages of compost, help turn a heap, or turn compost into a bed. Have students feel the soil and notice the different textures and smells. Talk about decomposition. If you have a coat hanger or metal rod to insert in a pile so that kids can feel the heat of a hot pile, this is always very impressive. Many kids enjoy digging so having kids turn or sift soil can be very satisfying.

Petting animals, feeding animals
Ideal Group Size: Small groups. *Equipment:* Feed. *Adults Needed:* One per small group. Contact with animals is without question the favorite farm activity of most kids. "While it's great to talk to kids about

concepts like organics and sustainability, at a young age they take so much in through their senses, and animals provide so much sensory input," says Dru Rivers of Full Belly Farm. Having kids participate in the normal chores and care of animals is an excellent learning experience. Be sure to provide a handwashing station so the kids can clean their hands after handling animals.

Gleaning

Ideal Group Size: Whole group. *Equipment:* Harvesting tools, boxes for produce. *Adults Needed:* None, though they can help and motivate.

Gleaning can be an extremely rewarding service-learning project for young students, junior high and high school students, and civic and religious groups or workplace volunteers. Even very young students can glean a remarkable amount in a short time. Salvaged food can be donated to a local food bank or soup kitchen or be sent home to feed the volunteer group. While young students can sometimes find a big project daunting, there is a great sense of accomplishment in completing a big task. Moreover, harvesting or gleaning food gives students an appreciation of the "countless labors" that go into bringing their food to the store and dinner table.

Other Ideas

Following are additional suggestions from farmers for children's activities which you may wish to adapt for your farm.

- Pickle & salsa making
- Canning and preserving
- Music in barn
- Dried flower arrangements
- Backyard composting; construct a worm composting unit for the classroom
- Counting, care for fish
- Hands-on instruction in spinning, weaving
- Instruction in how apples are grown; pruning, thinning, harvesting, cider making
- Observing a bee hive
- Climb on farm tractors
- Sort beans
- Milking goats, cows
- Learning about beneficial insects
- Learning about cover crops
- Tree care and identification; nursery tour
- Teaching station where produce is prepared for market or visiting packing sheds (allows students to see behind the scenes of the farm)
- Hay ride around the farm to see what's there before a tour
- Discussing the interaction of wildlife and farmlife

Activities that can tie in to school subjects

Here are some ways to connect a farm visit to classroom learning:

- Math: measuring and counting activities
- Science: understanding pH, life cycles, water and sun cycles
- Language arts: writing activities about being on a farm, new vocabulary
- Art: drawing, sketching, collage making
- Social sciences: questions about the history of the farm; interview the farmer; learn where produce is sold; learn about environmental practices on farm; mapping activities

GROUP MANAGEMENT AND SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

It should be made clear to teachers that management of the group's behavior during a visit is the responsibility of the teacher and adult chaperones. Farm staff who are involved showing students the farm and teaching them about it can only succeed if others are managing the group.

Students are usually so engaged by what they see and do on farms that while they may be energetic, they are interested and well-behaved. To ensure that visits run smoothly, host farms should:

- Greet students when they arrive and explain to them what they are going to do during the day. Let kids know where the bathrooms are, when they will eat lunch, and answer questions before getting started.
- Notice when students seem engaged in activities and adjust the schedule if possible to spend more time on the activities that hold their attention and move more quickly through activities where they seem less focused.

Staffing a visit

The farm must have at least one person who is responsible for planning for and hosting the group. Some farms recruit interns who have a background working with young people, to more easily host trips. If the classes include bilingual students, a staff person who speaks another language can be a wonderful host.

Insurance considerations

Ask the teacher to provide you with a letter from the school or school board saying that the liability insurance that covers students during school also covers them on a field trip. You should also contact your insurance agent and let them know that you are planning to host field trips. Explain that the group will have its own coverage and inquire whether you need additional coverage. If so, ask the school to cover this cost.

Safety considerations

As a precaution, make sure that the teacher or adult chaperones bring any medications a student may need. If any student is known to be allergic to bee stings, have that student put in a group with the teacher, who should have their medication. Make sure the group has a first aid kit. Think through where you' 11 be taking the group and remove hazards.

Bus companies

Bus companies require adequate space to safely drop off the group and to park the bus. A bus company may call you with specific direction questions.

Bathrooms

If possible, make a couple of bathrooms available to the group. If you are thinking of hosting multiple farm visits, consider renting a port-a-potty on either a one-time or on-going basis. This expense can be included in the cost charged to a group for visiting. If bathroom facilities are limited, suggest to the teacher a place the group can stop shortly before and after visiting the farm to use restrooms (e.g., a nearby park or rest stop). It is important to have at least one bathroom available for "emergency use" during the visit.

Food and water

Groups should bring their own food for lunch and snacks. Ask the teacher to bring large garbage bags, so you won't have to dispose of extra waste (though students can be encouraged to contribute their food waste to your compost!). Be sure to provide a handwashing station. If you have drinking water available, let the teacher know. If not, it is important to tell the teacher that students must bring their own water in a water bottle.

Weather
Make sure the teacher knows what kind of weather to expect, so that s/he can make sure the students are prepared with hats, sunscreen, sweaters, raingear, etc. It is also important to have a clear "rain policy" with the teacher. Does rain cancel the trip? It is a good idea to arrange to call the teacher the night before if you need to cancel due to rain so that he can make alternate arrangements and cancel the bus.

Considerations for hosting very young children
Even children between two-and-a-half and five years old benefit from visiting farms. A visit with this age group may be less of a teaching experience and more of an opportunity for young children to develop comfort and familiarity being outdoors or around animals. The suggestions in this guide can be simplified to plan a shorter program for younger children. With this age group it is best to be flexible and keep the visit moving at a pace that seems comfortable for the group.

Considerations for hosting older children
With older kids (junior high and high school), adapt the activities as appropriate and give a more sophisticated explanation to accompany them. Older students often value the sense that they are being given "real world" or adult responsibility. As a result, many young people welcome the chance to do physical work when they visit a farm. Gleaning is an excellent practice for young adults. Their labor is needed, and they can have the sense that they are helping to make a difference.

Overnight visits
Some farms make space available to groups for overnight visits. A group that is planning on spending the night must have an adequate number of adults along to supervise and organize the group. Overnight farm visits are a great way to extend learning opportunities. You can acquaint groups with the chores that happen at night and in the morning, and let them further explore the farm. Give teachers a precise sense of what you can provide in terms of space and accommodations, and what you expect the group to bring.

Items to give away or sell
Many farms provide items such as produce or plant starts for children to take home or to the school garden or cafeteria. It is wonderful for children to be able to take something back with them to share with family or classmates. Some farms provide these items and other products from the farm for sale. If you plan to sell anything on the farm, let the teacher know this in advance, so s/he can give parents and students the option to bring money.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
This guide was produced with a grant from the University of California Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program (SAREP). We are most grateful for their encouragement and generous support. The guide was written by Marc Lavine and edited by Betsy Bigelow-Teller.

Our grateful thanks to: California Alliance with Family Farmers (CAFF), James Cohea and the International Institute for Ecological Agriculture/Our Farm CSA, Al Courchesne and Frog Hollow Farm, Emila Heller and Green Gulch Farm, Larry Jacobs and Jacobs Farm, Sibella Kraus, Valerie Phipps and Phipps Ranch, Bev Ransom, Judith Redmond, Dru Rivers and Full Belly Farm, Sue Temple and Sky High Ranch.

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Agricultural
Marketing
Service

January 2001

Farmers Market Coloring Book

Published by:
United States Department of Agriculture
Marketing and Regulatory Programs
Agricultural Marketing Service
Transportation and Marketing Programs
Wholesale and Alternative Markets

January 2001

USDA Farmers Market Coloring Book compiled by
Jennifer-Claire Klotz, Economist,
Wholesale & Alternative Markets, USDA

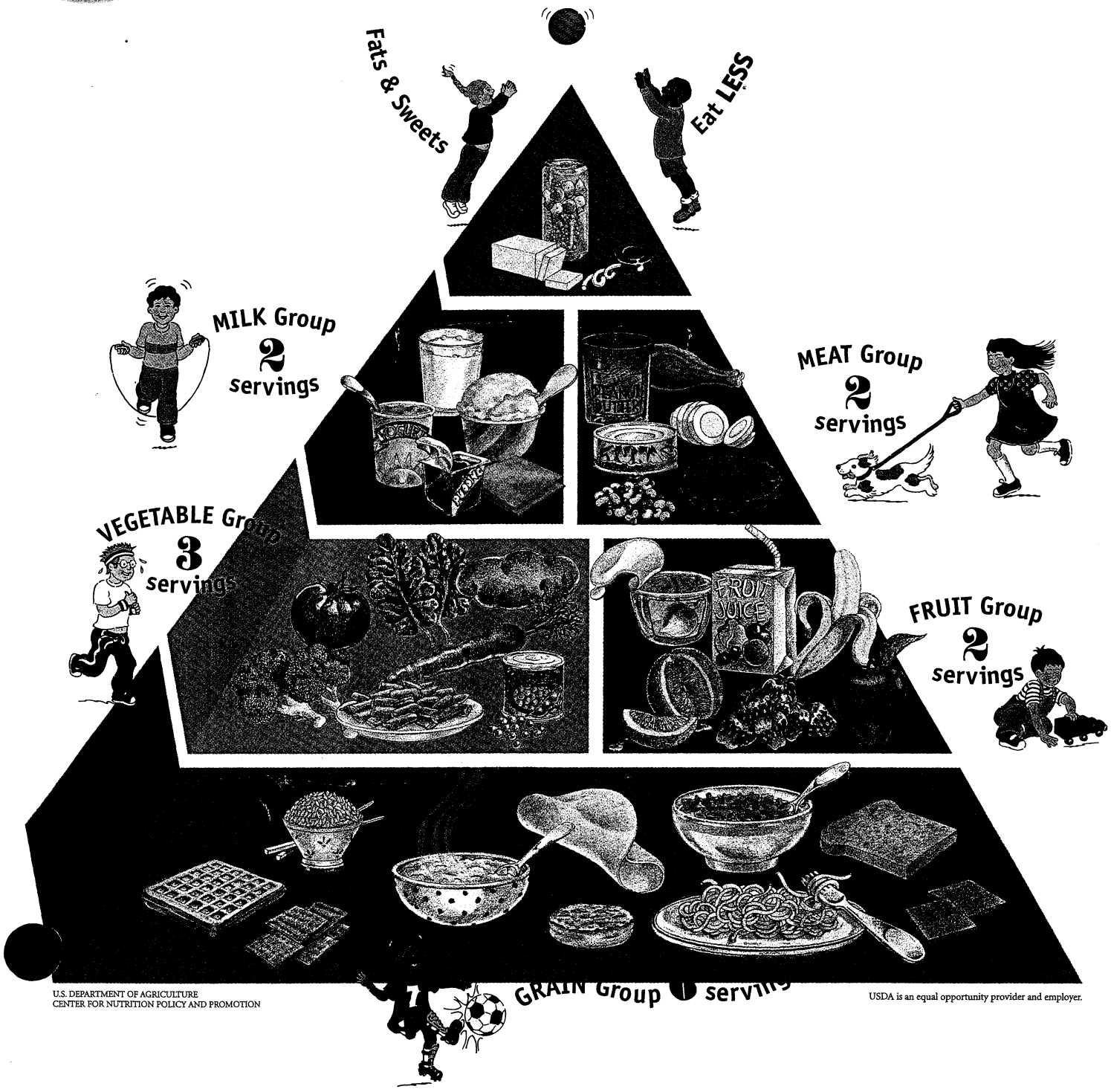
Special thanks to Erica Szlosek, California Field Office,
Farm Service Agency, USDA. Visit their Website for kids at
http://www.fsa.usda.gov/ca/agforkids.htm.
Additional clip art from Agricultural Communications,
Texas Agricultural Extension Service, Texas A&M University
(http://agpublications.tamu.edu/clipart/).

For more information on farmers markets or
other farmer direct marketing activities, visit
http://www.ams.usda.gov/directmarketing

The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) is an
equal opportunity provider and employer.

Food Guide Pyramid for Young Children

A Daily Guide for 2- to 6-Year-Olds

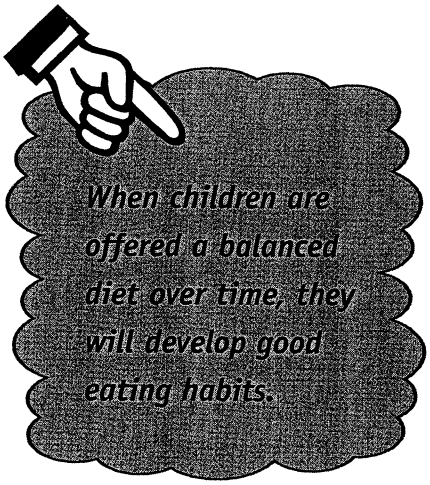


U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE
CENTER FOR NUTRITION POLICY AND PROMOTION

USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

HEALTHY EATING TIPS...

Encouraging Food Choices for a Healthy Diet



BE PATIENT. Young children may not be interested in trying new foods. Offer a new food more than once. Show your child how the rest of the family enjoys it. The food may be accepted when it becomes more familiar to your child.

BE A PLANNER. Most young children need a snack or two in addition to three regular daily meals.

- ☞ Offer foods from three or more of the five major food groups for breakfast and lunch.
- ☞ Offer foods from four or more of the five major food groups for the "main meal."
- ☞ Plan snacks so they are not served too close to mealtime, and offer foods from two or more of the five major food groups.

BE A GOOD ROLE MODEL. What you do can mean more than what you say. Your child learns from you about how and what to eat.

- ☞ Eat meals with your children whenever possible.
- ☞ Try new foods and new ways of preparing them with your children. Both you and your children can be healthier by eating more dark-green leafy vegetables, deep-yellow vegetables, fruits, and whole grain products.
- ☞ Walk, run, and play with your children, don't just sit on the sidelines. A family that is physically active together has lots of fun!

BE ADVENTUROUS. At the store ask your young child to choose a new vegetable or fruit, from two or three choices, for a weekly "family try-a-new-food" night. At home your child can help you wash and prepare the food.

BE CREATIVE. Encourage your child to invent a new snack or sandwich from three or four healthful ingredients you provide. Try a new bread or whole grain cracker. Talk about what food groups the new snack includes and why it tastes good. Is the snack smooth, crunchy, sweet, juicy, chewy, or colorful?

United States Department of Agriculture
Food and Nutrition Service
August 2000

The Most Populous Realm

The average person can detect as many as 30,000 odors. That leaves a lot of room for personal preference; for some people, gardenia is great, but primordial is powerful. The customers of Demeter Fragrances have made Dirt cologne a best seller among the company's regular collection of 120 scents.

The secret to Dirt was unearthed when Demeter chemists analyzed a handful of soil from a company executive's farm to isolate the molecules responsible for specific scents.

But many secrets of soil remain buried. It's the most populous realm on the planet, and an astonishing one-third of the more than 1 billion organisms in a teaspoon of soil is unknown. "The abundance of life in soil is higher than anyplace else, and at least as diverse," notes botanist Greg Mueller, Ph.D., of The Field Museum of Chicago. 'Soil' is composed of organic, decaying material, inorganic material [rock, minerals, elements] and organisms that together form a living system. 'Dirt' is what kids get on their knees," he says.

More than 1 billion organisms live in one teaspoon of soil.

Among the mysterious denizens of this domain are bacteria and other microorganisms, worms, mites, insects and fungi. Even the 1 millimeter of soil veneer covering Antarctica's permafrost hosts some forms of hardy life. Midwestern U.S. prairie topsoil can measure more than 12 feet — deep space to an earth scientist. Mueller emphasizes that we are as ignorant of their diversity as we are of their existence.

Last year, The Field Museum opened a $10 million exhibit called *Underground Adventure*, a busy subterranean neighborhood that proved to be challenging to depict. "Because so little is known about much of this world," Mueller explains, "we weren't sure what some things should look like. The filaments of fungi, for example — what's their density in soil? How are they connected to roots?"

Some things *are* clear: Every 10 years earthworms turn over the equivalent of all the soil on the planet to a depth of 1 inch; without hungry organisms in the soil, deciduous forests would drown in their own litter; it takes thousands of years to reclaim topsoil after severe erosion, over-farming or development.

The mission of *Underground Adventure* is to engender an appreciation that residents of Earth are utterly dependent on earth. Mueller points out that we wear blue jeans made from cotton that grows in soil, that we eradicate infections with penicillin made from a fungus that lives in soil, that we drink from aluminum cans made from bauxite, a soil-borne mineral ore. "Today, we can manufacture many of the environments necessary for making raw material, but we couldn't initially, and we take for granted the soil from which they came," Mueller says. "We need to consider what other things of utility there are in soil that we don't even know about."

Like cologne.

Of all the constituents of soil, only a group of microbes called actinomycetes imparts its characteristic smell. Other dirt dwellers carry signature odors, but to the human olfactory sense, surmises Demeter Fragrances, only one teeny bacterium jump-starts the hard-wiring of interpersonal attraction.

Back to nature, indeed.

—Ellen Alperstein

AVAILABLE NOW!

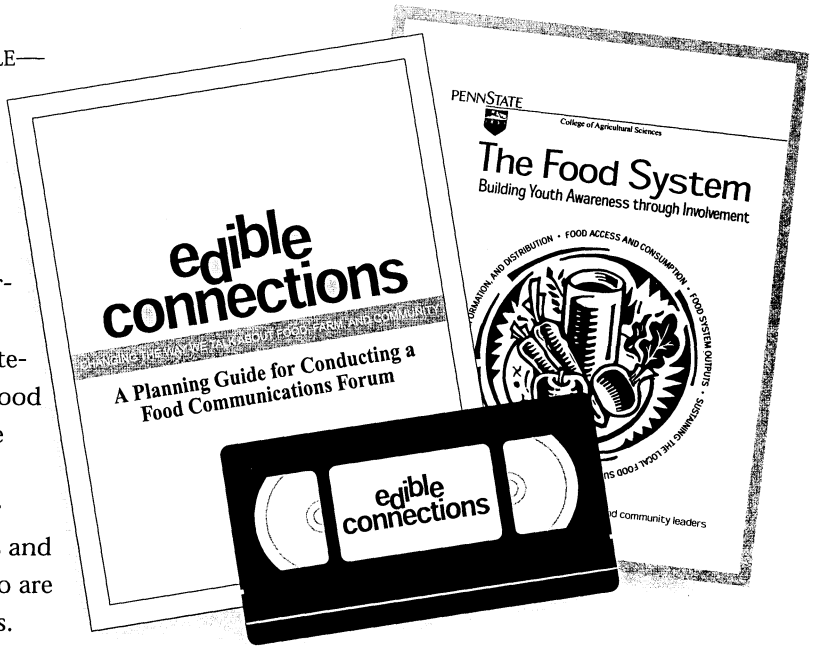
Food System Education Resources from Penn State

IN TODAY'S FAST-FOOD SOCIETY, MANY PEOPLE—adults and youth—don't understand the complexity of the food system and what it takes to sustain a local agricultural sector. They know little about the foods they consume. At the same time, opportunities to have firsthand experiences growing and preparing food are decreasing.

These resources from Penn State offer strategies for becoming more involved in the local food system and creating opportunities for dialogue about food system issues.

The Food System: Building Youth Awareness through Involvement is a guidebook for parents and educators of youth in grades 4 through 12 who are enrolled in 4-H clubs or other youth programs.

continued on back page



PENNSTATE
1855
College of Agricultural Sciences

Order Form

The Food System: Building Youth Awareness through Involvement (AGRS-75)

Number of copies ____ at $15 each

Edible Connections: Changing the Way We Talk About Farm, Food, and Community (Publication and Video Package) (MISC-15)

Number of copies ____ at $30 each

TOTAL ORDER $_____

Name _____

Street _____

City _____ State _____ Zip code _____

❑ To order using MasterCard or Visa, call toll-free (877) 345-0691.

❑ Enclose check made payable to **Penn State** and send order form to:

Publications Distribution Center
The Pennsylvania State University
112 Agricultural Administration Building
University Park, PA 16802

continued from front page

The 142-page guidebook introduces educators and youth to the concept of the food system, emphasizing interactive learning, skill building, and using the community as a classroom. Topics covered include food system inputs and outputs; food production, transformation, and distribution; food access and consumption; and sustaining the local food supply.

The guidebook also provides background information, curricula recommendations, activity ideas, thought-provoking questions, and resources for more information. Activities in the book can be used in the classroom, in club or group settings, or by families at home. Many of the activities also are appropriate for adult groups.

An **Edible Connections** food communications forum brings together people who are involved in local and regional food systems. *Edible Connections: A Planning Guide for Conducting a Food Communications Forum* can help you organize and conduct such a forum in your community. An **Edible Connections** forum aims to improve understanding, build connections, and promote communication about issues associated with food, farm, and community—those edible connections among us.

The guide discusses defining objectives, choosing a site, identifying supporters and generating resources, setting an agenda, marketing the forum, booking speakers and panelists, and evaluating impact. Discussion questions and planning tips are included, along with a planning timeline and budget worksheet.

Accompanying the guide is a video illustrating the six elements of an **Edible Connections** forum: Setting the Table, Food as Lifestyle, Food as Livelihood, Food as Connection, Town Meeting, and Celebration of Regional Foods. The video features scenes from previous forums and interviews planners and participants.

This publication is available in alternative media on request.

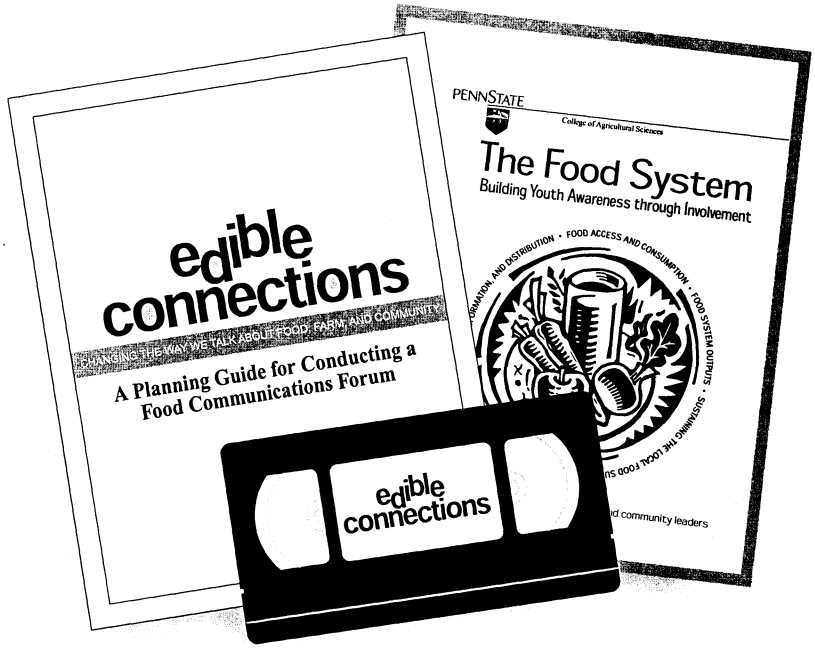
The Pennsylvania State University is committed to the policy that all persons shall have equal access to programs, facilities, admission, and employment without regard to personal characteristics not related to ability, performance, or qualifications as determined by University policy or by state or federal authorities. It is the policy of the University to maintain an academic and work environment free of discrimination, including harassment. The Pennsylvania State University prohibits discrimination and harassment against any person because of age, ancestry, color, disability or handicap, national origin, race, religious creed, sex, sexual orientation, or veteran status. Discrimination or harassment against faculty, staff, or students will not be tolerated at The Pennsylvania State University. Direct all inquiries regarding the nondiscrimination policy to the Affirmative Action Director, The Pennsylvania State University, 201 Willard Building, University Park, PA 16802-2801, Tel 814-865-4700/V, 814-863-1150/TTY.

© The Pennsylvania State University 2001

1M2/01PS42166 U.Ed. AGR01-61

NOW AVILABLE!

To place your order, use the form on the reverse side or call toll free (877) 345-0691



SITE INDEX

ORION ONLINE

Home | Orion Magazine | Orion Afield | Orion Society | Orion Grassroots Network

Afield

Try

You Learn What You Eat

COGNITION MEETS NUTRITION IN BERKELEY SCHOOLS

by David Sobel

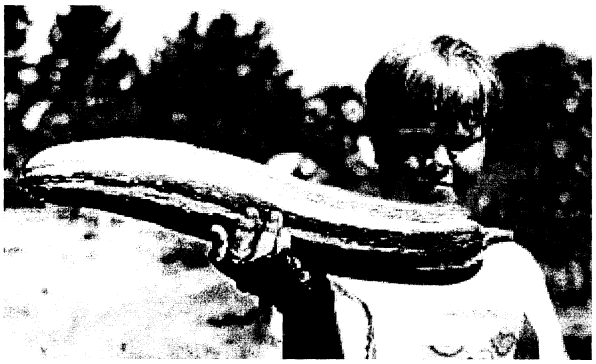
Summer 2001 | E-mail this Article to a Friend

I GOT MY FIRST SENSE of the disconnect between children and food when I was a kindergarten and first grade teacher in a lost-in-the-hills school in southern New Hampshire, multiple decades ago. Intent on a healthy curriculum, I had the students prepare their own snack every day, preferably from scratch. But after weeks of popcorn, apple sauce, and celery sticks with peanut butter, I was itching to explore new horizons. What new thing could we make that the kids would really like to eat, I pondered. French fries? Not terribly healthy, but certainly a fun food that would allow us to take part in the transformation from raw vegetable to tasty snack.

I gathered my group in the kitchen. Their eyes lit up when I announced our task. "So what do we need to make French fries?" No response, as a bit of glint left their eyes. Rephrase and concretize...I tried again: "When you make French fries, what's the first thing you do?" "Well," courageous Steve recollected, "you go to the icebox, open the freezer, and take out the plastic bag with the crinkly things inside." Not one of the children knew that French fries were potatoes. And when we made tomato soup with tomatoes picked fresh from the garden, I was

disheartened when Angela said, "This soup is OK, but I like real tomato soup better, the kind that comes in the can."

Most of the $4 billion spent on school lunches in the United States every year reinforces this severing of the conceptual food chain. When was the last time you walked into a school and enjoyed the fragrance of fresh-baked bread wafting from the school kitchen? These days, food appears from somewhere/nowhere out of the back of a truck. There are no smiling grandmothers with splatters of sauce on their aprons ladling up love with the freshly mashed potatoes; today's food service ladies just heat and serve. But in Berkeley, California, carrots are coming straight from the school's garden, food preparation is an integral part of the curriculum, local restaurateurs are selling organic tacos in the schoolyard, and the whole community is recognizing the links between cognition and nutrition.



A killer zucchini from the Edible Schoolyard.

IN THE BEGINNING was the seed. Well, actually, a handful of seeds. The Berkeley community had a long history of community gardening when Alice Waters, founder of the acclaimed Chez Panisse restaurant, had the vision of a school garden. Neil Smith, principal of the Martin Luther King Middle School, had a parallel vision of empowering teachers and students to enrich the curriculum and the schoolyard through real-world learning. A 1995 conversation between Smith and Waters helped them realize that they both wanted to hoe the same row. A couple of science teachers, Phoebe Tanner and Beth Sonnenberg, got intrigued, but were still a bit overwhelmed. Smith recalls, "Alice's vision was so far-reaching, so 'out there' compared to where we were. She was talking about students serving other students lunches that they had grown in the garden, and we were looking at an asphalt, urban lot. We needed to start with the garden before we could talk about the cafeteria and redoing the lunch program."

Fritjof Capra and Zenobia Barlow at the Center for Ecoliteracy recognized the asphalt-breaking potential in these seeds. Compelled by the center's mission to "support educational organizations and nurture communities in schools that teach and embody ecologically sustainable ways of life," they saw an opportunity to recreate a miniature food system on the school grounds. Philosophical and financial support from the center helped to weave together many strands of already existing support for community gardening, and so it was that the Edible Schoolyard was born.

First came the garden, then a student-designed and -built toolshed, followed by a kitchen classroom and specialized food preparation teaching staff to help students turn fresh produce into healthy snacks. The garden became an integral part of the math, language arts, and social studies curricula, and an emotional climate of warmth, mutual support, and trust flourished in the school. Esther Cook, manager of the kitchen classroom, reports that students have enthusiastically made and enjoyed such things as Jerusalem artichoke fritters, pumpkin and kale soup, cucumber sushi, and sweet potato biscuits. Cook saw much learning potential in the cooking activities: "Students have learned the origins of staple ingredients by grinding their own wheat and corn into flour and making butter from scratch. They have appreciated the inherent bounty of the garden by counting the seeds in a cherry tomato. And they were struck by the ability of one tiny tomato to hold the potential for 100 plants. 'Enough for everyone on my block!' exclaimed a student."

One garden on one schoolyard is a beginning, but not a significant challenge to Del Monte. Yet if a schoolyard garden can foster learning and community at Martin Luther King Middle School, why not have a garden on every schoolyard in Berkeley, or every schoolyard in California? And since you can't realistically feed all the children in any one school with just one garden, why not create connections between local farmers and the school district? Instead of freeze-dried burritos trucked in from the Midwest, how about burritos with organic beans and cheese grown and produced by area farmers, farmers whose fields are threatened by suburban sprawl? The educators, systems theorists, ecologists, and writers at the Center for Ecoliteracy saw the Edible Schoolyard as the first step in a profound shift toward more sustainable and equitable communities. They decided to aim high—convert the Berkeley School District's entire lunch program to all organic and locally grown.

The new school lunches are popular!

Exploring the wonder of chard is part of the curriculum

The center staff found conceptual support for their goals in the USDA's Community Food Security grant program, whose goals include: meeting the needs of low-income people by increasing their access to fresher, more nutritious food supplies; increasing the self-reliance of communities in providing for their own food needs; promoting comprehensive responses to local food, farm, and nutrition issues; and developing innovative linkages between the for-profit and nonprofit food sectors.

Janet Brown, program officer for the Food Systems Project at the Center for Ecoliteracy, sees the project as a model for the USDA's goal of linking farms and schools. "In just five years, the Center's Food Systems Project has grown from the funding of a school garden at an individual school site to the complete reinvention of Child Nutrition Services throughout the 10,000-student Berkeley Unified School District. By using food as an organizing principle for systemic change, the program addresses the root causes of poor academic performance, psychosocial behavior disorders, and escalating children's health issues such as obesity, asthma and diabetes. At the same time, the program connects the loss of farmland and farming as a way of life in our region and the social problems facing school communities to children's health."

There's a direct connection, Janet contends, between agribusiness that supports the high-fat, fast-food industry and recent research finding that one quarter of California adolescents are at risk of being overweight. But by creating dedicated markets for local organic farmers, school districts can help to nurture healthier students, minimize the use of toxic herbicides and pesticides, and build community through supporting local business and cross-generational food preparation experiences.

When the Berkeley Unified School District adopted its new Food Policy in August, 1999, it unpaved the way for breaking down both the conceptual mindset and infrastructure of the current food programs. Since the kitchens at most of the schools have devolved to just providing heat-and-serve meals, the school board

proposed and 83 percent of the voters approved a $10 million bond issue to renovate all of its elementary school kitchens and build a new cafeteria and kitchen facilities at the largest junior high school. Good facilities are a start, but kitchens need inspired staff, so additional grant funding will support a district-wide nutrition training program for food service workers. To facilitate the shift from USDA surplus food to fresh, locally prepared food, further grant funding supports hiring an organic-savvy chef to create whole new menus and new kitchen designs. Finally, to assure that school meal programs can serve delicious, nutritiously complete meals with ingredients from local farms while remaining economically viable, a $300,000 grant from the California Endowment supports the development of a strategic business plan.

And where's all that food going to come from? The project will be hiring a "forager" who serves as an envoy between the school district and local sustainable agriculture practitioners. When project coordinator Jared Lawson did some investigative foraging he found that Sebastapol orchards consistently lost money on small apples that had to be thrown away or sold at a loss because they were outside the standard pack regulations of the California Department of Agriculture. He saw that these apples were perfect for school snacks or for making organic cider for kids. Healthy snacks for students while creating a dedicated market for an unutilizable product for growers—it's a classic example of feeding two birds with one hand!

Most of the $4billion spent on school
lunches in the United States every year reinforces
a severing of the conceptual food chain.

Since implementing salad bars in some schools over the last year, the school district has purchased more than $100,000 of fresh produce from local farmers. This figure will increase exponentially as the district uses its buying power to provide locally grown food for the primary meal program. Further, negotiations are currently underway with Newman's Own and Amy's to explore whether volume purchasing can bring down the cost of providing organic, prepackaged snack foods like dried fruits and healthy cookies. Following Berkeley's lead, San Francisco, Oakland, West Contra Costa, and Marin unified school districts have all requested assistance in exploring similar acquisition programs. Joint purchasing for close to a million schoolchildren might catch the Green Giant's attention.

THE BIGGEST QUESTION, of course, is will the kids eat the stuff? Can McDonald's and licorice whips be replaced by kale and kiwis? Not leaving anything to chance, the Food Systems people have devised ingenious ways to both assess what students want and educate students and their parents about what's possible. The new breakfast program at Oxford Elementary School, consisting primarily of whole-grain oatmeal, is a test of the willingness of children to try something new. Extensive local and organic, seasonal condiments such as berries, yogurt, nuts, seeds, and fresh fruit are provided. Initial assessments indicate that more children are eating breakfast at school and that 59 percent are choosing the whole-grain breakfast over the usual fare of French toast, pancakes, and sugar cereal.

To assess the impact of this program, Dr. Michael Murphy of the Harvard School of Medicine is researching the effects of a nutritionally adequate breakfast on academic achievement, psychosocial behavior, physical health, and school attendance.

The other major change has been the salad bars. Four are in place at the elementary and middle schools and the project aspires to having eight in full swing by the end of the school year. Though salad bars present a certain number

of logistical challenges, popularity among students is not one of them. It turns out that if students have grown cherry tomatoes in the school garden, they're more likely to choose them when they see them at the salad bar. So school gardens help to increase the repertoire of students' culinary choices.

The problems have more to do with time—one salad bar won't process students quickly enough, and making lunch longer affects the length of the school day, which impacts the bus schedule, and conflicts with union contractual arrangements. It's a systems problem; Muir's notion that everything is hitched to everything else applies to schools as well. Janet Brown reflects ironically that, "If our goal was to inexpensively create as many eating disorders as possible, then what we would do is shrink the amount of time for lunch." So the solution is not to shoehorn salad bars into a dysfunctional time frame, but rather explore how to adjust the whole system so that lunch can provide both nutrition and the opportunity for productive social engagement.

The initiative at the high school has taken a different tack. In response to the tasteless, unappealing food served at the high school cafeteria, more and more Berkeley High School students have started to hit the fast-food places downtown. Merchants then started to complain about the adolescent influx. Child Nutritional Services suggested that the solution to the problem was to bring fast food onto campus, but the Food Systems Project saw it differently. They went to a variety of local restaurateurs and said, "Here's a captive audience of 3,300 hungry consumers. Do you want to work with us to create organic food choices on campus?" The outcome is an on-campus food court, designed after surveying students about how they like to be served. In exchange for being willing to make organic substitutions in their menus, vendors get access to a dedicated market. Stroll into the food court this week and you can enjoy hormone-free chicken thighs and legs from Poulet, sandwiches on organic bread from the E-Z Stop Deli, and pizzas made with organic herbs and Marin County cheese. The Good Food Cafe, a campus kitchen for students studying the culinary arts, offers an organic smoothie. "Any high school in the country would kill for this," commented Principal Frank Lynch.

Student response ranges from thrilled to tolerant. Senior class president Jamie Lee said, "It's great we have a healthy option to the greasy stuff they used to serve in the snack shack. But lots of students just want the food to be affordable and tasty. If it's good for them, then that's all the better." When students complained that the costs were too high the first week, negotiations with vendors led to lowered prices, which was a good opportunity to demonstrate to students that feedback loops in ecological systems tend to move the system toward sustainability.

THE BERKELEY FOOD SYSTEMS PROJECT is problem-solving that explores connections between seemingly disconnected parts of a system. Wendell Berry calls this "solving for pattern," in which "good solutions promote the well-being of all parts of the system." The health of the soil, of plants and animals, of farm and farmer, of schools and schoolchildren are sustained by connecting the pattern.

Zenobia Barlow points out that, "schools have become a business opportunity for fast food vendors and global food producers.... Our tax dollars are buying a high-fat, high-salt, high-octane caffeine, fast food diet for school children that in turn produces a multi-million-dollar public health problem." This diet also reduces academic performance and contributes to the demise of family farms eradicated by urban sprawl. Instead, the Center for Ecoliteracy and

the Berkeley School District are devising a pattern of healthy food, improved academic performance, and sustainable agriculture.

The students, teachers, community gardeners, and ecologists in the Bay Area are on the doorstep of a significant food invention. Think, for a moment, of that food item that beckons to all of our taste buds. With enough innovative thinking, Berkeley students will be able to reinvent that holy grail of American foods—pesticide-free, locally grown, low-fat, and sea-salted French fries that will taste good and be good for us too. Maybe the next time I cook with students, I won't need to feel so guilty.

David Sobel *is director of Teacher Certiification Programs in the Education Department and co-director of the Center for Environmental Education at Antioch New England Graduate School in Keene, New Hampshire.*

Photos: Second from top, Barlow/Center for Ecoliteracy. All others, Tyler/Center for Ecoliteracy.

The Center For Ecoliteracy, 2522 San Pablo Avenue, Berkeley, CA 94702, 510/845-4595, info@ecoliteracy.org, www.ecoliteracy.org.

Home | Top of Page | Current Issue | E-mail this Article to a Friend

Copyright 2001 Orion Society. Reprint requests may be directed to editor@orionsociety.org